


Amigopod 3.7



Deployment Guide

Copyright

© 2012 Aruba Networks, Inc. Aruba Networks trademarks include,  Aruba Networks®, Aruba Wireless Networks®, the registered Aruba the Mobile Edge Company logo, Aruba Mobility Management System®, Mobile Edge Architecture®, People Move. Networks Must Follow®, RFProtect®, Green Island®. All rights reserved. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Open Source Code

Certain Aruba products include Open Source software code developed by third parties, including software code subject to the GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), or other Open Source Licenses. The Open Source code used can be found at this site:

http://www.arubanetworks.com/open_source

Legal Notice

The use of Aruba Networks, Inc. switching platforms and software, by all individuals or corporations, to terminate other vendors' VPN client devices constitutes complete acceptance of liability by that individual or corporation for this action and indemnifies, in full, Aruba Networks, Inc. from any and all legal actions that might be taken against it with respect to infringement of copyright on behalf of those vendors.

Warranty

This hardware product is protected by the standard Aruba warranty of one year parts/labor. For more information, refer to the ARUBACARE SERVICE AND SUPPORT TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

Altering this device (such as painting it) voids the warranty.



www.arubanetworks.com

1344 Crossman Avenue
Sunnyvale, California 94089

Phone: 408.227.4500
Fax 408.227.4550

Chapter 1	Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.....	17
	About this Manual.....	17
	Documentation Conventions.....	17
	Documentation Overview.....	18
	Getting Support.....	19
	Field Help.....	19
	Quick Help.....	19
	Context-Sensitive Help.....	19
	Searching Help.....	19
	If You Need More Assistance.....	20
Chapter 2	Management Overview	21
	Visitor Access Scenarios.....	21
	Reference Network Diagram.....	22
	Key Interactions.....	22
	AAA Framework.....	23
	Key Features.....	25
	Visitor Management Terminology.....	27
	Deployment Process.....	28
	Security Policy Considerations.....	28
	Operational Concerns.....	28
	Network Provisioning.....	28
	Site Preparation Checklist.....	29
Chapter 3	Setup Guide.....	31
	Hardware Appliance Setup.....	31
	Default Network Configuration.....	31
	Virtual Appliance Setup.....	32
	VMware Workstation or VMware Player.....	32
	VMware ESXi.....	32
	Accessing the Console User Interface.....	33
	Console Login.....	33
	Console User Interface Functions.....	33
	Accessing the Graphical User Interface.....	34
	Setup Wizard.....	34
	Login Screen.....	35
	Amigopod License Agreement.....	35
	Set Administrator Password.....	36
	Set System Hostname.....	36
	Configure Network Interfaces.....	37
	Configure HTTP Proxy.....	38
	Configure SMTP Mail Settings.....	39
	Configure SNMP.....	40
	Configure Server Time and Time Zone.....	40
	Configure Default RADIUS NAS Vendor Type.....	41
	RADIUS Network Access Servers.....	42

Configure Amigopod Subscription ID	42
Install Subscription Updates	43
Setup Complete	44

Chapter 4	RADIUS Services	45
	Accessing RADIUS Services	45
	Server Control.....	45
	RADIUS Log Snapshot.....	45
	Debug RADIUS Server	46
	Viewing Failed Authentications	46
	Server Configuration.....	47
	Example: Removing a User-Name Suffix.....	49
	Example: Correcting the NAS-IP-Address Attribute	49
	Example: Adding a Reply-Message to an Access-Reject Packet	49
	User Roles	49
	Creating a User Role.....	50
	Role Attributes	51
	Attribute Tags.....	52
	Attribute Authorization Conditions	52
	Example: Time of Day Conditions.....	52
	Example: Time-Based Authorization.....	53
	Example: Accounting-Based Authorization	53
	Attribute Value Expressions	54
	Example: Using Request Attributes in a Value Expression.....	54
	Example: Location-Specific VLAN Assignment	54
	Network Access Servers	55
	Creating a Network Access Server Entry.....	55
	Importing a List of Network Access Servers.....	57
	Web Logins.....	59
	Creating a Web Login Page	60
	Universal Access Method (UAM) Password Encryption	65
	NAS Redirect Parameters	65
	NAS Login Parameters.....	66
	Using Web Login Parameters	66
	Apple Captive Network Assistant Bypass with Amigopod.....	67
	Solution Implementation	69
	Database Lists	71
	Database Maintenance Tasks	72
	Dictionary.....	72
	Import Dictionary.....	73
	Export Dictionary.....	73
	Reset Dictionary	73
	Vendors	73
	Creating a New Vendor	74
	Edit Vendor	74
	Delete Vendor	74
	Export Vendor	74
	Vendor-Specific Attributes.....	74
	Add a Vendor-Specific Attribute (VSA)	75
	Edit Vendor-Specific Attribute	76
	Delete Vendor-Specific Attribute	76
	Add Attribute Value	76
	Edit Attribute Value	76
	Delete Attribute Value	77

EAP and 802.1X Authentication	77
Specifying Supported EAP Types	78
Creating a Server Certificate and Self-Signed Certificate Authority	79
Requesting a Certificate from a Certificate Authority	81
Importing a Server Certificate	82
Installing a Server Certificate from a Certificate Authority	83
Exporting Server Certificates	83
PEAP Sample Configuration	83
Active Directory Domain Services	88
Joining an Active Directory Domain	88
Testing Active Directory User Authentication	90
Configuring Active Directory Domain Authentication	90
Leaving an Active Directory Domain	91
External Authentication Servers	91
Types of External Authentication Server	91
Managing External Authentication Servers	92
Configuring Properties for External Authentication Servers	92
Configuring Authorization for External Authentication Servers	99
Testing External Authentication Servers	104
Managing Certificates for External Authentication Servers	106

Chapter 5 Operator Logins 109

Accessing Operator Logins	109
About Operator Logins	109
Role-Based Access Control for Multiple Operator Profiles	109
Operator Profiles	110
Creating an Operator Profile	110
Operator Profile Privileges	114
Managing Operator Profiles	115
Local Operator Authentication	115
Creating a New Operator	116
Viewing All Operator Logins	117
Changing Operator Passwords	119
LDAP Operator Authentication	119
Manage LDAP Servers	119
Creating an LDAP Server	119
Advanced LDAP URL Syntax	122
Viewing the LDAP Server List	122
LDAP Operator Server Troubleshooting	123
LDAP Translation Rules	125
Custom LDAP Translation Processing	127
Operator Logins Configuration	129
Custom Login Message	129
Operator Password Options	130
Advanced Operator Login Options	131

Chapter 6 Guest Management 133

Accessing Guest Manager	133
About Guest Management Processes	133
Sponsored Guest Access	134
Self Provisioned Guest Access	134
Standard Guest Management Features	135
Creating a Guest Account	135
Creating a Guest Account Receipt	136
Creating Multiple Guest Accounts	137

Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts.....	138
Managing Guest Accounts.....	139
Managing Multiple Guest Accounts.....	142
Importing Guest Accounts.....	144
Exporting Guest Account Information.....	148
Guest Manager Customization.....	148
Default Settings for Account Creation	149
About Fields, Forms, and Views	153
Business Logic for Account Creation	153
Account Expiration Types	155
Standard Fields	156
Standard Forms and Views.....	156
Customization of Fields.....	157
Creating a Custom Field	158
Duplicating a Field.....	159
Editing a Field	159
Deleting a Field	159
Displaying Forms that Use a Field	159
Displaying Views that Use a Field	159
Customization of Forms and Views.....	160
Editing Forms and Views	160
Duplicating Forms and Views	160
Editing Forms.....	161
Form Field Editor.....	162
Form Display Properties.....	162
Form Validation Properties.....	172
Examples of Form field Validation.....	173
Advanced Form Field Properties	175
Form Field Validation Processing Sequence	176
Editing Views.....	179
View Field Editor	180
Customizing Self Provisioned Access.....	181
Self-Registration Sequence Diagram.....	181
Creating a Self-Registration Page.....	182
Editing Self-Registration Pages	183
Basic Properties for Self-Registration.....	184
Registration Page Properties	186
Default Self-Registration Form Settings	187
Receipt Page Properties	188
Receipt Actions	189
NAS Login Properties.....	191
Login Page Properties.....	192
Self-Service Portal Properties.....	193
Resetting Passwords with the Self-Service Portal.....	195
Customizing Print Templates	196
Creating New Print Templates	197
Print Template Wizard.....	198
Modifying Wizard-Generated Templates	199
Setting Print Template Permissions	199
Configuring Access Code Logins.....	200
Customize Random Username and Passwords	200
Create the Print Template	201
Customize the Guest Accounts Form.....	202
Create Access Code Guest Accounts	202

MAC Authentication on Amigopod	204
MAC Address Formats	204
Managing Devices	205
MAC Creation Modes	210
Accounting-Based MAC Authentication	214
Importing MAC Devices	217
Advanced MAC Features	217
Active Sessions Management	218
Session States	220
RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization	220
Filtering the List of Active Sessions	221
Managing Multiple Active Sessions	221
Sending Multiple SMS Alerts	226
SMS Services	227
Configuring SMS Gateways	227
Sending an SMS	228
About SMS Credits	229
About SMS Guest Account Receipts	229
SMS Receipt Options	230
Customize SMS Receipt	232
SMS Receipt Fields	233
SMTP Services	234
Configuring SMTP Services	234
About Email Receipts	234
Email Receipt Options	236
SMTP Receipt Fields	238

Chapter 7

Report Management	241
Accessing Reporting Manager	241
Viewing Reports	241
Running and Managing Reports	242
Viewing the Most Recent Report	242
Report History	242
Previewing the Report	242
Run Default	242
Run	243
Edit a report	243
Delete a Report	244
Duplicate a Report	244
Permissions	244
Exporting Report Definitions	246
Importing report Definitions	247
Resetting Report Definitions	247
About Custom Reports	248
Data Sources	249
Binning	249
Binning Example – Time Measurements	249
Groups	250
Statistics from Classification Groups	251
Components of the Report Editor	251
Report Type	252
Report Parameters	253
Parameter User Interface Editing	255
Data Source	256
Select Fields	257
Source Filters	259

Classification Groups	261
Statistics and Metrics.....	263
Output Series	266
Output Series Fields.....	267
Output Filters	268
Presentation Options	270
Final Report.....	272
Creating Reports	272
Creating the Report – Step 1	273
Creating the Report – Step 2	273
Creating Sample Reports	274
Report Based on Modifying an Existing Report.....	274
Report Created from Report Manager using Create New Report	275
Report Created by Duplicating an Existing Report	277
Report Troubleshooting.....	279
Report Preview with Debugging	279
Troubleshooting Tips	280

Chapter 8 Administrator Tasks 281

Accessing Administrator.....	281
Network Setup.....	281
Automatic Network Diagnostics.....	282
System Hostname.....	282
Network Interfaces	283
Changing Network Interface Settings	284
Managing Static Routes.....	287
Creating a Tunnel Network Interface	287
Creating a VLAN Interface.....	288
Managing VLAN Interfaces	289
Creating a Secondary Network Interface	290
Login Access Control.....	291
Network Diagnostic Tools	292
Network Diagnostics – Packet Capturing	294
Network Hosts	296
HTTP Proxy Configuration	297
SNMP Configuration	297
Supported MIBs	299
SMTP Configuration.....	300
SSL Certificate.....	301
Requesting an SSL Certificate	301
Installing an SSL Certificate	302
Displaying the Current SSL Certificate	304
Backup and Restore	305
Backing Up Appliance Configuration.....	305
Scheduling Automatic Backups.....	306
Restoring a Backup.....	308
Content Manager.....	309
Uploading Content	310
Downloading Content	310
Additional Content Actions	311
Security Manager	311
Performing a Security Audit	311
Reviewing Security Audit Results	312
Changing Network Security Settings	312
Resetting the Root Password	313

Notifications.....	313
OS Updates	314
Manual Operating System Updates.....	314
Reviewing the Operating System Update Log.....	314
Determining Installed Operating System Packages.....	315
Plugin Manager.....	315
Managing Subscriptions	316
Viewing Available Plugins.....	316
Adding or Updating New Plugins.....	317
Configuring Plugin Update Notifications.....	318
Configuring Plugins.....	318
Server Time.....	321
System Control.....	323
Changing System Configuration Parameters.....	323
System Log Configuration	323
Managing Data Retention	326
Changing Database Configuration Parameters	328
Changing Web Application Configuration.....	329
Changing Web Server Configuration	330
System Information	330
Adding Disk Space.....	331
System Log.....	333
Filtering the System Log	333
Exporting the System Log.....	334
Viewing the Application Log.....	334
Searching the Application Log.....	335
Exporting the Application Log.....	335

Chapter 9 Hotspot Manager..... 337

Manage Hotspot Sign-up	338
Captive Portal Integration	339
Look and Feel	339
SMS Services.....	339
Hotspot Plans.....	339
Modifying an Existing Plan.....	340
Creating New Plans.....	341
Managing Transaction Processors.....	341
Creating a New Transaction Processor	342
Managing Existing Transaction Processors.....	342
Managing Customer Information.....	342
Managing Hotspot Invoice	342
Customize User Interface	343
Customize Page One	344
Customize Page Two	344
Customize Page Three.....	346
View Hotspot User Interface.....	346

Chapter 10 High Availability Services..... 347

Accessing High Availability.....	347
About High Availability Systems.....	347
Terminology & Concepts.....	347
Network Architecture	348
Deploying an SSL Certificate	349
Normal Cluster Operation	349

Failure Detection	349
Database Replication	349
Configuration Replication.....	350
Primary Node Failure.....	351
Secondary Node Failure.....	351
Email Notification	352
Cluster Status	352
Cluster Setup.....	353
Prepare Primary Node.....	354
Prepare Secondary Node.....	356
Cluster initialization	356
Cluster Deployment	357
Cluster Maintenance.....	357
Recovering From a Failure	358
Recovering From a Temporary Outage.....	358
Recovering From a Hardware Failure	359
Performing Scheduled Maintenance.....	359
Updating Plugins.....	360
Destroying a Cluster.....	360
Cluster Troubleshooting.....	360

Chapter 11

Reference	363
Basic HTML Syntax	363
Standard HTML Styles	364
Smarty Template Syntax	365
Basic Template Syntax	365
Text Substitution	365
Template File Inclusion	365
Comments.....	366
Variable Assignment	366
Conditional Text Blocks	366
Script Blocks.....	366
Repeated Text Blocks.....	366
Foreach Text Blocks	367
Modifiers	367
Predefined Template Functions	368
Advanced Developer Reference	372
Date/Time Format Syntax.....	376
nwdateformat Modifier	376
nwtimeformat Modifier	377
Date/Time Format String Reference	378
Programmer's Reference.....	379
NwaAlnumPassword.....	379
NwaBoolFormat	379
NwaByteFormat	379
NwaByteFormatBase10	379
NwaComplexPassword.....	379
NwaCsvCache	379
NwaDigitsPassword(\$len)	380
NwaDynamicLoad.....	380
NwaGeneratePictureString	380
NwaGenerateRandomPasswordMix.....	380
NwaLettersDigitsPassword.....	380
NwaLettersPassword	380
NwaMoneyFormat.....	380
NwaParseCsv.....	381

NwaParseXml.....	382
NwaPasswordByComplexity.....	382
NwaSmsIsValidPhoneNumber.....	382
NwaStrongPassword.....	382
NwaVLookup.....	383
NwaWordsPassword.....	383
Field, Form and View Reference.....	384
GuestManager Standard Fields.....	384
Hotspot Standard Fields.....	391
SMS Services Standard Fields.....	392
SMTP Services Standard Fields.....	392
Format Picture String Symbols.....	394
Form Field Validation Functions.....	395
Form Field Conversion Functions.....	397
Form Field Display Formatting Functions.....	398
View Display Expression Technical Reference.....	400
Standard RADIUS Request Functions.....	401
Variables Available in Execution Context.....	401
AccessReject().....	401
EnableDebug().....	402
DisableDebug().....	402
GetAttr().....	402
ShowAttr().....	402
MacAddr().....	402
MacEqual().....	403
MacAddrConvert().....	403
GetTraffic().....	403
GetTime().....	403
GetSessions().....	404
GetCallingStationTraffic().....	404
GetUserTraffic().....	405
GetIpAddressTraffic().....	405
GetCallingStationTime().....	405
GetUserTime().....	405
GetIpAddressTime().....	405
GetCallingStationSessions().....	406
GetUserSessions().....	406
GetIpAddressSessions().....	406
GetUserActiveSessions().....	406
GetCurrentSession().....	406
GetUserCurrentSession().....	407
GetIpAddressCurrentSession().....	407
GetCallingStationCurrentSession().....	407
GetUserStationCount().....	408
GetSessionTimeRemaining().....	408
ChangeToRole().....	408
RADIUS Server Options.....	409
General Configuration.....	410
Security Configuration.....	412
Proxy Configuration.....	412
SNMP Query Configuration.....	413
Thread Pool Configuration.....	413
Authentication Module Configuration.....	415
Database Module Configuration.....	416
EAP Module Configuration.....	416
LDAP Module Configuration.....	419
Rewrite Module Configuration.....	422

	List of Standard Radius Attributes	423
	Authentication Attributes.....	423
	RADIUS Server Internal Attributes	425
	LDAP Standard Attributes for User Class	425
	Regular Expressions	425
Chapter 12	Glossary.....	427
Index.....		429

Figure 1	Visitor access using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance	21
Figure 2	Reference network diagram for visitor access	22
Figure 3	Interactions involved in guest access.....	23
Figure 4	Sequence diagram for network access using AAA	24
Figure 5	Rear port configuration for AMG-HW-100/-2500 appliances	31
Figure 6	RADIUS Role Editor page.....	50
Figure 7	Sequence diagram for guest captive portal and Web login	60
Figure 8	Captive Network Assistant on MacOS X.....	68
Figure 9	Captive Network Assistant on iPad	68
Figure 10	Captive Network Assistant on iPhone	69
Figure 11	Captive Portal Profile Configuration	70
Figure 12	Configuring the Web Login page.....	71
Figure 13	Operator Profile Editor page—User roles and filters	112
Figure 14	Operator Profile Editor page—Custom forms and views	114
Figure 15	Server Configuration page.....	120
Figure 16	LDAP Plugin.....	122
Figure 17	Sponsored guest access with guest created by operator	134
Figure 18	Guest access when guest is self-provisioned	134
Figure 19	Customize Guest Manager page (part 1).....	149
Figure 20	Customize Guest Manager page (part 2)—continued	151
Figure 21	Customize Guest Manager page (part 3)—continued	152
Figure 22	Steps involved in form field processing	176
Figure 23	Sequence diagram for guest self-registration	182
Figure 24	Guest self-registration process	184
Figure 25	MAC Authentication Plugin—Configuration	205
Figure 26	MAC Authentication Profile	205
Figure 27	Modify fields	213
Figure 28	RADIUS Role Editor	216
Figure 29	Configure SMS Services Plugin.....	231
Figure 30	Customize SMS Receipt page	233
Figure 31	Customize Email Receipt page	236
Figure 32	Customize Email Receipt page—continued	237
Figure 33	Report generation process	248
Figure 34	Bin number calculation	249
Figure 35	Reporting – Bin west of GMT	250
Figure 36	Reporting – Bin east of GMT	250
Figure 37	Reporting – Bin statistics without groups.....	251
Figure 38	Reporting – Bin statistics with groups.....	251
Figure 39	Components of the Report Editor	252
Figure 40	Network diagram showing IP addressing for a GRE tunnel	288
Figure 41	Data Retention Policy page	327
Figure 42	Guest self-provisioning.....	337
Figure 43	Network architecture of high availability cluster	348

Table 1	Quick Links	18
Table 2	List of Key features.....	25
Table 3	Common Terms	27
Table 4	Site Preparation Checklist	29
Table 5	Default Port configurations	31
Table 6	Ethernet adapter configuration.....	32
Table 7	Virtual ethernet adapter configuration	32
Table 8	Console access methods	33
Table 9	Web Login Page Syntax	66
Table 10	Operators supported in filters.....	113
Table 11	Operators supported in filters.....	117
Table 12	Server Type Parameters	121
Table 13	LDAP Error Messages	124
Table 14	Template Variables	127
Table 15	Operators supported in filters.....	140
Table 16	Operators supported in filters.....	143
Table 17	Account Expiration Types.....	155
Table 18	Visitor Management Forms and Views	156
Table 19	Operators supported in filters.....	206
Table 20	Operators supported in filters.....	221
Table 21	Default Table Layouts.....	271
Table 22	Transposed Table Layouts	271
Table 23	Template Variables	272
Table 24	Default Interface Settings	286
Table 25	Network Interface States	290
Table 26	Sylog Priority Levels	326
Table 27	Cluster Status Descriptions.....	352
Table 28	Failure Modes.....	358
Table 29	Standard HTML Tags	363
Table 30	Formatting Classes.....	364
Table 31	Smarty Modifiers	367
Table 32	Navigation Tags.....	373
Table 33	Date and Time Formats	376
Table 34	Date and Time Format Strings.....	378
Table 35	Parsing Options	381
Table 36	NwaVLookup Options.....	383
Table 37	GuestManager Standard Fields.....	384
Table 38	Hotspot Standard Fields.....	391
Table 39	SMS Services Standard Fields.....	392
Table 40	SMTP Services Standard Fields.....	393
Table 41	Picture String Symbols	394
Table 42	Picture String Example Passwords	395
Table 43	Complexity Requirements	397
Table 44	Form Field Display Functions	398

Table 45	Display Expressions for Data Formatting	400
Table 46	PHP Variables.....	401
Table 47	General Configuration Settings	410
Table 48	Security Configuration Settings.....	412
Table 49	Proxy Configuration Settings.....	412
Table 50	Thread Pool Settings	413
Table 51	Authentication Module Configuration Settings.....	415
Table 52	Database Modeule Configuration Settings.....	416
Table 53	Optional EAP Module Options.....	416
Table 54	LDAP Module Settings	419
Table 55	Rewrite Module Configuration Settings.....	422
Table 56	Regular Expressions for Pattern Matching.....	425

Collaboration between companies and mobility of staff has never been greater. Distributed workforces, traveling sales staff and a dependence on outsourced contractors and consultants requires efficient management, which can pose problems for network security and operational staff.

With visitors increasingly requiring online access to perform their work, Amigopod provides a simple interface that can quickly create and manage visitor accounts within a pre-defined security profile. The faster and easier staff can connect with visitors, the quicker they can start being productive.

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance provides a simple and personalized user interface through which operational staff can quickly and securely manage visitor network access. With Amigopod, your non-technical staff have controlled access to a dedicated visitor management user database. Through a customizable Web portal, your staff can easily create an account, reset a password or set an expiry time for visitors. Access permissions to Amigopod functions are controlled via an operator profile which can be integrated with an LDAP server or Active Directory login.

Visitors can be registered at reception and provisioned with an individual guest account that defines their visitor profile and the duration of their visit. The visitor can be given a customized print receipt with account details or they can be delivered wirelessly using the integrated SMS services. Companies are also able to pre-generate custom scratch cards, each with a defined network access time, which can then be handed out in a corporate environment or sold in public access scenarios.

Using the built-in customization features, your visitors are also able to self-provision their own guest accounts using the settings you have defined. The registration experience is delivered with a branded and customized Web portal, ensuring a streamlined and professional user experience. Visitors may also be asked to complete additional survey questions during the self-registration process, with the collected data stored for later analysis by the reporting system to provide additional feedback on your visitors and their usage of the network.

Amigopod integrates with all leading wireless and NAC solutions through its AAA enterprise services interface. This ensures that IT administrators have a standard integration with the network security framework, but gives operational staff the user interface they require.

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance is an effective solution to resolve the ever-growing demand for network access from external visitors, contractors and business partners.

About this Manual

This deployment manual is intended for system administrators and the persons installing and configuring the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. It takes you through the process of installing and configuring Amigopod as your solution for visitor management.

Documentation Conventions

Tab and button names are shown in bold, preceded by the appropriate icon, for example,  **Save Changes**.


Code samples are shown in a fixed-width font; for example:

```
Sample template code or HTML text
```



Command link icons are shown in the margin. These icons are used within the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance as a visual indication of the different components of the software.

Documentation Overview

Click the context-sensitive  **Help** link displayed at the top right of each page to go directly to the relevant section of the deployment guide.

The following quick links may be useful in getting started.

Table 1 *Quick Links*

For information about...	Refer to...
What visitor management is and how it works	“Management Overview”
Using the guest management features	“Standard Guest Management Features”
Running reports	“Running and Managing Reports”
Creating new reports	“Creating Reports”
Role-based access control for operators	“Operator Profiles”
Setting up LDAP authentication for operators	“LDAP Operator Authentication”
Guest self-provisioning features	“Self Provisioned Guest Access”
Dynamic authorization extensions	“RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization”
SMS receipts for guest accounts	“SMS Services”
Email receipts for guest accounts	“SMTP Services”
Network administration of the appliance	“Administrator Tasks”

A brief outline of this deployment guide includes:

- [Chapter 2, “Management Overview”](#) provides an overview of the processes and interactions involved in visitor management.
- [Chapter 3, “Setup Guide”](#) covers the hardware installation (or virtual appliance deployment) and initial configuration of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.
- [Chapter 4, “RADIUS Services”](#) provides reference material about implementing network access control using the Amigopod’s RADIUS services.
- [Chapter 5, “Operator Logins”](#) describes how to define operator profiles and operator logins for the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance, including integrating operator logins with an LDAP directory server.
- [Chapter 6, “Guest Management”](#) explains the built-in guest management features and the customization options for provisioning guest accounts, including setting up guest self-provisioning and defining new SMS or email receipts.
- [Chapter 7, “Report Management”](#) covers the use of the built-in reports and explains how to create new reports to summarize visitor account information and network usage accounting data.
- [Chapter 8, “Administrator Tasks”](#) describes the configuration and maintenance tools used by network administrators to manage the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.
- [Chapter 9, “Hotspot Manager”](#) introduces the optional features that may be used to deploy a commercial hotspot and enable visitors to purchase self-provisioned network access.

- [Chapter 10, “High Availability Services”](#) describes the optional high availability services that may be used to deploy a cluster of appliances in a fault-tolerant configuration.
- [Chapter 11, “Reference”](#) contains technical reference information about many of the built-in features of the appliance.

Getting Support

Field Help

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance has **field help** which is built into every form.

To:

To send a test message, enter the recipient's address.

The field help provides a short summary of the purpose of each field at the point you need it most. In many cases this is sufficient to use the application without further assistance or training.

Quick Help

In list views, click the **Quick Help** tab located at the top left of the list to display additional information about the list you are viewing and the actions that are available within the list.

Quick Help Create

User Name	Role	Status
-----------	------	--------

Context-Sensitive Help

For more detailed information about the area of the application you are using, click the context-sensitive **Help** link displayed at the top right of the page. This will open a new browser window showing the relevant section of this deployment guide.

Searching Help

The deployment guide may be searched using the box in the top left corner.

Table of Contents

- Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance Overview
- Visitor Management

Type in keywords related to your search and click the **Search** button to display a list of matches. The most relevant matches will be displayed first.



Words may be excluded from the search by typing a minus sign directly before the word to exclude (for example, exclude). Exact phrase matches may also be searched for by enclosing the phrase in double quotes (for example, “word phrase”).

If You Need More Assistance

If you encounter a problem using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance, your first step should be to consult the appropriate section in this Deployment Guide.

If you cannot find an answer here, the next step is to contact your reseller. The reseller can usually provide you with the answer or obtain a solution to your problem.

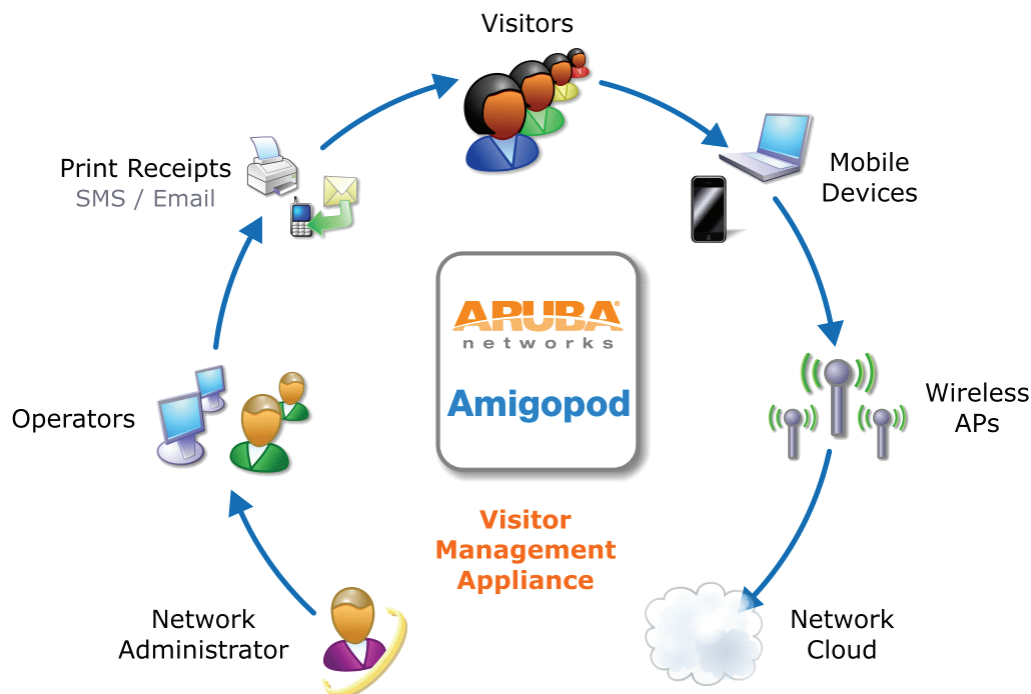
Failing this, it may be possible to find a solution using the **Web Resources** command available under Support Services in the Amigopod user interface.

This section explains the terms, concepts, processes, and equipment involved in managing visitor access to a network. The content here is intended for network architects, IT administrators and security consultants who are planning to deploy visitor access, or who are in the early stages of deploying a visitor access solution. Reading this section will enable you to become familiar with the terminology used in this guide and understand how the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance can be successfully integrated into your network infrastructure.

Visitor Access Scenarios

The following figure shows a high-level representation of a typical visitor access scenario. See [Figure 1](#).

Figure 1 Visitor access using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance



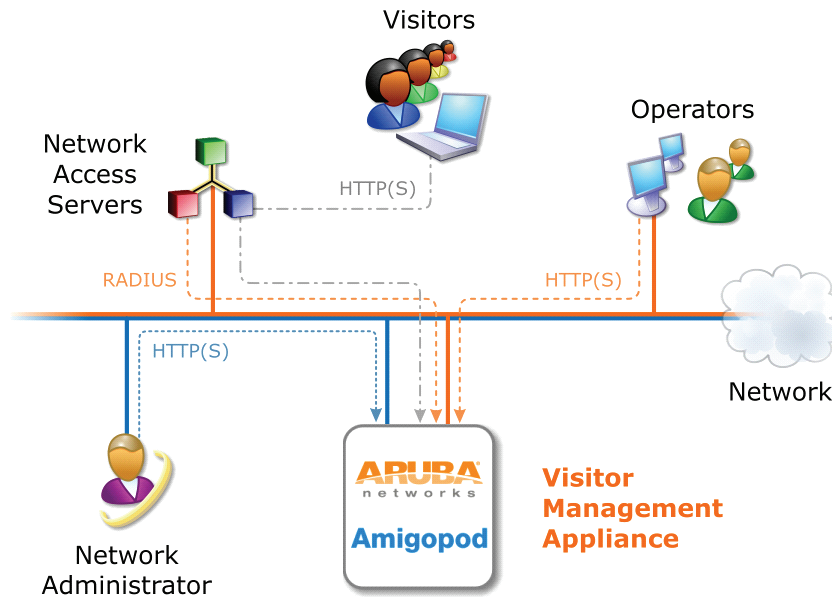
In this scenario, visitors are using their own mobile devices to access a corporate wireless network. Because access to the network is restricted, visitors must first obtain a username and password. A guest account may be provisioned by a corporate operator such as a receptionist, who can then give the visitor a print receipt that shows their username and password for the network.

When visitors use self-registration, as might be the case for a network offering public access, the process is broadly similar but does not require a corporate operator to create the guest account. The username and password for a self-provisioned guest account may be delivered directly to the visitor's Web browser, or sent via SMS or email.

Reference Network Diagram

The following figure shows the network connections and protocols used by the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. See [Figure 2](#).

Figure 2 Reference network diagram for visitor access

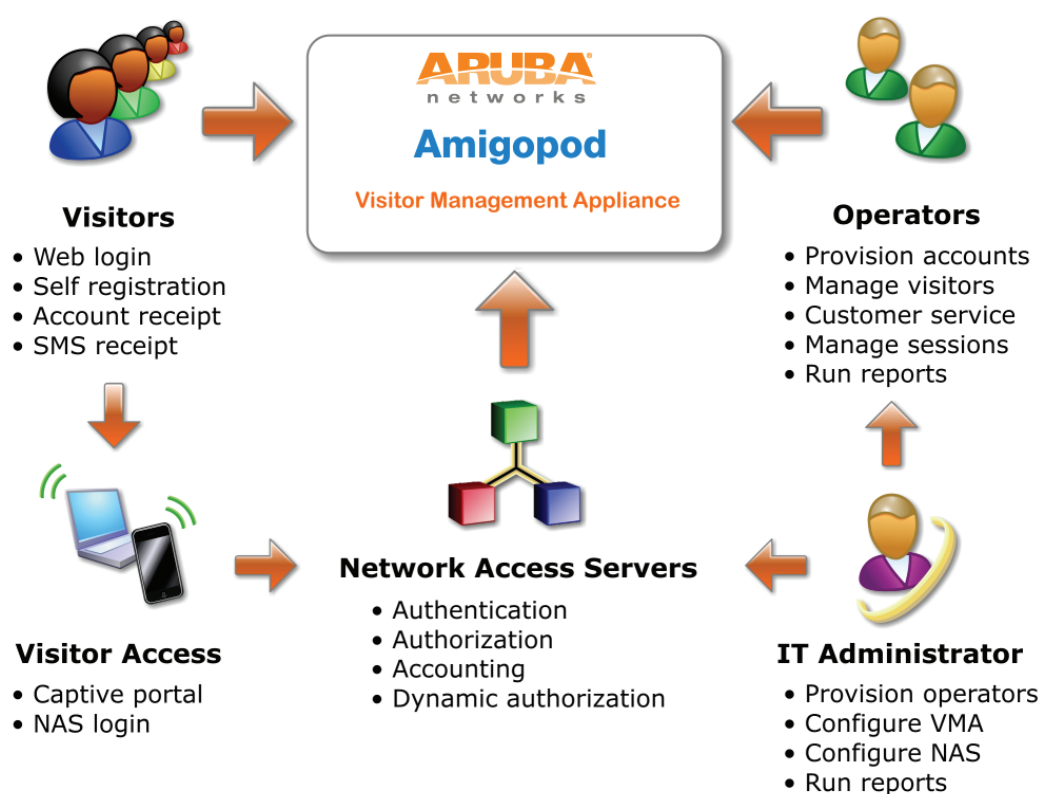


The network administrator, operators and visitors may use different network interfaces to access the visitor management features. The exact topology of the network and the connections made to it will depend on the type of network access offered to visitors and the geographical layout of the access points.

Key Interactions

The following figure shows the key interactions between the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance and the other people and components involved in providing guest access. See [Figure 3](#).

Figure 3 Interactions involved in guest access



The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance is part of your network's core infrastructure and manages guest access to the network.

NAS devices, such as wireless access points and wired switches on the edge of the network, use the RADIUS protocol to ask the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance to authenticate the username and password provided by a guest logging in to the network. If authentication is successful, the guest is then authorized to access the network.

Authorized access uses the concept of roles. Each visitor is assigned a role, which consists of a group of RADIUS attributes. These attributes are used to control every aspect of the guest's network session, effectively defining a security policy that controls what the guest is permitted to do on the network. Vendor-specific attributes may be used to configure the finer details of the NAS security policy.

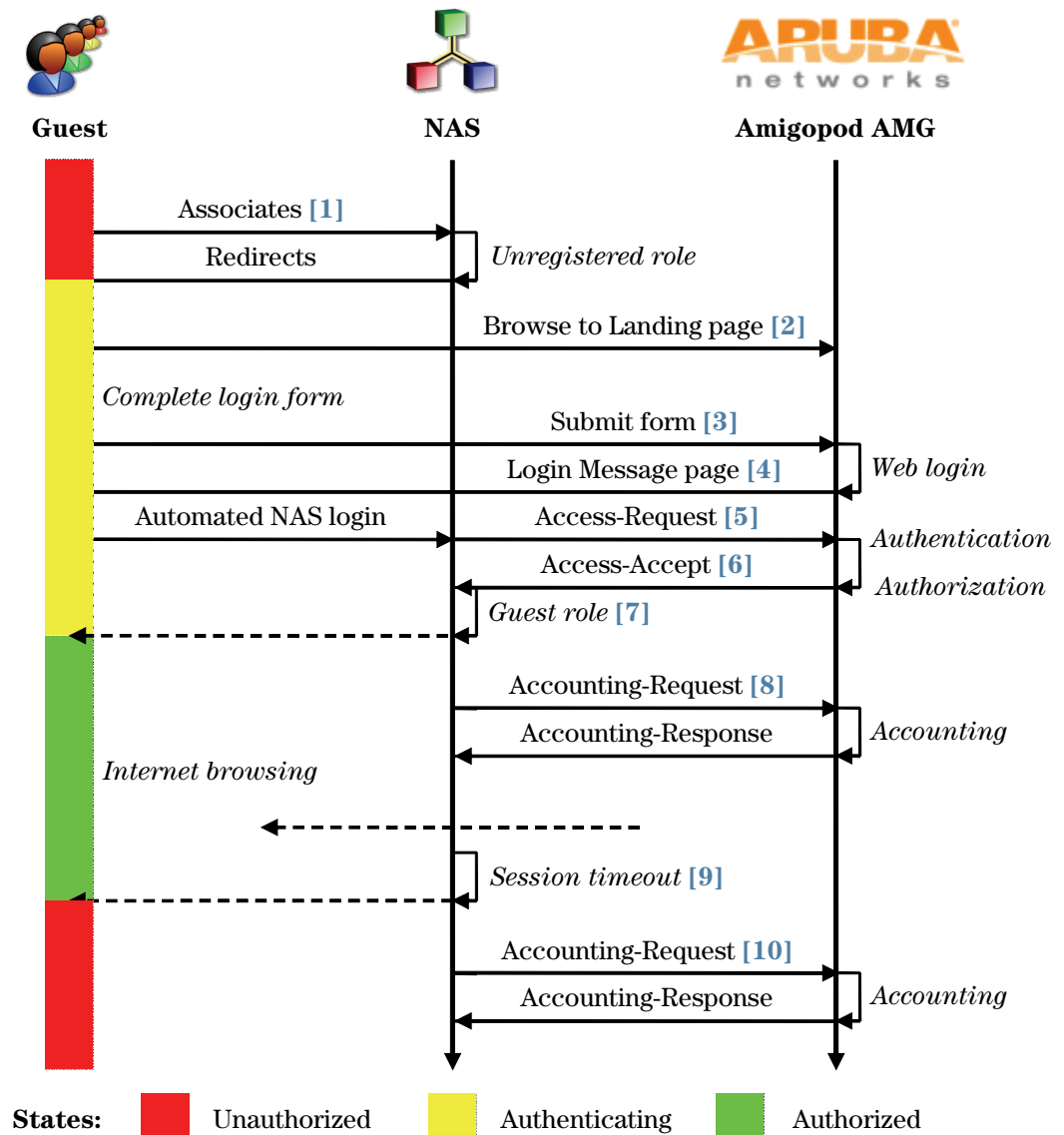
The network usage of authorized guests is monitored by the NAS and reported in summary form to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance using RADIUS accounting, which allows administrators to generate network usage reports.

AAA Framework

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance is built on the industry standard AAA framework, which consists of authentication, authorization and accounting components.

The following figure shows how the different components of this framework are employed in a guest access scenario. See [Figure 4](#).

Figure 4 Sequence diagram for network access using AAA



In the standard AAA framework, network access is provided to a user according to the following process:

- The user connects to the network by associating with a local access point [1].
- A landing page is displayed to the user [2] which allows them to log into the NAS [3], [4] using the login name and password of their guest account.
- The NAS authenticates the user with the RADIUS protocol [5].
- The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance determines whether the user is authorized, and if so returns vendor-specific attributes [6] that are used to configure the NAS based on the user's role [7].
- If the user's access is granted, the NAS permits the guest to access the network, based on the settings provided by the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.
- The NAS reports details about the user's session to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance using RADIUS accounting messages [8].

After the user's session times out [9], the NAS will return the user to an unauthorized state and finalize the details of the user's session with an accounting update [10].

Key Features

Refer to the table below for a list of key features and a cross-reference to the relevant section of this deployment guide.

Table 2 *List of Key features*

Feature	Refer to...
Visitor Access	
RADIUS server providing authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) features	“RADIUS Services”
■ Support for 802.1X authentication	“EAP and 802.1X Authentication”
■ Support for external authentication servers, including Microsoft Active Directory and LDAP	“External Authentication Servers”
Web server providing content delivery for guests	“Content Manager”
Guest self-registration	“Customizing Self Provisioned Access”
Web login portal	“Web Logins”
Visitor Management	
Create and manage visitor accounts, individually or in groups	“Standard Guest Management Features”
Manage active RADIUS sessions using RFC 3576 dynamic authorization support	“Active Sessions Management”
Import and export visitor accounts	“Importing Guest Accounts”
Create guest self-registration forms	“Creating a Self-Registration Page”
Configure a self-service portal for guests	“Self-Service Portal Properties”
Paid access via Hotspot Manager	“Hotspot Manager”
Run reports on all aspects of visitor access	“Running and Managing Reports”
Local printer, SMS or email delivery of account receipts	“Receipt Page Properties”
Role based access control for visitor accounts	“User Roles”
Configure NAS equipment with vendor-specific attributes per visitor role	“Role Attributes”
Visitor Account Features	
Independent activation time, expiration time, and maximum usage time	“Business Logic for Account Creation”
Disable or delete at account expiration	“Account Expiration Types”

Table 2 *List of Key features (Continued)*

Logout at account expiration	“Account Expiration Types”
Define unlimited custom fields	“Customization of Fields”
Username up to 64 characters	“GuestManager Standard Fields”
Customization Features	
Create new fields and forms for visitor management	“Customization of Forms and Views”
Use built-in data validation to implement visitor survey forms	“Form Validation Properties”
Create print templates for visitor account receipts	“Receipt Page Properties”
Create new Web login pages for visitor NAS access	“Web Logins”
Create new reports	“Creating Reports”
Administrative Management Features	
Operators defined and authenticated locally	“Local Operator Authentication”
Operators authenticated via LDAP	“LDAP Operator Authentication”
Restrict operator logins by IP address ranges	“Creating a VLAN Interface”
Role based access control for operators	“Operator Profiles”
Configure network interfaces and run diagnostic checks	“Network Setup”
Integrated backup and restore	“Backup and Restore”
Scheduled backup to FTP or SMB server	“Scheduling Automatic Backups”
Secure Web access with HTTPS	“SSL Certificate”
Plugin based application update service (Web service)	“Plugin Manager”
Perform a security audit of the system	“Security Manager”
Synchronize server time automatically with NTP	“Server Time”
Syslog support	“Exporting the System Log”
SNMP support	“SNMP Configuration”
Advanced RADIUS modules for custom configuration	“Server Configuration”
Customize RADIUS dictionary	“Dictionary”
User Interface Features	
Context-sensitive help with searchable online documentation	Documentation Overview

Visitor Management Terminology

The following tables describes the common terms used in this guide. See [Table 3](#).

Table 3 *Common Terms*

Term	Explanation
Accounting	Accounting is the process of recording summary information about network access by users and devices.
Authentication	Authentication is the verification of a user's credentials, typically a username and password.
Authorization	Authorization controls the type of access that an authenticated user is permitted to have.
Captive Portal	Implemented by a Network Access Server to restrict network access to authorized users only.
Field	A single item of information about a user account.
Form	A collection of fields displayed to an operator.
Network Access Server	A device that provides network access to users, such as a wireless access point, network switch, or dial-in terminal server. When a user connects to the NAS device, a RADIUS access request is generated by the NAS.
Operator Profile	The characteristics assigned to a class of operators, such as the permissions granted to those operators.
Operator/Operator Login	User of Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance to create guest accounts, run reports or perform system administration.
Print Template	Formatted template used to generate guest account receipts.
Role	The type of access being granted to visitors. You are able to define multiple roles. Such roles could include employee, guest, team member, or press.
Sponsor	Operator
User Database	A database listing the guest accounts on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.
View	Table containing data. Used to interactively display data such as visitor accounts to operators.
Visitor/Guest	Someone who is permitted to access the Internet through your Network Access Server.
Visitor Account	Settings for a visitor stored in the user database, including username, password and other fields.
Web Login/NAS Login	The login page displayed to a guest user.

Deployment Process

As part of your preparations for deploying a visitor management solution, you should consider the following areas:

- Management decisions about security policy
- Decisions about the day-to-day operation of visitor management
- Technical decisions related to network provisioning

Security Policy Considerations

To ensure that your network remains secure, decisions have to be made regarding guest access:

- Do you wish to segregate guest access? Do you want a different VLAN, or different physical network infrastructure to be used by your guests?
- What resources are you going to make available to guests (for example, type of network access; permitted times of day; bandwidth allocation)?
- Will guest access be separated into different roles? If so, what roles are needed?
- How will you prioritize traffic on the network to differentiate quality of service for guest accounts and non-guest accounts?
- What will be the password format for guest accounts? Will you be changing this format on a regular basis?
- What requirements will you place on the shared secret, between NAS and the RADIUS server to ensure network security is not compromised?
- What IP address ranges will operators be using to access the server?
- Should HTTPS be required in order to access the visitor management server?

Operational Concerns

When deploying a visitor management solution, you should consider these operational concerns:

- Who is going to be responsible for managing guest accounts? What privileges will the guest account manager have? Will this person only create guest accounts or will this person also be permitted access to reports?
- Do you want guests to be able to self-provision their own network access? What settings should be applied to self-provisioned visitor accounts?
- How will operator logins be provisioned? Should operators be authenticated against an LDAP server?
- Who will manage reporting of guest access? What are the reports of interest? Are any custom reports needed?

Network Provisioning

Deploying the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance requires provisioning the following:

- Physical location – rack space, power and cooling requirements; or deployment using virtualization
- Network connectivity – VLAN selection, IP address and hostname
- Security infrastructure – SSL certificate

Site Preparation Checklist

The following is a checklist of the items that should be considered when setting up the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

Table 4 *Site Preparation Checklist*

✓	Policy Decision
Security Policy	
	Segregated guest accounts?
	Type of network access?
	Time of day access?
	Bandwidth allocation to guests?
	Prioritization of traffic?
	Different guest roles?
	IP address ranges for operators?
	Enforce access via HTTPS?
Operational Concerns	
	Who will manage guest accounts?
	Guest account self provisioning?
	What privileges will the guest managers have?
	Who will be responsible for printing reports?
Network Management Policy	
	Password format for guest accounts?
	Shared secret format?
	Operator provisioning?
Network Provisioning	
	Physical location?
	Network connectivity?
	Security infrastructure?

This section covers the initial deployment and configuration of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

If you have a hardware appliance, See [“Hardware Appliance Setup”](#) in this chapter. If you are using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance in a virtual machine, See [“Virtual Appliance Setup”](#) in this chapter.

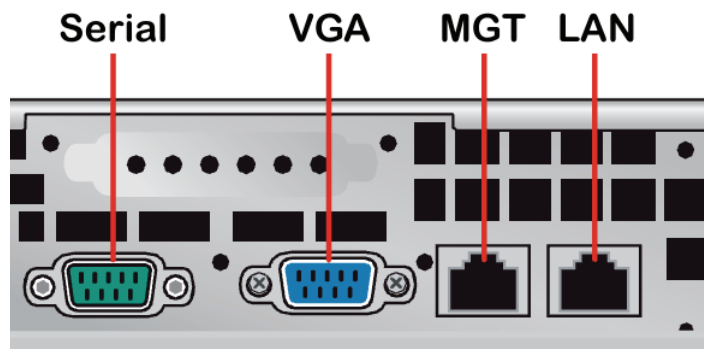
Hardware Appliance Setup

Refer to the Hardware Setup Guide sheet included in the box with the appliance for detailed installation information for the chassis and rack assembly.

Default Network Configuration

The AMG-HW-100 and AMG-HW-2500 appliances have two gigabit Ethernet network ports on the rear of the chassis. See [Figure 5](#).

Figure 5 Rear port configuration for AMG-HW-100/-2500 appliances



The factory default network configuration for these ports is:

Table 5 Default Port configurations

Item	MGT Port	LAN Port
Configuration Method	Static	DHCP
IP Address	192.168.88.88	–
Netmask	255.255.255.0	–
Gateway	192.168.88.1	–
DNS	–	–
Adapter Name	eth0	eth1

Table 5 *Default Port configurations (Continued)*

Hostname	Amigopod.localdomain
----------	----------------------

Virtual Appliance Setup

VMware Workstation or VMware Player

The virtual appliance is packaged as a zip file containing a directory with the files for the virtual machine.

To install the virtual appliance, extract the contents of the zip file to a new directory and double-click the .vmx file to start the appliance. The configuration for the VMware Player virtual machine includes two virtual Ethernet adapters. The initial network configuration of these adapters is:

Table 6 *Ethernet adapter configuration*

Item	Network Adapter	Network Adapter 2
Adapter Type	NAT	Bridged
Configuration Method	DHCP	DHCP
IP Address	–	–
Netmask	–	–
Gateway	–	–
DNS	–	–
Adapter Name	eth0	eth1
Hostname	Amigopod.localdomain	

VMware ESXi

The virtual appliance is packaged as a zip file containing a directory with the files for the virtual machine. An OVF file specifies the details of the virtual machine.

To install the virtual appliance, extract the contents of the zip file to a new directory. Then start VMware vSphere Client and use the **File > Deploy OVF Template** command to create a new virtual machine from the files in the virtual appliance directory.



In version 3.5 of VMware ESXi, the management console is called VMware Infrastructure Client. In this software, use the **File > Virtual Appliance > Import** command to create a new virtual machine from the files in the virtual appliance directory.

The configuration for the virtual machine includes one virtual Ethernet adapter. The initial network configuration of this adapter is:

Table 7 *Virtual ethernet adapter configuration*

Item	Network Adapter
Configuration Method	DHCP

Table 7 *Virtual ethernet adapter configuration (Continued)*

IP Address	–
Netmask	–
Gateway	–
DNS	–
Adapter Name	eth0
Hostname	Amigopod.localdomain

Accessing the Console User Interface

The appliance's console user interface can be used to perform basic administrative functions such as changing the network configuration or viewing the appliance's MAC address details. It is also possible to recover a forgotten administrator password, or reset the appliance to its factory default settings.

For hardware appliances you may access the console using a null modem cable connected to the serial port on the rear of the chassis. Use serial port settings of 9600 baud, 8 data bits, no parity, and 1 stop bit. Flow control is not required.

Both hardware and virtual appliances support command-line access directly at the console and remotely via SSH. The following table summarizes the methods that you may use to access the console user interface.

Table 8 *Console access methods*

Access Method	Hardware Appliance	Virtual Appliance
Serial	Yes 9600, 8-N-1	No
VGA Console	Yes Use VGA display and a PS/2 or USB keyboard	Yes Use host's virtual console
SSH	Yes	Yes

Console Login

To access the console user interface, you must log in with the username **admin** and the appliance's root password. This is **amigopod** by default, but is changed during the initial setup wizard.



When the administrator password is set during the setup wizard, the root password for the system will also be set to this password. However, once you have set the initial root password, future changes to the administrator password will not change the appliance's root password. The username to access the console user interface is always admin and cannot be changed.

Console User Interface Functions

When logging in to the console user interface, the following menu options are presented. Make a selection by typing its corresponding number.

1. **Change network settings** – Allows for interactive configuration of the appliance's network settings.
2. **Restart services** – Restarts major system services.

3. **Reinitialize database** – Destroys the entire configuration of the appliance and resets to the factory default state. All guest accounts, operator logins, RADIUS accounting records, application configuration, and customization will be lost.
4. **Change shell password** – Sets the new shell password used to access the console user interface.
5. **Reset admin Web password to default** – Recovers a forgotten Web administration password by restoring the default setting of Amigopod.
6. **Reboot appliance** – Shuts down and restarts the appliance.
7. **Reset network settings to default** – Restores the original factory default network configuration for the appliance.
8. **Display physical address information** – Displays the MAC addresses of the appliance's network adapters.
9. **Logout** – Exits the console user interface.
10. **Shutdown appliance** – Shuts down and powers off the appliance.

Accessing the Graphical User Interface

After starting the Amigopod appliance, the initial startup screen will be displayed in the console.

```
=====
Aruba Amigopod Appliance
Copyright (C) 2011 Aruba Networks, Inc.
=====

  /\      NOTICE: THIS IS LICENSED
 /!!\    COMPUTER SOFTWARE AND IS
/_!!\_   PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT.

=====

Amigopod web interface is available at:
http://127.0.0.1

=====

Aruba Amigopod OS release  3.5
Kernel 2.6.18-194.26.1.el5 on an x86_64

amigopod login: _
```

Type the displayed URL into your Web browser to open the Amigopod appliance's graphical user interface (GUI).



You may use either http: or https: to access the GUI. However, if you use https: to access the setup wizard, you may receive a warning message from your browser about the default self-signed SSL certificate that is installed on the appliance. See [“SSL Certificate”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter for information about installing a new SSL certificate.

Setup Wizard

When you first log in to the appliance using the graphical user interface, you will be guided through an initial configuration process, which is explained in more detail below.

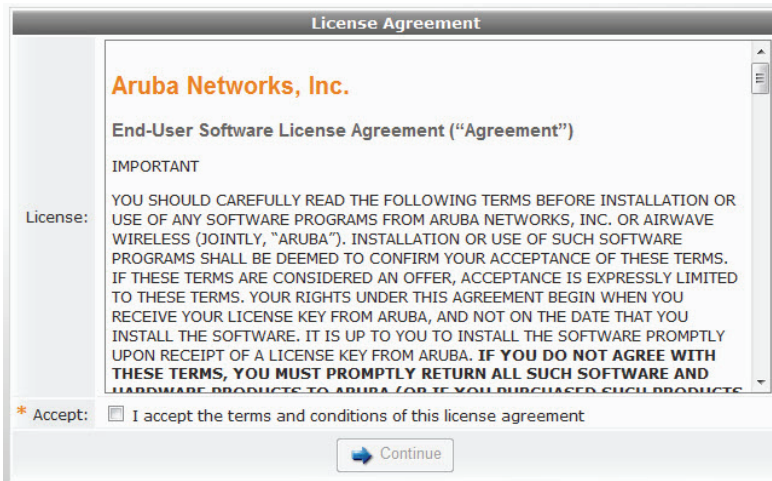
Login Screen

The image shows the Aruba Amigopod login screen. At the top, there is a header bar with the Aruba Networks logo on the left and the word "Amigopod" on the right. Below the header, the word "Login" is displayed in a large, bold font. Underneath "Login", there is a section titled "Operator Login". This section contains two input fields: "Username:" and "Password:", each preceded by an asterisk. Below these fields is a "Log In" button.

To start the setup wizard, log in to the administrative user interface using the default username and password.

Enter the username **admin** and the password **amigopod** when logging in for the first time.

Amigopod License Agreement

The image shows the Aruba Networks License Agreement window. The title bar says "License Agreement". Inside the window, the text "Aruba Networks, Inc." is displayed in orange. Below it, the text "End-User Software License Agreement ('Agreement')" is shown. A section titled "IMPORTANT" follows, containing a detailed paragraph of terms. At the bottom of the window, there is a section labeled "License:" with an asterisk, followed by a checkbox and the text "I accept the terms and conditions of this license agreement". A "Continue" button with a blue arrow is located at the bottom right of the window.

Review and accept the software license agreement.

If you have any questions about the license agreement, contact Aruba support using the Web site <http://support.arubanetworks.com>.

Set Administrator Password

Please create a new password for the administrator account. [? Help](#)

This account will have full access to all amigopod features after you set the username and password here.

 The root password for the system will also be set to this password. However, any future changes to the administrator account password will not cause the root password to change.

 The administrator's password must be at least 8 characters in length, and must contain at least one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one digit and one symbol.

Administrator Account	
* Operator Username:	<input type="text" value="admin"/> Change the username of the default operator login.
* Operator Password:	<input type="password" value="••••••••"/> Change the password for this operator login.
* Confirm Password:	<input type="password"/> Confirm the new password for this operator login.
Email:	<input type="text"/> The email address of this operator.



Create a new password for the administrator account. This account has full access to all settings and areas in the graphical user interface. You can optionally change the username of the administrative account for enhanced security.

When the administrator password is set for the first time, the root password for the system will also be set to this password. The root password is required to log in to the console user interface. **See “[Console Login](#)”** in this chapter for a description of how to do this. However, once you have set the initial root password, future changes to the administrator password will **not** change the appliance's root password.

See “[Resetting the Root Password](#)” in the Administrator's Tasks chapter for details on resetting the appliance's root password.



Changing the username of the administrative account does not change the username for logging in to the console user interface. You must use a secure administrator password. By default, the password must be at least eight characters in length and must contain at least one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one digit and one symbol.

You can provide an email address for the administrator. While this step is optional, it is recommended that you do provide an email address, as the appliance sends notification emails to this address for various system events.

Set System Hostname

To change the system hostname, choose **Administrator > Network Setup > System Hostname**.

System Hostname

* Hostname:

Enter the hostname of the system, as a fully-qualified domain name.

* required field

▶▶ Skip to Network

The system hostname is a fully-qualified domain name. By default, this is set to **amigopod.localdomain**, but you may specify another valid domain name.

A valid hostname is a domain name that contains two or more components separated by a period (.).
 Hostname parameters are:

- Each component of the hostname must not exceed 63 characters
- The total length of the hostname must not exceed 255 characters
- Only letters, numbers, and the hyphen (-) and period (.) characters are allowed
- Hostnames may start with numbers, and may contain only numbers

Configure Network Interfaces

The Network Interfaces List lets you view details and configure settings for the system's network interfaces. To open this page, choose **Administrator > Network Setup > Network Interfaces**.

Use the list below to view, define and edit the system's network interfaces.

▲ Name	Type	Status	IP Address	Netmask
LAN	Ethernet	Up, Dynamic	192.168.9.130	255.255.255.0
MGT	Ethernet	Up, Dynamic	10.100.9.69	255.255.255.0
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; font-size: 0.9em;"> Show Details Edit Routes Bring Down Cycle </div>				
loopback	Local Loopback	Up	127.0.0.1	255.0.0.0
sit0	IPv6-in-IPv4	Down		
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> 4 items Reload <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px; font-size: 0.8em;">20 rows per page ▼</div> </div>				

The results of an automated network diagnostic test are displayed at the top of the page. For more details about the network diagnostics, see [Automatic Network Diagnostics](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter.

- To change the configuration of a network interface, click the network interface's row in the list, then click the **Edit** command. The row expands to provide configuration options. LAN and MGT network interfaces may be configured for automatic settings using DHCP or BOOTP, or can be manually configured for an IP address. When you choose one of these settings from the Configuration drop-down list, additional options are displayed.

Use the list below to view, define and edit the system's network interfaces.

Name	Type	Status	IP Address	Netmask
LAN	Ethernet	Up, Dynamic	192.168.9.130	255.255.255.0

[Show Details](#) [Edit](#) [Routes](#) [Bring Down](#) [Cycle](#)

Network Interface Settings

Activate: ☒ Automatically activate this interface

* Configuration: Automatic settings using DHCP [Select how this network interface will be configured.](#)

DNS Settings: ☒ Automatically obtain DNS server addresses

MTU: bytes
Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU) value for this network interface. Leave blank to use the system default.

Ethernet Settings: Automatic [Select Ethernet port settings and auto-negotiation.](#)

[Save Changes](#) [Cancel](#)

* required field

Name	Type	Status	IP Address	Netmask
MGT	Ethernet	Up, Dynamic	10.100.9.69	255.255.255.0
loopback	Local Loopback	Up	127.0.0.1	255.0.0.0
sit0	IPv6-in-IPv4	Down		

4 items [Reload](#) 20 rows per page

Your Amigopod visitor management solution must be configured appropriately for your organization's relevant network infrastructure. For details on how to configure your network interface, see [Changing Network Interface Settings](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter.

Configure HTTP Proxy

System HTTP Proxy

Proxy URL:

URL specifying the proxy to use for HTTP traffic. This is generally in the form `http://username:password@proxy:port`. Add ?ntlm for NTLM authentication.

[Save and Continue](#)

If your network configuration requires the use of a HTTP proxy to access the Internet, enter the details for the proxy here and click [Save Changes](#).



If you do not need to configure a HTTP proxy, click [Skip to Mail Settings](#) to continue with setup.

If your HTTP proxy requires authentication, supply the username and password in the URL as indicated. For details on HTTP proxy settings, See [Automatic Network Diagnostics](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter.

Configure SMTP Mail Settings

SMTP Configuration

Mail Transfer Settings
Configure the options used to send a mail message.

* Local MTA:

☒ Use Sendmail
If checked, Sendmail will be used as the mail transfer agent (MTA).

* From Address:

noreply@amigopod.localdomain
Enter the email address from which mail will be sent.

Additional Headers:

(Advanced) Provide any additional SMTP headers, one per line.
Use the format 'Header: Value'.

Test Mail Settings
Send a test mail message.


To:


To send a test message, enter the recipient's address.

Message:


(Use Default: No skin - HTML only)


Select a test message to send.

 Send Test Message

 Save and Continue

For details on SMTP configuration, See “[SMTP Configuration](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter.

Click the  **Send Test Message** button to send an email to a test email address in the selected format. This can be used to verify the SMTP configuration, as well as check the delivery of HTML formatted emails.

Click the  **Save and Close** button to save the updated SMTP configuration.

Configure SNMP

SNMP Setup	
* SNMP Mode:	Off <small>Select the SNMP mode.</small>
* System Contact:	Amigopod Admin <small>Enter contact information for the system administrator. This information will be available in the "system" MIB.</small>
* System Location:	Amigopod Location <small>Enter a description of the system's location. This information will be available in the "system" MIB.</small>
Allowed Access:	<div></div> <small>Enter a list of the IP addresses and networks from which SNMP access is permitted, one per line.</small>
Traps <small>Options related to sending SNMP trap notification messages.</small>	
Trap Server:	<div></div> <small>Enter the hostname or IP address of a server capable of receiving SNMP v2 traps.</small>
Trap Community String:	<div></div> <small>Enter the community string for traps.</small>
<div>Save and Continue</div>	

The SNMP Setup form is used to configure the system's SNMP server and enable SNMP access. (For details on SNMP configuration, See [“SNMP Configuration”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the SNMP configuration.

Configure Server Time and Time Zone

Server Time	
* Time Zone:	(GMT+10:00) Australia/Brisbane: Queensland - most locations <small>Select the time zone in which the server is located.</small>
Time Servers:	<div>0.centos.pool.ntp.org 1.centos.pool.ntp.org 2.centos.pool.ntp.org</div> <small>Enter a list of NTP servers to use for synchronisation, one per line.</small>
NTP Service:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable NTP service <small>Enables automatic time synchronization with the Network Time Protocol (NTP) service.</small>
Synchronize:	<input type="checkbox"/> Set server's clock using NTP server <small>Select this option to perform a one-off synchronization of the server's clock.</small>
Server Time:	<div></div> ... <small>To manually set the server's clock, enter a time in the form YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss, or leave this field blank to not adjust the clock.</small>
<div>Save and Continue</div>	

Select the server's time zone and set other options related to timekeeping for the server.

To ensure that authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA) is performed correctly, it is vital that the server maintains the correct time of day at all times. It is strongly recommended that you configure one or more NTP servers to automatically synchronize the server's time.



NTP can interfere with timekeeping in virtual machines. The default virtual machine configuration will automatically synchronize its time with the host server, and so you should not configure NTP within the virtual machine. However, make sure that the host is configured to keep its clock in sync with a suitable time source.

If available, it is recommended that you use an NTP server that is available on your local network. This will improve timekeeping and will eliminate the need for additional Internet traffic for the time server.


To use a public NTP server, enter the following hostnames:

0.pool.ntp.org

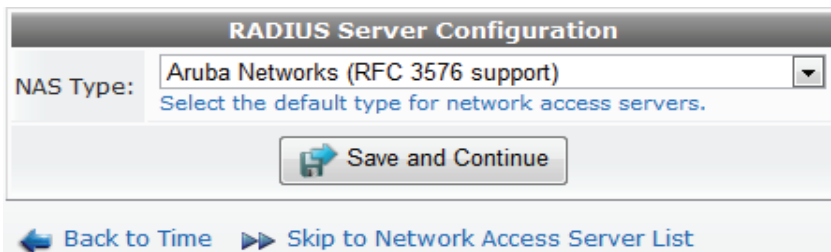
1.pool.ntp.org

2.pool.ntp.org



You can also use NTP pool servers located in your region. For more information, refer to the NTP Pool Project Web site: <http://www.pool.ntp.org>.

Click the  **Save and Continue** button to apply the server's time configuration and continue with setup.

Configure Default RADIUS NAS Vendor Type



If your deployment uses only one type of NAS, click the **NAS Type** drop-down list and select the default NAS vendor type to use when defining RADIUS clients or creating RADIUS Web Login pages that have vendor-specific settings.

Click the  **Save and Continue** button to apply the RADIUS server configuration, or click  **Skip to Network Access Server List** to continue with setup.

RADIUS Network Access Servers

The screenshot shows a web interface for creating a new Network Access Server (NAS). At the top, there is a 'Quick Help' link and a 'Create' button. The main form is titled 'Create Network Access Server' and contains several fields:

- Name:** A text input field with a description: 'A descriptive name for the network access server (NAS). This name is used to identify each NAS.'
- IP Address:** A text input field with a description: 'The IP address or hostname of the network access server.'
- NAS Type:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'Aruba Networks (RFC 3576 support)' with a description: 'Select the type of NAS.'
- Shared Secret:** A text input field with a description: 'The shared secret used by this network access server.'
- Confirm Shared Secret:** A text input field with a description: 'Confirm the shared secret for this network access server.'
- Description:** A large text area with a description: 'Enter notes or descriptive text here.'
- Web Login:** A checkbox labeled 'Create a RADIUS Web Login page for this network access server'.

At the bottom of the form, there are three buttons: 'Create NAS Device', 'Reset Form', and 'Cancel'.

Network access servers are RADIUS clients, and must be predefined in order to access the RADIUS server. For security, each NAS device must also have a shared secret which is known only to the device and the RADIUS server.

Use the Network Access Servers list view to define the NAS devices for this server and to make changes to existing NAS devices.

Click the **Create** tab to define a new NAS entry for the RADIUS server.

For more details about creating NAS entries, See [“Creating a Network Access Server Entry”](#) in the RADIUS Services chapter.

Configure Amigopod Subscription ID

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring the Amigopod Subscription ID. The form is titled 'amigopod Subscription' and contains a single text input field labeled 'Subscription ID:'. Below the field, there is a description: 'You can provide more than one subscription identifier by placing each subscription ID on a different line.' At the bottom of the form, there is a 'Save and Continue' button.

[Back to Network Access Server List](#) [Complete initialization](#)

Both hardware and software appliances are shipped with a restricted default license. This license permits each guest account to have only a limited lifetime, as well as restricting other capabilities of the software.

If you are evaluating the Amigopod appliance and do not have a subscription ID, click [Complete initialization](#) to continue with setup.

If you have purchased the Amigopod appliance, you will have one or more subscription IDs that enable particular modules of functionality that you have purchased. These subscription IDs will have been provided to you by your reseller at the time of purchase.

A subscription ID consists of number and letter groups separated with hyphens. A typical subscription ID might look like this:

xn2ncr-gjyjd4-mxlx2s-fv9gcy-rwy7n6

You can also attach a description to each subscription ID. To do this, write the description and follow it with the corresponding subscription ID in parentheses. For example:

Amigopod Subscription (xn2ncr-gjyjd4-mxlx2s-fv9gcy-rwy7n6)

If your subscription includes SMS capabilities, an SMS gateway is automatically created based on your subscription ID.

Incorrectly-formatted subscription IDs cannot be entered in this form. A form validation error is displayed if an incorrect value is entered.


Click the  **Save and Continue** button once you have entered your subscription IDs.

Install Subscription Updates

Your subscription has a total of 12 plugins.

2 new plugins are available for installation.

☒ **Make default selections** ☐ **Clear selection**

Name		Ver
	amigopod Administrator Provides system administration functions for the amigopod OS.	1.9.5
 About		
	amigopod VMA-100 License The software license authorizes access to the features of this web application.	1.1.1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Install amigopod VMA-100 License ( 1.1.1)		
	SMS Services Plugin Send visitor account receipts to mobile phones as SMS messages.	1.9.2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Install SMS Services Plugin ( 1.9.2)		
 Back		 Finish

If you have entered any subscription IDs, the software will check for available software updates and new plugins that are part of your subscription.


This may include components such as a license plugin, custom skin, new software modules as well as any available updates to the software that was shipped on your Amigopod.


The default selections include all new plugins and any updated plugins that are available. To install the default selections, simply click the **Finish** button to download and install the selected plugins.


Setup Complete




After downloading and installing the available plugin updates, the setup process is complete.

Context-sensitive help is available throughout the application. For more detailed information about the area of the application you are using, click the  **Help** link displayed at the top right of the page. This will open a new browser window showing the relevant section of this deployment guide.

 **Operator logins** are the login accounts used for administration and management of the Amigopod. The default administrative operator account is configured during the setup process. See “[About Operator Logins](#)” in the Operator Logins chapter for more details on configuring operator logins.

 **Visitor accounts** are the user accounts for which the Amigopod performs authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA) functions. Visitor accounts are managed by operators using the Guest Manager component of the software. See “[Guest Management](#)” chapter for more details on setting up visitor account provisioning.

 **RADIUS Services** is for system administrator use, and provides fine-grained control over the AAA functions of the Amigopod. See “[RADIUS Services](#)” chapter for more details on setting up the RADIUS server to perform authentication, authorization and accounting according to your network security policies.



RADIUS is a network access-control protocol that verifies and authenticates users. The framework around which RADIUS is built is known as the AAA process, consisting of authentication, authorization, and accounting.

RADIUS authenticates a guest user's session by checking that the guest's password matches the guest's login details stored in the RADIUS database. Guest access is authorized by assigning a user role to the guest account. The properties of the role determine the authorization for each guest session. Dynamic authorization extensions to RADIUS allow for sessions to be disconnected, or for changes in authorization to be made while a guest is connected. Lastly, the RADIUS database records summarized accounting information about each guest session. This allows you to generate reports about guest network usage.

Accessing RADIUS Services

Use the RADIUS Services command link on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance home page to access RADIUS Services.

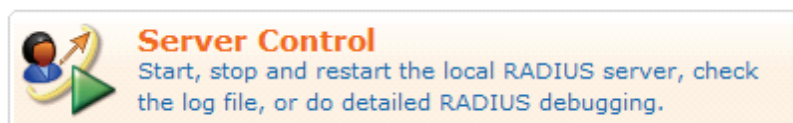


Alternatively, use the RADIUS Services navigation menu to jump directly to any of the features within RADIUS Services.



Server Control

You are able to use the Server Control page to restart, stop and debug the RADIUS server.



The Restart RADIUS Server and Stop RADIUS Server commands take effect the moment either one is clicked. You are not presented with any confirmation windows.

RADIUS Log Snapshot

The latest entries in the RADIUS server log are displayed on the Server Control page in reverse chronological order.

Log entries that are displayed include both successful and unsuccessful authentication attempts, the details about any authentication or authorization failures, and server configuration messages when the RADIUS server is started.



Debug RADIUS Server

The AAA Debug option on the RADIUS Server Configuration page enables additional debugging messages logged during the handling of RADIUS packets. The default setting is “No debugging.” This option might be of use when setting up or troubleshooting advanced authorization methods, and you can refer to the application log to view the AAA debug messages. However, for performance reasons, this option should be disabled in a production environment. If you do enable it for troubleshooting, remember to disable it when you are through.

In debugging mode, the detailed log output from the local RADIUS server is redirected to your browser. This can greatly assist in troubleshooting the exact cause of an authentication, authorization or accounting (AAA) problem.

Normally, the RADIUS server runs in the background, processing AAA requests from incoming clients and generating responses. However, if you are troubleshooting an authentication problem, sometimes it is convenient to see exactly what is being sent and received by the RADIUS server. This can help track down configuration problems in NAS clients (such as an incorrect shared secret, or an invalid request attribute), user roles (wrong reply attributes or values), and other problems.

To view this output, the RADIUS server is stopped and restarted in a diagnostic mode. The output generated on each request is redirected to your Web browser.



NOTE

You can resize the log output area by clicking and dragging the border.

When you stop the debugger, the normal background operation of the RADIUS server is resumed. No further output will be received once the debugger has been stopped.

During the starting and stopping of the server, there may be brief periods of time during which the RADIUS server is unreachable. RADIUS clients should cope with this outage by retrying their RADIUS requests. However, on a busy network some traffic may still be lost.



To enter debugging mode, click the **Debug RADIUS Server** command link on the **RADIUS > Server Control** page.



Debug RADIUS Server

Run the local RADIUS server and see detailed log output.

Viewing Failed Authentications



A list of recent authentication failures can be obtained by clicking the **View Failed Authentications** command link on the **RADIUS > Server Control** page.



View Failed Authentications

View a list of recent failed authentications.

Username	Status	Activity	Last Attempt	Attempts	Reply
55140483	Deleted	Logged Out	2010-09-13 10:47:59	2	Access-Accept
99080704	Deleted	Logged Out	2010-09-16 10:47:17	2	Access-Accept
20711536	Deleted	Logged Out	2010-09-16 11:08:05	2	Access-Accept
89371472	Does not exist	N/A	2010-09-17 17:39:14	1	Access-Accept
demouser	Does not exist	N/A	2010-09-23 16:16:18	5	Access-Accept
demo@example.com	Does not exist	N/A	2010-09-24 17:21:00	491	Access-Accept
dem2o@example.com	Does not exist	N/A	2010-09-24 17:21:03	1	Access-Reject

7 failed authentications  Reload  Failed Attempts Only 20 rows per page

Each row in the table groups together authentication attempts based on the username (that is, the User-Name attribute provided to the RADIUS server in the Access-Request).

The Status column displays one of the following messages for each authentication record, explaining the current state of the user account in the system:

- **Does not exist** – the user account could not be found
- **Deleted** – the user account no longer exists
- **Disabled** – the user account is disabled

Additionally, if all authentication attempts are displayed, the following status messages may be displayed:

- **Expires: date** – the user account is enabled and has the specified expiration time
- **Enabled** – the user account is enabled

The Activity column displays one of the following messages for each authentication record, indicating the recent session activity for the corresponding account:

- **Never** – the user has never logged in and no sessions have been recorded
- **Logged Out** – the user has previously logged in, but there is no current active session for this user; **hover** over the text to view the start and stop times for the user's most recent session
- **Logged In** – the user is currently logged in; **hover** over the text to view the start time for the user's most recent active session
- **Stale** – the user has an active accounting session, but no updates have been received recently; the session may be "stale". **Hover** over the text to view the start time and duration for this session.

The Last Attempt and Attempts columns display the time at which the most recent authentication was recorded for the user, and the total number of authentication attempts.

The Reply column displays the RADIUS server's response, and may be either **Access-Accept** to indicate a successful authentication, or **Access-Reject** to indicate the authentication attempt failed.



Server Configuration

Advanced configuration options for the RADIUS server may be modified using the Server Configuration screen.



Server Configuration

Set the RADIUS server's port number and other server configuration options.

RADIUS Server Configuration	
* Port Number:	<input type="text" value="1812"/> Base port number to use for RADIUS authentication. Accounting will use the next consecutive port number, and proxying will use the next port number again.
Options:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include active sessions when calculating total account usage If checked, a user's active sessions will be included when calculating the cumulative accounting session times for a user account.
NAS Type:	<div>Aruba Networks (RFC 3576 support) ▼</div> Select the default type for network access servers.
Dynamic Authorization:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Send a disconnect/re-authorization message to the NAS Global to automatically send disconnects when enabled/role values change. Requires a NAS Type supporting RFC-3576.
Remote Access:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable XMLRPC access to RADIUS accounting records If checked, allows XMLRPC clients to access this server's accounting records. Enable this option to merge accounting records across multiple RADIUS servers.
* AAA Debug:	<div>No debugging ▼</div> Select an option for debugging RADIUS authorization.
Interim Accounting:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable logging of RADIUS interim accounting updates If checked then RADIUS interim accounting updates will be logged to the syslog. If not checked only authentication and accounting start/stop events will be logged.
Advanced Configuration	
Server Options:	<div> <pre># Uncomment these lines to enable these options: #security.reject_delay = 0 thread.start_servers = 40 thread.max_servers = 40 thread.max_spare_servers = 40 sql.num_sql_socks = 40 max_requests = 1024</pre> </div> Additional RADIUS server options. Enter name = value pairs on separate lines. Comments may be entered on lines starting with a "#".
<div> <div>Save Changes</div> <div>Save and Restart</div> </div>	

The **NAS Type** list may be used to select a default type for network access servers. Use this option if you have a deployment that uses only one type of NAS.

The **AAA Debug** option on the RADIUS Server Configuration page enables additional debugging messages logged during the handling of RADIUS packets. The default setting is “No debugging.” This option might be of use when setting up or troubleshooting advanced authorization methods, and you can refer to the application log to view the AAA debug messages. However, for performance reasons, this option should be disabled in a production environment. If you do enable it for troubleshooting, remember to disable it when you are through.

Logging interim accounting updates is optional, and is disabled by default. You can use the check box in the **Interim Accounting** row to enable or disable logging of RADIUS interim accounting updates.

The **Server Options** field is a text field that accepts multiple **name = value** pairs. You can also add comments by entering lines starting with a # character. For available parameters that can be configured with the Server Options field, see “[RADIUS Server Options](#)” in the Reference chapter.

Example: Removing a User-Name Suffix

Some NAS equipment always appends a realm in the form '@domain.com' to a RADIUS User-Name attribute in the Access-Request message sent to the RADIUS server.

It is possible to configure the RADIUS server to strip off this additional text, using the `attr_rewrite` module.

Use the following Server Configuration entries to perform this modification:

```
module.attr_rewrite.consentry.attribute = User-Name
module.attr_rewrite.consentry.searchin = packet
module.attr_rewrite.consentry.searchfor = "@consentry.com$"
module.attr_rewrite.consentry.replacewith = ""
authorize.after_preprocess.0.name = consentry
```

Here, an instance of the **attr_rewrite** module is created, named "consentry". Any trailing text that matches the pattern "@consentry.com" in the User-Name attribute will be removed before the RADIUS server attempts authentication.

Removing a variable-length suffix

It turns out that the Consentry NAS limits username fields to 32 characters. Many email addresses are longer than this, especially with an additional @realm appended, so the suffix string may be truncated at an arbitrary point.

The following Server configuration option can be used in this situation:

```
module.attr_rewrite.consentry.searchfor =
"@consentry\\.com$|@consentry\\.co$|@consentry\\.c$|@consentry\\..$|@consentry$|@cons
entry$|@consent$|@consen$|@conse$|@cons$|@con$|@co$|@c$|@$"
```

Example: Correcting the NAS-IP-Address Attribute

Some NAS equipment (notably Chillispot) will send a NAS-IP-Address of 0.0.0.0 in accounting records, which renders the active sessions list view useless as well as any attempt to perform RFC 3576 management such as a session disconnect.

This can be fixed by using the Client-IP-Address internal attribute and rewriting the accounting packet so that the actual IP address the packet is received from is recorded:

```
# Fix incoming NAS-IP-Address of 0.0.0.0
module.attr_rewrite.fix_nas_ip.attribute = NAS-IP-Address
module.attr_rewrite.fix_nas_ip.searchin = packet
module.attr_rewrite.fix_nas_ip.searchfor = "^0.0.0.0$"
module.attr_rewrite.fix_nas_ip.replacewith = "%{Client-IP-Address}"
preacct.after_preprocess.0.name = "fix_nas_ip"
```

Example: Adding a Reply-Message to an Access-Reject Packet

The **postauth.reject.append** configuration item can be used to define attribute rewriting specific to the Access-Reject packet:

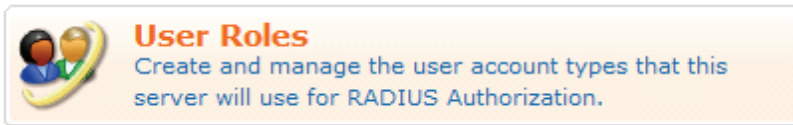
```
# adding Reply-Message to an Access-Reject
module.attr_rewrite.reject_message.attribute = Reply-Message
module.attr_rewrite.reject_message.searchin = reply
module.attr_rewrite.reject_message.new_attribute = yes
module.attr_rewrite.reject_message.replacewith = "Authorization failed"
postauth.reject.append.0.name = reject_message
```



User Roles

Each user in the RADIUS database is assigned a role. A user role is a group of RADIUS attributes and rules that define when those attributes should be applied.

User roles can be used to apply different security policies to different classes of guest user accounts. For example, guest users, employees and contractors might all have differing network security policies. The RADIUS attributes defined by a user role can then specify what each class of user is authorized to do.



The User Roles list view defines the user roles for the RADIUS server and allows you to make changes to existing user roles.

Each role is identified by a unique number. The ID is shown in the list view. When creating visitor accounts, the **role_id** field should contain the ID of one of the user roles defined in the RADIUS server.

The RADIUS attributes for each role are shown in the list view. The icon displayed with each attribute indicates the type of condition attached to it:

- The attribute is enabled and will always be included in a RADIUS Access-Accept message.
- The attribute is disabled and will never be included in a RADIUS Access-Accept message.
- The attribute has a condition expression that will determine if it is included in the RADIUS server's response.

Creating a User Role

To create a role that will be assigned to guest users, click the **Create a new role** link.

Figure 6 RADIUS Role Editor page

RADIUS Role Editor

* Role Name: Enter a name for this role.

Description: Enter comments or descriptive text about the role.

Session Warnings: ☐ Disable sending session expiration warnings to accounts in this role
See Customization>Guest Manager for enabling session warnings.

RADIUS Attributes

Attributes:

Attribute	Value	Condition
Reply-Message	<?= \$role["name"]	Always

Modify the list of RADIUS attributes that are attached to this role.

Save Changes

Enter a suitable name in the **Role Name** field. If you are creating a role for the guest users in your network you might choose 'Guest' as the role name as in the example below.

A **Description** is optional but useful as it appears in the list view of user roles.

Check **Session Warnings** to prevent users within this role from receiving any session warnings. This option only takes effect if session warnings have been enabled at **Customization > Guest Manager**.

Attributes are used to define the security policies to be applied to guest sessions. To configure attributes for this user role, click the **Add Attribute** tab.

Role Attributes

RADIUS attributes form the heart of the role-based access control system. Different user roles may have different attributes associated with them, which allows you to control the behavior of network access devices that authenticate users with the RADIUS server.

Furthermore, you can associate a set of rules called a *condition* with each RADIUS attribute. This allows you to make adjustments to the precise definition of a role depending on what kind of access is being requested.

The screenshot displays the 'RADIUS Role Editor' window. At the top, the title bar reads 'RADIUS Role Editor'. Below it, the 'Role Name' field is set to 'Guest' with a hint 'Enter a name for this role.'. The 'Description' field contains 'Guest accounts.' with a hint 'Enter comments or descriptive text about the role.'. The 'Attributes' section features a 'Quick Help' icon and an 'Add Attribute' button. Below this is a 'RADIUS Attribute Editor' sub-window. It has four fields: 'Vendor' (set to 'Standard RADIUS Attributes'), 'Attribute' (set to 'ARAP-Challenge-Response'), 'Value' (empty), and 'Condition' (set to 'Always'). Each field has a hint text. At the bottom of the sub-window is another 'Add Attribute' button. Below the sub-window is a table with three columns: 'Attribute', 'Value', and 'Condition'. The table contains one row: 'Idle-Timeout', '7200', and 'Always'. Below the table is a hint 'Modify the list of RADIUS attributes that are attached to this role.'. At the very bottom of the main window is a 'Save Changes' button.

Attribute	Value	Condition
Idle-Timeout	7200	Always

You can choose to use either the Standard RADIUS attributes that are applicable to all vendors or to use the attributes particular to your vendor.

If you want to use the vendor specific attributes, select the vendor from the drop down list. The available attributes for the selected vendor will be displayed in the drop-down list for the **Attribute** field.

Additional vendors and attributes may be defined in the RADIUS Dictionary. See “[Dictionary](#)” for more information in this chapter.

Enter a value for this attribute in the **Value** field. For integer enumerated attributes, choose an appropriate value from the **Value** drop-down list. To calculate the value of the attribute using an expression, See “[Dictionary](#)” in this chapter.

Additional attributes can be added by clicking the  **Add Attribute** button at the bottom of the window.

When all the attributes have been added, click the  **Save Changes** button to create this user role.

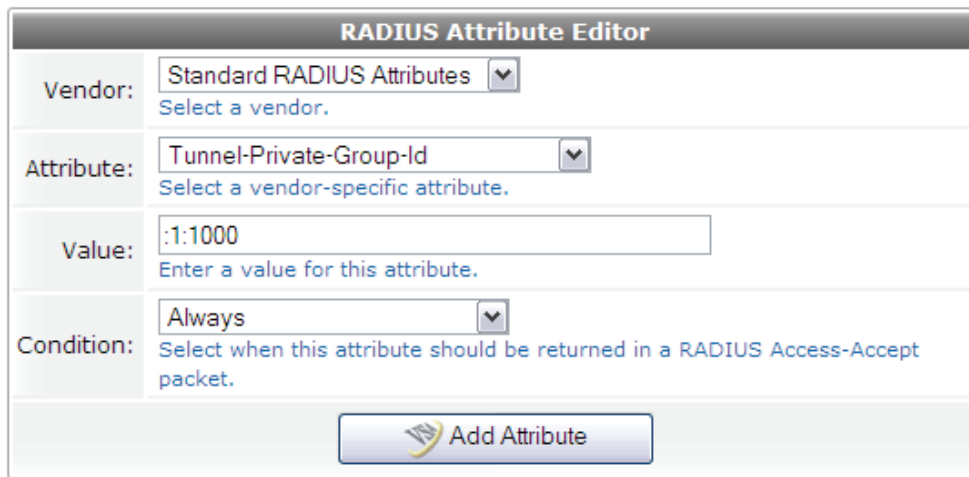


You must click the **Save Changes** button before any of the changes you have made will take effect in the user role. A warning message will be displayed if you attempt to navigate away from the RADIUS Role Editor page while there are unsaved changes.

Attribute Tags

Certain attributes, principally those defined in [RFC 2868](#), have a “tag” value associated with them. The tag value is a small number (1 to 31).

To define a tag value for these attributes, prefix the value with the tag number surrounded by colons (:). For example, to set the Tunnel-Private-Group-Id attribute to 1000 with a tag of 1, type **:1:1000** into the Value field.



RADIUS Attribute Editor	
Vendor:	<div>Standard RADIUS Attributes</div> <div>Select a vendor.</div>
Attribute:	<div>Tunnel-Private-Group-Id</div> <div>Select a vendor-specific attribute.</div>
Value:	<div>:1:1000</div> <div>Enter a value for this attribute.</div>
Condition:	<div>Always</div> <div>Select when this attribute should be returned in a RADIUS Access-Accept packet.</div>
<div>Add Attribute</div>	

Attribute Authorization Conditions

You are able to attach authorization conditions to attribute definitions. The choices for an attribute condition are:

- **Always** – the attribute will always be included in the RADIUS server’s response.
- **Never** – the attribute is never included in the response. This option can be used to disable an attribute without deleting it.
- **Enter condition expression...** – the attribute will be included in the response only if the expression is true. See “[Example: Time of Day Conditions](#)” and “[Example: Time-Based Authorization](#)” in this chapter.

Expressions must be entered as PHP code.


Use condition expressions to perform authorization decisions at the time a RADIUS access request is performed. For example, you can alter the authorization for a user role depending on the time of day. It is also possible to refuse access when a certain condition is met.


Several functions are available for use in attribute conditions. See “[Standard RADIUS Request Functions](#)” in the Reference chapter for detailed documentation about these functions.


Example: Time of Day Conditions

In this example, the Reply-Message attribute will be modified to provide a greeting to the guest that changes depending on the time of day.

1. Create a new role named **Sample role**.

2. Click the  **Add Attribute** tab.
3. Select the Reply-Message attribute from the drop-down list and enter the string value **Good morning, guest**.
4. Select **Enter condition expression...** from the Condition drop-down list and enter the following code in the Expression text field:



```
return date('a') == 'am';
```
5. Click the  **Add Attribute** button.
6. Repeat the above steps, but use the string value **Good afternoon, guest** and the following code in the Expression text field:




```
return date('a') == 'pm';
```
7. Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new settings to the role.

Explanation: PHP's **date()** function returns the current time and date; <http://www.php.net/date> for full details. The 'a' argument will cause the function to return either 'am' or 'pm' depending on the server's current time of day. Finally, the result of the == equality comparison is used with the return statement to determine which attribute value is included in the response.

Example: Time-Based Authorization

In this example, users will be authorized to access the network only between the local time of 7:30am and 8:00pm.

1. Create a new role named **Sample role**.
2. Click the  **Add Attribute** tab.
3. Select the Reply-Message attribute from the drop-down list. Any attribute can be used for this example, because the attribute will never be included in the response.
4. Select **Enter condition expression...** from the Condition drop-down list and enter the following code in the Expression text field:



```
return (date("Hi") < "0730" || date("Hi") >= "2000") &&
AccessReject();
```
5. Click the  **Add Attribute** button.
6. Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new settings to the role.

Explanation:

- This expression is evaluated every time an Access-Request is made.
- `date("Hi")` is the RADIUS server's local time as hours and minutes with a 24-hour clock (0000, 0001, ..., 0730, 0731, ... 1959, 2000, ..., 2359).
- If it is before 07.30 (`< "0730"`) or after 20.00 (`>= "2000"`) then an Access-Reject will be generated.
- Otherwise, the parenthesized expression will be false, and the attribute will not be sent (nor will an access-reject be sent).



Example: Accounting-Based Authorization

Authorization decisions can also be made based on the accounting records available to the RADIUS server. In this example, users will be authorized only if their total traffic in the past day does not exceed 10 MB.

1. Create a new role named **Sample role**.
2. Click the  **Add Attribute** tab.
3. Select the Reply-Message attribute from the drop-down list. Any attribute can be used for this example, because the attribute will never be included in the response.

4. Select **Enter condition expression...** from the Condition drop-down list and enter the following code in the Expression text field:

```
return GetUserTraffic(86400) > 10485760 && AccessReject();
```

5. Click the  **Add Attribute** button.
6. Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new settings to the role.

The `GetUserTraffic()` function ("[GetUserTraffic\(\)](#)" in the Reference chapter) returns the total traffic for the user's sessions in the past 24 hours (86,400 seconds). If this is greater than 10 MB (10,485,760 bytes), the `AccessReject()` function causes the user's access request to be rejected. Otherwise, the entire expression will evaluate to false, and the user will be authorized. Note that the attribute will not be included in the response, as the condition expression was evaluated to false.

Attribute Value Expressions

A PHP expression can also be used to calculate the value that the RADIUS server should return for a particular attribute.

To use this feature, use one of these two possible syntaxes when entering the value for an attribute:

- `<?= expression` – The PHP expression is evaluated and used as the value for the attribute.
- `<?php statement;` – The PHP statement is evaluated. To include a value for the attribute, the statement must be a return statement; that is, `return expression;`






A syntax error in the expression or statement will cause all RADIUS authorization requests to fail with an Access-Reject. To use the RADIUS Debugger feature, See "[Debug RADIUS Server](#)" in this chapter to diagnose any problems with your code in value expressions.

Several predefined functions and variables are available for use in value expressions. See "[View Display Expression Technical Reference](#)" in the Reference chapter for details.

Example: Using Request Attributes in a Value Expression

In this example, the Reply-Message attribute will be modified to greet the user with their username.

1. Create a new role named **Sample role**.
2. Click the  **Add Attribute** tab.
3. Select the Reply-Message attribute from the drop-down list and enter the following value:
`<?= "Hello, " . GetAttr("user-name")`
4. Select **Always** from the Condition drop-down list and click the  **Add Attribute** button.
5. Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new settings to the role.

Explanation: See "[GetAttr\(\)](#)". This function returns the value of an attribute that was supplied to the RADIUS server with the Access-Request. Here, the User-Name attribute is retrieved. PHP's string concatenation operator (`.`) is used to build a greeting message, which will be used as the value of the attribute returned to the NAS in the Access-Accept packet.






Identical behavior could also be achieved using the following code in the attribute's value:
`<?php return "Hello, " . GetAttr("user-name");`

Example: Location-Specific VLAN Assignment

In this example, the value of a vendor-specific VLAN attribute will be modified based on the NAS to which visitors are connecting.

The network has an Aruba wireless controller at 192.168.30.2 which should be configured to place all visitor traffic into VLAN ID 100. There is another Aruba wireless controller at 192.168.40.2 which should be configured to place visitor traffic into VLAN ID 200.

1. Create a new role named **Sample role**
2. Click the  **Add Attribute** tab.
3. Select the **Aruba** vendor, and then select **the Aruba-User-Vlan** attribute from the drop-down list. Enter the following value for the attribute:

```
<?= GetAttr('NAS-IP-Address') == '192.168.30.2' ? '100' : '200'
```
4. Select **Always** from the Condition drop-down list and click the  **Add Attribute** button.
5. Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new settings to the role.

Explanation: The GetAttr() function returns the value of an attribute that was supplied to the RADIUS server with the Access-Request. Here, the NAS-IP-Address attribute is retrieved, which will contain the IP address of the NAS making the RADIUS request. PHP's ternary operator (?:) is used to check if the NAS is 192.168.30.2; if it is, then 100 is returned as the VLAN ID. In all other cases, the value 200 is returned as the VLAN ID.

Multiple ternary statements can be nested in parentheses to allow more than two values to be checked. For example, to check against three values, and return a default value if none of the values are matched, use a PHP expression like the following:

```
(GetAttr('NAS-IP-Address') == 'value1' ? 'result1' : (GetAttr('NAS-IP-Address') == 'value2' ? 'result2' : (GetAttr('NAS-IP-Address') == 'value3' ? 'result3' : 'default_value')))
```



Network Access Servers


A **Network Access Server (NAS)** is a device that provides network access to users, such as a wireless access point, network switch, or dial-in terminal server. When a user connects to the NAS device, a RADIUS user authentication request (Access-Request packet) is generated by the NAS.

Network access servers are RADIUS clients, and must be predefined in order to access the RADIUS server. For security, each NAS device must also have a shared secret which is known only to the device and the RADIUS server.



Use the Network Access Servers list view to define the NAS devices for this server and to make changes to existing NAS devices.

Creating a Network Access Server Entry

A new NAS device is added by clicking on the  **Create** tab.

Quick Help
Create

Create Network Access Server

* Name:	<input type="text"/>	A descriptive name for the network access server (NAS). This name is used to identify each NAS.
* IP Address:	<input type="text"/>	The IP address or hostname of the network access server.
* NAS Type:	Cisco (RFC 3576 support) ▼	Select the type of NAS.
* Shared Secret:	<input type="text"/>	The shared secret used by this network access server.
* Confirm Shared Secret:	<input type="text"/>	Confirm the shared secret for this network access server.
Description:	<div><div></div></div> Enter notes or descriptive text here.	
Web Login:	<input type="checkbox"/> Create a RADIUS Web Login page for this network access server	

Create NAS Device
Reset Form
Cancel

The NAS name is used in the RADIUS server log to identify access requests from NAS servers. This name must be unique.

The NAS type is selected from a drop down list with the following predefined types:

- Other NAS
- RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization Extensions Compatible
- Aerohive (RFC 3576 support)
- Aruba Networks (RFC 3576 support)
- Aruba Networks
- Bluesocket
- Chillispot (RFC 3576 support)
- Cisco
- Cisco (RFC 3576 support)
- Colubris/HP
- Consentry Networks
- Enterasys
- Extreme Networks
- Extricom
- Infoblox
- Juniper Networks
- Meraki
- Meru Networks
- Motorola (RFC 3576 support)
- Ruckus Networks
- Trapeze Networks (RFC 3576 support)



- Trendnet
- Xirrus

RFC 3576 is used by the RADIUS server to request that a NAS disconnect or reauthorize a session that was previously authorized by the RADIUS server.

If your NAS vendor is not listed, select the “Other NAS” option. If the NAS is known to support RFC 3576, select the “RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization Extensions Compatible” option. See [“RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization”](#) in the Guest Management chapter for more information about RFC 3576.


The Shared Secret is used to ensure the security of the authentication request to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. It can be a passphrase or a random set of ASCII characters up to 64 characters in length. The term “shared secret” is used as the same value must be configured on both the RADIUS client and the RADIUS server.

The Web Login check box is displayed when certain vendors are selected. Select this option to automatically create a corresponding RADIUS Web Login page for this NAS. See [“Example: Time-Based Authorization”](#) in this chapter for details on customizing this page.

Click the  **Create NAS Device** button to create this NAS. If you do not want to proceed, click the  **Reset Form** button to cancel your entry.

Once a NAS entry has been created, it can be edited, deleted or pinged by clicking on it.

Importing a List of Network Access Servers

NAS entries may be created from an existing list by uploading it to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. Click the  **Import a list of network access servers** link on the NAS List page to start the process.

The **Upload NAS List** form provides you with different options for importing a list of servers

Upload NAS List

NAS List File:

Upload a file containing a list of network access servers. This field may be left blank if you provide the list in the field below.

NAS List Text:

Type in or paste the list of network access servers. This field may be left blank if you upload a file.

Advanced:

☒ Show additional import options

* Character Set:

UTF-8

Select the character set encoding of the file.

Import Format:

Automatically detect format

Select the file format of the file.

Header:

☐ Force first row as header row

To complete the form, you must either specify a file containing the server information, or type or paste in the NAS information to the NAS List Text area.

Advanced import options may be specified by selecting the **Show additional import options** check box.

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance uses the UTF-8 character set encoding internally to store NAS server properties. If your file is not encoded in UTF-8, the import may fail or produce unexpected results if non-ASCII characters are used. To avoid this, you should specify what character set encoding you are using.

The format of the NAS list file is automatically detected. You may specify a particular encoding if the automatic detection is not suitable for your data.

Select the **Force first row as header row** check box if your data contains a header row that specifies the field names. This option is only required if the header row is not automatically detected.

Click the  **Next Step** button to upload the data.

In step 2 of 3, the format of the uploaded data is determined and the appropriate fields are matched to the data. The first few records in the data will be displayed, together with any automatically detected field names.







For example, the following data was used:

```
server1,192.168.22.10,Radius_Secret
server2,192.168.22.11,Radius_Secret
server3,192.168.22.12,Radius_Secret
external,10.22.0.10,Rmd*3n2pEfz9
```

Because this data does not include a header row that contains field names, the corresponding fields must be identified in the data:

Record	Field 1	Field 2	Field 3
1	server1	192.168.22.10	Radius_Secret
2	server2	192.168.22.11	Radius_Secret
3	server3	192.168.22.12	Radius_Secret
4	external	10.22.0.10	Rmd*3n2pEfz9






Use the **Match Fields** form to identify which NAS server fields are present in the imported data. You can also specify the values to be used for fields that are not present in the data.



Match Fields	
* Name:	<div>Field 1 </div> <div>A descriptive name for the network access server (NAS). This name is used to identify each NAS.</div>
* IP Address:	<div>Field 2 </div> <div>The IP address or hostname of the network access server.</div>
* NAS Type:	<div>RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization Extensions Compatible </div> <div>Select the type of NAS.</div>
* Shared Secret:	<div>Field 3 </div> <div>The shared secret used by this network access server.</div>
* Description:	<div>None </div> <div>Enter notes or descriptive text here.</div>
* Header Rows:	<div>0</div> <div>The number of rows shown in the imported data that do not correspond to data records.</div>
<div> Next Step</div>	


To complete the **Match Fields** form, make a selection from each of the drop-down lists. Choose a column name (Field 1, Field 2, etc.) to use the values from that column when importing the NAS entries, or select one of the other available options to use a fixed value.

Click the  **Next Step** button to preview the final result.

In step 3 of 3, a preview of the import operation is displayed. The properties of each NAS are determined, and any conflicts with existing NAS entries are displayed

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Name	IP Address	NAS Type	Secret
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 	server1	192.168.22.10	rfc3576	Radius_Secret
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 	server2	192.168.22.11	rfc3576	Radius_Secret
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 	server3	192.168.22.12	rfc3576	Radius_Secret
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 	external	10.22.0.10	rfc3576	Rmd*3n2pEfz9
 Create Network Access Servers				

Select the NAS entries to be created or updated with the imported data. The icon displayed in each row indicates if it is a new entry () or if an existing NAS entry will be updated ()

Click the  **Update existing entries** check box to select or unselect all existing NAS entries in the list.

Click the  **Create Network Access Servers** button to finish the import process. The selected items will be created or updated.

A completion screen is then displayed, showing the results of the import operation.

You must restart the RADIUS server in order for the new NAS entries to be recognized. See [“Server Control”](#) in this chapter for more information.

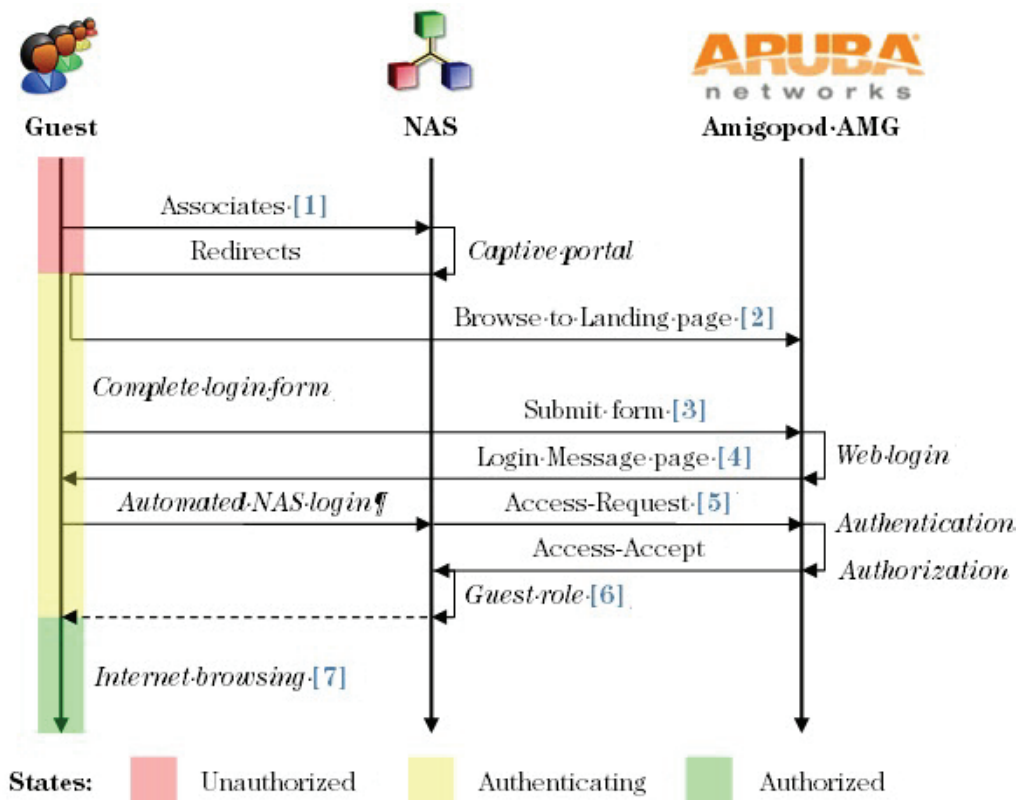
Web Logins

Many NAS devices support Web-based authentication for visitors.

By defining a Web login page on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance you are able to provide a customized graphical login page for visitors accessing the network through these NAS devices.

A sequence diagram showing the process for guests to log in using a Web login page is shown below.

Figure 7 Sequence diagram for guest captive portal and Web login



In a typical configuration, you would enable the captive portal functionality of your NAS [1], and use the URL of your custom Web login page as the default portal landing page [2] for unauthorized guests.

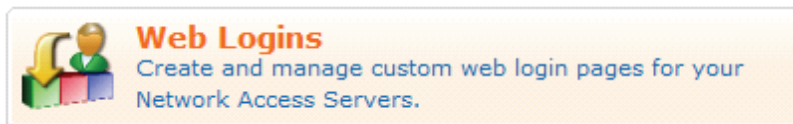
When the login form is submitted [3], the Login Message page is displayed to the visitor [4]. A subsequent automatic redirect to the NAS will perform the actual login [5], which invokes the AAA process. If this is successful, the NAS will apply the appropriate security policy to the visitor's session [6], enabling them to start browsing the Internet [7].

In this way you can provide a branded and customized login page that is integrated with your existing network access devices.

Use this list view to define new Web login pages, and to make changes to existing Web login pages.

Creating a Web Login Page

To create a new Web login page, navigate to **Customization > Web Logins**.



Click **Create a new Web login page** to create a Web login page for your guests.

There are five sections to this form.

The first section requires that you enter a name for this login page, as well as an optional page name. You can also provide an optional description of the login page.

To use predefined network settings for NAS equipment, select the appropriate vendor in the Vendor Settings drop-down list. If your NAS vendor is not listed, or if you would prefer to customize all aspects of the Web login page, choose Custom Settings

RADIUS Web Login Editor	
* Name:	<input type="text"/> Enter a name for this web login page.
Page Name:	<input type="text"/> Enter a page name for this web login. The web login will be accessible from "page_name.php"
Description:	<input type="text"/> Comments or descriptive text about the web login.
* Vendor Settings:	Custom Settings <input type="button" value="v"/> Select a predefined group of settings suitable for standard network configurations.



Changing the vendor settings may overwrite any customizations you have made to the Header HTML and Footer HTML.

If you have chosen a specific vendor, the form will display additional options:

* Vendor Settings:	Aruba Networks <input type="button" value="v"/> Select a predefined group of settings suitable for standard network configurations.
Address:	securelogin.arubanetworks.com Enter the IP address or hostname of the vendor's product here.
Secure Login:	Use vendor default <input type="button" value="v"/> Select a security option to apply to the web login process.
Dynamic Address:	<input type="checkbox"/> The controller will send the IP to submit credentials In multi-controller deployments, it is often required to post credentials to different addresses made available as part of the original redirection. The address above will be used whenever the parameter is not available or fails the requirements below.

The Address option allows you to set the IP address for the NAS, as it will be visible to the guest network. The Secure Login option controls whether the NAS login should be performed using HTTP or HTTPS.



The vendor's address or hostname must be available to the guest. The DNS may differ for guests and the operator on the LAN side. If you select Aruba Networks in the Vendor Settings field, then the Aruba controller's IP address (hostname or IP address only) *must* be entered in the Address field as no other entries are supported.

When the Dynamic Address check box is selected, the NAS login can be performed using the controller's IP address as provided to the client. For example, when using an Aruba Networks controller, the controller performing the redirect sends its IP address using the "switchip" parameter. To use this address for the guest login, enable the Dynamic Address check box.



When using this option, the guest's username and password credentials will be sent to a value provided in the URL. As this is a potential security hazard, enter the known IP addresses of the controllers in your network in the Allowed Dynamic and Denied Dynamic fields, to prevent an information leak vulnerability that could be exploited by guest users on your network.

The second section requires you to specify the behavior of the Web login form. There may only be some fields displayed here, depending on which of the Vendor Settings you have chosen.

Login Form
Options for specifying the behaviour and content of the login form.

Authentication:	Credentials - Require a username and password Select the authentication requirement. Access Code requires a single code (username) to be entered. Anonymous allows a blank form requiring just the terms or a Log In button. A pre-existing account is required. Access Code and Anonymous require the account to have the Username Authentication field set.
Custom Form:	<input type="checkbox"/> Provide a custom login form If selected, you must supply your own HTML login form in the Header or Footer HTML areas.
Custom Labels:	<input type="checkbox"/> Override the default labels and error messages If selected, you will be able to alter labels and error messages for the current login form.
Username Suffix:	<input type="text"/> The suffix is automatically appended to the username before submitting the login form to the NAS.
* Pre-Auth Check:	RADIUS - check using a RADIUS request Select how the username and password should be checked before proceeding to the NAS authentication.
Terms:	<input type="checkbox"/> Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation If checked, the user will be forced to accept a Terms and Conditions checkbox.

The Authentication field provides three options:

- **Credentials**—a username and password. The guest is prompted for a username and password to log in to the network.
- **Access Code**—Requires only username for authentication. The guest's password is automatically provided for the login attempt.
- **Anonymous**—This option supports two special usernames: **_mac** and underscore (**_**).

When Anonymous is selected, two usernames may be used to enable specific behavior. The guest is not prompted for a username and password; a fixed set of credentials will be used for all guest logins. If you select this option, then the Auto-generate (optional) and Anonymous User (required) fields display.

- **_mac**: This populates the username and password with the user's MAC if the user is detected on the system. To enable this first navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > MAC Authentication Plugin**. Select the **Configuration** icon to display the MAC Authentication Plugin page. Select the **Allow users to be detected via their MAC address** option and click **Save Configuration**.

On the RADIUS Web Login page, select **Anonymous** in the **Authentication** field. Check the **Auto-generate the anonymous** account option. Make sure to select the Pre-Auth Check option **Local - match a local account** and save the configuration.

- **Underscore (**_**)**: Leaves the username and password blank and requires post-processing in the header or footer.

Pre-authentication checks now take place:

- **None — No checks will be made**: No checks are made before redirecting to the NAS login.
- **Local —Match local account**: Checks the entered username and password before redirecting to the NAS login.
- **RADIUS — Check using RADIUS request**: Checks the local database and external authentication servers for the provided credentials. This provides authentication of the user regardless of where the account is defined.

When the Web login form is submitted, the username and password are submitted to the NAS using the field names specified in Username Field and Password Field:

- The visitor's username is submitted to the NAS, with any suffix provided in Username Suffix appended to the username. If the username suffix is blank, the username is not modified.

- The visitor's password will be submitted to the NAS unmodified if the Password Encryption option No encryption (plaintext password) is selected. Otherwise, See [“Universal Access Method \(UAM\) Password Encryption”](#) in this chapter for details about the supported password encryption methods.



When **Local – Match local account** is selected, user accounts defined in Guest Manager will be permitted; user accounts defined in external authentication services will not be permitted to log in

Select the **Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation** check box to add a check box to the login page that indicates the visitor has read and agreed to the terms and conditions of use. If this option has been selected, the check box must be ticked before the login can proceed.

Select the **Override the default labels and error messages** check box to customize the text displayed in the login form. If this option is selected, additional fields will be displayed for the Username Label, Password Label, Login In Label, and the Terms Label, Terms Text and Terms Error if the terms and conditions confirmation option has also been selected. Use these fields to enter text that is appropriate for your deployment.

You can provide extra fields if required by your NAS device, and perform processing on parameters that have been supplied by the NAS during the redirect to the Web login page. See [“NAS Redirect Parameters”](#) and [“NAS Login Parameters”](#) in this chapter for details about these parameters.

The NAS parameters and any extra fields specified are available for use within the Submit URL, which may be a template expression. This allows for complex processing of the input if required. See [“Using Web Login Parameters”](#) in this chapter for details about using Web login parameters.

The third section allows you to control the destination that clients will be redirected to after login

Default Destination	
Options for controlling the destination clients will redirect to after login.	
URL Field:	<input type="text"/> The name of the destination field required by the NAS.
Default URL:	<input type="text"/> Enter the default URL to redirect clients.
Override Destination:	<input type="checkbox"/> Force default destination for all clients If selected, the client's default destination will be overridden regardless of its value.

The NAS is responsible for redirecting a visitor to their original destination after a successful login attempt. The URL Field is the name of a parameter supplied to the NAS that contains the visitor's redirection URL.

Normally, this parameter will be provided automatically by the NAS when the visitor is redirected to the Web login page. However, you can use the Default URL field to provide a destination for clients that do not specify a redirection URL. Select the **Force default destination for all clients** check box to cause all visitor access to redirect to the Default URL after login, instead of the visitor's intended access.



Be sure to use a fully-qualified URL, such as <http://www.example.com>. The <http://> prefix is an important part of the URL.

The fourth section allows you to control the look and feel of the login page.

Login Page	
Options for controlling the look and feel of the login page.	
* Skin:	<div>(Default) ▼</div> <div>Choose the skin to use when this web login page is displayed.</div>
Title:	<div></div> <div>The title to display on the web login page.</div>
Header HTML:	<div> <pre><p> Please login to the network using your amigopod username and password. </p></pre> </div> <div> <div>Insert content item... ▼</div> <div>Insert self-registration link... ▼</div> </div> <div>HTML template code displayed before the login form.</div>
Footer HTML:	<div> <pre><p> Contact a staff member if you are experiencing difficulty logging in. </p></pre> </div> <div> <div>Insert content item... ▼</div> <div>Insert self-registration link... ▼</div> </div> <div>HTML template code displayed after the login form.</div>
Login Message:	<div> <pre><p> Logging in, please wait... </p></pre> </div> <div> <div>Insert content item... ▼</div> </div> <div>HTML template code displayed while the login attempt is in progress.</div>
* Login Delay:	<div>0</div> <div>The time in seconds to delay while displaying the login message.</div>

Use the **Insert self-registration link...** drop-down list to insert HTML code that creates a link to an existing guest self-registration page. This may be of use when you are creating a landing page suitable for both registered and unregistered visitors.

You are able to optionally create a login message in this section. This could be used to welcome the guest and outline the terms of usage. The login message is only displayed for the time specified in the Login Delay.

The fifth section allows you to specify access controls for the Web login page.

Network Login Access	
Controls access to the login page.	
Allowed Access:	<div></div> <div>Enter the IP addresses and networks from which logins are permitted.</div>
Denied Access:	<div></div> <div>Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied login access.</div>
* Deny Behavior:	<div>Send HTTP 404 Not Found status ▼</div> <div>Select the response of the system to a request that is not permitted.</div>
<div> <div>Save Changes</div> <div>Save and Reload</div> </div>	

The 'Allowed Access' and 'Denied Access' fields are access control lists that determine if a client is permitted to access this Web login page. You can specify multiple IP addresses and networks, one per line, using the following syntax:

- **1.2.3.4** – IP address
- **1.2.3.4/24** – IP address with network prefix length
- **1.2.3.4/255.255.255.0** – IP address with explicit network mask

The 'Deny Behavior' drop-down list may be used to specify the action to take when access is denied.

The access control rules will be applied in order, from the most specific match to the least specific match.

Access control entries are more specific when they match fewer IP addresses. The most specific entry is a single IP address (for example, **1.2.3.4**), while the least specific entry is the match-all address of **0.0.0.0/0**.

As another example, the network address **192.168.2.0/24** is less specific than a smaller network such as **192.168.2.192/26**, which in turn is less specific than the IP address **192.168.2.201** (which may also be written as **192.168.2.201/32**).

To determine the result of the access control list, the most specific rule that matches the client's IP address is used. If the matching rule is in the Denied Access list, then the client will be denied access. If the matching rule is in the Allowed Access list, then the client will be permitted access.

If the Allowed Access list is empty, all access will be allowed, except to clients with an IP address that matches any of the entries in the Denied Access list. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the Allowed Access list.

If the Denied Access list is empty, only clients with an IP address that matches one of the entries in the Allowed Access list will be allowed access. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the Denied Access list.

Universal Access Method (UAM) Password Encryption

Two different forms of password encryption are supported for the Web login page. These are:

- **UAM basic** – Equivalent to the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) scheme.
- **UAM with shared secret** – Equivalent to the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) scheme.

When using either of these schemes, the NAS must supply a parameter named **challenge** to the Web login page. This parameter should be a string of hexadecimal digits ("hexadecimal challenge string") encoding a binary value at least 128 bits long ("binary challenge").

The challenge is used to encrypt the user's password as follows:

- **UAM basic** – The user's password is XORed bitwise with the supplied binary challenge. The result is encoded as a string of hexadecimal characters.
- **UAM with shared secret** – The MD5 checksum of the binary challenge followed by the predefined UAM secret is computed ("checksum challenge"). The encrypted password is the hexadecimal MD5 checksum of a stream consisting of a null byte followed by the user's plaintext password and the hexadecimal checksum challenge.

NAS Redirect Parameters

The NAS may supply additional parameters when redirecting the user to the Web login page. These are supported and will be passed back to the NAS along with the variables that are defined as part of the Web login form.

For example, some wireless network equipment will pass a "wlan" parameter that contains the user's ESSID to the login page. This might result in the following redirection URL:

`http://192.168.88.88/weblogin.php/4?wlan=Amigopod`

This will in turn result in a hidden field included in the Web login form. The field will be named **wlan** and will be set to the value **Amigopod**.

NAS Login Parameters

Extra fields in the **NAS login** form may be defined using **name=value** pairs in the Web login form configuration. This allows you to specify values required by a particular NAS to log in, or to override values supplied by a NAS.

You can also remove a NAS-supplied field from the form. To do this, list only the name of the field in the Extra Fields, without any equals sign or value for the field. By doing this, any value set for the field will be removed when the form is submitted.

To set a value for a field, but only if the NAS did not supply a value for this field, use the syntax **name!=value**. This can be used to provide a default parameter to the NAS, if the user was redirected without the parameter.

To rename a field, specify the old and new names using the syntax **old|newname**.

The table below summarizes the syntax that is available in the Web login page extra fields:

Table 9 *Web Login Page Syntax*

Syntax	Meaning
name=value	Sets field to a specific value; will override any NAS-provided value for this field
name={\$value ...}	Sets field to a value determined by evaluating the template expression; will override any NAS-provided value for this field
name!=value	Sets field to a value, but only if the field was not provided in the redirect to the Web login page. The value may be a template expression.
name	Removes field provided by the NAS; this field will not be submitted to the NAS.
old new	Renames the field “old” to “new” and keeps its value.
old new=value	Renames the field “old” to “new” and assigns a new value.

Using Web Login Parameters

The parameters passed to the Web login page can be used within the template code. Each parameter is defined as a page variable with the same name. You can use the syntax **{*\$var*}** to display the value of the parameter **var**. More complicated expressions can be built using Smarty template syntax. See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter for details.



To display a list of all the parameters available for use on the page, add the following template code to the Footer HTML:

```
{dump var=$params export=html}
```

The NAS redirect parameters are also automatically stored as the properties of a session variable called **\$extra_fields**. You can use this variable to remember the NAS parameters when redirecting the user to a different page that does not include the parameters in the URL.

To access the value of a remembered field called “wlan”, use the syntax:

```
{ $extra_fields.wlan }
```

To display all the remembered fields for the current visitor session, use the syntax:

```
{ dump var=$extra_fields export=html }
```

Apple Captive Network Assistant Bypass with Amigopod

This section describes the process for leveraging the Amigopod Captive Portal to bypass the Captive Network Assistant (Web sheet) that is displayed on iOS device such as iPhones, iPad and more recently Mac OS X machines running Lion (10.7).

Based on the proposed configuration in this guide, the combination of an Aruba Wi-Fi network and Amigopod Guest Access Solution can effectively be used to bypass the Captive Network Assistant technology implemented by Apple in various of their Wi-Fi enabled mobile devices.

The need to bypass this Web sheet solution for prompting users to perform a Web authentication task will largely be driven by the customer design and need to control the user experience as guest or public access users authenticate to the network.

By enabling a full client Web browser based authentication, this solution enables fully customized Web login experience to be developed and presented through the Amigopod portal options.

Some examples of use cases for the browser-based authentication are as follows but certainly not limited to:

- Display of a welcome page to host session statistics, logout button, link to continue to original destination
- Display of an interstitial page for the display of advertising media before being granted access to the Internet
- Based on browser detection, display a promotional link to a mobile device App from associated App Store for retail applications
- Provide mobile device App based Web authentication for transparent Wi-Fi access in retail application
- Mobile Device Access Control (MDAC) environments where the Web authentication process is used to push
- Device configurations and client certificates to mobile devices.

This Web sheet is displayed on iOS devices when a device connects to a Wi-Fi network that has been configured with Open security, such as those typically found in guest access networks or public hotspots.

The benefit of this feature provided by Apple is to automatically prompt users to log in to the detected Captive Portal network without the need to explicitly open a Web browser. This is useful on mobile devices where many of the common applications are not browser based such as email, social networking applications, media streaming and these applications would otherwise fail to connect without the successful browser based authentication.

The Apple operating systems detect the presence of a Captive Portal enabled network by attempting to request a Web page from the Apple public Web site. This HTTP GET process retrieves a simple success.html file from the Apple Web servers and the operating system uses the successful receipt of this file to assume that it is connected to an Open network without the requirement for Captive Portal style authentication.

If the success.html file is not received, the operating system conversely assumes there is a Captive Portal in place and presents the Web sheet automatically to prompt the user to perform a Web authentication task.

Once the Web authentication has successfully completed, the Web sheet window will be automatically closed down and therefore preventing the display of any subsequent welcome pages or redirecting the user to their configured home page.

Also if the user chooses to cancel the Web sheet, the Wi-Fi connection to the Open network will be dropped automatically preventing any further interaction via the full browser or other applications. The following are examples of these Web sheet sessions from a Mac OS X Lion (10.7) laptop, iPad and an iPhone.

Figure 8 *Captive Network Assistant on MacOS X*

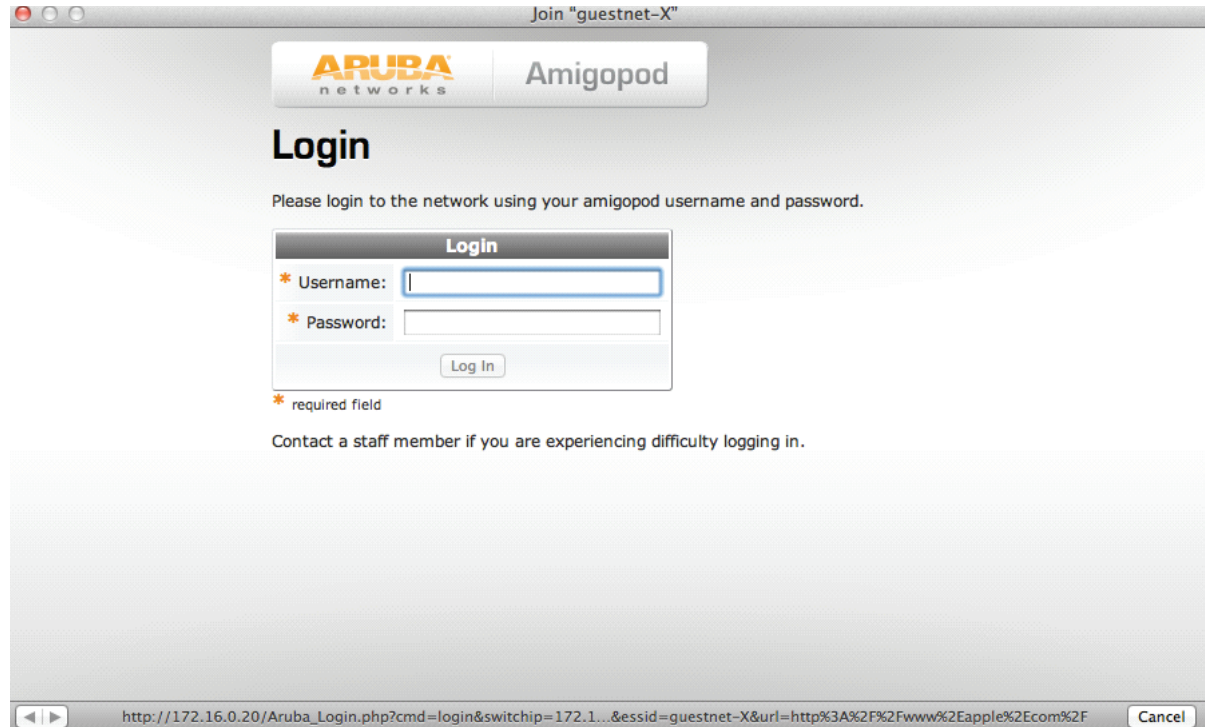


Figure 9 *Captive Network Assistant on iPad*

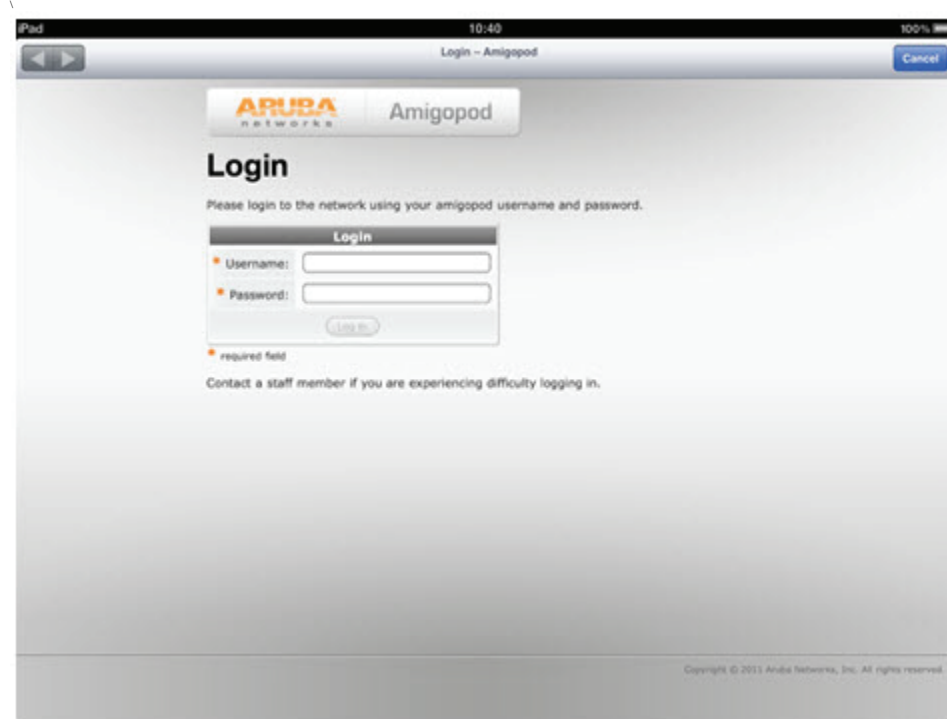


Figure 10 *Captive Network Assistant on iPhone*



The Web sheet can be easily identified by the lack of a URL bar at the top of the screen and typical menu bar items.

For many customers, this behavior of their Apple wireless devices will be acceptable and a great usability enhancement for their user community.

There are however particular guest access or public access designs where the use of this Web sheet and the lack of ability to control the entire Web authentication user experience is not desirable.

For these customer scenarios, Amigopod have developed a method of bypassing the display of the Web sheet on the Mac OS X Lion or iOS devices. The main driver for this implementation is to restore the ability to control the user experience and display post authentication welcome pages or redirect the Wi-Fi users to their originally requested Web page.

Alternatively, testing of the recommended Captive Portal configuration where SSL secured connections are implemented on both the Aruba controller and Amigopod Web Login page, has shown to also prevent the display of the Captive Network Assistant on Apple devices. It appears that the redirect process to the HTTPS hosted Web Login page on Amigopod, prevents the display of the Web sheet and it is assumed that the Captive Network Assistant only supports HTTP. This recommended approach of using HTTPS to avoid user credentials being passed in the clear for guest and public access networks requires the installation of trusted server certificates on both the controller and the Amigopod. For some customers where securing these user credentials is not essential (for example in Anonymous login designs) the solution proposed in this guide provides the same desired result using HTTP as the transport for the Web authentication traffic.

Solution Implementation

In a typical Amigopod deployment integrating with an ArubaOS controller, the Captive Portal profile is configured to redirect all unauthenticated users to the external Captive Portal page hosted on Amigopod.

For further details on the recommended configuration of both Amigopod and the ArubaOS controllers, please refer to the Amigopod & ArubaOS Integration Application Note available for download from the following location: <http://www.arubanetworks.com/vrd/>

The following CLI and WebUI examples show a typical configuration of the Captive Portal profile and of note the login-page is set to point directly to the Amigopod hosted Web Login page.: http://10.169.130.50/Aruba_Login.php

Captive Portal Profile Configuration

```
aaa authentication captive-portal "guestnet"
  default-role auth-guest
  direct-pause 3
  no logout-popup-window
  login-page http://10.169.130.50/Aruba_Login.php
  welcome-page http://10.169.130.50/Aruba_welcome.php
  switchip-in-redirection-url
```

Figure 11 Captive Portal Profile Configuration

The screenshot shows the Aruba Mobility Controller WebUI interface. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with categories like WIZARDS, NETWORK, SECURITY, WIRELESS, MANAGEMENT, and ADVANCED SERVICES. The main content area is titled 'Security > Authentication > L3 Authentication'. Under 'L3 Authentication', the 'Captive Portal Authentication Profile' is selected, showing a list of profiles including 'default' and 'guestnet'. The 'guestnet' profile is expanded, displaying its configuration details in a table-like format. The configuration includes fields for Default Role (auth-guest), Default Guest Role (guest), Redirect Pause (3 sec), Guest Login, Use HTTP for authentication, Logon wait maximum wait (10 sec), Logon wait minimum wait (5 sec), Logon wait CPU utilization threshold (60 %), Max Authentication failures (0), Show FQDN, Use CHAP (non-standard), Login page (130.50/Aruba_Login.php), Welcome page (130.50/Aruba_welcome.php), Show Welcome Page, Add switch IP address in the redirection URL, White List, Black List, and Show the acceptable use policy page. At the bottom, there is a 'Commands' section with a 'View Commands' link.

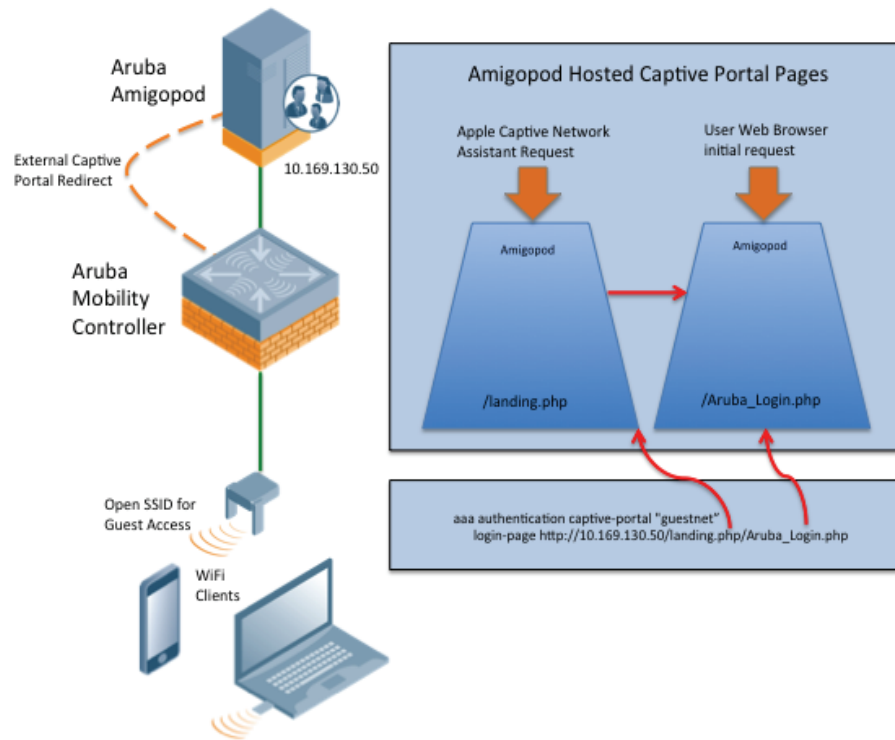
Amigopod have implemented a new embedded URL within the portal configuration that is designed to address the issue of bypassing the mini browser discussed previously. This new page is available on the following URL: <http://<Amigopod IP or FQDN>/landing.php/>

The new Web page includes the logic to detect the presence of an iOS device or Mac OS X Lion machine being redirected as part of the Aruba controller Captive Portal configuration. If these devices are detected, their initial request to the Apple Web site will be served locally from the Amigopod and hence emulating the environment of an Open connection to the Internet. By emulating the response from the Apple Web site, the iOS device or Mac OS X machine will no longer initiate the Captive Network Assistant and the user can launch their local browser manually as desired.

Now that the devices are able to open the local browser, any attempt to access the Internet will be subsequently be redirected again to the Amigopod. This new function will then differentiate between this Web browser request from the previous Captive Network Assistant request and forward the session onto the configured Amigopod Web Login page.

Given that Amigopod can host multiple Web Login pages, a simple method has been provided to configure the Web Login page that should be used without requiring any additional configuration on Amigopod. This definition of the Web Login page can be specified as part of the Captive Portal profile configuration on the Aruba controller.

Figure 12 *Configuring the Web Login page*



For example, the Captive Portal profile login page configuration sample below will link to an Amigopod hosted Web Login page called Aruba_Login: http://<Amigopod IP or FQDN>/landing.php/Aruba_Login.php.



Database Lists

This is a list of databases on the NAS server. The Amigopod RADIUS server uses a database to store the user accounts for authentication and other settings for the server.

You can set up as many databases as you like, including databases on other servers. However, exactly one database must be marked as the Active database. This database will be used by the RADIUS server for user authentication. The default configuration of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance includes a pre-configured database. Most deployments will not require more than one database. It is recommended that you leave the default configuration unmodified.

Database Maintenance Tasks

Database Setup	
Name:	Local RADIUS Server <small>A descriptive name for the database. This name is used to identify different sites.</small>
Host Name:	localhost <small>The IP address or hostname of the database.</small>
Database Name:	amigopod <small>The name of the database to use.</small>
* Operation:	Optimize the database <small>Select the operation to perform on this database.</small>
<div>➡ Perform Operation</div> <div>✖ Cancel</div>	

Database optimization and other maintenance tasks can be performed using this form. These tasks are normally carried out automatically and do not require administrative intervention.

Some system updates may require a database schema upgrade. If this is required, it is indicated on the database list with the 🔄 schema upgrade icon. To upgrade the database schema, select the “Upgrade an existing database schema” operation.

Click the ➡ **Perform Operation** button to carry out the specified operation.

Dictionary

The **RADIUS Dictionary** is a complete list of all the vendor IDs, vendor-specific attributes, and attribute values used in the RADIUS protocol. The dictionary is used to translate between human-readable strings and the underlying numbers used in RADIUS packets.

Many predefined vendor-specific attributes have already been provided in the dictionary. These items are indicated with a lock icon (🔒) and cannot be removed from the dictionary.

You can make changes to the predefined vendors and vendor-specific attributes. The new dictionary entry will be shown without a lock icon (🔓). To restore the original value of the dictionary entry, simply delete the new entry.



Use this tree view to define a new vendor, create a new vendor-specific attribute, or modify the list of values available for a particular attribute.

Quick Help	Create Vendor	More Options
Dictionary Entry	Number	Type
(Standard RADIUS Attributes)	0	vendor
3com	43	vendor
3GPP	10415	vendor
3GPP2	5535	vendor
Acc	5	vendor
Aerohive	26928	vendor
Airespace	14179	vendor
Alcatel	3041	vendor
Alteon	1872	vendor
Alvarion	12394	vendor
10 rows per page		

The dictionary can be sorted by clicking on a column heading.



Import Dictionary

You are able to import RADIUS dictionary entries from a text file using the **Import Dictionary** command located under the **More Options** tab. These text files can be created by you or you can download them from a manufacturer who is not in the standard list.



Export Dictionary

You are able to export the dictionary by clicking on the **More Options** tab and choosing the **Export Dictionary** command. This saves the complete contents of the dictionary as a text file.



Reset Dictionary

You can reset the dictionary to its default set of vendors by clicking on the **Reset Dictionary** command.

Reset Dictionary

* Confirm:

☐ Delete all additions and modifications

Note:

This action cannot be undone.

Reset Dictionary

All changes to the vendors, vendor-specific attributes and attribute values in the dictionary will be lost.


Click the **Reset Dictionary** button to have the dictionary reset.


Vendors

Vendors are manufacturers of NAS equipment. Amigopod provides a list of manufacturers but you are able to add to this list.

Vendor-specific attributes as defined in [RFC 2865](#) can be used to configure specific options related to a particular vendor's equipment.

Creating a New Vendor

A new vendor may be added to the dictionary by clicking the  **Create Vendor** tab at the top of the Dictionary list view.




You are required to enter the Vendor Name. This name cannot already exist in the dictionary. Spaces are not permitted in the Vendor Name. By convention, hyphens are used in vendor and attribute names instead of spaces.

You are required to enter the Vendor Number. This is the IANA Private Enterprise Code assigned to this vendor. It is unique to this vendor and is used by the RADIUS protocol. For the current mapping of vendor names to IANA Private Enterprise Codes, refer to the IANA Web site: <http://www.iana.org/assignments/enterprise-numbers>.


The Vendor Number must be less than or equal to 65535.

Once you have completed the form, click the  **Create Vendor** button to add this vendor to the dictionary.


Edit Vendor

You are able to change the Vendor's name or number with the  **Edit Vendor** icon link. This allows you to change the vendor name or number.


Delete Vendor

You are able to delete any vendors that you have added to the dictionary. Use the  **Delete Vendor** icon link for this. Deleting a vendor will also delete all vendor-specific attributes and attribute values for that vendor.

You will be prompted to confirm the delete operation before it takes place.

Vendors with a lock symbol () next to their name are standard RADIUS dictionary entries and cannot be deleted.


Export Vendor

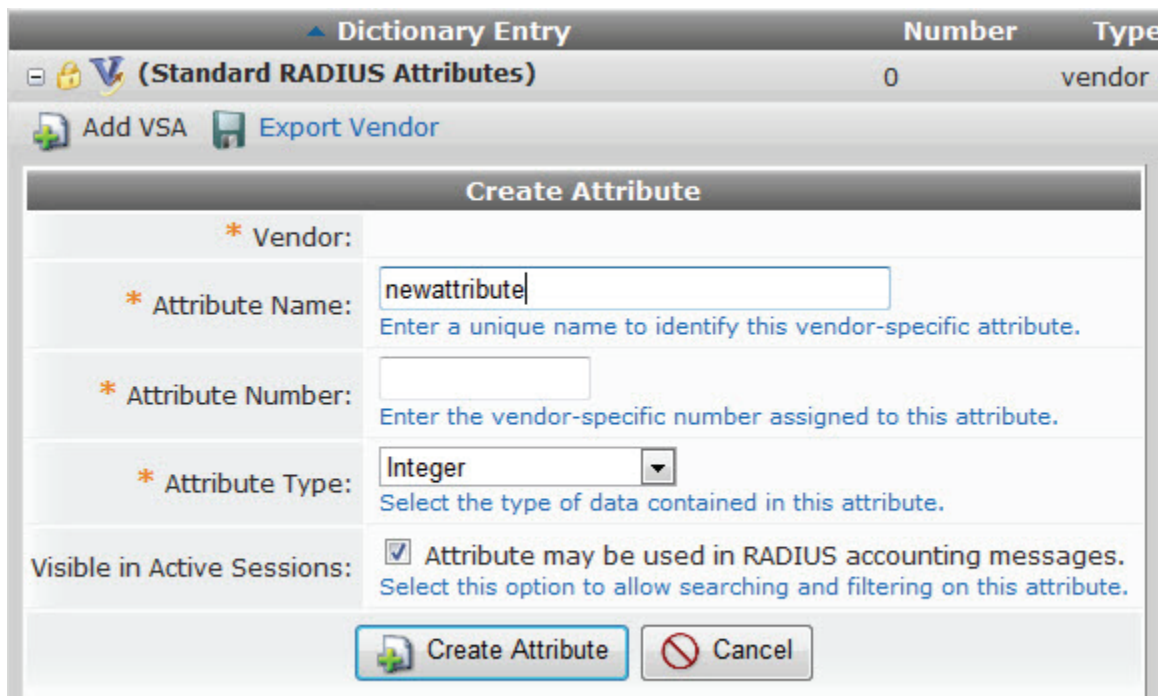
The selected vendor's attributes and values can be exported as a text file in RADIUS dictionary format by clicking the  **Export Vendor** icon link.

Vendor-Specific Attributes

Vendor-specific attributes identify configuration items specific to that vendor's equipment.

Add a Vendor-Specific Attribute (VSA)

A Vendor Specific Attribute (VSA) is a RADIUS attribute defined for a specific vendor. You are able to add vendor-specific attributes to a vendor by clicking the vendor in the RADIUS dictionary list view and then clicking the  **Add VSA** icon link.



The screenshot shows a 'Dictionary Entry' window with a table containing one entry: '(Standard RADIUS Attributes)' with 'Number' 0 and 'Type' vendor. Below the table are 'Add VSA' and 'Export Vendor' buttons. The 'Create Attribute' dialog box is open, showing fields for 'Vendor:', 'Attribute Name:' (containing 'newattribute'), 'Attribute Number:', 'Attribute Type:' (set to 'Integer'), and a checked 'Visible in Active Sessions:' checkbox. Each field has a descriptive instruction. At the bottom are 'Create Attribute' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Each attribute has a name and a unique number specific to that vendor. Refer to your vendor's documentation for the attribute name, number and type settings to use.


The attribute type can be one of:

- Integer
- String
- Binary
- IPv4 Address
- Date/Time
- IPv6 Address
- IPv6 Prefix
- Interface ID (8 octets)
- Ascend Binary Filter

Attribute numbers are normally small decimal numbers in the range 0-255. These may be entered in decimal, or in hexadecimal using the '0x' prefix. Certain vendors in the dictionary have support for larger attribute values.

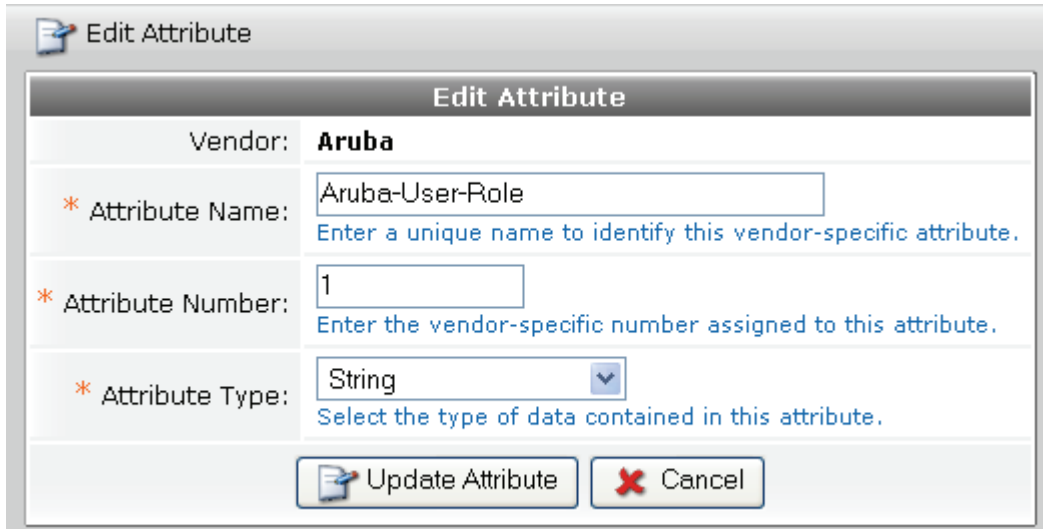
If you want the attribute to appear in the active session views and on RADIUS accounting reports, check the **Visible in Active Sessions** check box. This allows the attribute to be searched and filtered.

Once the data has been entered, click the  **Create Attribute** button to complete the creation.

Click the  **Cancel** button if you do not want to proceed with creating this vendor attribute.

Edit Vendor-Specific Attribute

You can change the properties of an attribute by clicking on the attribute in the RADIUS dictionary list view and then clicking the  **Edit Attribute** icon link.



Once an attribute has been edited, click the  **Update Attribute** button to save your changes.

Delete Vendor-Specific Attribute

Attributes can only be deleted from vendors that you have added to the dictionary. Vendor-specific attributes with a lock symbol (🔒) next to their name are standard RADIUS dictionary entries and cannot be deleted.

To delete a vendor-specific attribute, click it in the RADIUS dictionary list view and then click the  **Delete Attribute** icon link. You will be prompted to confirm the delete operation before it takes place.

Add Attribute Value

A Value Name with a corresponding numerical value can be created for a selected attribute. These “enumerated” values are used to associate meaningful names with the underlying numerical values of the attribute.

Once an integer attribute has been added to a vendor, you are able to define enumerated values for it.

When a vendor-specific attribute is of integer type, this can be used as an explanation of the value, or to specify that the value for an attribute can be only one of a limited number of possibilities.



Enumerated values cannot be defined for attributes of string type.

Edit Attribute Value

Enumerated values can be added to an attribute by clicking the attribute in the RADIUS dictionary list view and then clicking the  **Add Value** icon link.

You are required to enter the name of the value to be added as well as its value. Values can only be added to attributes that are of integer type.

Delete Attribute Value

Values that have been added to a vendor-specific attribute can be deleted using the **Delete Value** button.

Attribute values with a lock symbol (🔒) next to their name are standard RADIUS dictionary entries and cannot be deleted.

EAP and 802.1X Authentication

The Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) supports multiple types of authentication methods, including digital certificates, smart cards, and passwords. This authentication protocol is the basis for the IEEE 802.1X standard, which provides port-based network access control for both wired and wireless networks.

Amigopod OS 2.1 and later supports EAP and 802.1X authentication. This authentication method requires EAP messages to be encapsulated inside RADIUS packets. The RADIUS server must also be configured with the appropriate settings for the EAP types that will be used.



To view or modify a RADIUS server's EAP configuration, go to **RADIUS > Authentication > EAP & 802.1X**. The Extensible Authentication Protocol page opens, and includes command links for server configuration and certificate management.



To specify supported EAP types and the default type, and to configure OCSP options, see [“Specifying Supported EAP Types”](#).

To create a server certificate and self-signed certificate authority, see [“Creating a Server Certificate and Self-Signed Certificate Authority”](#).

To request a certificate from another certificate authority, see [“Requesting a Certificate from a Certificate Authority”](#).

To import a certificate and its private key, see [“Importing a Server Certificate”](#).

To export a server certificate, see [“Exporting Server Certificates”](#).



Specifying Supported EAP Types

To enable the EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, and PEAP options on the EAP Configuration form, you must first configure a digital certificate for the RADIUS server. The server certificate is the RADIUS server's identity and will be provided to clients authenticating with these EAP methods. To create and manage the server certificates, see [“Creating a Server Certificate and Self-Signed Certificate Authority”](#).

To specify the EAP types the RADIUS server will support, and the default EAP type, click the **EAP Configuration** command on the Extensible Authentication Protocol page. The **EAP Configuration** form opens.

EAP Configuration

<p>* Supported EAP Types:</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP-MD5 MD5-Challenge authentication method specified in RFC 3748. </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP-MSCHAPv2 MSCHAPv2 authentication method requiring a username and password. This EAP type must be enabled to use PEAP. </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP-TLS Transport Layer Security method supporting mutual authentication using digital certificate This EAP type must be enabled to use EAP-TTLS or PEAP. </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <input type="checkbox"/> EAP-TTLS Tunneled TLS providing server authentication using a digital certificate. </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PEAP Protected EAP providing server authentication using a digital certificate. Recommended for Windows wireless clients. </div>
Select the types of EAP to be enabled in the RADIUS server.	
<p>* Default EAP Type:</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> EAP-MD5 </div> <p>Select a default EAP type to use when the server receives an EAP-Identity response. The recommended and default value is EAP-MD5.</p>
<p>EAP-TLS Configuration Options for EAP-TLS authentication using client certificates.</p>	
<p>* OCSP:</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> Disable certificate revocation status checks (default) </div> <p>Select the method to use for online certificate status protocol (OCSP) checks. OCSP is used to determine if a client certificate has been revoked.</p>
<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; display: inline-block; padding: 5px 15px; background-color: #eee;"> Save Changes </div>	

1. In the **Supported EAP Types** row, mark the check box for each type the RADIUS server should support. The available types are EAP-MD5, EAP-MSCHAPv2, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, and PEAP. If you select EAP-TLS, the EAP-TLS Configuration area is added at the bottom of the form.
2. In the **Default EAP Type** row, use the drop-down list to select the EAP type to use as the default when the server receives an EAP-Identity response.
3. If you selected EAP-TLS as one of the supported types, use the **EAP-TLS Configuration** area to configure status checks for client certificates. In the drop-down list in the **OCSP** row, select one of the following options:
 - **Disable certificate revocation status checks (default)**—If this option is selected, no OCSP checks are made to determine the client certificate’s revocation status.
 - **Automatically check certificate revocation status**—If this option is selected, an OCSP responder defined in the client certificate is used to obtain revocation status. If no OCSP responder is defined in the client certificate, then the local certificate authority is used to check status.
 - **Manually specify OCSP URL for certificate checks**—If this option is selected, the URL specified in the OCSP row of the EAP Configuration form is used to verify revocation status, and any OCSP responder defined in the client certificate is ignored.

The “Manually specify OCSP URL for certificate checks” option adds the OCSP Responder row to the form.
4. If you chose the manual option for certificate checks, in the **OCSP Responder** row, enter the URL of the service to be used to check certificate status.
5. Click the **Save Changes** button.



Creating a Server Certificate and Self-Signed Certificate Authority

To create a new server certificate and self-signed certificate authority (CA), go to **RADIUS > Authentication > EAP & 802.1X**, then click the **Create Server Certificate** command link. The Create

RADIUS Server Certificate form is displayed. The unique set of identifying details you enter on this form creates the Distinguished Name (DN) for the new certificate.

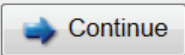
Creating a new server certificate and self-signed CA is a three-step process:

- In step 1, a certificate signing request is created with the identifying details of the Distinguished Name for the RADIUS server's digital certificate.
- In step 2, expiration dates for the certificate and root certificate are specified, and a self-signed certificate authority (CA) is created. This CA is then used to sign the server's certificate request, which produces a valid digital certificate for the server.
- In step 3, the certificate authority and server certificates are installed on the RADIUS server. The CA root certificate is then downloaded for distribution to clients who will use this RADIUS server for authentication.

To create a self-signed certificate authority and issue a server certificate using this CA, use the process described below. If you already have a certificate authority, or are using a third-party CA, See [“Requesting a Certificate from a Certificate Authority”](#) in this chapter for details on creating a certificate signing request.

Creating the Certificate Signing Request

The **Create RADIUS Server Certificate** form is used to specify the details of your RADIUS server. The server certificate is the RADIUS server's identity and will be provided to clients authenticating with EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS or PEAP.

Create RADIUS Server Certificate	
Certificate Details These details are used to create a Distinguished Name for the digital certificate.	
* Country:	<input type="text" value="US"/> Enter the 2-letter ISO country code of your country.
* State:	<input type="text" value="California"/> Enter the full name of your state or province.
* Locality:	<input type="text" value="Half Moon Bay"/> Enter the name of your locality (town or city).
* Organization:	<input type="text" value="SpiffyWidgets, Inc."/> Enter the name of your organization or company.
Organizational Unit:	<input type="text" value="Tech Pubs"/> Enter the name of your organizational unit (e.g. section or division of the company).
* Common Name:	<input type="text" value="lookingglass"/> Enter a name for your RADIUS server. This is the 'common name' of the digital certificate.
* Email Address:	<input type="text" value="alidel@spiffywidgetsnetworks.com"/> Enter an email address.
Advanced Options Adjust technical parameters related to the digital certificate. (Advanced)	
* Private Key:	<input type="text" value="1024-bit RSA"/> Select the type of private key to create for this certificate request.
* Digest Algorithm:	<input type="text" value="MD5"/> Select the algorithm used to sign the digital certificate request.
	

Complete the details for the certificate, and click the  **Continue** button to proceed to Step 2.



The “Common Name” of the CA certificate will be used to identify it to clients installing it as a trusted CA root. Make sure to choose a sensible name.

Signing RADIUS Server Certificate

For a client to verify that the RADIUS server’s identity is valid, the server’s certificate must be issued by a certificate authority (CA) that is trusted by the client. This authority may be either a trusted third party CA, or a private certificate authority for which the root certificate has been distributed to clients.



Certificate Signing
These options specify the validity period of the signed certificate.

* CA Expiration:	3651	days	The number of days before the certificate authority’s root certificate will expire.
* Certificate Expiration:	3650	days	The number of days before the RADIUS server’s digital certificate will expire.




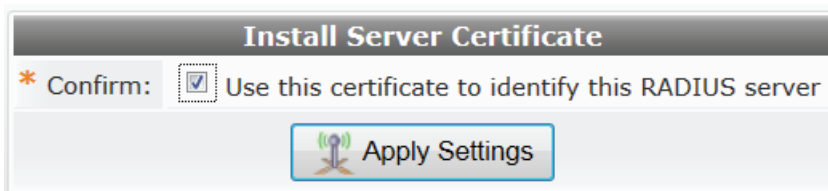
The **Sign RADIUS Server Certificate** form shows the details you entered in the previous step, and includes fields for expiration dates. It is used to create a private certificate authority and sign the RADIUS server’s certificate. By default, the CA certificate’s expiration is set to be 10 years in the future.

1. If you need to edit any of the identifying information for the certificate, you may do so on this form.
2. To change the default expiration settings for the certificate authority and the certificate, enter the number of days in the **CA Expiration** and **Certificate Expiration** fields.
3. Click the **Continue** button to proceed to step 3.

Installing the Self-Signed RADIUS Server Certificate


On the Certificate Details form, the details of the RADIUS server certificate and its issuer, and the certificate’s validity period, are displayed for review. The Install Server Certificate form is included.

To confirm the certificate’s information and complete the process, mark the **Use this certificate to identify this RADIUS server** check box in the **Confirm** row, then click the  **Apply Settings** button to configure the EAP server certificate.



Install Server Certificate

* Confirm:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Use this certificate to identify this RADIUS server
------------	-------------------------------------	---



After installing the certificate, the RADIUS server will need to be restarted to complete the changes.

Requesting a Certificate from a Certificate Authority

To create a certificate request to obtain a certificate from a recognized certificate authority (CA), go to **RADIUS > Authentication > EAP & 802.1X**, click the **Create Server Certificate** command link, then click the **Request a certificate from another certificate authority** link. The Server Certificate Request page opens.

New Certificate Request

Certificate Details

These details are used to create a Distinguished Name for the digital certificate.

* Country:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">US</div> <small>Enter the 2-letter ISO country code of your country.</small>
* State:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">California</div> <small>Enter the full name of your state or province.</small>
* Locality:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Half Moon Bay</div> <small>Enter the name of your locality (town or city).</small>
* Organization:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">SpiffyWidgets, Inc.</div> <small>Enter the name of your organization or company.</small>
Organizational Unit:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Tech Pubs</div> <small>Enter the name of your organizational unit (e.g. section or division of the company).</small>
* Common Name:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">lookingglass</div> <small>Enter a name for your RADIUS server. This is the 'common name' of the digital certificate.</small>
* Email Address:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">alicheliddel@spiffywidgetsnetworks.com</div> <small>Enter an email address.</small>

Advanced Options

Adjust technical parameters related to the digital certificate. (Advanced)

* Private Key:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">1024-bit RSA</div> <small>Select the type of private key to create for this certificate request.</small>
* Digest Algorithm:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">MD5</div> <small>Select the algorithm used to sign the digital certificate request.</small>

Download Request

Complete the details for the certificate, and click the **Download Request** button to save the certificate signing request.

This signing request should be submitted to your certificate authority (CA). The CA signs the request to create the server's digital certificate.

Once you have the certificate, you need to import it to set it up for use with EAP. See [“Importing a Server Certificate”](#).



Importing a Server Certificate

To import a digital certificate and its private key, go to **RADIUS > Authentication > EAP & 802.1X** and click the **Import Server Certificate** command link. The Import Server Certificate form opens.

Import Server Certificate

* Import Format:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> PKCS12 Certificate File (.p12 or .pfx) <input type="radio"/> Individual Files
-------------------------	---


Continue

A digital certificate may be imported from either the PKCS#12 format, which is a single file containing one or more certificates and an encrypted private key, or from three individual files for the certificate, private key (optionally encrypted with a passphrase), and the root certificate authority.

Complete the form with the details for your certificate, and click **Continue** to proceed to Step 2.

Installing a Server Certificate from a Certificate Authority

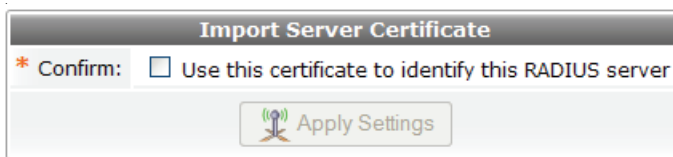
The **Install Server Certificate** form is used to install a digital certificate you have obtained from a third-party certificate authority. This certificate should correspond to a certificate signing request that you previously created using the **New Certificate Request** form.

Select the certificate file and the certificate authority's root certificate, and click the  **Upload Certificate** button.

Installing an Imported Server Certificate

In step 2, the details of the imported RADIUS server certificate and its issuer are shown, including the certificate's validity period.

Select the **Use this certificate to identify this RADIUS server** check box and click the  **Apply Settings** button to complete the import process and configure the EAP server certificate



After importing the certificate, the RADIUS server will need to be restarted to complete the changes.



Exporting Server Certificates

The **Export Server Certificate** form is used to export the RADIUS server's digital certificate, or the certificate authority's root certificate, in several different formats.

Select one of these options to export a certificate file:

- **Server certificate and CA issuer certificate (PKCS#7)** – use this option to download a file containing the certificates for the CA and the server.
- **Server certificate chain including private key (PKCS#12)** – use this option if you are backing up the server's certificate, or moving it to another server. A passphrase is strongly recommended to protect the private key.
- **Server certificate only** – use this option to download just the RADIUS server's certificate, in either PKCS#7, Base-64 encoded (PEM), or binary (DER) formats.
- **CA issuer certificate only** – use this option to download the root certificate for the certificate authority.

PEAP Sample Configuration

To enable the common case of PEAPv0/MS-CHAPv2 (broadly supported by all wireless clients that implement 802.1X), follow the process described below:

1. Create or import a RADIUS server certificate. See [“Creating a Server Certificate and Self-Signed Certificate Authority”](#) and [“Importing a Server Certificate”](#) in this chapter for details.
2. Select the appropriate PEAP options in the **EAP Configuration** form, as shown below:

EAP Configuration

* Supported EAP Types:

- ☐ EAP-MD5
MD5-Challenge authentication method specified in RFC 3748.
- ☒ EAP-MSCHAPv2
MSCHAPv2 authentication method requiring a username and password.
This EAP type must be enabled to use PEAP.
- ☒ EAP-TLS
Transport Layer Security method supporting mutual authentication using digital certificates.
This EAP type must be enabled to use EAP-TTLS or PEAP.
- ☐ EAP-TTLS
Tunneled TLS providing server authentication using a digital certificate.
- ☒ PEAP
Protected EAP providing server authentication using a digital certificate.
Recommended for Windows wireless clients.

Select the types of EAP to be enabled in the RADIUS server.

* Default EAP Type: EAP-MSCHAPv2

Select a default EAP type to use when the server receives an EAP-Identity response.
The recommended and default value is EAP-MD5.

Save Changes

- Click the **Save Changes** button, and restart the RADIUS Server to apply the configuration.
- You may verify that the EAP configuration is loaded by checking for a certain startup message on the **RADIUS Server Control** screen:
Tue Nov 17 01:04:05 2009 : Info: rlm_eap_tls: Loading the certificate file as a chain
- The certificate authority used to issue the server's certificate must be exported. To do this, click the **Export Server Certificate** command link. In the **Export Server Certificate** form, select "CA issuer certificate only" and use the default PKCS#7 container format.

Export Server Certificate

* Export: CA issuer certificate only
Select the item to be exported.

* Format: PKCS#7 Certificates (.p7b)
Select the file format for the exported item.

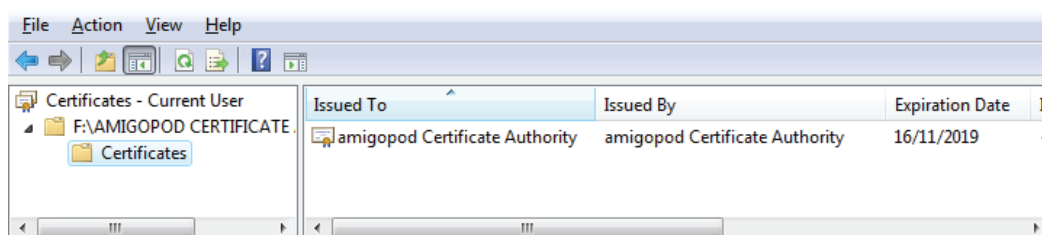
Download File

- Click the **Download File** button and a file named **Amigopod Certificate Authority.p7b** will be downloaded (the precise name depends on the common name for the CA certificate).
- This file must be imported as a trusted root certification authority on any client wishing to authenticate using this RADIUS Server. The reason for this is that the server's identity must be established via a trusted root CA in order for authentication to proceed. When using a well-known third party CA, this step does not need to be performed as the necessary trust relationship already exists in most clients.

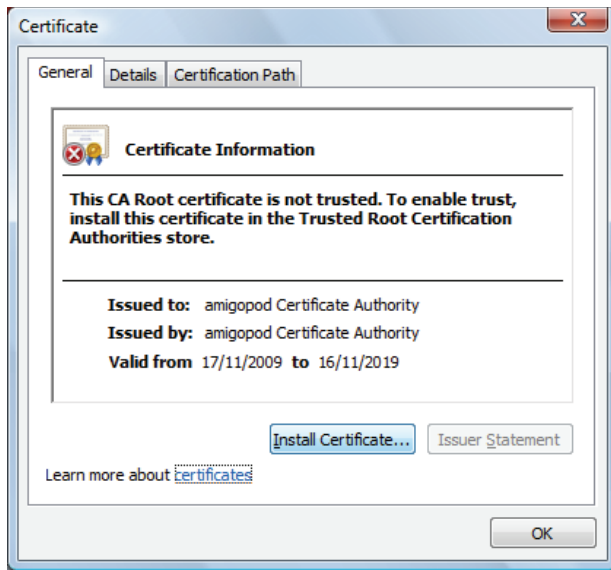
Importing a Root Certificate – Microsoft Windows Vista and Windows 7

The following steps may be used to import a root certificate on Windows Vista or Windows 7 from a ".p7b" file exported using the **Export Server Certificate** form:

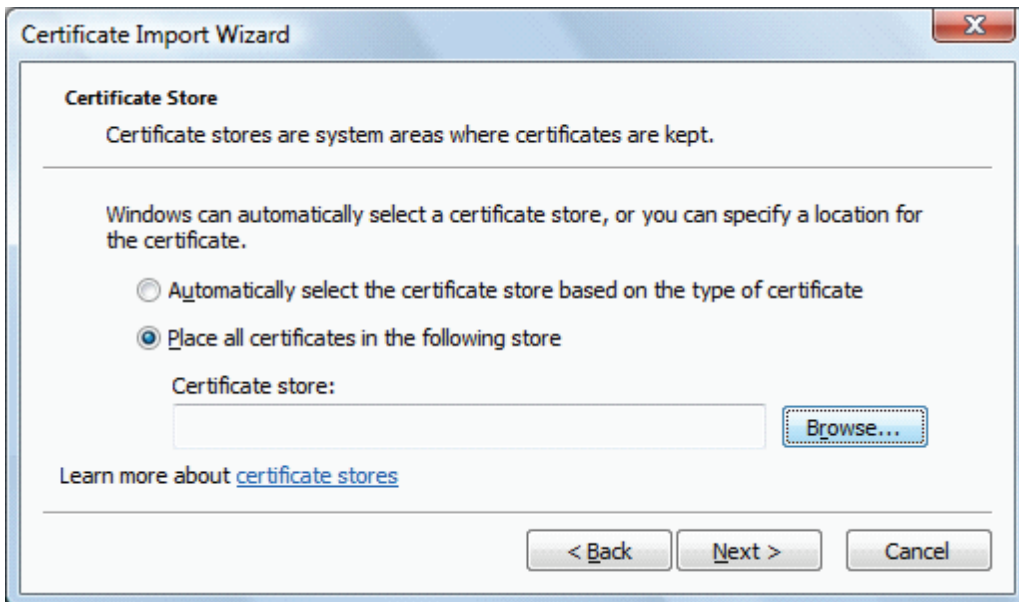
- Open the .p7b file from Windows Explorer:



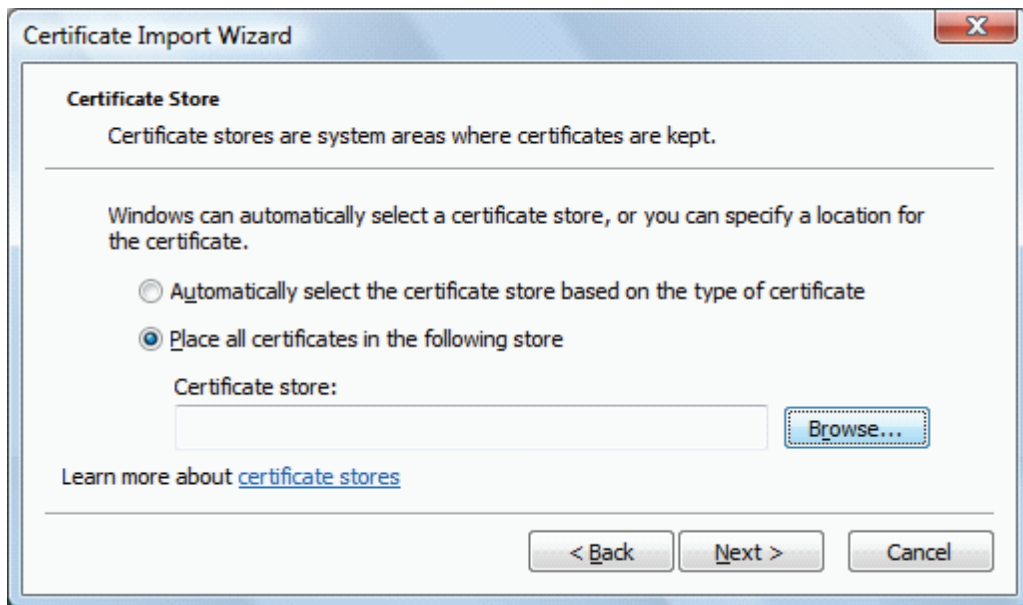
2. Select the certificate in the list. Right-click it and choose **Open**:



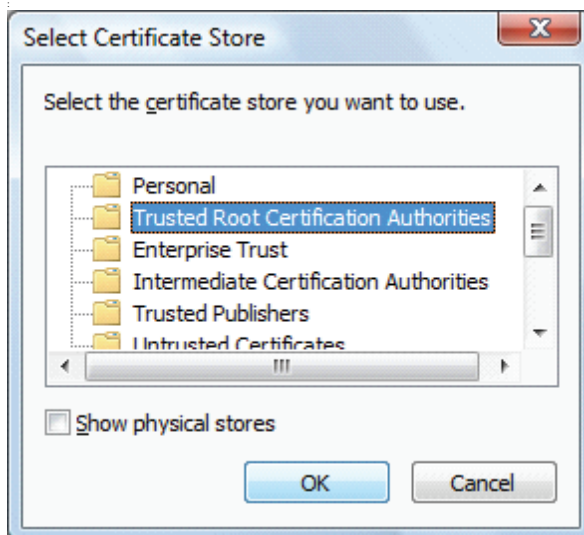
3. Click the **Install Certificate...** button. The Certificate Import Wizard appears



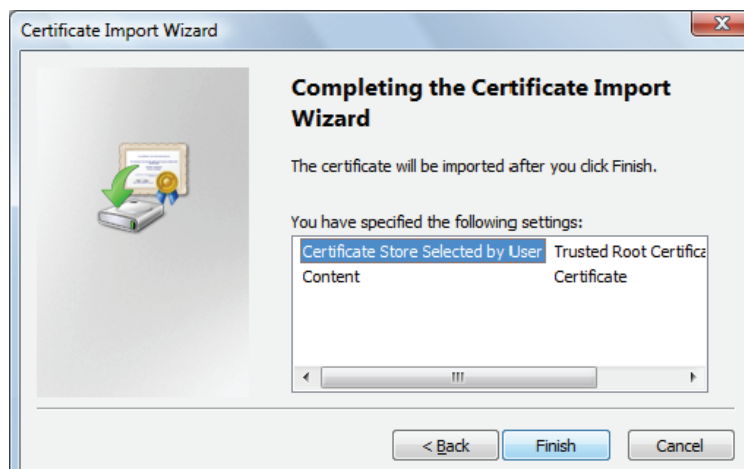
4. Click **Next**. The **Certificate Store** form is displayed.



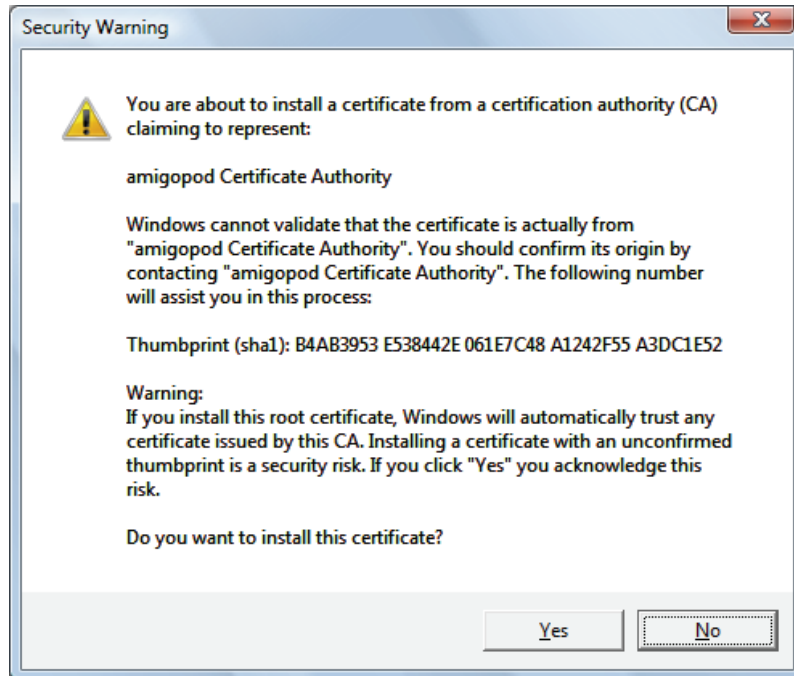
5. Click the **Browse** button to select the **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** store



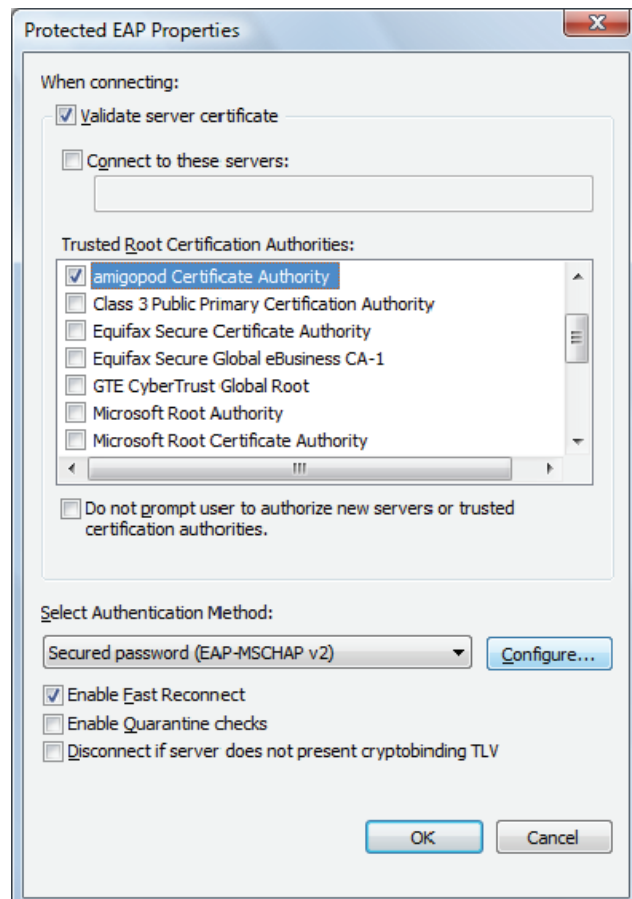
6. Click **OK**, and then click **Next**. The last page of the Certificate Import Wizard will be displayed.



- Once you have reached the end of the wizard, click **Finish**. A security warning dialog box will be displayed, indicating that the root certificate authorities store is about to be updated



- To make use of the imported root certificate, make sure that the CA is specified as a Trusted Root Certification Authority for the wireless network connection that is using PEAP.





Active Directory Domain Services

To perform certain types of user authentication, such as using the MS-CHAPv2 protocol to verify a username and password, the RADIUS server must first be joined to an Active Directory domain.

For information on Proxy RADIUS, LDAP, and local certificate authority external authentication servers, see [External Authentication Servers](#).


To view the current domain information, join or leave a domain, or perform authentication tests for user accounts in the domain, use the **Active Directory Services** command link on the **RADIUS > Authentication** page.



Active Directory Services

Join or leave an Active Directory domain, or test user authentication.

The Domain Summary table shows the current domain settings. Click the [Show details](#) link to see advanced information about the domain.

Domain Summary	
Current State:	 Joined to a domain
Domain Information	
Domain Name:	amigo2008.local
Kerberos Realm:	AMIGO2008.LOCAL
LDAP Context:	dc=AMIGO2008,dc=LOCAL
Details:	Show details



Joining an Active Directory Domain

To start the two-step process to join the domain, click the **Join Domain** command link on the **RADIUS > Authentication > Active Directory Services** page.



Join Domain

Make this server part of your Active Directory domain.


The **Join Active Directory Domain** form is displayed.

Join Active Directory Domain	
* Domain Name:	<input type="text" value="amigo2008.local"/>
	<small>Enter the DNS name of the Active Directory domain.</small>
Next Step	

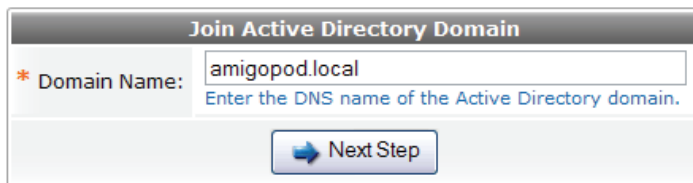
The process has built-in troubleshooting assistance, which can help with much of the necessary configuration:

Troubleshooting Guidelines

✗ The system's DNS domain name ('localdomain') does not match the Active Directory domain name.

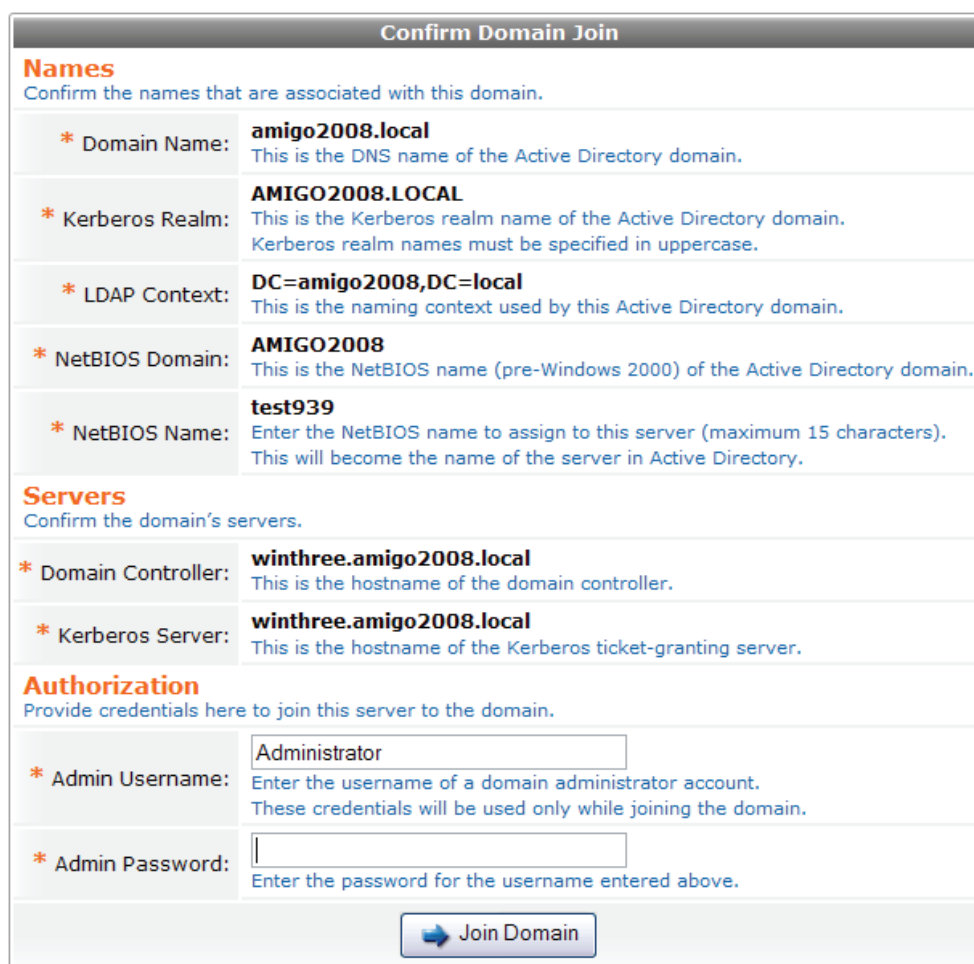
➡ Check the system's hostname at  [System Hostname](#).

i Hint: You might want to set the system's hostname to **amigopod.amigopod.local**.



The dialog box is titled "Join Active Directory Domain". It contains a single text input field labeled "* Domain Name:" with the value "amigopod.local". Below the input field is a blue link that says "Enter the DNS name of the Active Directory domain." At the bottom of the dialog is a button with a right-pointing arrow and the text "Next Step".


When the server's DNS and network settings are correctly configured, all the necessary domain-related information is automatically detected.



The dialog box is titled "Confirm Domain Join". It is divided into three sections: "Names", "Servers", and "Authorization".

- Names**
Confirm the names that are associated with this domain.
 - * Domain Name: **amigo2008.local**
This is the DNS name of the Active Directory domain.
 - * Kerberos Realm: **AMIGO2008.LOCAL**
This is the Kerberos realm name of the Active Directory domain. Kerberos realm names must be specified in uppercase.
 - * LDAP Context: **DC=amigo2008,DC=local**
This is the naming context used by this Active Directory domain.
 - * NetBIOS Domain: **AMIGO2008**
This is the NetBIOS name (pre-Windows 2000) of the Active Directory domain.
 - * NetBIOS Name: **test939**
Enter the NetBIOS name to assign to this server (maximum 15 characters). This will become the name of the server in Active Directory.
- Servers**
Confirm the domain's servers.
 - * Domain Controller: **winthree.amigo2008.local**
This is the hostname of the domain controller.
 - * Kerberos Server: **winthree.amigo2008.local**
This is the hostname of the Kerberos ticket-granting server.
- Authorization**
Provide credentials here to join this server to the domain.
 - * Admin Username:
Enter the username of a domain administrator account. These credentials will be used only while joining the domain.
 - * Admin Password:
Enter the password for the username entered above.

At the bottom of the dialog is a button with a right-pointing arrow and the text "Join Domain".

Use the  **Edit Settings** link at the top of this page if any of the automatically detected settings need to be modified.

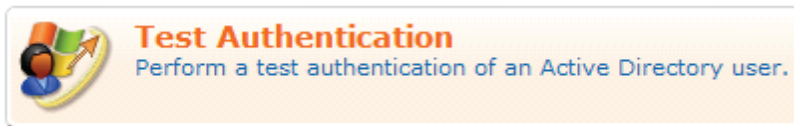
Joining the server to the Active Directory domain then requires entering the username and password for a domain administrator account. Click the ➡ **Join Domain** button to complete the process.

Once the domain has been joined, the status is available on the Active Directory Services page.



Testing Active Directory User Authentication

To verify that the domain has been joined successfully, click the **Test Authentication** command link on the **RADIUS > Authentication > Active Directory** page.



Provide a username and password for a user in the domain to verify that authentication is working.

✓ Authentication test was successful.

Test Authentication	
Domain Name:	amigo2008.local
* Username:	<input type="text" value="demouser"/> <small>The visitor account username for the authentication test.</small>
* Password:	<input type="password" value="••••••••"/> <small>The visitor account password for the authentication test.</small>
* Authentication:	<input type="text" value="Plain text password"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Select the authentication method to test.</small>
<input type="button" value="Test Authentication"/>	

The following options are available in the Authentication drop-down list:

- **MS-CHAPv2 – Encrypted password** – Use this option to encrypt the user's password using the MS-CHAPv2 authentication method and verify it with the server. A successful authentication using this method can only be performed when the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance has joined the domain.
- **Plain text password** – Use this option to perform a plain-text verification of the user's password.




Configuring Active Directory Domain Authentication


After joining the domain, an additional step is required in order to perform user authentication.

Domain Summary

⚠ The RADIUS server cannot authenticate user accounts in Active Directory until a domain username and password is provided.  [Configure Active Directory authentication](#)

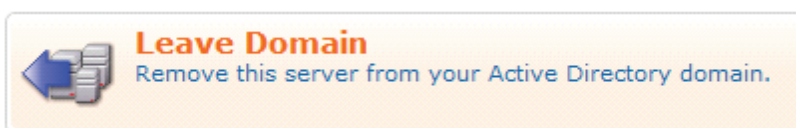
Domain Summary
Current State:  Joined to a domain
Domain Information

The username and password of a domain user is required to perform an LDAP bind to the Active Directory domain controller, so that LDAP search operations can be performed for other user accounts in the directory. The credentials provided do not need to be those of a domain administrator; a restricted user account may be provided here. Only user lookup operations are performed with this user account.

To provide the domain credentials that will be used when authenticating via LDAP, click the  **Configure Active Directory authentication** link on the **RADIUS > Active Directory Services** page .

Leaving an Active Directory Domain

To remove the server from the domain, click the **Leave Domain** command link on the **RADIUS > Authentication > Active Directory** page.



As with joining the domain, the credentials for a domain administrator are required to perform this operation.

Leave Active Directory Domain	
* Admin Username:	<input type="text" value="Administrator"/> <small>Enter the username of a domain administrator account.</small>
* Admin Password:	<input type="password" value="••••••••"/> <small>Enter the password for the username entered above.</small>
* Confirm:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Leave the domain amigo2008.local
<input type="button" value="Leave Domain"/>	

Provide these credentials in the **Leave Active Directory Domain** form and click the  **Leave Domain** button.



External Authentication Servers

Many networks have more than one place where user credentials are stored. Networks that have different types of users, geographically separate systems, or networks created by integrating different types of systems are all situations where user account information can be spread across several places.

However, network access equipment is often shared between all of these users. This requires that different authentication sources be integrated for use by the network infrastructure.

The Amigopod RADIUS server supports multiple **external authentication servers**, allowing user accounts from different places to be authenticated using a common industry-standard interface (RADIUS requests).

Use the **Authentication** command link on the **RADIUS** page to create and manage authentication servers, and to modify system settings related to user authentication.





To perform certain types of user authentication, such as using the MS-CHAPv2 protocol to verify a username and password, the RADIUS server must first be joined to an Active Directory domain. See [Active Directory Domain Services](#) for more information.



Types of External Authentication Server

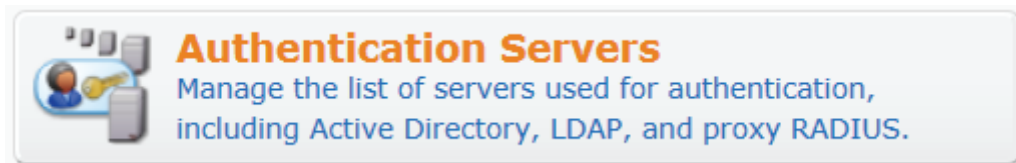
An authentication server may be one of five types:

-  **Local user database** — User accounts defined in Amigopod Guest Manager.









-  **Microsoft Active Directory** — User accounts defined in a forest or domain and authenticated by the domain controller. Both user and machine accounts may be authenticated. Additionally, support is provided for authenticating users with a supplied username of either “DOMAIN\user” or “user”.
-  **LDAP server** (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) — User accounts stored in a directory.
-  **Proxy RADIUS server** — User accounts authenticated by another RADIUS server.
-  **Local Certificate Authority**—The client provides their own local certificate authority to issue private certificates for users within its organization. Visitor accounts are authenticated through EAP-TLS, and the authorization method can be configured.

Managing External Authentication Servers

To view the list of external RADIUS authentication servers and create, edit, enable or disable, delete, test, view user roles or configure EAP for them, go to **RADIUS > Authentication > Authentication Servers**.



The RADIUS Authentication Servers page lists all available sources that may be used for authentication.

 Quick Help		
Name	Type	Rank
 Local User Database Visitor accounts managed with Guest Manager, with user roles for authorization.		
 Edit  Disable  User Roles  Test Authentication		
 Local Certificate Authority Visitor accounts authenticated via EAP-TLS using a client certificate.		
2 items  Reload 20 rows per page		

Changing the properties of an authentication server requires restarting the RADIUS server. When this is necessary, a link is displayed at the top of the page.

The Test Authentication option for a server may be used to check the connection to an authentication server, or verify the authorization rules that have been configured. For Local Certificate Authority external authentication servers, additional testing options are included to simulate EAP-TLS authentication with a client certificate.

For information on editing an external authentication server, see “[Configuring Properties for External Authentication Servers](#).”

For information on testing an external authentication server, see “[Testing External Authentication Servers](#).”

Configuring Properties for External Authentication Servers

To configure the settings for an external authentication server, click the server’s **Edit** link on the RADIUS Authentication Servers page. The server’s row expands to include the Edit Authentication Server form.

Name	Type
Local User Database Visitor accounts managed with Guest Manager, with user roles for authorization.	local 10
Edit Disable User Roles Test Authentication	

Edit Authentication Server

* Name:

Local User Database

Enter a name to identify this RADIUS authentication server.

Description:

Visitor accounts managed with Guest Manager, with user roles for authorization.

Enter comments about this RADIUS authentication server.

Enabled:

☒ Enable RADIUS authentication using this server

* Rank:

10

Enter the rank number of this RADIUS authentication server. Authentication servers are checked in order of increasing rank.

Save Changes

Cancel

The top part of the form contains basic properties for the external authentication server.

The middle part of the form differs depending on the type of authentication being performed:

- **Active Directory Authentication Server**— See “[Configuring an Active Directory External Authentication Server](#)”
- **LDAP Authentication Server**— See “[Configuring an LDAP External Authentication Server](#)”
- **Proxy RADIUS Authentication Server**— See “[Configuring a Proxy RADIUS External Authentication Server](#)”
- **Local Certificate Authority Authentication Server**— See “[Configuring a Local Certificate Authority External Authentication Server](#)”

The bottom part of the form controls the authorization settings for this server. See “[Configuring Authorization for External Authentication Servers](#)” in this chapter for details.

Configuring an Active Directory External Authentication Server

Microsoft Active Directory user accounts are defined in a forest or domain and authenticated by the domain controller. Both user and machine accounts may be authenticated. Additionally, support is provided for authenticating users with a supplied username of either “DOMAIN\user” or “user”. For more information on managing Active Directory domains, see [Active Directory Domain Services](#).

For Active Directory external authentication servers, the following fields are displayed in the Edit Authentication Server form. Most of the settings for the authentication server are automatically detected when joining the domain; however, a Bind Identity (username) and Bind Password are required in order to authenticate users against the directory

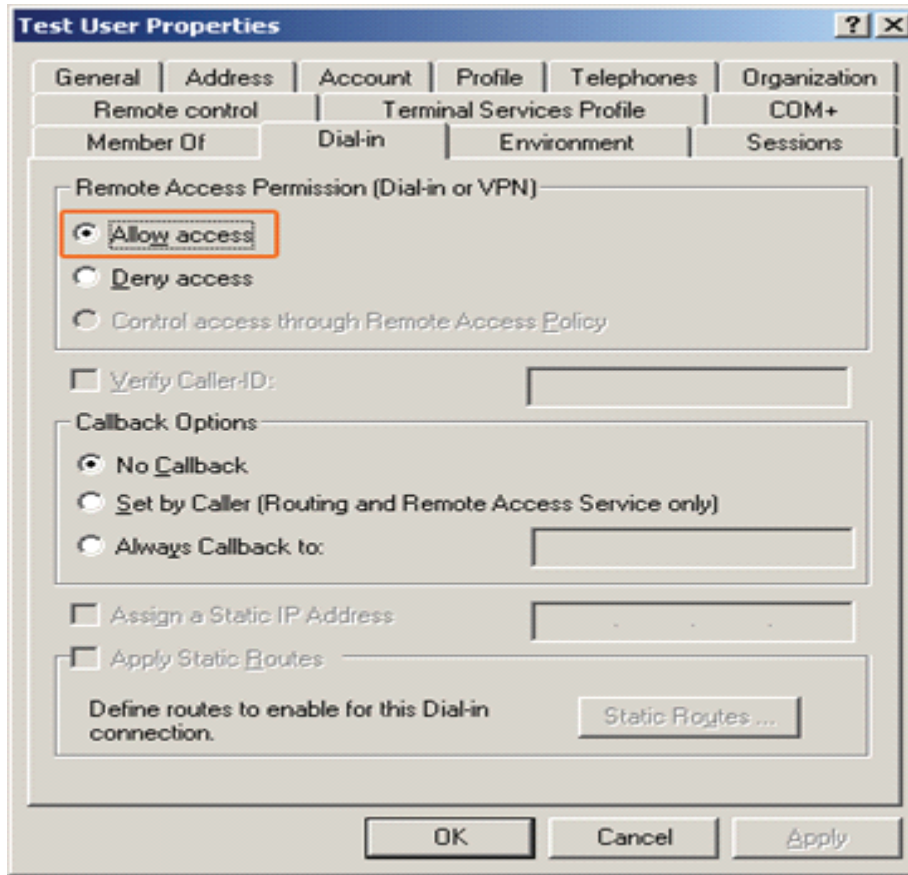
Active Directory Authentication	
Domain Name:	amigo2008.local <small>This is the DNS name of the Active Directory domain.</small>
* NetBIOS Domain:	<input type="text" value="AMIGO2008"/> <small>This is the NetBIOS name (pre-Windows 2000) of the Active Directory domain.</small>
* LDAP Server:	<input type="text" value="winthree.amigo2008.local"/> <small>Enter the hostname or IP address of the domain controller (LDAP server).</small>
* Port Number:	<input type="text" value="389"/> <small>Enter the port number of the LDAP service. Use 389 for standard LDAP, or 636 for LDAP over SSL.</small>
* Bind Identity:	<input type="text"/> <small>Enter the username credentials to use when binding to the directory. This can be in the format 'username', 'username@domain', or an LDAP distinguished name (DN).</small>
* Bind Password:	<input type="password"/> <small>Enter the password for binding to the directory.</small>
* Base DN:	<input type="text" value="CN=Users,DC=amigo2008,DC=local"/> <small>Enter the Distinguished Name (DN) of the root of the search tree. When authenticating a user, this tree will be searched.</small>
Advanced Options:	<div><input type="text"/></div> <small>Additional LDAP options. Enter name = value pairs on separate lines. Comments may be entered on lines starting with a "#".</small>

- **NetBIOS Domain** – automatically detected when joining the domain.
- **LDAP Server** and **Port Number** – the hostname or IP address of the domain controller, with the corresponding port number of the LDAP service.
- **Bind Identity** and **Bind Password** – credentials used to bind to the directory.
- **Base DN** – the LDAP distinguished name of the root of the search tree. This is typically the Users container within the directory, but may be set to the root of the directory (for example, DC=example,DC=com) in order to authenticate both user and machine accounts.
- **Advanced Options** – additional options controlling authentication against the directory.

The following advanced options may be required in several common situations and are documented below:

- **access_attr_used_for_allow** = yes: Determines if the access_attr LDAP attribute is used to allow access or to deny access to a user.
- **access_attr** = msNPAllowDialin: The LDAP attribute name to be used for authorization checks.

The default value for this attribute corresponds to the Active Directory “Remote Access Permission” setting.



The default settings for the “access_attr” and “access_attr_used_for_allow” settings mean that only users with the Remote Access Permission selected above will be authorized.

To authorize all users in Active Directory, regardless of the individual user account settings for remote access permission, use the following settings:

```
access_attr = nonexistentAttribute
access_attr_used_for_allow = no
```

Additional details about the precise operation of these parameters are as follows:

If access_attr_used_for_allow is “yes”, then the access_attr attribute is checked for existence in the user object.

- If the attribute exists and is not set to FALSE, the user is permitted access.
- If the attribute exists and is set to FALSE, the user is denied access.
- If the attribute does not exist, the user is denied access.

If access_attr_used_for_allow is “no”, then the access_attr attribute is checked for existence in the user object.

- If the attribute exists, the user is denied access.
- If the attribute does not exist, the user is permitted access.

ldap_connections_number = 5

The number of concurrent connections to make to the LDAP server.

timeout = 4

The number of seconds to wait for the LDAP query to finish.

timelimit = 3

The number of seconds the LDAP server has to process the query (server-side time limit).

net_timeout = 1

The number of seconds to wait for a response from the LDAP server (network failures).

use_mppe = yes

If this option is set to 'yes', MS-CHAP authentication will return the RADIUS attribute MS-CHAP-MPPE-Keys for MS-CHAPv1, and MS-MPPE-Recv-Key/MS-MPPE-Send-Key for MS-CHAPv2.

require_encryption = yes

If 'use_mppe' is enabled, 'require_encryption' makes encryption moderate.

require_strong = yes

'require_strong' always requires 128 bit encryption.

with_ntdomain_hack = yes

Windows sends the RADIUS server a username in the form of DOMAIN\user, but sends the challenge response based on only the user portion. Enable this option to handle this behavior correctly.

ntlm_auth_domain = *domain name*

Domain name to provide when performing an NTLM authentication; this is only required in certain circumstances—for example, authentication of users in a network using multiple domains and RADIUS servers.

For additional settings, See [“LDAP Module Configuration”](#) in the Reference chapter. The LDAP module options that are described here. Note that to set an advanced option for an Active Directory external authentication server, specify the LDAP module option name **without** the “ldap.” prefix.

Configuring an LDAP External Authentication Server

For **LDAP** external authentication servers, the following fields are displayed in the Edit Authentication Server form.

LDAP Authentication	
* LDAP Server:	<input type="text"/> Enter the hostname or IP address of the LDAP server.
* Port Number:	<input type="text" value="389"/> Enter the port number of the LDAP service. Use 389 for standard LDAP, or 636 for LDAP over SSL.
* Security:	<input type="text" value="Automatic - based on port number"/> Select a security method for the connection to the LDAP server.
* Bind Identity:	<input type="text"/> Enter the username credentials to use when binding to the directory. This should be an LDAP distinguished name (DN).
* Bind Password:	<input type="password"/> Enter the password for binding to the directory.
* Base DN:	<input type="text"/> Enter the Distinguished Name (DN) of the root of the search tree. When authenticating a user, this tree will be searched.
* Username Attribute:	<input type="text" value="uid"/> The name of an LDAP attribute used to match the user name.
LDAP Filter:	<input type="text"/> An optional LDAP filter expression that may be used to restrict the search for a user.
Advanced Options:	<input type="text"/> Additional LDAP options. Enter name = value pairs on separate lines. Comments may be entered on lines starting with a "#".

- **LDAP Server and Port Number** – the hostname or IP address of the LDAP server, with the corresponding port number of the LDAP service.
- **Security** – select from one of these options:
 - **Automatic – based on port number** – LDAP connections to port 636 are encrypted using TLS, while all other port numbers use an unencrypted LDAP connection.
 - **Use Start TLS operation to upgrade to a secure connection** – this option, when it is supported by the LDAP server, allows a standard LDAP connection on port 389 to be upgraded to a connection supporting TLS.
 - **Use TLS to connect securely** – enforce a TLS connection regardless of the port number, and never perform unencrypted LDAP.
- **Certificate Check** – displayed when one of the TLS security options is selected. See “[Managing Certificates for External Authentication Servers](#)” in this chapter for information about installing digital certificates for external authentication servers. The certificate verification options that may be selected are:
 - **Do not request or verify the server’s certificate** – perform no verification of the server’s identity.
 - **Request the server’s certificate but do not verify it** – check the server’s identity, but do not fail authentications if the server’s identity cannot be verified.
 - **Require a valid server certificate (recommended)** – check the server’s identity, and fail authentications if the server’s identity cannot be verified.
- **Bind Identity and Bind Password** – credentials used to bind to the directory.
- **Base DN** – the LDAP distinguished name of the root of the search tree. This is typically a user’s container within the directory, but may be different depending on the directory’s schema.
- **Username Attribute** – the LDAP attribute that corresponds to the username. A filter expression is built that matches the value of the RADIUS Access-Request’s User-Name attribute with this attribute value in the directory.

- **LDAP Filter** – an optional LDAP filter expression that may be used to restrict the matching, over and above the standard filtering applied by usernames. For example, specifying the expression (objectClass=user) will ensure that only LDAP objects with the specified type will be matched.
- **Advanced Options** – additional options controlling authentication against the directory. For information about additional LDAP configuration options, including enabling Novell eDirectory support, see “[LDAP Module Configuration](#)” in the [Reference](#) chapter.

The following advanced options may be required in several common situations and are documented below:

ldap_opt_referrals = yes

If set to “yes”, the directory may provide an LDAP referral from the directory to answer the request. This option must be set to “no” if you are contacting an Active Directory LDAP server.

access_attr_used_for_allow = yes

access_attr = *empty*

To configure the authorization method for an LDAP external authentication server, see “[Configuring Authorization for External Authentication Servers](#).”

See “[Configuring Properties for External Authentication Servers](#)” for a description of properties in this chapter.

For additional settings, refer to the LDAP module options. See “[LDAP Module Configuration](#)” in the [Reference](#) chapter. Note that to set an advanced option for an LDAP external authentication server, specify the LDAP module option name **without** the “ldap.” prefix.

Configuring a Proxy RADIUS External Authentication Server

For Proxy RADIUS external authentication servers, the following fields are displayed in the Edit Authentication Server form.

Proxy RADIUS Authentication	
* RADIUS Server:	<input type="text"/> <small>Enter the hostname or IP address of the RADIUS server.</small>
* Port Number:	<input type="text"/> <small>Enter the port number of the RADIUS authentication service.</small>
* Shared Secret:	<input type="text"/> <small>Enter the shared secret for the RADIUS server.</small>
Advanced Options:	<div><input type="text"/></div> <small>Additional proxy options. Enter name = value pairs on separate lines. Comments may be entered on lines starting with a “#”.</small>

- **RADIUS Server** and **Port Number** – the hostname or IP address of the RADIUS server, with the corresponding port number of the RADIUS authentication service (typically 1812, but can also be 1645).
- **Shared Secret** – the shared secret used by the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance as a client of the proxy RADIUS server.
- **Advanced Options** – additional options controlling authentication against the proxy server. No advanced options are currently defined.

To configure the authorization method for a Proxy RADIUS external authentication server, see “[Configuring Authorization for External Authentication Servers](#).”

Configuring a Local Certificate Authority External Authentication Server

For Local Certificate Authority authentication servers, the following fields are displayed in the Edit Authentication Server form.

Edit Authentication Server	
* Name:	Local Certificate Authority <small>Enter a name to identify this RADIUS authentication server.</small>
Description:	Visitor accounts authenticated via EAP-TLS using a client certificate. <small>Enter comments about this RADIUS authentication server.</small>
Enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable RADIUS authentication using this server
* Rank:	20 <small>Enter the rank number of this RADIUS authentication server. Authentication servers are checked in order of increasing rank.</small>
Authorization	
* Method:	Use the common name of the client certificate to match a local user account <small>Select the method to use to determine if authenticated users are authorized.</small>
Save Changes	

1. In the **Name** field, enter a name to uniquely identify this server.
2. (Optional) You can use the **Description** field to include additional information.
3. (Optional) To enable RADIUS authentication for this server, mark the check box in the **Enabled** row.
4. In the **Rank** row, enter a number to specify the ranking order for this server. Authentication servers are checked in order of increasing rank.
5. Under the Authorization heading, choose an authorization method from the **Method** drop-down list. Method options available for Local Certificate Authority servers are:
 - No authorization - Authenticate only
 - Use the common name of the certificate to match a local user account
 - Assign a fixed user role (Contractor, Employee, or Guest)
 - Use PHP code to assign a user role

For information about these authorization methods, see “[Configuring Authorization for External Authentication Servers.](#)”

The Test Authentication form for Local Certificate Authority servers includes EAP-TLS settings. For information on testing a Local Certificate Authority authentication server, see “[Testing External Authentication Servers.](#)”

For Local Certificate Authority authentication servers, the RADIUS Authentication Server form also includes a link to the Extensible Authentication Protocol Configuration page, where you can manage EAP configuration settings and view certificate information for the server. See “[EAP and 802.1X Authentication](#)” in this chapter.


Configuring Authorization for External Authentication Servers

The level of authorized access an authenticated user can have is controlled by the external authentication server’s authorization method. To configure a server’s authorization method, use the options under the Authorization heading of the RADIUS server’s Edit Authentication form.

For more information about authorization methods, including examples, see “[About Authorization Methods in External Authentication Servers](#)” in this chapter.


- **No authorization—Authenticate only** may be used to remove all RADIUS attributes not related to authentication

Authorization

* Method: 
Select the method to use to determine if authenticated users are authorized.


- The RADIUS server will return an Access-Accept or Access-Reject message indicating the result of the authentication attempt.
- **Use the common name of the client certificate to match a local user account** may be specified for users authenticated via EAP-TLS on a client's local certificate server.

Authorization

* Method: 
Select the method to use to determine if authenticated users are authorized.


- The RADIUS server will return an Access-Accept or Access-Reject message indicating the result of the authentication attempt.
- **Use attributes from Proxy RADIUS server** may be used with a Proxy RADIUS external authentication server.


Authorization

* Method: 
Select the method to use to determine if authenticated users are authorized.

- The RADIUS server passes through the Access-Accept or Access-Reject message from the proxy server, as well as all RADIUS attributes returned by the proxy server.
- Use this option when authorization is performed entirely by the proxy RADIUS server.
- **Assign a fixed user role** may be used to map all users authenticated by an external authentication server into a single RADIUS user role.


Authorization

* Method: 
Select the method to use to determine if authenticated users are authorized.

* User Role: 
All authenticated users will be authorized using this role.

- The RADIUS server will return an Access-Reject message if the user authentication fails.
- If the authentication is successful, the user is authorized using the specified role. The RADIUS server will return an Access-Reject message if the authorization fails.
- The RADIUS server will return an Access-Accept message that includes the corresponding attributes from the user role if the authentication and authorization steps are both successful.
- **Use PHP code to assign a user role (Advanced)** may be used to control the mapping between the user account returned by an external authentication server and the RADIUS user role.


Authorization

* Method: 
Select the method to use to determine if authenticated users are authorized.

* Code:
Enter PHP authorization code here.
 This code must return a role ID, given a user object passed in \$user.

- The RADIUS server will return an Access-Reject message if the user authentication fails.

- If the authentication is successful, the authorization code is evaluated. The user object returned from the external authentication server is available as the variable **\$user**.
- The PHP code should return one of the following values:
 - The ID of a user role (that is, an integer value) to assign that role to the external user.
 - NULL to indicate no role (that is, authentication only).
 - FALSE or a standard result type such as `array('error' => 1, 'message' => 'description of failure')` to indicate an authorization failure
- Authorization of the user then continues using the specified role ID. The RADIUS server will return an Access-Reject message if the authorization fails.
- The RADIUS server will return an Access-Accept message that includes the corresponding attributes from the user role if the authentication and authorization steps are both successful.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to complete the creation or modification of the external authentication server.



You will be prompted to restart the RADIUS server after making configuration changes affecting external authentication.

About Authorization Methods in External Authentication Servers

The level of authorized access an authenticated user can have is controlled by the external authentication server's authorization method.

There are two aspects to user authorization:

- Is the user allowed? Yes/no decisions can be made in the context of authorization. Examples: user account not enabled; user account expired; user account exceeded a traffic quota within a certain time window.
- What are the user's permitted limits? These are not yes/no decisions, but might involve a calculation based on previous usage (for example, via the accounting-based authorization functions), or based on properties of a user account (for example, maximum session lifetime is based on the expiration time for the account)

Each server's authorization method can be configured. The authorization methods available vary according to the type of authentication server:

- **No authorization — Authenticate only** may be used to provide a basic user authentication service. The RADIUS server will respond with an Access-Accept or Access-Reject for the authentication attempt. Only RADIUS attributes directly related to user authentication will be returned; all other attributes will be ignored.
- **Use role assigned to local user** is the only authorization method available for the local user database. If the user's authentication attempt is successful, the RADIUS server will respond with an Access-Accept message that includes the RADIUS attributes defined for the user's role.
- **Use the common name of the client certificate to match a local user account** may be specified for users authenticated via EAP-TLS on a client's local certificate server.
- **Use attributes from Proxy RADIUS server** is an authorization method available only for Proxy RADIUS servers. The RADIUS attributes returned by the external RADIUS server are returned unmodified.
- **Assign a fixed user role** may be used to assign all authenticated users to a particular user role. If the user's authentication attempt is successful, the RADIUS server will respond with an Access-Accept message that includes the RADIUS attributes defined for the fixed role that has been selected for this authentication server.

- **Use PHP code to assign a user role (Advanced)** may be selected to return a role ID for users authenticated via EAP-TLS on a client's local certificate server. The PHP authorization code is entered on the Edit Authentication Server form.

The RADIUS Authentication diagnostic can be used to demonstrate the difference between the various authorization methods.

To use the diagnostic, navigate to **RADIUS Services > Server Control** and click the **Test RADIUS Authentication** command link. Enter the username and password for a user that is externally authenticated.

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Network Diagnostic Tools". It contains several input fields and a "Run" button. The fields are:

- * Diagnostic:** A dropdown menu with "RADIUS Authentication" selected.
- * Username:** A text box containing "demouser". Below it is a blue link: "The visitor account username for the authentication test."
- * Password:** A text box with masked characters (dots). Below it is a blue link: "The visitor account password for the authentication test."
- NAS IP Address:** An empty text box. Below it is a blue link: "The value to use as the NAS IP address."
- NAS Port:** A text box containing "0". Below it is a blue link: "The value to use as the NAS port."
- Extra Arguments:** A large empty text area. Below it is a blue link: "Enter a list of arguments to send, using the format Name = Value. One pair per line."

 At the bottom right of the form is a blue button with a right-pointing arrow and the text "Run".

Click the **Run** button to perform RADIUS authentication and display the results:

- With authorization method **No authorization – Authenticate only:**

```
Sending Access-Request of id 165 to 127.0.0.1 port 1812
User-Name = "demouser"
User-Password = "XXXXXXXXX"
rad_recv: Access-Accept packet from host 127.0.0.1:1812, id=165, length=20
```

Note that in this case, no RADIUS attributes are returned. The Access-Accept or Access-Reject result indicates whether the user was successfully authenticated.

- With authorization method **Assign a fixed user role:**

```
Sending Access-Request of id 122 to 127.0.0.1 port 1812
User-Name = "demouser"
User-Password = "XXXXXXXXX"
rad_recv: Access-Accept packet from host 127.0.0.1:1812, id=122, length=27
Reply-Message = "Guest"
```

Note that in this case, the RADIUS attribute returned (Reply-Message) corresponds to the user role selected.

- With authorization method **Use PHP code to assign a user role (Advanced)** – more complex authorization rules can be implemented to specify which role to assign to an authenticated user. Authorization can use any of the available properties of the user account, as well as taking into account other factors such as the time of day, previous usage, and more.

Advanced Authorization — Example 1

This example covers the case where a domain contains several organizational units (OUs), and the users in each OU are to be mapped to a specific RADIUS role ID.



To determine the appropriate role ID, navigate to **RADIUS Services > User Roles** and check the ID column for the appropriate role.

For example, to implement the following configuration:

- OU **East** should be mapped to RADIUS role ID 4
- OU **Central** should be mapped to RADIUS role ID 5
- OU **West** should be mapped to RADIUS role ID 6

Make sure the following configuration is set:

1. First, ensure that the Base DN for the authentication server is set to the root of the domain – for example: **DC=Amigopod,DC=local** – rather than the “users” container. This is necessary as the organizational units are located below the top level of the directory and cannot be searched from the **CN=Users** container.
2. Select the authorization method **Use PHP code to assign a user role (Advanced)** and use the following code:

```
if (stripos($user['distinguishedname'],'OU=East')!== false) return 4;
if (stripos($user['distinguishedname'],'OU=Central')!== false) return 5;
if (stripos($user['distinguishedname'],'OU=West')!== false) return 6;
return false;
```

Explanation: During user authorization, the distinguished name of the user (which will contain the user's OU) is checked against the defined rules, and an appropriate role ID is returned. If no match is found, false is returned, which means that authorization fails and the user's Access-Request will be rejected. Information on the `stripos` function for case-insensitive substring matching can be found at [stripos\(\)](#).

Advanced Authorization — Example 2

This example covers the case where users are assigned group memberships, and users in a particular group are to be mapped to a specific RADIUS role ID.



To determine the appropriate role ID, navigate to **RADIUS Services > User Roles** and check the ID column for the appropriate role.

For example, to implement the following configuration:

- Members of the **Domain Admins** group should be mapped to RADIUS role ID 4
- Members of the **Users** group should be mapped to RADIUS role ID 5
- All other users should be rejected

Select the authorization method **Use PHP code to assign a user role (Advanced)** and use the following code:

```
if (in_array('CN=Domain Admins,CN=Users,DC=Amigopod,DC=local', $user['memberof']))
return 4;
if (in_array('CN=Users,CN=Builtin,DC=Amigopod,DC=local', $user['memberof'])) return
5;
return false;
```

Explanation: During user authorization, the 'memberOf' attribute of the user (which will contain a list of the groups to which the user belongs) is checked against the defined rules, and an appropriate role ID is

returned. If no match is found, false is returned, which means that authorization fails and the user's Access-Request will be rejected.

The `in_array()` comparison is done in a case-sensitive manner. Be sure to use the correct case as returned by the LDAP query for the group name. Also note that the complete distinguished name (DN) for the group must be specified, as this is the value checked for in the array of values returned for the 'memberOf' attribute.

The primary group of a user assigned in Active Directory cannot be checked in this way, as Active Directory does not return the primary group in the values of the 'memberOf' attribute. You can build logic that uses the `$user['primarygroupid']` property instead to work around this issue.

Testing External Authentication Servers

The Test Authentication option for a server may be used to check the connection to an authentication server, or verify the authorization rules that have been configured. To test an authentication server, click its **Test Authentication** link on the Edit Authentication Server form. The server's row expands to include the Test Authentication form.

The screenshot shows a table with columns 'Name', 'Type', and 'Rank'. The first row is 'Local User Database' with Type 'local' and Rank '10'. Below the table, there are links: 'Edit', 'Disable', 'User Roles', and 'Test Authentication'. The 'Test Authentication' link is active, showing a form with the following fields:

- Test Username:** A text input field with a description: 'The username to use when testing user authentication.'
- Test Password:** A password input field with a description: 'The password to use when testing user authentication.'
- Advanced:** A checkbox labeled 'Show detailed authorization info'.
- Run Test:** A button with a right arrow icon.

1. In the **Test Username** and **Test Password** fields, enter the information for a user's credentials stored on the server.
2. (Optional) To view additional details—for example, authentication rules, or account status or permitted limits—mark the **Show detailed authorization info** check box in the **Advanced** row.
3. Click the **Run Test** button. A progress bar is shown during the test, and results are displayed below the Test Authentication form.

Testing a Local Certificate Authority External Authentication Server

For Local Certificate Authority external authentication servers, additional testing options are included to simulate EAP-TLS authentication with a client certificate.

Test EAP-TLS Authentication	
Network Settings Options for the network layer.	
* Mode:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Test against the local RADIUS server <input type="radio"/> Test against a remote RADIUS server
Outer Authentication Options for the outer authentication in the RADIUS packet.	
* Identity:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use the client certificate's Common Name as the outer identity <input type="radio"/> Use another value as the outer identity Select a value for the User-Name field in the RADIUS Access-Request.
MAC Address:	<input type="text" value="02-00-00-00-00-01"/> Optional value to provide as the Calling-Station-Id attribute in the RADIUS Access-Request.
Inner Authentication Options for the inner authentication using a TLS client certificate.	
* TLS Identity:	<input type="text" value="PKCS#12 container with certificate and key (.p12, .pfx)"/> Select the format in which you will provide the TLS client certificate.
* PKCS#12 File:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> Provide a file that contains the client certificate and the client's private key. If a CA certificate is also included in this file, it will be used to verify the server's identity.
Passphrase:	<input type="text"/> The passphrase for the client's private key.
Certificate Authority:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> You may provide a file containing a CA certificate, which can be used to verify the server's identity.
<input type="button" value="Run Test"/>	

1. To specify the network layer to test against, mark the radio button in the **Mode** row for either the local RADIUS server or a remote RADIUS server.
2. To indicate the value for the User-Name field for outer authentication in the RADIUS access request, mark one of the radio buttons in the **Identity** row. You can use either the client's local certificate's common name or another value.
3. (Optional) You may enter a value in the **MAC Address** field for the Calling-Station-Id attribute.
4. In the **TLS Identity** drop-down list, choose the format of the TLS client certificate. The rest of the options available in the Inner Authentication area of the form depend on the TLS Identity selected. To provide details for the selected TLS identity, do one of the following:

If you selected *PKCS#12 container with certificate and key (.p12, .pfx)* for the TLS identity:

1. In the **PKCS#12** row, browse to the file in your system that contains both the client certificate and the client's private key. When this file is uploaded, if a CA certificate is also included, it is used to verify the server's identity.
2. (Optional) In the **Passphrase** row, you may enter the passphrase for the client's private key.
3. (Optional) To provide a file containing a CA certificate for verifying the server's identity, you can use the **Certificate Authority** row to browse to the file.

If you selected *Separate certificate and key files (.pem, .cer, .crt)* for the TLS identity:

1. In the **PKCS#12** row, browse to the file in your system that contains both the client certificate and the client's private key. When this file is uploaded, if a CA certificate is also included, it is used to verify the server's identity.
2. In the **Client Certificate** row, browse to the file containing the client certificate. This must be a base-64 encoded (PEM) or binary encoded (DER) certificate.

3. In the **Client Private Key** row, browse to the file containing the client's private key. This must be a base-64 encoded (PEM) or binary encoded (DER) private key file.
4. (Optional) In the **Passphrase** row, you may enter the passphrase for the client's private key.
5. (Optional) To provide a file containing a CA certificate for verifying the server's identity, you can use the **Certificate Authority** row to browse to the file.

If you selected *Copy and paste as text* for the TLS identity:

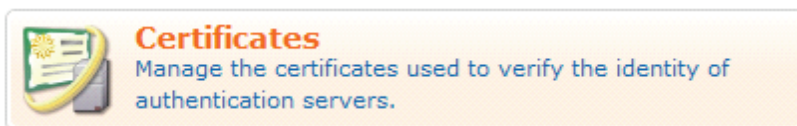
1. In the **PKCS#12** row, browse to the file in your system that contains both the client certificate and the client's private key. When this file is uploaded, if a CA certificate is also included, it is used to verify the server's identity.
2. In the **Client Certificate** row, copy and paste the client certificate. This block of encoded text must include the lines "BEGIN CERTIFICATE" and "END CERTIFICATE".
3. In the **Client Private Key** row, copy and paste the client's private key. This block of encoded text must include the lines "BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY" and "END RSA PRIVATE KEY".
4. (Optional) In the **Passphrase** row, you may enter the passphrase for the client's private key.
5. (Optional) To provide a file containing a CA certificate for verifying the server's identity, you can use the **Certificate Authority** row to browse to the file.

When you have completed the fields for the network settings, outer authentication, and inner authentication, click the **Run Test** button.



Managing Certificates for External Authentication Servers

Use the **Certificates** command link on the **RADIUS > Authentication** page to manage the list of trusted certificates used to identify external authentication servers.



External authentication servers may be configured to use a TLS (Transport Layer Security) connection. For example, LDAP connections on port 636 use TLS (SSL) to provide a secure connection.

TLS connections offer two kinds of security guarantees: **privacy** (meaning that the content of communications cannot be intercepted or modified), and **authentication** (meaning that the identity of the server can be verified).

The public key infrastructure (PKI) required to provide these guarantees is based on the X.509 standard for digital certificates.




To verify the identity of an authentication server, use the RADIUS Certificates list view to install one or more digital certificates for a certificate authority (CA). These certificates will be trusted for the purposes of identifying a remote server.

When a TLS connection to an authentication server is established, the authentication server must identify itself with a certificate issued by one of the trusted certificate authorities. If the authentication server's identity cannot be established, the connection will fail.

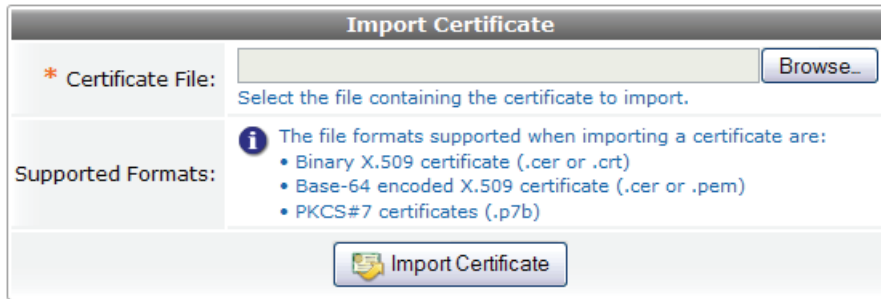
Quick Help		Import Certificate	
Issued To	Issued By	Valid From	Valid To
amigopod Certificate Authority	amigopod Certificate Authority	Wednesday, 1 September 2010	Sunday, 30 August 2020
1 certificate Reload		20 rows per page	

The list displays the certificates that have been installed. By default, the list is empty.

After selecting a certificate in the list, the following actions are available:

-  **Show Details** – display information about the certificate, including its unique “fingerprint” identifier and technical information about the certificate.
-  **Export Certificate** – download the certificate in one of several different formats (PKCS#7, base-64 encoded, binary X.509, or plain text).
-  **Delete** – remove the certificate so that it will no longer be used for trust purposes.

To import a new certificate, click the  **Import Certificate** tab. Use the **Import Certificate** form to specify a certificate file to upload.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Import Certificate". It has a section labeled "Certificate File:" with a text input field and a "Browse..." button. Below this is a section labeled "Supported Formats:" which contains an information icon and a list of supported formats: Binary X.509 certificate (.cer or .crt), Base-64 encoded X.509 certificate (.cer or .pem), and PKCS#7 certificates (.p7b). At the bottom of the dialog is a button labeled "Import Certificate" with a small icon.

The supported formats for digital certificates are:

- **Binary X.509 certificate** – also known as ASN.1 or DER format. Certificates in this format typically have the file extension **.cer** or **.crt**.
- **Base-64 encoded** – also known as PEM format. Certificates in this format typically have the file extension **.cer**, **.cert** or **.pem**.
- **PKCS#7 container** – multiple certificates may be included in these containers. Certificates in this format typically have the file extension **.p7b**.



An operator is a company's staff member who is able to log in to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. Different operators may have different roles that can be specified with an operator profile; these profiles could be to administer the Amigopod network, manage guests or run reports.

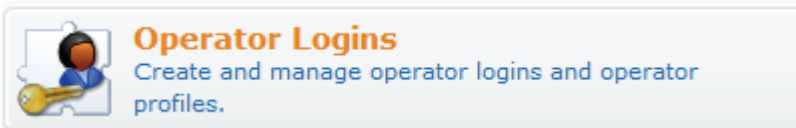
Operators may be defined locally on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance, or externally in an LDAP directory server.



Accessing Operator Logins

The Operator Logins management is located within the Administrator section of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

Use the Operator Logins command link on the **Administrator** start page to access the Operator Logins features.



Alternatively, use the Administrator navigation menu to jump directly to any of the features within Operator Logins.



About Operator Logins

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance supports role-based access control through the use of operator profiles. Each operator using the Amigopod is assigned a profile which determines the actions that the operator may perform, as well as global settings such as the look and feel of the user interface.

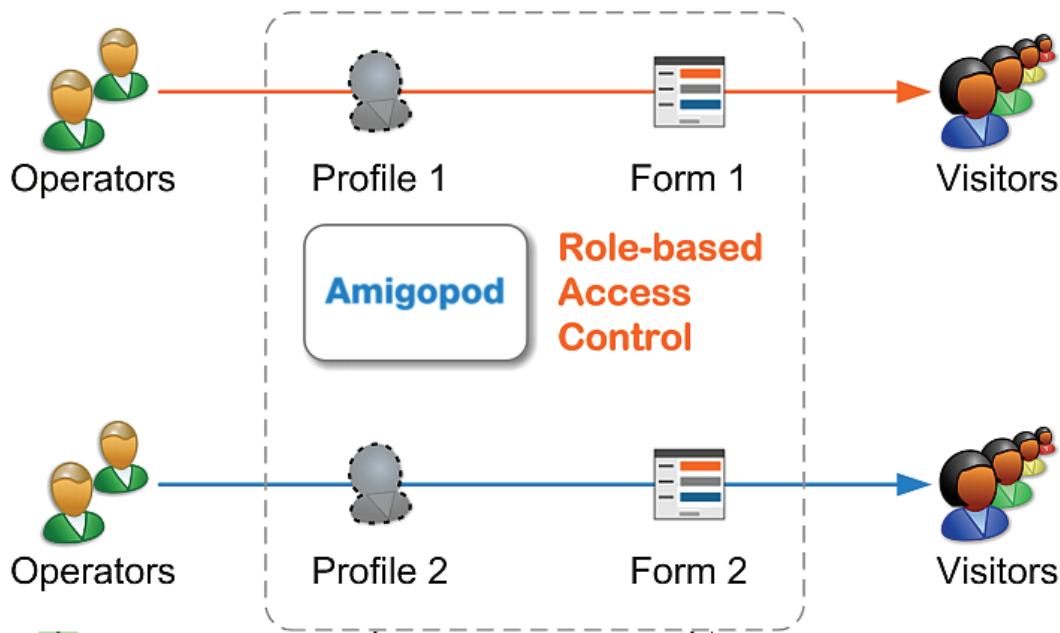
Your profile may only allow you to create guest accounts, or your profile might allow you to create guest accounts as well as print reports. What your profile permits is determined by the network administrator.

Two types of operator logins are supported: local operators and operators who are defined externally in your company's directory server. Both types of operators use the same login screen.

Role-Based Access Control for Multiple Operator Profiles

Using the operator profile editor, the forms and views used in the application may be customized for a specific operator profile, which enables advanced behaviors to be implemented as part of the role-based access control model.

This process is shown in the figure below.



See “[About Operator Logins](#)” in this chapter for details on configuring different forms and views for operator profiles.

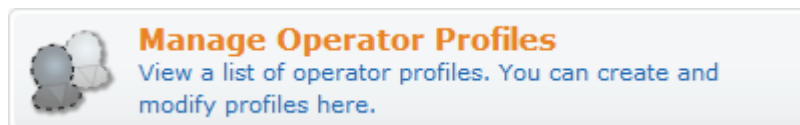


Operator Profiles

An operator profile determines what actions an operator is permitted to take when using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

Some of the settings in an operator profile may be overridden in a specific operator’s account settings. These customized settings will take precedence over the default values defined in the operator profile.

Click the **Manage Operator Profiles** command link on the **Administrator > Operator Logins** page to define new operator profiles, and to make changes to existing operator profiles.



Creating an Operator Profile

Click the  **Create Operator Profile** link to create a new operator profile.

The **Operator Profile Editor** form is displayed. This form has several sections, which are described in more detail below.



Operator Profile Editor

* **Name:**
Enter a name for this operator profile.

Description:
Comments or descriptive text about the operator profile.

Access
These options control what operators with this profile are permitted to do.

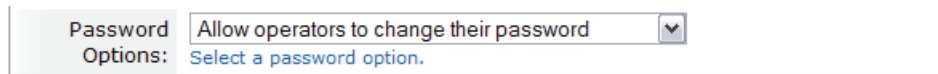
Enabled: ☒ **Allow operator logins**
If unchecked, operators with this profile will not be able to log in.

The fields in the first area of the form identify the operator profile and capture any optional information:

1. You must enter a name for this profile in the **Name** field.
2. (Optional) You may enter additional information about the profile in the **Description** field.

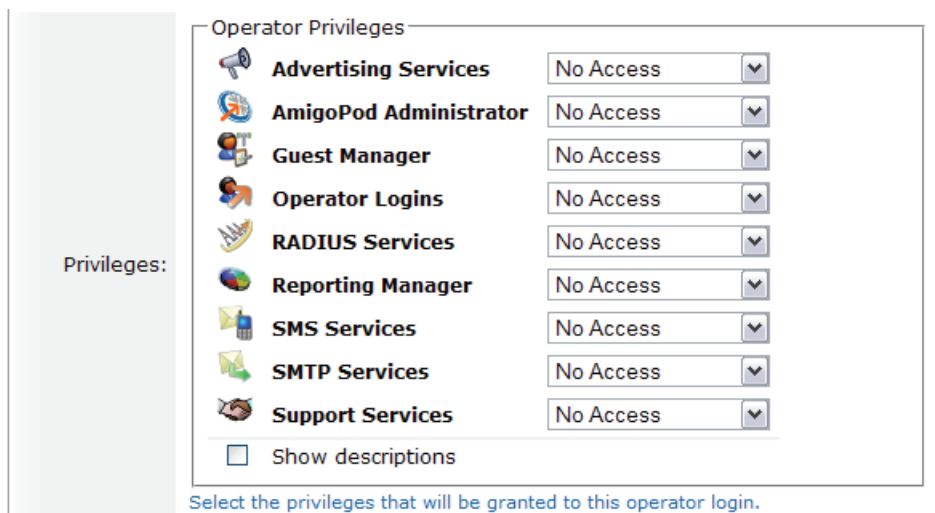
The fields in the second area of the form define permissions for the operator profile:

1. To disable a profile, unmark the **Allow Operator Logins** check box in the **Enabled** row. If a profile is disabled, any operators with that profile will be unable to log in to the system. This may be useful when performing system maintenance tasks.












Password Options:
Select a password option.

2. In the **Password Options** row, you may keep the default setting or choose an option from the drop-down list. Password options are as follows:
 - **Allow operators to change their password** – Enables the Change Password link in the navigation, which allows an operator to change their password. This is the default setting.
 - **Prevent operators from changing their password** – The password cannot be changed by the operator. Use this option if a single operator login will be shared by several people.
 - **Force a password change on their next login** – The operator will be prompted to change their password the next time they log in to the application.
 - **Force a password change on their first login** – The operator will be prompted to change their password the first time they log in to the application.



Operator Privileges

Privileges:

 Advertising Services	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 AmigoPod Administrator	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 Guest Manager	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 Operator Logins	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 RADIUS Services	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 Reporting Manager	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 SMS Services	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 SMTP Services	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
 Support Services	<input type="text" value="No Access"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>

☐ Show descriptions


Select the privileges that will be granted to this operator login.

3. In the **Privileges** area, use the drop-down lists to select the appropriate permissions for this operator profile. For each permission, you may grant No Access, Read Only Access, Full Access, or Custom

access. The default in all cases is No Access. This means that you must select the appropriate privileges in order for the profile to work. See “[Operator Profile Privileges](#)” in this chapter for details about the available access levels for each privilege.

If you choose the **Custom** setting for an item, the form expands to include additional privileges specific to that item.

Figure 13 *Operator Profile Editor page—User roles and filters*

	Name	Hostname
User Roles:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  Local RADIUS Server	localhost
	<input type="checkbox"/> Contractor	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Guest	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Employee	
	<div>10 rows per page ▼</div>	
Select the visitor account roles that these operators are permitted to use.		
* Operator Filter:	<div>No operator filter ▼</div> <div>Select the default operator filtering to apply to guest accounts.</div>	
User Account Filter:	<div></div> <div>Enter a comma-delimited list of field=value pairs to create a account filter.</div>	
Session Filter:	<div></div> <div>Enter a comma-delimited list of field=value pairs to create a session filter.</div>	
Account Limit:	<div></div> <div>Maximum number of accounts the operator can create. Leave blank for no limit.</div>	

4. The **User Roles** list allows you to specify which user databases and roles the operator will be able to access. If one or more roles are selected, then only those roles will be available for the operator to select from when creating a new guest account. The guest account list is also filtered to show only guest accounts with these roles.

If a database is selected in the User Roles list, but no roles within that database are selected, then all roles defined in the database will be available. This is the default option.

5. The **Operator Filter** may be set to limit the types of accounts that can be viewed by operators. Options include: default, no operator filter, only show accounts created by the operator, and only show accounts created by operators within their profile.
6. The **User Account Filter** and **Session Filter** fields are optional, and allow you to create and configure these filtering options:
 - The **User Account Filter** field lets you create a persistent filter applied to the user account list. For example, this feature is useful in large deployments where an operator only wants to have a filtered view of some accounts. To create an account filter, enter a comma-delimited list of field-value pairs. Supported operators are described below.
 - The **Session Filter** field lets you create a filter for only that session. To create a session filter, enter a comma-delimited list of field-value pairs. Supported operators are described below.

The user can enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and may include the following operators:

Table 10 Operators supported in filters

Operator	Meaning	Additional Information
=	is equal to	<p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the user accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p>
!=	is not equal to	
>	is greater than	
>=	is greater than or equal to	
<	is less than	
<=	is less than or equal to	
~	matches the regular expression	
!~	does not match the regular expression	

- In the **Account Limit** row, you can enter a number to specify the maximum number of accounts an operator can create. Note that disabled accounts are included in the account limit. To set no limit, leave the Account Limit field blank.

User Interface
 These options control the visual appearance and behavior of the application.

Skin:	(Default) ▼	Choose the skin to use for operators with this profile.
Start Page:	(Default) ▼	The initial page to show this operator after logging in.
Language:	Auto-detect ▼	Select the default language to use for operators with this profile.
Time Zone:	(GMT+10:00) Australia/Brisbane; Queensland - most locations ▼	Select the default time zone for operators with this profile.


The fields in the third area of the form determine elements of the application's visual appearance and behavior that operators with this profile will see. The Skin, Start Page, Language, and Time Zone options specify the defaults to use for operators with this profile. Individual operator logins may have different settings, which will be used instead of the values specified in the operator profile. For information on specifying options at the individual operator level, see [“Local Operator Authentication”](#) in this chapter.

- (Optional) In the **Skin** row, the **Default** setting indicates that the skin plugin currently marked as enabled in the Plugin Manager will be used. To have a different skin displayed for users with this operator profile, choose one of the available skins from the drop-down list. For more information on skins, see [“Configuring the Amigopod Skin Plugin”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter.
- (Optional) In the **Start Page** row, the **Default** setting indicates that the application's standard Home page will be the first page displayed after login. To have a different start page displayed to users with this operator profile, choose a page from the drop-down list. For example, if a profile is designed for users who do only certain tasks, you might want the application to open at the module where those tasks are performed.
- (Optional) In the **Language** row, the default setting is **Auto-detect**. This lets the application determine the operator's language preference from their local system settings. To specify a particular language to use in Amigopod, choose the language from the drop-down list.

- (Optional) In the **Time Zone** row, the **Default** setting indicates that the operator's time zone will default to the system's currently configured time zone. You can use the drop-down list to specify a particular time zone.

Figure 14 Operator Profile Editor page—Custom forms and views

Custom Forms and Views	
Active Sessions:	(Use default: guest_sessions "Active Sessions")  Override the Active Sessions view.
Change Expiration:	(Use default: change_expiration "Change Expiration")  Override the Change Expiration form.
Create Guest Accounts:	(Use default: create_multi "Create Guest Accounts")  Override the Create Guest Accounts form.
Edit Account:	(Use default: guest_edit "Edit Account")  Override the Edit Account form.
Edit Accounts:	(Use default: guest_multi "Edit Accounts")  Override the Edit Accounts view.
Edit Guest Accounts:	(Use default: guest_multi_form "Edit Guest Accounts")  Override the Edit Guest Accounts form.
Edit MAC:	(Use default: mac_edit "Edit MAC")  Override the Edit MAC form.
Export Guest Manager Accounts:	(Use default: guest_export "Export Guest Manager Accounts")  Override the Export Guest Manager Accounts view.
Guest Manager Accounts:	(Use default: guest_users "Guest Manager Accounts")  Override the Guest Manager Accounts view.
MAC Authentication Accounts:	(Use default: mac_list "MAC Authentication Accounts")  Override the MAC Authentication Accounts view.
New MAC Authentication:	(Use default: mac_create "New MAC Authentication")  Override the New MAC Authentication form.
New Visitor Account:	(Use default: create_user "New Visitor Account")  Override the New Visitor Account form.
 Save Changes	

- (Optional) In the **Customization** row, to specify that an operator profile should use a different form when creating a new visitor account, select the **Override the application's forms and views** check box. The form expands to show the forms and views that can be modified. If alternative forms or views have been created, you may use the drop-down lists to specify which ones to use.
- Click the  **Save Changes** button to complete the creation of an operator profile.

Operator Profile Privileges

The privilege selections available for an operator profile provide you with control over the functionality that is available to operators.

No Access means that the operator has no access to this area of the Amigopod system and therefore the options will not appear on the menu.

Read Only Access means that the operator can see the options available but is unable to make any changes to them.

Full Access means that all the options are available to be used by the operator.








Custom access allows you to choose individual permissions within each group. For example, Guest Manager allows you to control access to the following areas:

- Active sessions management
- Viewing historical data for active sessions
- Changing expiration time of guest accounts
- Creating multiple guest accounts
- Creating new guest accounts
- Editing multiple guest accounts
- Exporting guest account data
- Full user control of guest accounts
- Importing guest accounts
- Listing guest accounts
- Managing customization of guest accounts
- Managing print templates
- Removing or disabling guest accounts
- Resetting guest passwords

Refer to the description of each individual operator privilege to determine what the effects of granting that permission will be.

Managing Operator Profiles

Once a profile has been created you are able to view, to edit and to create new profiles. When you click an operator profile entry in the Operator Profiles list, a menu appears that allows you to perform any of the following operations:

-  **View/Hide Details** – displays or hides configuration details for the selected operator profile, including the profile name, description, operator login access, and the settings for the defined skin, start page, language and time zone.
-  **Edit** – changes the properties of the specified operator profile
-  **Delete** – removes the operator profile from the Operator Profiles list
-  **Duplicate** – creates a copy of an operator profile
-  **Create Operator** – opens the **Create Operator Login** form, allowing you to create a new operator login associated with the selected operator profile.
-  **Show Operators** – shows a list of operator login names associated with that operator profile
-  **Show Usage** – opens a window in the Operator Profiles list that shows if the profile is in use, and lists any LDAP authentication servers, LDAP translation rules and operator logins associated with that profile. Each entry in this window appears as a link to the form that lets you edit that LDAP or operator login setting.



Local Operator Authentication

Local operators are those defined on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.



Creating a New Operator

Once you have a profile you can create an operator to use that profile.

Create Operator Login	
* Operator Username:	<input type="text"/> Login username to create.
* Operator Password:	<input type="password"/> Password for this operator login.
* Confirm Password:	<input type="password"/> Confirm the password for this operator login.
Comment:	<input type="text"/> A description of this operator login.
Email:	<input type="text"/> The email address of this operator.
Access These options control what operators with this profile are permitted to do. Settings with a default value are taken from the operator's profile.	
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this operator login
* Operator Profile:	<input type="text" value="IT Administrators"/> Select the operator profile for this operator.
* Operator Filter:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> Select the default operator filtering to apply to guest accounts.
User Account Filter:	<input type="text"/> Enter a comma-delimited list of field=value pairs to create a account filter.
Session Filter:	<input type="text"/> Enter a comma-delimited list of field=value pairs to create a session filter.
Account Limit:	<input type="text"/> Maximum number of accounts the operator can create. Leave blank to use the profile's value.
Password Options:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> Select a password option.
Operator Settings Settings with a default value are taken from the operator's profile.	
Skin:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> Choose the skin for this operator login.
Start Page:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> The initial page to show this operator after logging in.
Language:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> Select this operator's default language.
Time Zone:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> Select this operator's default time zone.
Customization:	<input type="checkbox"/> Override the application's forms and views If checked, you can specify different default forms and views to use.
<input type="button" value="Create Operator Login"/>	

Any properties for the operator login that are set to (Default) are taken from the operator profile. The **Operator Filter** field lets you select from three other options besides Default:

- No operator filter—All guest accounts display.
- Only show accounts created by the operator—Only guest accounts created by the operator display.

- Only show accounts by operators created within their profile—Only guest accounts created by all operators within a profile display.

The **User Account Filter** and **Session Filter** fields are optional, and allow you to create and configure these filtering options:


- The **User Account Filter** lets you create a filter for the user account list that cannot be overridden by the operator. This filter is designated by role and is persistent. For example, this feature is useful in large deployments where an administrator wants the operators to only have a filtered view of some accounts. To create an account filter, enter a comma-delimited list of field-value pairs. Supported operators are described below.
- The **Session Filter** field lets you create a filter that cannot be overridden by the operator for only that session. To create a session filter, enter a comma-delimited list of field-value pairs. Supported operators are described below.

The user can enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and may include the following operators:

Table 11 Operators supported in filters

Operator	Meaning	Additional Information
=	is equal to	<p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality != operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the user accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p>
!=	is not equal to	
>	is greater than	
>=	is greater than or equal to	
<	is less than	
<=	is less than or equal to	
~	matches the regular expression	
!~	does not match the regular expression	

The **Account Limit** field lets you set a limit for the number of accounts that an operator can create. Note that disabled accounts are included in the account limit. Leave the Account Limit field blank to use the Operator profile's account limit setting.

Once all the fields have been completed, click the  **Create Operator Login** button to finalize the creation of this operator login.



Viewing All Operator Logins

You are able to view a list of operators using the **List All Operator Logins** command link.

Username	Profile	Email	Description	Last Login
admin	Admin	admin@mycompany.com	Administrator account	2011-03-09 19:23:06
events	Marketing and Events	reception@mycompany.com		2011-03-14 07:22:18
itadmin	IT Administrator	it@mycompany.com	Provision Accounts	2011-03-14 16:57:48
operations	Operations Team			2011-03-14 07:21:42
reception	Reception and Front Desk			2011-03-11 17:54:22

Hide Details
 Edit
 Delete
 Disable
 Edit Profile

Details

Username:

reception

Description:

Operator Profile:

Reception and Front Desk

Email:

Login:

Enabled

Skin:

Start Page:

(Default from profile)

Language:

(Default from profile)

Time Zone:

(Default from profile)

Privileges:

Guest Manager

Custom

Change Expiration

✓ Full Access

Create Multiple Guest Accounts

✓ Full Access

Create New Guest Account

✓ Full Access

Edit Multiple Guest Accounts

✓ Full Access

List Guest Accounts

✓ Full Access

Remove Accounts

✓ Full Access

Reset Password

✓ Full Access

SMS Services

Custom

Send SMS Receipts

✓ Full Access

SMTP Services

Custom

Send SMTP Messages


✓ Full Access

When you click an operator login entry in the Operator Logins list, a menu appears that allows you to perform any of the following operations:

- **View/Hide Details**—displays or hides configuration details for the selected operator login.
- **Edit**—opens the Edit Operator Login page for changing the properties of the specified operator login
- **Delete**—removes the operator login from the Operator Logins list
- **Disable**—temporarily disables an operator login while retaining its entry in the Operator Logins list
- **Enable**—reenables a disabled operator login
- **Duplicate**—makes a copy of the profile to use as a basis for a new profile
- **Edit Profile**—opens the operator profile editor, allowing you to edit the operator profile associated with the selected operator login name
- **Create Operator**—opens the Create Operator Login page
- **Show Operators**—adds a list of the operators that have the selected profile, and shows username, description, and actions for each
- **Show Usage**—adds a list of the number of logins and operator servers currently using the selected profile

Changing Operator Passwords

To change the password for an operator, edit the operator login and type a new password in the “Operator Password” and “Confirm Password” password fields. You may also want to select “Force a password change on their next login” under Password Options to allow the operator to select a new password.

Operators can change their own passwords by navigating to **Home > Change Password**, entering a new password into the **Change Password** form, then clicking the  **Set Password** button to save your new password.



LDAP Operator Authentication

Operators defined externally in your company’s directory server form the second type of Amigopod operator. Authentication of the operator is performed using LDAP directory server operations. The attributes stored for an authenticated operator are used to determine what operator profile should be used for that user.

The **Manage LDAP Server** and the **LDAP Translation Rules** commands allow you to set up Amigopod operator logins integrated with a Microsoft Active Directory domain or another LDAP server.



NOTE

The operator management features, such as creating and editing operator logins, apply only to local operator logins defined in the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. You cannot create or edit operator logins using LDAP. Only authentication is supported.



Manage LDAP Servers

Aruba Amigopod supports a flexible authentication mechanism that can be readily adapted to any LDAP server’s method of authenticating users by name. There are built-in defaults for Microsoft Active Directory servers, POSIX-compliant directory servers and RADIUS servers.

When an operator attempts to log in to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance, each LDAP server that is enabled for authentication is checked, in order of priority from lowest to highest.

Once a server is found that can authenticate the operator’s identity (typically with a username and password), the LDAP server is queried for the attributes associated with the user account.

These LDAP attributes are then translated to Amigopod operator attributes using the rules defined in the LDAP translation rules. In particular, an Amigopod operator profile will be assigned to the authenticated user with this process, which controls what that user is permitted to do.



Creating an LDAP Server


An LDAP server is created by navigating to the **Administrator > Operator Logins > Servers** window, then clicking the  **Create a new LDAP server** icon link. This opens the following window.

Figure 15 Server Configuration page

Server Configuration	
* Name:	<input type="text"/> Enter a name for this authentication server.
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this server to authenticate operator logins
* Priority:	<input type="text" value="50"/> The priority rank of the service handler for authentication of local operators. Lower numbers represent higher priorities.
* Server Type:	Microsoft Active Directory <input type="button" value="v"/> Select the type of server you are connecting to.
* Server URL:	<input type="text"/> URL of the LDAP server, e.g. ldap://hostname/ or ldap://192.168.88.1/ou=IT-Services,ou=Departments,dc=amigopod,dc=com
Bind DN:	<input type="text"/> The Distinguished Name to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty to perform anonymous bind.
Bind Password:	<input type="password"/> The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind.
* Default Profile:	Null Profile <input type="button" value="v"/> Select the default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this server.
Sponsor Lookups Enable validating sponsor emails during self-registration. Requires the sponsor_email and do_ldap_lookup fields enabled in the registration form.	
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use this server to look up sponsors during self-registration.
Email Unique ID:	mail The name of an LDAP attribute used to match the sponsor's email.
Authentication Parameters	
Test Username:	<input type="text"/> The username to use when testing authentication.
Test Password:	<input type="password"/> The password to use when testing authentication.
Advanced:	<input type="checkbox"/> Show detailed authorization info
Wildcard Search:	<input type="checkbox"/> Return all matches if performing a sponsor lookup
<input type="button" value="Test Settings"/> <input type="button" value="Search Directory"/> <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/>	

To specify a basic LDAP server connection (hostname and optional port number), use a Server URL of the form **ldap://hostname/** or **ldap://hostname:port/**. See “[Advanced LDAP URL Syntax](#)” in this chapter for more details about the types of LDAP URL you may specify.

Select the **Enabled** option if you want this server to authenticate operator logins.

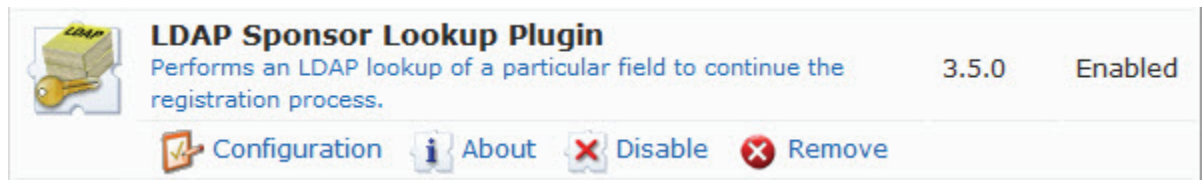
This form allows you to specify the type of LDAP server your system will use. Click the **Server Type** drop-down list and select one of the following options:


Table 12 *Server Type Parameters*


Server Type	Required Configuration Parameters
Microsoft Active Directory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server URL: The URL of the LDAP server • Bind DN: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind. • Bind Password: If your LDAP server does not use anonymous bind, you must supply the required credentials to bind to the directory. (Leave this field blank to use an anonymous bind.) • Default Profile: The default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this LDAP server.
POSIX Compliant:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server URL: The URL of the LDAP server • Bind DN: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind. • Bind Password: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server. Leave this field blank to use an anonymous bind. • Base DN: The Distinguished Name to use for the LDAP search. • Default Profile: The default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this LDAP server.
Custom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server URL: The URL of the LDAP server • Bind DN: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server, or empty for an anonymous bind. • Bind Password: The password to use when binding to the LDAP server. Leave this field blank to use an anonymous bind. • Base DN: The Distinguished Name to use for the LDAP search. • Unique ID: The name of an LDAP attribute used to match the username. • Filter: Additional LDAP filters to use to search for the server. • Attributes: List of LDAP attributes to retrieve. Or leave blank to retrieve all attributes (default). • Default Profile: The default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this LDAP server.
RADIUS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RADIUS Server: The hostname or IP address of the RADIUS server. • Port Number: The port number of the RADIUS authentication service. • Shared Secret: The shared secret for the RADIUS server. • Authentication Method: The authentication method that supplies the credentials. • Default Profile: The default operator profile to assign to operators authorized by this server.

Select the **Enabled** check box under **Sponsor Lookups** if you want to enable the validation of sponsor emails during self-registration. This option causes this server to look up sponsors during self-registration and double check the attribute used for emails on the LDAP server. This option requires that the **sponsor_email** and **do_ldap_lookup** fields are enabled in the registration form. This feature requires the LDAP Sponsor Lookup plugin. Use the Plugin Manager to verify that this plugin is available.

Figure 16 LDAP Plugin



Once you have completed the form, check your settings by clicking the  **Test Settings** button. Use the **Test Username** and **Test Password** fields to supply a username and password for the authentication check. If the authentication is successful, the operator profile assigned to the username will be displayed. If the authentication fails, an error message will be displayed. See “[LDAP Operator Server Troubleshooting](#)” in this chapter for information about common error messages and troubleshooting steps to diagnose the problem.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to save this LDAP Server. If the server is marked as enabled, subsequent operator login attempts will use this server for authentication immediately.

Advanced LDAP URL Syntax

For Microsoft Active Directory, the LDAP server connection will use a default distinguished name of the form **dc=domain,dc=com**, where the domain name components are taken from the bind username.

To specify a different organizational unit within the directory, include a distinguished name in the LDAP server URL, using a format such as:

```
ldap://192.168.88.1/ou=IT%20Services,ou=Departments,dc=Amigopod,dc=com
```

To specify a secure connection over SSL/TLS, use the prefix **ldaps://**.

To specify the use of LDAP v3, use the prefix **ldap3://**, or **ldap3s://** if you are using LDAP v3 over SSL/TLS.

When Microsoft Active Directory is selected as the Server Type, LDAP v3 is automatically used.












An LDAP v3 URL has the format **ldap://host:port/dn?attributes?scope?filter?extensions**.

- **dn** is the base X.500 distinguished name to use for the search.
- **attributes** is often left empty.
- **scope** may be ‘base’, ‘one’ or ‘sub’.
- **filter** is an LDAP filter string, for example, (objectclass=*)
- **extensions** is an optional list of name=value pairs.









Refer to [RFC 2255](#) for further details.

Viewing the LDAP Server List

Once you have defined one or more LDAP servers, those servers will appear in the LDAP server list on the **Administrator > Operator Logins > Servers** page.

Name	Priority	Server Type	Default Profile
 LDAPserver1	50	Active Directory	Operations and Marketing
 LDAPServer2	50	Active Directory	Reception and Front Desk
 Edit  Delete  Duplicate  Disable  Ping  Test Auth  Test Lookup			
2 items  Reload			
20 rows per page 			


Select any of the LDAP servers in the list to display options to perform the following actions on the selected server:

-  **Edit**—changes the properties of an LDAP server
-  **Delete**—removes the server from the LDAP server list
-  **Duplicate**—creates a copy of an LDAP server
-  **Disable**—temporarily disables a server while retaining its entry the server list
-  **Enable**—reenables a disabled LDAP server
-  **Ping**—sends a ping message (echo request) to the LDAP server to verify connectivity between the LDAP server and the Amigopod console
-  **Test Auth**—adds a **Test Operator Login** area in the LDAP servers form that allows you to test authentication of operator login values.
-  **Test Lookup**—adds a **Test Operator Lookup** form in the LDAP servers list that allows you to look up sponsor names. This option is only available if sponsor lookup has been enabled for the server on the Edit Authentication Server page.


LDAP Operator Server Troubleshooting



You can use the LDAP Operator Servers list to troubleshoot network connectivity, operator authentication, and to look up operator usernames.







Testing Connectivity

To test network connectivity between an LDAP server and the Amigopod server, click the  **Ping** link in the server's row. The results of the test appear below the server entry in the LDAP server table.

Testing Operator Login Authentication

1. To test authentication of operator login values, select a server name in the LDAP Server table, then click the  **Test Auth** link. The Test Operator Login area is added to the page.

Name	Priority	Server Type	Default Profile
 LDAPserver1	50	Active Directory	Operations and Marketing
 LDAPServer2	50	Active Directory	Reception and Front Desk



 Edit
  Delete
  Duplicate
  Disable
  Ping
  Test Auth



Test Operator Login

Test Username:
The username to use when testing authentication.

Test Password:
The password to use when testing authentication.

Advanced: ☒ Show detailed authorization info

 Log In  Cancel

2. Enter an operator username and password for the LDAP Server.
3. (Optional) Click the **Advanced** check box to display detailed authorization information for the specified operator.
4. Click  **Log In** to attempt to authenticate the LDAP server, or click  **Cancel** to cancel the test. The Authentication Test area is added above the server names to indicate the test's progress.

You can also verify operator authentication when you create a new LDAP server configuration using the Test Settings button on the **LDAP Configuration** form (See “[Creating an LDAP Server](#)” in this chapter for a description).

Looking Up Sponsor Names

This option is only available if sponsor lookup has been enabled for the server on the Edit Authentication Server page.

1. To look up a sponsor, select a server name in the LDAP Server table, then click the **Test Lookup** link. The Test Operator Lookup area is added to the LDAP servers list.
2. In the **Lookup** field, enter a lookup value. This can be an exact username, or you can include wildcards.If you use wildcards, the search might return multiple values.
3. In the **Search Mode** field, use the drop-down list to specify whether to search for an exact match or use wildcard values.
4. (Optional) Click the **Advanced** check box to display detailed authorization information for the specified sponsor.
5. Click **Search Directory** to attempt to find sponsor names that match the lookup values, or click **Cancel** to cancel the test. The Authentication Test area is added above the server names to indicate the search’s progress.

Troubleshooting Error Messages

The error messages in the following table can be used to diagnose error messages such as: “LDAP Bind failed: Invalid credentials (80090308: LdapErr: DSID-0C090334, comment: AcceptSecurityContext error, data **525**, vece), bind DN was: ...”

Table 13 *LDAP Error Messages*

Error Data	Reason
525	User not found
52e	Invalid credentials (password is incorrect)
530	Not permitted to log on at this time
531	Not permitted to log on at this workstation
532	Password has expired
533	Account is disabled
701	Account has expired

Table 13 LDAP Error Messages (Continued)

773	User must reset password
775	User account is locked


Other items to consider when troubleshooting LDAP connection problems:

- **Verify that you are using the correct LDAP version** – use ldap:// for version 2 and ldap3:// to specify LDAP version 3.
- **Verify that you are using an SSL/TLS connection** – use ldaps:// or ldap3s:// as the prefix of the Server URL.
- **Verify that the Bind DN is correct** – the correct DN will depend on the structure of your directory, and is only required if the directory does not permit anonymous bind.
- **Verify that the Base DN is correct** – the Base DN for user searches is fixed and must be specified as part of the Server URL. If you need to search in different Base DN's to match different kinds of operators, then you should define multiple LDAP Servers and use the priority of each to control the order in which the directory searches are done.



LDAP Translation Rules

LDAP translation rules specify how to determine operator profiles based on LDAP attributes for an authenticated operator.

Translation rules may be created by navigating to **Administrator > Operator Logins > LDAP Translation Rules** then clicking the  **Create new LDAP translation rule** link.

Edit LDAP Translation Rule

* Name:

MatchAdmin

Enter a name for this translation rule.

Enabled:

☒ Use this rule when processing LDAP attributes

Attribute Name:

memberof

Enter the name of the LDAP attribute (e.g. memberof). Use * for all attributes.

Matching Rule:

contains

Select the matching rule to apply to the value of the LDAP attribute.

Value:

CN=Administrators

Enter the value to match the attribute against.

On Match:

Assign fixed operator profile

Select what happens when this translation rule matches an attribute.

Operator Profile:

Administrator profile

Select the operator profile to assign.

Fallthrough:

☐ Continue LDAP translation if rule matches

Check this box if you want to apply multiple translation rules.

Save Changes

Cancel

To create a new LDAP translation rule:

1. In the **Name** field, enter a self-explanatory name for the translation rule. In the example above the translation rule is to check that the user is an Administrator, hence the name **MatchAdmin**.
2. Select the **Enabled** check box to enable this rule once you have created it. If you do not select this check box, the rule you create will appear in the rules list, but will not be active until you enable it.
3. Click the **Matching rule** drop-down list and select a rule. The Matching Rule field can be one of:
 - (blank) – always matches
 - **contains** – case-insensitive substring match anywhere in string
 - **matches** – regular expression match, where the value is a Perl-compatible regular expression including delimiters (for example, to match the regular expression “admin” case-insensitively, use the value “/admin/i”; See “[Regular Expressions](#)” in the Reference chapter for more details about regular expressions)
 - **equals** – case-insensitive string comparison, matches on equality
 - **does not equal** – case-insensitive string comparison, matches on inequality
 - **less than** – numerical value is less than the match value
 - **greater than** – numerical value is greater than the match value
 - **starts with** – case-insensitive substring match at start of string
 - **ends with** – case-insensitive substring match at end of string
4. Select a Value. The **Value** field states what is to be matched, in this case **CN=Administrators** to look for a specific group of which the user is a member.
5. Click the **On Match** drop-down list and select the action the system should take when there is a match. Your options here are to:
 - **Do nothing** – makes no changes.
 - **Assign fixed operator profile** – assigns the selected Operator Profile to the operator
 - **Assign attribute’s value to operator field** – uses the value of the attribute as the value for an operator field. This option can be used to store operator configuration details in the directory.
 - **Assign custom value to operator field** – uses a template to assign a value to a specific operator field.
 - **Apply custom processing** – evaluates a template that may perform custom processing on the LDAP operator.
 - **Remove attribute from operator** – removes the selected LDAP attribute from the operator.
6. Click the **Operator Profile** drop-down list and select the profile to be assigned if there is a rule match. In the example shown above, if the Administrator group is matched, the **Administrator** profile is to be assigned.
7. Select the **Fallthrough** check box if you want to use multiple translation rules. When you create multiple rules, you can build a complete logical structure to perform any type of processing on the LDAP attributes available in your directory.
8. Click **Save Changes** to save your rule settings.

The **Administrator > Operator Logins > LDAP Translation Rules** window shows a list of all configured translation rules.

Quick Help		Create		
#	Name	Expression	Action	Stop
0	SetComment	displayname, geccos	Assign value to operator field comment	↓
1	RemoveAttrs	instancetype, usncreated, usnchanged, objectsid, o...	Remove attribute	↓
2	MatchDomain	memberof contains CN=Domain Admins	Assign operator profile IT Administrators	✓
3	MatchAdmin	memberof contains CN=Administrators	Assign operator profile IT Administrators	✓
Edit Delete Duplicate Disable Move Up Move Down				
4	MatchGroup	memberof contains CN=Group Name	Assign operator profile Null Profile	✓
5	MatchName	cn matches /^test/	Assign operator profile Null Profile	✓
6 items Reload		20 rows per page ▼		

Translation rules are processed in order, until a matching rule is found that does not have the Fallthrough field set.

To edit the matching rule list, select an entry in the table to display a menu that lets you perform the following actions:

- **Edit** – changes the configuration of matching rule.
- **Delete** – removes matching rule from the list.
- **Duplicate** – creates a duplicate copy of an existing rule
- **Disable** – temporarily disables the rule without deleting it from the rule list.
- **Enable** – reenables a disabled operator login
- **Move Up** – moves the rule up to a higher priority on the rule list
- **Move Down** – moves the rule down to a lower priority on the rule list



Custom LDAP Translation Processing

When matching an LDAP translation rule, custom processing may be performed using a template.

The template variables available are listed in the table below.

Table 14 Template Variables

Variable	Description
\$attr	The name of the LDAP attribute that was matched.
\$user	Contains settings for the operator, including all LDAP attributes returned from the server.

For a Smarty template syntax description, See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter. These may be used to make programmatic decisions based on the LDAP attribute values available at login time.

For example, to permit non-administrator users to access the system only between the hours of 8am and 6pm, you could define the following LDAP translation rule.

Edit LDAP Translation Rule

* Name: CustomEnabledHours
Enter a name for this translation rule.

Enabled: ☒ Use this rule when processing LDAP attributes

Attribute Name: memberof
Enter the name of the LDAP attribute (e.g. memberof). Use * for all attributes.

Matching Rule:
Select the matching rule to apply to the value of the LDAP attribute.

Value:
Enter the value to match the attribute against.

On Match: Assign custom value to operator field
Select what happens when this translation rule matches an attribute.

Operator Field: enabled
Select the operator field to assign the value to.

Custom:

```
{strip}
{if stripos($user.memberof, "CN=Administrators")!==false}
1
{elseif date('H') >= 8 && date('H') < 18}
1
{else}
0
{/if}
{/strip}
```

Insert content item...

Enter custom template code applied when the translation rule matches.

Fallthrough: ☒ Continue LDAP translation if rule matches
Check this box if you want to apply multiple translation rules.

Save Changes Cancel

The Custom rule is:

```
{strip}
{if stripos($user.memberof, "CN=Administrators")!==false}
1
{elseif date('H') >= 8 && date('H') < 18}
1
{else}
0
{/if}
{/strip}
```

Explanation: The rule will always match on the “memberof” attribute that contains the user’s list of groups. The operator field “enabled” will determine if the user is permitted to log in or not. The custom template uses the {strip} block function to remove any whitespace, which makes the contents of the template easier to understand. The {if} statement first checks for membership of the Administrators group using the PHP `stripos()` function for case-insensitive substring matching; if matched, the operator will be enabled. Otherwise, the server’s current time is checked to see if it is after 8am and before 6pm; if so, the operator will be enabled. If neither condition has matched, the “enabled” field will be set to 0 and login will not be permitted.




Operator Logins Configuration

You are able to configure a message on the login screen that will be displayed to all operators. This must be written in HTML. You may also use template code to further customize the appearance and behavior of the login screen.

Options related to operator passwords may also be specified, including the complexity requirements to enforce for operator passwords.

Navigate to **Administrator > Operator Logins** and click the **Operator Logins Configuration** command link to modify these configuration parameters.



Operator Logins Configuration

Adjust configuration options for operator logins, including displaying a message on the login screen.

Custom Login Message

Configuration

Operator Login UI

Override the look and feel of the operator login screen.

* Login Message:

Insert content item... ▼

The message that will be displayed in the header of the login screen.

Login Footer:

Insert content item... ▼

The message that will be displayed in the footer of the login screen.

Login Skin:

(Default) ▼

Override the skin of the login screen.

If you are deploying the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance in a multi-lingual environment, you can specify different login messages depending on the currently selected language.

The following example from the Amigopod demo site uses Danish (da), Spanish (es) and the default language English, as highlighted in bold:

```

{if $current_language == 'da'}
<p>
  Indtast brugernavn og password for at <br>
  få adgang til Amigopod
</p>
<p>
  Kontakt <a href="http://www.airwire.dk/">Airwire</a> (Norden) for at få demoadgang
</p>
{elseif $current_language == 'es'}
<p>

```

```

    Para entrar en el web demo de Amigopod,<br>
    necesitas un nombre y contraseña.
</p>
<p>
    Si no tienes un login, puedes obtener uno<br>
    <a href="http://www.arubanetworks.com/">contactando con Aruba Networks</a>.
</p>
{else}
<p>
    The Amigopod demo site <br>
    requires a username and password.
</p>
<p>
    If you don't have a login, <br>
    <a href="http://www.arubanetworks.com/">contact Aruba Networks</a> to obtain one.
</p>
{/if}
<br clear="all">

```

In the **Login Footer** field, enter any HTML information that you want displayed in the Operator Login form. Select the login skin from the **Login Skin** drop-down menu. Options include the default skin or a customized skin.

Operator Password Options

Password Options
Options related to operator passwords.

* Password Changes:	<input type="checkbox"/> Prevent operators from changing their password <small>Removes the Change Password link for all operator accounts.</small>
* Password Complexity:	<div>At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit, and symbol ▼</div> <small>Password complexity to enforce for all operator passwords.</small>
* Minimum Password Length:	<div>8</div> <small>The minimum number of characters that an operator password must contain.</small>
Disallowed Password Characters:	<div></div> <small>Characters which cannot appear in a password.</small>

The password complexity for operators may be specified here. The following options are available:

- **No password complexity requirement** – a password policy is not defined by the system.
- **At least one uppercase and one lowercase letter**
- **At least one digit**
- **At least one symbol**
- **At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit, and symbol** – the most secure form of password; this is the default and recommended setting.

A minimum password length of at least **8 characters** is recommended.

Advanced Operator Login Options

Advanced Options
These options do not normally need to be modified.

* Logging:	<div>Log only web logins</div> <div>Select the level of logging to use when the application is accessed.</div>
* Local Priority:	<div>10</div> <div>The priority rank of the service handler for authentication of local operators. Lower numbers represent higher priorities.</div>
* Logout After:	<div>4 hours</div> <div>The idle timeout for operator login sessions, in hours.</div>
* Session Checking:	<div>Full checking</div> <div>The amount of validity checking to perform on operator login sessions at each page load. Higher settings reduce performance.</div>
* Check Interval:	<div>15 seconds</div> <div>Minimum interval in seconds between checks of a session's validity.</div>

Save Changes

The following options are available in the Logging drop-down list:

- No logging
- Log only failed operator login attempts
- Log only Web logins
- Log only XMLRPC access
- Log all access

Log messages for operator logins, whether successful or unsuccessful, are shown in the application log.

Automatic Logout

The Logout After option in the Advanced Options section lets you to configure an idle time, after which an operator's session will be ended.

The value for Logout After should be specified in hours. You can use fractional numbers for values less than an hour; for example, use 0.25 to specify a 15 minute idle timeout.

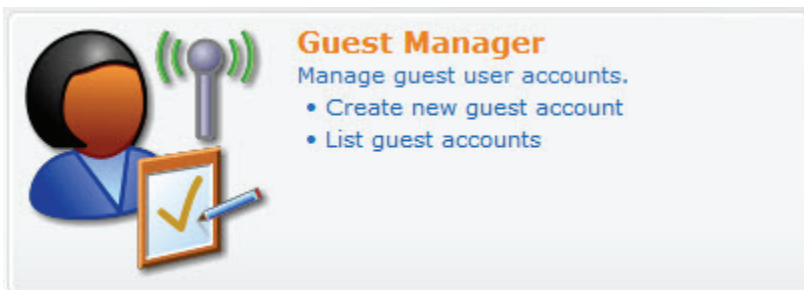


The ability to easily create and manage guest accounts is the primary function of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

Guest Manager provides complete control over the user account creation process. Using the built-in customization editor you can customize fields, forms and views as well as the forms for guest self-registration.

Accessing Guest Manager

Use the Guest Manager command link on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance home page to access the guest management features



Alternatively, use the Guest Manager navigation menu to jump directly to any of the features within Guest Manager.

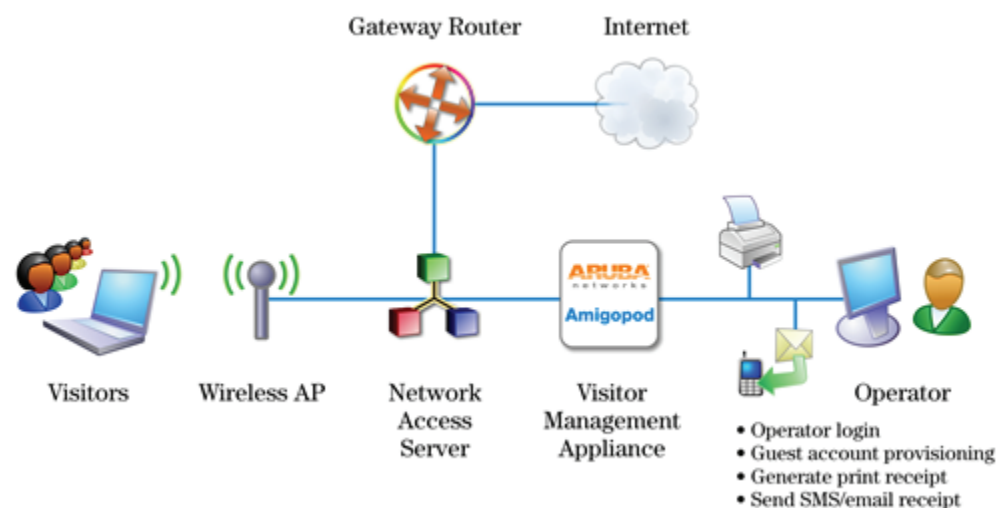
About Guest Management Processes

There are two major ways to manage guest access – either by your operators provisioning guest accounts, or by the guests self-provisioning their own accounts. Both of these processes are described in the next sections.

Sponsored Guest Access

The following figure shows the process of sponsored guest access. See [Figure 17](#).

Figure 17 Sponsored guest access with guest created by operator



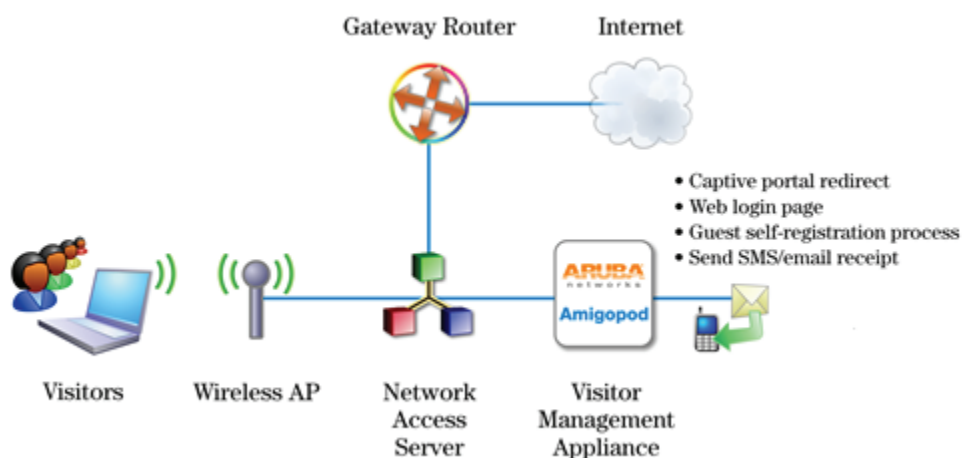
The operator creates the guest accounts and generates a receipt for the account.

The guest logs on to the Network Access Server (NAS) using the credentials provided on her receipt. The NAS authenticates and authorizes the guest's login using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. Once authorized, the guest is able to access the network.

Self Provisioned Guest Access

Self-provisioned access is similar to sponsored guest access, but there is no need for an operator to create the account or to print the receipt. See [Figure 18](#).

Figure 18 Guest access when guest is self-provisioned



The guest logs on to the Network Access Server (NAS), which captures the guest and redirects them to a captive portal login page. From the login page, guests without an account can browse to the guest self-registration page, where the guest creates a new account. At the conclusion of the registration process, the guest is automatically redirected to the NAS to log in.

The guest can print or download a receipt, or have the receipt information sent to her by SMS or email.

The NAS performs authentication and authorization for the guest using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. Once authorized, the guest is then able to access the network.

See [“Customizing Self Provisioned Access”](#) in this chapter for details on creating and managing self-registration pages.

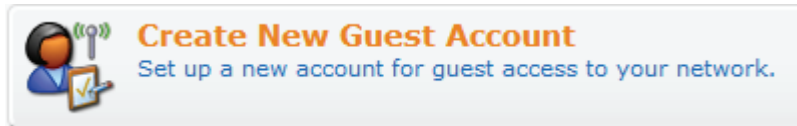
Standard Guest Management Features

Guest Manager provides a complete set of features for managing guest accounts, including:

- Creating single guest accounts
- Creating multiple guest accounts
- Listing guest accounts and editing individual accounts
- Editing multiple accounts
- Viewing and managing active sessions
- Importing new accounts from a text file
- Exporting a list of accounts
- Viewing MAC devices
- Creating new MAC devices
- Customizing Guest Manager settings, forms, and views
- Customizing guest self-registration
- Creating and editing print templates

Creating a Guest Account

The **New Visitor Account** form is used to create a new visitor account.



NOTE

This form (create_user) may be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See [“Customizing Self Provisioned Access”](#) in this chapter for details about the customization process. The default settings for this form are described below.

New Visitor Account	
* Sponsor's Name:	admin <small>Name of the person sponsoring this visitor account.</small>
* Visitor's Name:	<input type="text"/> <small>Name of the visitor.</small>
* Company Name:	<input type="text"/> <small>Company name of the visitor.</small>
* Email Address:	<input type="text"/> <small>The visitor's email address. This will become their username to log into the network.</small>
Account Activation:	Now <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small>
Account Expiration:	1 day from now <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small>
* Expire Action:	Delete and logout at specified time <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Select an option for controlling the expiration of this account. Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.</small>
* Account Role:	Contractor <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Role to assign to this visitor account.</small>
Password:	54933507
* Terms of Use:	<input type="checkbox"/> I am the sponsor of this visitor account and accept the terms of use
<input type="button" value="Create Account"/>	


To complete the form, first enter the visitor's details into the **Sponsor's Name**, **Visitor Name**, **Company Name** and **Email Address** fields. The visitor's email address will become their username to log into the network.

You can specify the account activation and expiration times. The visitor account cannot be used before the activation time, or after the expiration time.

The Account Role specifies what type of account the visitor should have.

A random password is created for each visitor account. This is displayed on this form, but will also be available on the guest account receipt.



You must tick the Terms of Use check box in order to create the visitor account.


Click the  **Create Account** button after completing the form.



Creating a Guest Account Receipt


Once a guest account has been created, the details for that account are displayed.


Account Details	
Guest username:	demo@example.com
Guest password:	39676530
Account expiration:	Account will expire at Sunday, 07 June 2009, 05:14 PM
Account role:	Guest
Sponsor name:	admin


 Open print window using template... 

 [Send SMS receipt](#)


 [Send email receipt to demo@example.com](#)
 [Send email receipt](#)

 [Create another guest account](#)

To print a receipt for the visitor, select an appropriate template from the  **Open print window using template...** list. A new Web browser window will open and the browser's Print dialog box will be displayed.


Click the  **Send SMS receipt** link to send a guest account receipt via text message. Use the **SMS Receipt** form to enter the mobile telephone number to which the receipt should be sent.

Sending SMS receipts requires the SMS Services plugin. If the administrator has enabled automatic SMS, and the visitor's phone number was typed into the **New Visitor Account** form, an SMS message will be sent automatically. A message is displayed on the account receipt page after an SMS message has been sent.

Click the  **Send email receipt** link to send an email copy of the guest account receipt. Use the Email Receipt form to enter the email address to which the receipt should be sent. You can also specify the subject line for the email message. If the administrator has enabled automatic email for guest account receipts, and the visitor's email address was typed into the **New Visitor Account** form, an email receipt will be sent automatically. A message is displayed on the account receipt page after an email has been sent.

Creating Multiple Guest Accounts

The **Create Guest Accounts** form is used to create a group of visitor accounts.



Create Multiple Guest Accounts

Create multiple guest accounts, each with a randomly-assigned username and password.



This form (create_multi) may be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See ["Customizing Self Provisioned Access"](#) in this chapter for details about the customization process. The default settings for this form are described below.

Create Guest Accounts	
* Number of Accounts:	<input type="text"/> Number of visitor accounts to create.
Account Activation:	Now <input type="button" value="v"/> Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.
Account Expiration:	1 day from now <input type="button" value="v"/> Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.
* Expire Action:	Delete and logout at specified time <input type="button" value="v"/> Select an option for controlling the expiration of this account. Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.
Account Lifetime:	N/A <input type="button" value="v"/> The amount of time after the first login before the visitor account will expire and be deleted.
* Account Role:	Contractor <input type="button" value="v"/> Role to assign to this visitor account.
	

To complete the form, you must enter the number of visitor accounts you want to create.

A random password will be created for each visitor account. This is not displayed on this form, but will be available on the guest account receipt.


You can specify the account activation and expiration times. The visitor accounts cannot be used before the activation time, or after the expiration time.

To create temporary “scratch card” accounts, you may specify a value for the Account Lifetime. This creates a visitor account with a timer that starts counting down once the visitor logs in for the first time. When the timer runs out, the account will expire.



If more than one account expiration time is set (for example, an account lifetime and a fixed expiration time), then the account will expire at the earliest of the expiration times.


The Account Role specifies what type of accounts to create.

Click the  **Create Accounts** button after completing the form.

Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts

Once a group of guest accounts has been created, the details for the accounts are displayed.

To print the receipts, select an appropriate template from the  **Open print window using template...** list. A new Web browser window will open and the Print dialog box will be displayed.


To download a copy of the receipt information in CSV format, click the  **Save list for scratch cards (CSV file)** link. The fields available in the CSV file are:

- **Number** – the sequential number of the visitor account, starting at one
- **Username** – the username for the visitor account
- **Password** – the password for the visitor account
- **Role** – the visitor account’s role
- **Activation Time** – the date and time at which the account will be activated, or N/A if there is no activation time
- **Expiration Time** – the date and time at which the account will expire, or N/A if there is no activation time

- **Lifetime** – the account lifetime in minutes, or N/A if the account does not have a lifetime specified
- **Successful** – “Yes” if the account was created successfully, or “No” if there was an error creating the account

Managing Guest Accounts


Use the Guest Manager Accounts list view to work with individual guest accounts. To open the Guest Manager Accounts list, go to **Guests > List Guest Accounts**.





List Guest Accounts

View a list of all current guest accounts. You can modify and remove individual user accounts here.

This view (guest_users) may be customized by adding new fields or modifying or removing the existing fields. See “[Customization of Fields](#)” in this chapter for details about this customization process. The default settings for this view are described below.


 Quick Help

 Create


 More Options


Filter:

Username	Role	Status	Expiration
01340200	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
01930752	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
03193996	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
04886834	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
05752534	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
12380724	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
13337332	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
15907164	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
16499243	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00
17368926	Guest	Enabled	2010-10-20 09:00

 Refresh

12345





Showing 1 - 10 of 50

10 rows per page


The Username, Role, Status, and Expiration columns display information about the visitor accounts that have been created.

The value in the **Expiration** column is **colored red** if the account will expire within the next 24 hours. The expiration time is additionally highlighted in **boldface** if the account will expire within the next hour.

You can use the **Filter** field to narrow the search parameters. You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 15 Operators supported in filters


Operator	Meaning	Additional Information
=	is equal to	<p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality != operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p>
!=	is not equal to	
>	is greater than	
>=	is greater than or equal to	
<	is less than	
<=	is less than or equal to	
~	matches the regular expression	
!~	does not match the regular expression	


To restore the default view, click the  **Clear Filter** link.

Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.




When the list contains many thousands of user accounts, consider using the Filter field to speed up finding a specific user account.

Use the  **Create** tab to create new visitor accounts using the **New Visitor Account** form. See “[Creating a Guest Account](#)” details about this form.

Use the  **More Options** tab for additional functions, including import and export of guest accounts and the ability to customize the view.

Click a user account’s row to select it. You can then select from one of these actions:

-  **Reset password** – Changes the password for a guest account. A new randomly generated password is displayed on the **Reset Password** form.

Reset Password

Username:


alice@fireside.org


* New password:



33903328

This is the new password that will be assigned to this guest account.

 Update Account

Click the  **Update Account** button to reset the guest account's password. A new account receipt is then displayed, which allows you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.

-  **Change expiration** – Changes the expiration time for a guest account.


Change Expiration	
Username:	alice@fireside.org
Account Expiration:	Account will expire at Monday, 26 March 2012, 12:02 PM
Account Expiration:	(No changes: 2012-03-26 12:02:17) 
Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.	
	

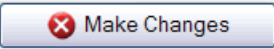



This form (change_expiration) may be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. Refer to the section of this chapter for details about this customization process


Select an option from the drop-down list to change the expiration time of the guest account.


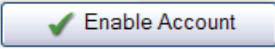
Click the  **Update Account** button to set the new expiration time for the guest account. A new account receipt is then displayed, which allows you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.


-  **Remove** – Disables or deletes a guest account.


Remove Account	
Username:	demo@example.com
Account Expiration:	Account will expire at Wednesday, 10 June 2009, 10:59 AM
* Action:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable account <input type="radio"/> Delete account
Caution: Deleting a guest account cannot be undone! Use this option with care.	
	

Select the appropriate Action radio button, and click the  **Make Changes** button to disable or delete the account.

-  **Activate** – Re-enables a disabled guest account, or specifies an activation time for the guest account.

Enable Guest Account	
Username:	demo@example.com
Account Expiration:	Account will expire at Wednesday, 10 June 2009, 10:59 AM
Account Activation:	Now 
Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.	
	


Select an option from the drop-down list to change the activation time of the guest account. Choose **Now** to re-enable an account that has been disabled. Click the  **Enable Account** button to set the new activation time for the guest account. A new account receipt is then displayed, which allows you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.




-  **Edit** – Changes the properties of a guest account.

Edit Account	
* Visitor's Name:	<input type="text" value="Sample Visitor Account"/> <small>Name of the visitor.</small>
* Username:	<input type="text" value="demo@example.com"/> <small>Name of the visitor account.</small>
Account Activation:	(No changes: Account is active) ▼ <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small>
Account Expiration:	(No changes: 2009-06-10 10:59:36) ▼ <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small>
Account Lifetime:	(No changes: N/A) ▼ <small>The amount of time after the first login before the visitor account will expire and be deleted.</small>
Allowed Usage:	(No changes) ▼ <small>Select an option for changing the allowed usage time of this account.</small>
Account Role:	(No changes: Guest) ▼ <small>Role to assign to this visitor account.</small>
* Password:	(No changes) ▼ <small>Select an option for editing the visitor account's password.</small>
Session Limit:	<input type="text" value="1"/> <small>The number of simultaneous sessions allowed for this visitor account. Type 0 for unlimited use.</small>
<input type="button" value="Update Account"/>	




This form may be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. Refer to the section of this chapter for details about this customization process. This is the guest_edit form.

Click the  **Update Account** button to update the properties of the guest account. A new account receipt is then displayed, which allows you to print a receipt showing the updated account details.

-  **Sessions** – Displays the active sessions for a guest account. See “[Active Sessions Management](#)” in this chapter for details about managing active sessions.
-  **Print** – Displays the guest account's receipt and the delivery options for the receipt. For security reasons, the guest's password is not displayed on this receipt. To recover a forgotten or lost guest account password, use the  **Reset password** link.

Managing Multiple Guest Accounts

Use the **Edit Accounts** list view to work with multiple guest accounts. This view may be accessed by clicking the **Edit Multiple Guest Accounts** command link.



Edit Multiple Guest Accounts

View a list of all current guest accounts. You can modify and remove one or more user accounts here.

This view (guest_multi) may be customized by adding new fields or by modifying or removing the existing fields. See “[Customizing Self Provisioned Access](#)” in this chapter for details about this customization process. The default settings for this view are described below.

Quick Help	Create	Delete	Edit	Results	More Options
Filter:	<input type="text"/>				
	Search all fields that have been configured for 'quick search'.				
Select:	This Page (10) • All Matching (50) • None • Total number of accounts currently selected: 0				
Username	Role	Status	Activation	Expiration	Lifetime
<input type="checkbox"/> 01340200	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 01930752	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 03193996	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 04886834	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 05752534	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 12380724	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 13337332	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 15907164	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 16499243	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> 17368926	Guest	Enabled	N/A	2010-10-20 09:00	N/A
Refresh			1 2 3 4 5		Showing 1 - 10 of 50
					10 rows per page

You can use the **Filter** field to narrow the search parameters. You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 16 Operators supported in filters

Operator	Meaning	Additional Information
=	is equal to	<p>You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().</p> <p>For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".</p>
!=	is not equal to	
>	is greater than	
>=	is greater than or equal to	
<	is less than	
<=	is less than or equal to	
~	matches the regular expression	
!~	does not match the regular expression	

To restore the default view, click the **Clear Filter** link.


Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.





To select guest accounts, click the accounts you want to work with.

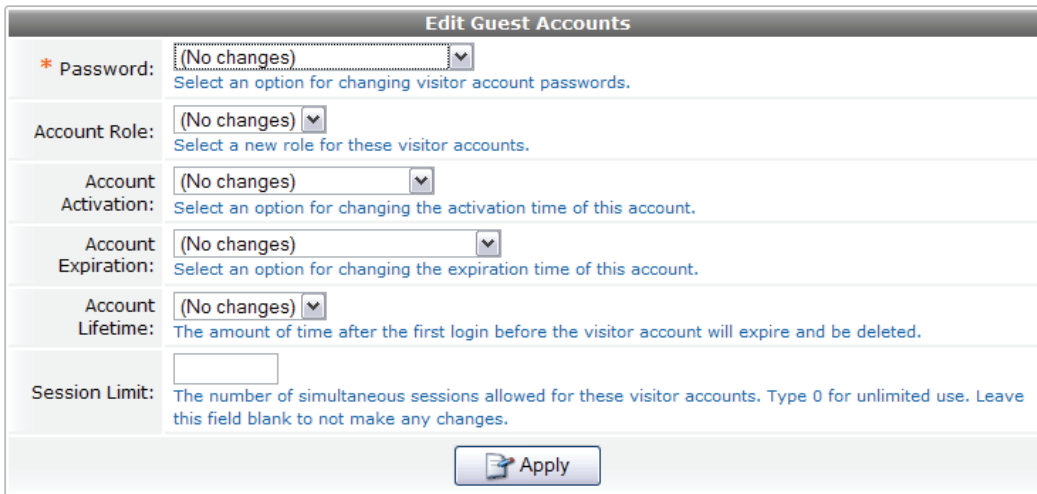
You may click either the check box or the row to select a visitor account. To select or unselect all visible visitor accounts, click the check box in the header row of the table.

Use the selection row at the top of the table to work with the current set of selected accounts. The number of currently selected accounts is shown. When a filter is in effect, the “All Matching” link can be used to add all pages of the filtered result to the selection.


Use the  **Create** tab to create new visitor accounts using the **Create Guest Accounts** form. See “[Managing Multiple Guest Accounts](#)” in this chapter for details about this form.

Use the  **Delete** tab to delete the visitor accounts that you have selected. This option is not available if there are no visitor accounts selected.

Use the  **Edit** tab to make changes to multiple visitor accounts at once. This option is not available if there are no visitor accounts selected.



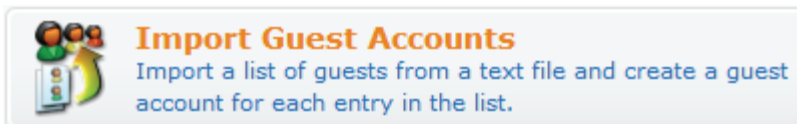
This form may be customized by adding new fields, or modifying or removing the existing fields. See “[Customizing Self Provisioned Access](#)” in this chapter for details about this customization process. This is the `guest_multi_form` form.

The  **Results** tab will be automatically selected after you have made changes to one or more guest accounts. You can create new guest account receipts or download the updated guest account information. See “[Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts](#)” in this chapter for more information.

The  **More Options** tab includes the **Choose Columns** command link, which may be used to customize the view.

Importing Guest Accounts

Guest accounts may be created from an existing list by uploading it to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. Use the **Import Guest Accounts** command to start the process.




The **Upload User List** form provides you with different options for importing guest account data

Upload User List	
Accounts File:	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> <small>Upload a file containing a list of user accounts. This field may be left blank if you provide the list in the field below.</small>
Accounts Text:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 150px; width: 100%;"></div> <small>Type in or paste the list of user accounts. This field may be left blank if you upload a file.</small>
Advanced:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show additional import options
* Character Set:	<input type="text" value="UTF-8"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Select the character set encoding of the accounts file.</small>
Import Format:	<input type="text" value="Automatically detect format"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <small>Select the file format of the accounts file.</small>
Header:	<input type="checkbox"/> Force first row as header row
<input type="button" value="Next Step"/>	

To complete the form, you must either specify a file containing account information, or type or paste in the account information to the Accounts Text area.

Select the **Show additional import options** check box to display the following advanced import options:

- **Character Set:** The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance uses the UTF-8 character set encoding internally to store visitor account information. If your accounts file is not encoded in UTF-8, the import may fail or produce unexpected results if non-ASCII characters are used. To avoid this, you should specify what character set encoding you are using.
- **Import format:** The format of the accounts file is automatically detected. You may specify one of the following encoding types if the automatic detection is not suitable for your data.
 - XML
 - Comma separated values
 - Tab separated values
 - Pipe (|) separated values
 - Colon (:) separated values
 - Semicolon (;) separated values
- Select the **Force first row as header row** check box if your data contains a header row that specifies the field names. This option is only required if the header row is not automatically detected.

Click  **Next Step** to upload the account data.

In step 2 of 3, Amigopod determines the format of the uploaded account data and matches the appropriate fields to the data. The first few records in the data will be displayed, together with any automatically detected field names.

In this example, the following data was used:

```
username,visitor_name,password,expire_time
demo005,Demo five,secret005,2011-06-10 09:00
demo006,Demo six,secret006,2011-06-11 10:00
demo007,Demo seven,secret007,2011-06-12 11:00
demo008,Demo eight,secret008,2011-06-13 12:00
demo009,Demo nine,secret009,2011-06-13 12:00
demo010,Demo ten,secret010,2011-06-13 12:00
demo011,Demo eleven,secret011,2011-06-13 12:00
```

Because this data includes a header row that contains field names, the corresponding fields have been automatically detected in the data:

Record	Username	Full Name	Password	Expiration
1	username	visitor_name	password	expire_time
2	demo005	Demo five	secret005	2011-06-10 09:00
3	demo006	Demo six	secret006	2011-06-11 10:00
4	demo007	Demo seven	secret007	2011-06-12 11:00
5	demo008	Demo eight	secret008	2011-06-13 12:00
6	demo009	Demo nine	secret009	2011-06-13 12:00
7	demo010	Demo ten	secret010	2011-06-13 12:00
8	demo011	Demo eleven	secret011	2011-06-13 12:00

Use the **Match Fields** form to identify which guest account fields are present in the imported data. You can also specify the values to be used for fields that are not present in the data

Match Fields

* Username:

Username

The username of the created guest accounts.

* Password:

Password

The password for the created guest accounts.

* Role:

Assign role: Guest

The role to assign to each of the created guest accounts.

* Activation Time:

None (Activate immediately)

The date and time at which to enable the guest accounts.

* Expiration Time:

Expiration

The date and time at which a guest account will expire and be deleted.

* Account Lifetime:

None (No lifetime)

The amount of time after the first login before a guest account will expire and be deleted.

Expire Action:

Delete and logout at specified time

Select an option for controlling the expiration of this account. Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.

* Notes:

None

A note stored with each of the guest accounts.

Auto-Detected Fields:

☒ Full Name

The above fields were auto-detected in your file. Check the ones you wish to import.

* Header Rows:

1

The number of rows shown in the imported data that do not correspond to user accounts.

Next Step

To complete the **Match Fields** form, make a selection from each of the drop-down lists. Choose a column name to use the values from that column when importing guest accounts, or select one of the other available options to use a fixed value for each imported guest account.

* Role: Assign role: Guest


- Assign role: Contractor
- Assign role: Employee
- Assign role: Guest
- Username
- Full Name
- Password
- Expiration

Click the  **Next Step** button to preview the final result.









Step 3 of 3 displays a preview of the import operation. The values of each guest account field are determined, and any conflicts with existing user accounts are displayed.

Accounts:


Select:

[This Page \(10\)](#) • [All \(11\)](#) • [None](#) •  [New \(7\)](#) •  [Existing \(4\)](#)

Total number of records currently selected: 7

		Username	Password	Role	Expiration	Expire Action	Full Name
<input type="checkbox"/>		demo001	secret001	Contractor	2009-06-10 09:00	4	Demo One
<input type="checkbox"/>		demo002	secret002	Contractor	2009-06-11 10:00	4	Demo Two
<input type="checkbox"/>		demo003	secret003	Contractor	2009-06-12 11:00	4	Demo Three
<input type="checkbox"/>		demo004	secret004	Contractor	2009-06-13 12:00	4	Demo Four
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		demo005	secret005	Contractor	2009-06-14 13:00	4	Demo Five
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		demo006	secret006	Contractor	2009-06-10 09:00	4	Demo six
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		demo007	secret007	Contractor	2009-06-11 10:00	4	Demo seven
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		demo008	secret008	Contractor	2009-06-12 11:00	4	Demo eight
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		demo009	secret009	Contractor	2009-06-13 12:00	4	Demo nine
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		demo010	secret010	Contractor	2009-06-14 13:00	4	Demo ten

Refresh



1 2  

Showing 1 - 10 of 11

10 rows per page



Select the accounts to import.


Create Guest Accounts

The icon displayed for each user account indicates if it is a new entry () or if an existing user account will be updated () .

By default, this form shows ten entries per page. To view additional entries, click the arrow button at the bottom of the form to display the next page, or click the **10 rows per page** drop-down list at the bottom of the form and select the number of entries that should appear on each page.

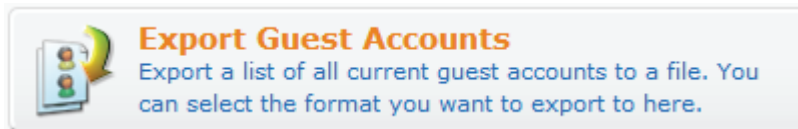
Click the check box by the account entries you want to create, or click one of the following options to select the desired accounts:

- Click the **This Page** link to select all entries on the current page.
- Click the **All** link to select all entries on all pages
- Click the **None** link to deselect all entries
- Click the  **New** link to select all new entries
- Click the  **Existing** link to select all existing user accounts in the list.

Click the  **Create Accounts** button to finish the import process. The selected items will be created or updated. You can then print new guest account receipts or download a list of the guest accounts. See “[Creating Multiple Guest Account Receipts](#)” in this chapter for more information.

Exporting Guest Account Information

Guest account information may be exported to a file in one of several different formats.



Click the appropriate command link to save a list of all guest accounts in comma-separated values (CSV), tab-separated values (TSV), or XML format.

This view (`guest_export`) may be customized by adding new fields, modifying or removing the existing fields. See [“Customizing Self Provisioned Access”](#) in this chapter for details about this customization process.

In CSV and TSV format, the following default fields are included in the export:

- **Number** – Sequential number of the guest account in the exported data
- **User ID** – Numeric user ID of the guest account
- **Username** – Username for the guest account
- **Role** – Role for the guest account
- **Activation** – Date and time at which the guest account will be activated, or “N/A” if there is no activation time
- **Expiration** – Date and time at which the guest account will expire, or “N/A” if there is no expiration time
- **Lifetime** – The guest account’s lifetime in minutes after login, or 0 if the account lifetime is not set
- **Expire Action** – Number specifying the action to take when the guest account expires (0 through 4)

The default XML format consists of a `<userlist>` element containing a `<user>` element for each exported guest account. The numeric ID of the guest account is provided as the “id” attribute of the `<user>` element.

The values for both standard and custom fields for guest accounts are exported as the contents of an XML tag, where the tag has the same name as the guest account field.

An example XML export is given below.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes" ?>
<userlist>
  <user id="43">
    <username>demo@example.com</username>
    <role_name id="2">Guest</role_name>
    <schedule_time>N/A</schedule_time>
    <expire_time>2009-06-10 10:59</expire_time>
    <expire_postlogin>0</expire_postlogin>
    <do_expire>4</do_expire>
  </user>
</userlist>
```



Guest Manager Customization

Guest Manager allows the entire guest account provisioning process to be customized. This is useful in many different situations, such as:

- **Self-registration** – Allow your guests to self-register and create their own temporary visitor accounts.
- **Visitor surveys** – Define custom fields to store data of interest to you, and collect this information from guests using customized forms.
- **Branded print receipts** – Add your own branding images and text to print receipts.

- **SMS and email receipts** – Include a short text message with your guest's username and password, or send HTML emails containing images.
- **Advanced customization** – The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance is flexible and can be used to provide location sensitive content and advertising.

Default Settings for Account Creation

The Guest Manager plugin configuration holds the default settings for account creation. These settings can be modified by navigating to Customize Guest Manager within the Guest Manager Customization screen.



Figure 19 *Customize Guest Manager page (part 1)*

Customize Guest Manager	
Site SSID:	<input type="text" value="Aruba"/> <p>The SSID of the wireless LAN, if applicable. This will appear on guest account print receipts.</p>
Site WPA Key:	<input type="text"/> <p>The WPA key for the wireless LAN, if applicable. This will appear on guest account print receipts.</p>
* Username Type:	<input type="text" value="Random digits"/> <p>The method used to generate random account usernames.</p>
* Username Length:	<input type="text" value="8"/> <p>The length, in characters, of generated account usernames.</p>
* Random Password Type:	<input type="text" value="Random digits"/> <p>The method used to generate a random account password.</p>
* Random Password Length:	<input type="text" value="8"/> <p>Number of characters to include in randomly-generated account passwords.</p>
* Password Complexity:	<input type="text" value="No password complexity requirement"/> <p>Password complexity to enforce for manually-entered guest passwords. Requires the random password type 'A password matching the password complexity requirements' and the field validator 'NwaIsValidPasswordComplexity' for manual password entry.</p>
* Minimum Password Length:	<input type="text" value="8"/> <p>The minimum number of characters that a guest password must contain.</p>
* Disallowed Password Characters:	<input type="text"/> <p>Characters which cannot appear in a user-generated password.</p>
Disallowed Password Words:	<input type="text"/> <p>Comma separated list of words disallowed in the random words password generator. Note there is an internal exclusion list built into the server.</p>

- **Username Type** – The default method used to generate random account usernames (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the **random_username_method** field.

- **Username Length** – This field is displayed if the **Username Type** is set to “Random digits”, “Random letters”, “Random letters and digits” or “Sequential numbering”. The default length of random account usernames (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the **random_username_length** field.
- **Username Format** – This field is displayed if the **Username Type** is set to “Format picture”. It sets the format of the username to be created. See “[Format Picture String Symbols](#)” in the Reference chapter for a list of the special characters that may be used in the format string. This may be overridden by using the **random_username_picture** field.
- **Random Password Type** – The default method used to generate random account passwords (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the **random_password_method** field.
 - **Random Password Length** – The default length of random account passwords (when creating groups of accounts). This may be overridden by using the **random_password_length** field
 - **Password Format** – This field is displayed if the **Password Type** field is set to “Format picture”. It sets the format of the password to be created. See “[Format Picture String Symbols](#)” in the Reference chapter for a list of the special characters that may be used in the format string. This may be overridden by using the **random_password_picture** field.
- **Password Complexity** – The policy to enforce when guests change their account passwords using the guest self-service user interface. Different levels of password complexity can require guests to select passwords that contain different combinations of uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits and symbols (!#\$%&()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\\]^_`{|}~). The available options for this setting are:
 - No password complexity requirement
 - At least one uppercase and one lowercase letter
 - At least one digit
 - At least one letter and one digit
 - At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit
 - At least one symbol
 - At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit, and symbol
- **Minimum Password Length** – The minimum acceptable password length for guests changing their account passwords.
- **Disallowed Password Characters** – Special characters that should not be allowed in a guest password. Spaces are not allowed by default.
- **Disallowed Password Words** – Enter a comma-separated list of words that are disallowed and will not be created by the random words password generator.

Figure 20 *Customize Guest Manager page (part 2)—continued*

* Expire Action:	<div>Delete and logout at specified time ▾</div> <p>Default action to take when the expire_time is reached. Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.</p>
* Account Retention:	<div>365</div> <p>Days after being disabled an account will persist for being deleted. Requires the expiration action to be set accordingly.</p>
* Session Warning:	<div>15</div> <p>Number of minutes prior to being logged out before warning the guest. Enter 0 to disable warnings.</p>
* Expiration Options:	<div> <div> 1 1 hour 2 2 hours 3 3 hours 4 4 hours 6 6 hours 8 8 hours 12 12 hours 16 16 hours 20 20 hours 24 1 day </div> </div> <p>The available options to select from when choosing the expiration time of a guest account. Expiration times are specified in hours.</p>
* Lifetime Options:	<div> <div> 0 N/A 60 1 hour 120 2 hours 180 3 hours 240 4 hours 360 6 hours 480 8 hours 720 12 hours 1440 1 day 2880 2 days </div> </div> <p>The available options to select from when choosing the lifetime of a guest account. Lifetime values are specified in minutes.</p>

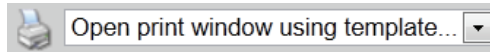
- **Expire Action** – Default action to take when the expiration time is reached. There are four options. A logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.
- **Account Retention** – Deleted user accounts are available for reporting purposes. The default value is 1 year after the user account is deleted. If you do not want to retain any data, set the value to 0. If you want to view deleted accounts in a list view or report, add the delete_time field to the output and deleted users will automatically be included in the results.
- **Session Warning**– Number of minutes prior to being logged out before warning the guest. Enter 0 to disable warnings.
- **Expiration Options** – Default values for relative account expiration times. These options are displayed as the values of the “Expires After” field when creating a user account.

Figure 21 *Customize Guest Manager page (part 3)—continued*

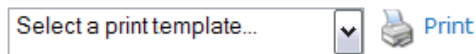
Terms Of Use URL:	<input type="text" value="external/terms.html"/> <p>The URL of a terms and conditions page. If non-blank, this will enable a "terms of use" checkbox on the create account page, which must be checked in order to create a new account. The URL here is specified as the terms of use and is opened in a new window.</p>
Active Sessions:	<input type="text" value="1"/> <p>Enable limiting the number of active sessions a guest account may have. Enter 0 to allow an unlimited number of sessions.</p>
Password Logging:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Log guest account passwords Whether to record passwords for guest accounts in the application log.
Password Display:	<input type="checkbox"/> View guest account passwords If selected, guest account passwords may be displayed in the list of guest accounts. This is only possible if operators have the View Passwords privilege.
Initial Sequence:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 100px; width: 100%;"></div> <p>Create multi next available sequence number. These values will be used when multi_initial_sequence is set to -1.</p>
Receipt Printing:	<input type="checkbox"/> Require click to print Guest receipts can print simply by selecting the template in the dropdown, or by clicking a link.
About Guest Network Access:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: -10px;"> <input type="button" value="Insert content item..."/> </div> <p>Template code to display on the Guest Manager start page, under the "About Guest Network Access" heading. Leave blank to use the default text, or enter a hyphen ("-") to remove the default text and the heading.</p>

- **Lifetime Options** – Default values for account lifetimes. These options are displayed as the values of the "Account Lifetime" field when creating a user account.
- **Terms of Use URL** – URL of a terms and conditions page provided to sponsors. You may upload an HTML file describing the terms and conditions of use using the Content Manager (**See "Content Manager"** in the Administrator Tasks chapter). If this file is called **terms.html** then the Terms of Use URL should be **public/terms.html**.
- **Active Sessions** – Default maximum number of active sessions that should be allowed for a guest account. This may be overridden by using the **simultaneous_use** field when creating or editing a guest account.
- **Password Logging** – By default, the passwords for created guest accounts are logged in the application log and may be recovered from there. For increased security, you may prevent this password from being logged by unselecting this check box.

- **Password Display** – Select the “View guest account passwords” to enable the display of visitor account passwords in the user list. To reveal passwords, the **password** field must be added to the “guest_users” or “guest_edit” view, and the operator profile in use must also have the View Passwords privilege.
- **Initial Sequence** – This field contains the next available sequence number for each username prefix that has been used. Automatic sequence numbering is used when the value of the **multi_initial_sequence** field is set to -1. The username prefix is taken from the **multi_prefix** field when usernames are automatically generated using the “nwa_sequence” method. You can edit the values stored here to change the next sequence numbers that will be used. This is an automatically managed field; in most situations there is no need to edit it.
- **Receipt Printing** – Select the “Require click to print” option to change the behavior of the receipt page. When this option is not selected, the default behavior is to provide a drop-down list of print templates and to open a new window when one is selected:



When “Require click to print” is selected, the receipt page provides a drop-down list of print templates and a **Print** link that must be clicked to display the account receipt:



- **About Guest Network Access** – Allows the text displayed to operators on the Guest Manager start page to be customized, or removed (if a single hyphen “-” is entered).

About Fields, Forms, and Views

A field is a named item of information.

A form is a group of fields that is used to collect information from an operator, whereas a view is a grouping of fields that is used to display information to an operator.

Business Logic for Account Creation

When guest accounts are created, there are certain rules that must be followed in order to create a valid account. These rules apply to all accounts, regardless of how the account was created.

The business logic rules that control all guest account creation are described below.

Verification Properties

- **creator_accept_terms**: This field must be set to 1, indicating the creator has accepted the terms of use for creating the account. If the field is not present or is not set to 1, the visitor account is not created.
- **password2**: If this field is specified, its value must be equal to the “password” field, or else the visitor account is not created.
- **auto_update_account**: If this field is present and set to a non-zero value, account creation will not fail if the username already exists – any changes will be merged into the existing account using an update instead.

Basic User Properties

- **username**: This field is the name for the visitor account and may be provided directly. If this field is not specified, then use the email address from the **email** field, and if that is also not specified, then randomly generate a username (according to the value of the **random_username_method** and **random_username_length** fields).

- **modify_password**: This field controls password modification for the visitor account. It may be set to one of these values:
 - “reset” to randomly generate a new password according to the values of the **random_password_method** and **random_password_length** fields
 - “password” to use the password specified in the **password** field
 - “random_password” to use the password specified in the **random_password** field
 - If blank or unset, the default password behavior is used, which is to use any available value from the **random_password** field and the **password** field, or assume that “reset” was specified otherwise.
- **password**: This field is the password for the visitor account and may be provided directly. If this field is not specified, then randomly generate a password (according to the values of the **random_password_method** and **random_password_length** fields).
- **role_id**: This field is the role to assign to the visitor account and may be specified directly. If this field is not specified, then determine the role ID from the **role_name** field. If no valid role ID is able to be determined, the visitor account is not created.
- **simultaneous_use**: This field determines the maximum number of concurrent sessions allowed for the visitor account. If this field is not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.
- **random_username_method** – The method used to generate a random account username. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.
- **random_username_length** – The length in characters of random account usernames. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.
- **random_password_method** – The method used to generate a random account password. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.
- **random_password_length** – The length in characters of random account passwords. If not specified, the default value from the GuestManager configuration is used.

Visitor Account Activation Properties

- **enabled**: This field determines if the account is enabled or disabled; if not specified, the default is 1 (account is enabled).
- **do_schedule**, **modify_schedule_time**, **schedule_after** and **schedule_time**: These fields are used to determine the time at which the visitor account will be activated.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is “none”, then the account is disabled and has no activation time set.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is “now”, then the account is enabled and has no activation time set.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is a value that specifies a relative time change, for example “+1h”, then the visitor account’s activation time is modified accordingly.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is a value that specifies an absolute time, for example “2010-12-31 17:00”, then the visitor account’s activation time is set to that value.
 - If **modify_schedule_time** is “schedule_after” or “schedule_time”, then the activation time is determined according to the **schedule_after** or **schedule_time** fields as explained below.
 - If **schedule_after** is set and not zero, then add that time in hours to the current time and use it as the activation time (setting **do_schedule** to 1); **enabled** will be set to zero.
 - Otherwise, if **schedule_after** is zero, negative or unset, and **schedule_time** has been specified, use that activation time (set **do_schedule** to 1 and **enabled** to 0). If the **schedule_time** specified is in the past, set **do_schedule** to 0 and **enabled** to 1.
 - Otherwise, if **schedule_time** is not specified, then the visitor account has no activation time and **do_schedule** will default to zero.

Visitor Account Expiration Properties

- **do_expire**, **modify_expire_time**, **expire_after** and **expire_time**: These fields are used to determine the time at which the visitor account will expire.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is “none”, then the account has no expiration time set.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is “now”, then the account is disabled and has no expiration time set.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is a value that specifies a relative time change, for example “+1h”, then the visitor account’s expiration time is modified accordingly.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is a value that specifies an absolute time, for example “2010-12-31 17:00”, then the visitor account’s expiration time is set to that value.
 - If **modify_expire_time** is “expire_after” or “expire_time”, then the expiration time is determined according to the **expire_after** or **expire_time** fields as explained below.
 - If **expire_after** is set and not zero, then add that time in hours to the current time and use it as the expiration time (set **do_expire** to 4 if it has not otherwise been set).
 - Otherwise, if **expire_after** is zero, negative or unset, and **expire_time** has been specified, use that expiration time (and set **do_expire** to 4 if it has not otherwise been set). If the **expire_time** specified is in the past, set **do_expire** to 0 and ignore the specified expiration time.
 - Otherwise, if **expire_time** is not specified, then the **expire_time** is not set and **do_expire** will always be set to zero.
- **expire_postlogin**: This field determines the amount of time after the initial login for which the visitor account will remain valid. If this field is not specified, the default value is 0 (account lifetime not set).
- **expire_usage**: This field determines the total amount of login time permitted for the visitor account. If this field is not specified, the default value is 0 (account usage is unlimited).

Other Properties

- All other properties specified at creation time are stored with the visitor account (for example, **email**, **visitor_name**, **visitor_company**, **visitor_phone**, **sponsor_name** as well as any custom fields that have been defined)

Account Expiration Types

The **do_expire** field is used to specify what should happen to the guest account when the account expiration time is reached.

Table 17 Account Expiration Types

Value of “do_expire”	Meaning
0	Account will not expire
1	Disable
2	Disable and logout
3	Delete
4	Delete and logout

“Disable” indicates that the enabled field will be set to 0, which will prevent further authorizations using this account.

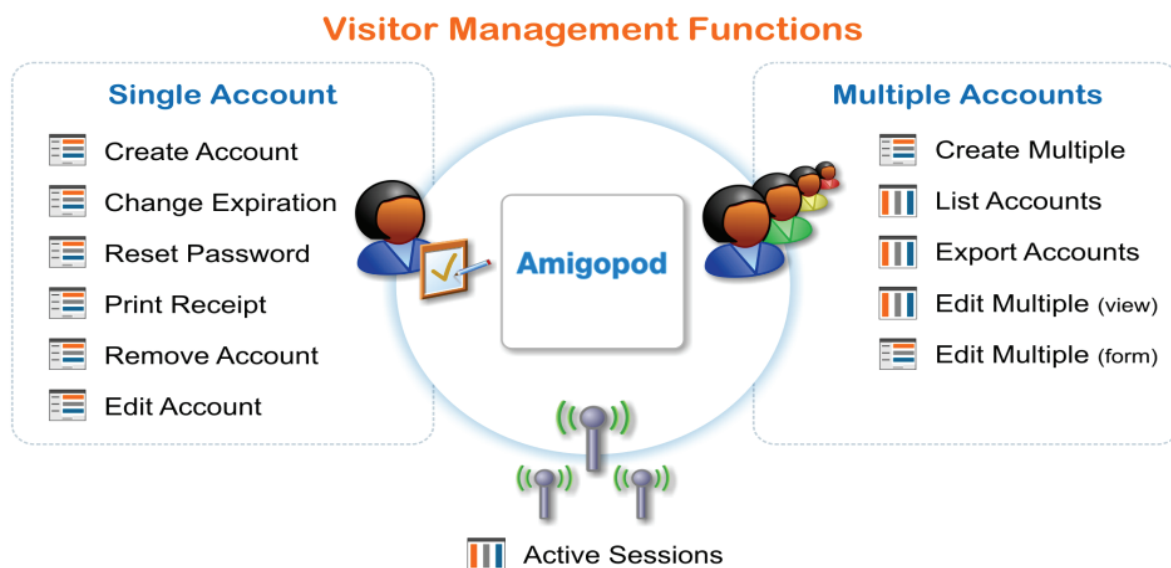
“Logout” indicates that a RADIUS Disconnect-Request will be used for all active sessions that have a username matching the account username. This option requires the NAS to support RFC 3576 dynamic authorization. See [“RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization”](#) in this chapter for more information.

Standard Fields

See [“Field, Form and View Reference”](#) in the Reference chapter for a listing of the standard fields shipped with the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

Standard Forms and Views

The figure below shows the standard forms and views in the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.



The table below lists all the forms and views used for visitor management.

Table 18 *Visitor Management Forms and Views*

Name	Type	Visitor Management Function	Editable?
change_expiration	Form	Change Expiration	Yes
create_multi	Form	Create Multiple	Yes
create_user	Form	Create Account	Yes
guest_edit	Form	Edit Account	Yes
guest_export	View	Export Accounts	Yes
guest_multi	View	Edit Multiple Accounts	Yes
guest_multi_form	Form	Edit Multiple Accounts	Yes
guest_receipt	Form	Print Receipt	No
guest_register	Form	Guest Self-Registration	Yes
guest_register_receipt	Form	Guest Self-Registration Receipt	Yes

Table 18 *Visitor Management Forms and Views (Continued)*

guest_sessions	View	Active Sessions	Yes
guest_users	View	List Accounts	Yes
remove_account	Form	Remove Account	No
reset_password	Form	Reset Password	No

These forms are accessed directly:

- **create_multi** form – multiple account creation
- **create_user** form – sponsored account creation
- **guest_register** form – guest self-registration form

These forms are accessed through the action row of the **guest_users** view:

- **change_expiration** form – change expiration time for a single account
- **guest_multi_form** form – editing multiple accounts
- **guest_edit** form – editing single account
- **reset_password** form – reset password for a single account

These forms are the standard self-registration forms:

- **guest_register** form – self-registration form
- **guest_register_receipt** form – self-registration receipt

These standard views are defined in Guest Manager:

- **guest_export** view – view used when exporting guest account information
- **guest_multi** view – displays a list of guest accounts optimized for working with multiple accounts
- **guest_sessions** view – displays a list of current or historical sessions (See “[Active Sessions Management](#)” in this chapter.)
- **guest_users** view – displays a list of guest accounts optimized for working with individual accounts



Customization of Fields

Custom fields are fields that you define yourself to cater for areas of interest to your organization. You are able to define custom fields for your guest accounts as well as edit the existing fields.

In addition you can delete and duplicate fields. For your convenience you are also able to list any forms or views that use a particular field.





Fields

Define custom fields for visitor accounts or change the behaviour of existing fields.





Fields that have a lock symbol  cannot be deleted.

A complete list of fields is displayed when you click the **Fields** command link on the **Customize Guest Manager** page.

To display only the fields that you have been created, click the  **Custom Fields Only** link in the bottom row of the list view. To return to displaying all fields, click the  **All Fields** link.

Creating a Custom Field

To create a custom field click the  **Create** tab at the top of the window or the  **Create a new field** link at the bottom of the window. The Create Field form is displayed.

Create Field	
* Field Name:	<input type="text"/> <small>The unique name of this field. This is a single word that may consist of letters, digits and underscores.</small>
* Field Type:	<input type="text" value="String"/> <small>The type of data that is stored in this field.</small>
Description:	<input type="text"/> <small>An optional description of this field.</small>

The Field Name is not permitted to have spaces but you can use underscores. Enter a description in the Description field. You can enter multiple-line descriptions which result in separate lines displayed on the form.

The Field Type can be one of String, Integer, Boolean or No data type. The No data type field would be used as a label, or a submit button.

Default View Display Properties	
<small>These options control the default values when used in a column.</small>	
Column Type:	<input type="text" value="Sortable text"/> <small>Type of column used to display this field.</small>
Column Title:	<input type="text"/> <small>The title text to display for this field's column.</small>
Column Width:	<input type="text" value="100"/> <small>The default width of this field in pixels.</small>
CSS Class:	<input type="text"/> <small>Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.</small>
CSS Style:	<input type="text"/> <small>Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.</small>
Column Format:	<input type="text" value="Field Value"/> <small>Describe how the value should be displayed onscreen.</small>
Search:	<input type="checkbox"/> Include values when performing a quick search <small>Many views include an ability to filter results. If checked, and this field is enabled, it will be included in the search.</small>

You can specify the default properties to use when adding this field to a view. See **“View Field Editor”** in this chapter for a description of the view display fields, including the Column Type and Column Format fields.

Default Form Display Properties	
<small>These properties control the default user interface displayed for this field.</small>	
User Interface:	<input type="text" value="No user interface"/> <small>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.</small>

You can specify the default properties to use when adding the field to a form. See **“View Field Editor”** in this chapter for a list of the available user interface types.

Form Validation Properties	
These properties control how the value of this field is checked.	
Field Required:	<input type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank.
Initial Value:	<input type="text"/> Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed.
Validator:	<input type="text" value="(No validation)"/> The function used to validate the contents of a field.

You can specify the default validation rules that should be applied to this field when it is added to a form. See **“Form Validation Properties”** in this chapter for further information about form validation properties.

Advanced Properties	
These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours.	
Advanced:	<input type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties

Select the **Show advanced properties** check box to reveal additional properties related to conversion, display and dynamic form behavior. See **“View Field Editor”** in this chapter for more information about advanced properties.

Click the **Save Changes** button to complete the creation of a new field. The new field is added at the top of the field list. You can re-sort the list to change the position of this new field. Alternatively you can reload the page.

Duplicating a Field

To duplicate a field, click the field to be duplicated, then click the **Duplicate** link. The field is copied and a number appended to the end of the field name—for example, if you were to duplicate the **card_code** field, the duplicated field would be **card_code_1**. To rename the field, click **Edit**.

Editing a Field

You are able to alter the properties of the field by making changes to the Field Name, Field Type or Description when you click the **Edit** link. This link is available when you click a field in the list view.

Click the **Save Changes** button to have the changes made permanent.

Deleting a Field

Fields that do not have a lock symbol can be deleted by clicking on the **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion. If you want the deletion to take place you are informed when the deletion has been completed. A field that is currently in use on a form or view may not be deleted.

Displaying Forms that Use a Field



Click the **Show Forms** link to see a list of forms that use the selected field.

The list displays the forms that use the selected field. It also allows you to edit the form’s fields by clicking on the **Edit Fields** link. Clicking on the **Use** link opens the form using that field.

If the field is used on multiple forms, you are able to select which form you would like to view.

Displaying Views that Use a Field

You are able to click the **Show Views** link to see a list of views that use the selected field.

The list displays the views that use the selected field. It also allows you to edit the view's fields by clicking on the  **Edit Fields** link. Clicking on the  **Use** link displays the view.

If the field is used on multiple views, you are able to select which view you would like to see.



Customization of Forms and Views


You are able to view a list of forms and views. From this list view, you can change the layout of forms or views, add new fields to a form or view, or alter the behavior of an existing field.




To view or customize forms and views, go to **Customization > Forms & Views**. The Customize Forms and Views page opens.


Editing Forms and Views

Clicking on the  **Use** link opens the form or view for use in your Web browser.

An asterisk (*) shown next to a form or view indicates that the form or view has been modified from the defaults. Click the  **Reset to Defaults** link to remove your modifications and restore the original form.


Resetting a form or view is a destructive operation and cannot be undone. You will be prompted to confirm the form or view reset before it proceeds.

The  **Edit** icon link allows you to change the general properties of a form or view such as its title and description.

Edit Properties	
Name:	guest_users <small>The name of the application page.</small>
Type:	view <small>The type of application page.</small>
Title:	<input type="text" value="Guest Manager Accounts"/> <small>The title for this form or view.</small>
Description:	<input type="text" value="List of visitor accounts."/> <small>An optional description of this form or view.</small>
Width:	<input type="text"/> <small>The width of the list view, in pixels.</small>
 Save Changes	


The Width field is only displayed for views. It specifies the total width of the list view in pixels. If blank, a default value is used.


Duplicating Forms and Views

Click the  **Duplicate** link to make a copy of a form or view.


Use the Duplicate link to provide different forms and views to different operator profiles. See [“Role-Based Access Control for Multiple Operator Profiles”](#) in the Operator Logins chapter for a description. This enables you to provide different views of the underlying visitor accounts in the database depending on the operator's profile.



The duplicated form or view has a name derived from the original, which cannot be changed. Use the Title and Description properties of the duplicated item to describe the intended purpose for the form or view.

Click the  **Show Usage** link for a duplicated form or view to see the operator profiles that are referencing it.

Click the  **Delete** link for a duplicated form or view to remove the copy. A duplicated item cannot be removed if it is referenced by an operator login account or an operator profile.

Editing Forms


To add a new field to a form, reorder the fields, or make changes to an existing field, go to **Customization > Forms & Views**, click the form's row in the Customize Forms & Views list, and then click the  **Edit Fields** link. This opens the **Customize Form Fields** editor.


 Quick Help		 Preview Form		
Rank	Field	Type	Label	Description
10	sponsor_name	text	Sponsor's Name:	Name of the person sponsoring this guest account.
20	visitor_name	text	Visitor's Name:	Name of the visitor.
25	visitor_phone	text	Phone Number:	The visitor's phone number.
30	visitor_company	text	Company Name:	Company name of the visitor.
40	email	text	Email Address:	The visitor's email address. This will become their username to log into the network.
50	schedule_time	datetime	Activation Time:	Optional date and time at which to enable the visitor account. If blank, the visitor account will be enabled immediately.
60	expire_after	dropdown	Account Expiry:	Amount of time before this visitor account will expire.
65	expire_time	datetime	Expiration Time:	Optional date and time at which this account will expire. If blank, the expiration time will not be set.
70	role_id	dropdown	Account Role:	Role to assign to this visitor account.
75	enabled	checkbox	Account State:	
80	password	static	Visitor Password:	
90	creator_accept_terms	checkbox	Terms of Use:	
100	submit	submit	Create Account	



Form fields have a rank number, which specifies the relative ordering of the fields when displaying the form. The Customize Form Fields editor always shows the fields in order by rank.


The type of each form field is displayed. This controls what kind of user interface element is used to interact with the user. The label and description displayed on the form is also shown in the list view.

Click a form field in the list view to select it.

Use the  **Edit** link to make changes to an existing field using the form field editor. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply only to this field on this form.

Use the  **Edit Base Field** link to make changes to an existing field definition. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply to all forms that are using this field (except where the form field has already been modified to be different from the underlying field definition).


The  **Insert Before** and  **Insert After** links can be used to add a new field to the form. Clicking one of these links will open a blank form field editor and automatically set the rank number of the new field.

Use the  **Preview Form** tab at the top of the list view to see what the form looks like. This preview form can be submitted to test the field validation rules you have defined. If all fields are able to be validated, the

form submit is successful and a summary of the values submitted is displayed. This allows you to verify any data conversion and formatting rules you have set up.

Form Field Editor

The form field editor is used to control both the data gathering aspects and user interface characteristics of a field.



The Form Field Editor interface has a title bar 'Form Field Editor'. Below it, there is a label '* Field Name:' followed by a dropdown menu showing 'visitor_name'. Below the dropdown is a blue link text: 'Select the field definition to attach to the form.'

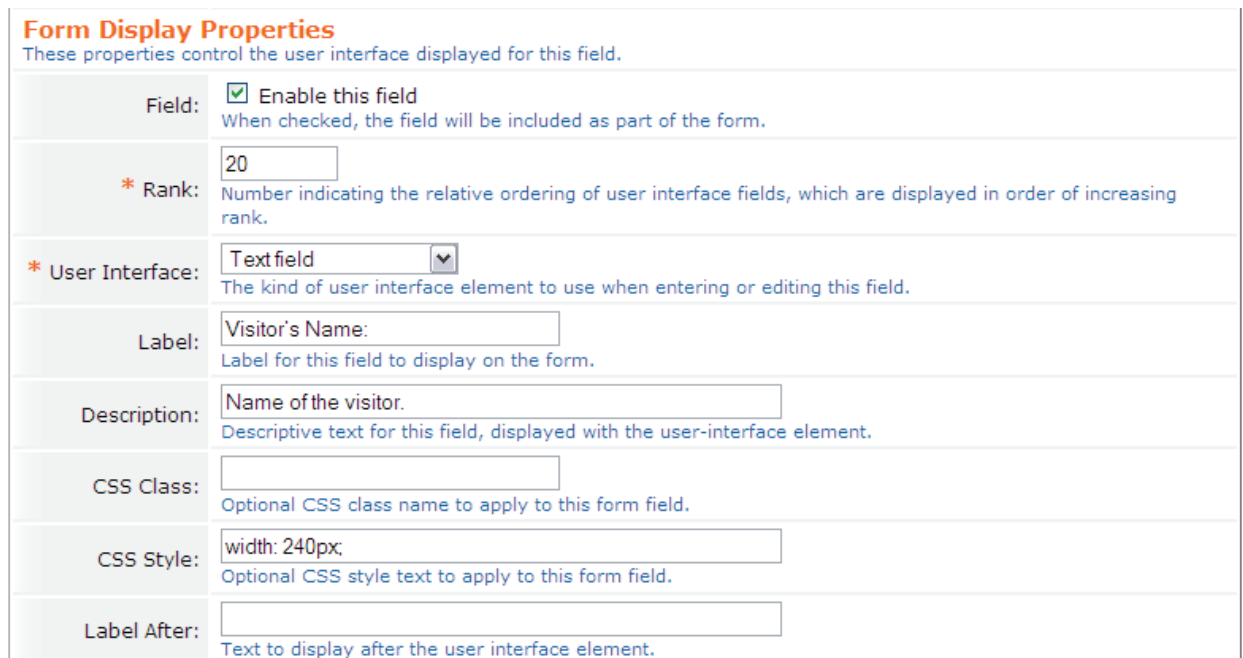
Each field can only appear once on a form. The Field Name selects which underlying field is being represented on the form.

The remainder of the form field editor is split into three sections:

- Form Display Properties
- Form Validation Properties
- Advanced Properties

Each of these sections is described in more detail below.

Form Display Properties



The Form Display Properties section has a title 'Form Display Properties' and a blue link text: 'These properties control the user interface displayed for this field.' Below this are several rows of configuration options:

Field:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this field When checked, the field will be included as part of the form.
* Rank:	<input type="text" value="20"/> Number indicating the relative ordering of user interface fields, which are displayed in order of increasing rank.
* User Interface:	<input type="text" value="Text field"/> The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.
Label:	<input type="text" value="Visitor's Name:"/> Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	<input type="text" value="Name of the visitor."/> Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.
CSS Class:	<input type="text"/> Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	<input type="text" value="width: 240px;"/> Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
Label After:	<input type="text"/> Text to display after the user interface element.

The form display properties control the user interface that this field will have. Different options are available in this section, depending on the selection you make in the User Interface drop-down list.

The available user interface elements are listed below, together with an example of each.

- **(Use default)** – The default user interface type defined for the field will be used.
- **No user interface** – The field does not have a user interface specified. Using this value will cause a diagnostic message to be displayed (“Form element is missing the ‘ui’ element”) when using the form.

- **CAPTCHA security code** – A distorted image of several characters is shown. The image may be regenerated, or played as an audio sample for visually impaired users. When using the recommended validator for this field (NwaCaptchaIsValid), the security code must be matched or the form submit will fail with an error.

* Security Code: 

Please enter the security code shown in this image. This helps to prevent ab
maintain the quality of our service to you.

* User Interface: CAPTCHA security code
The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.

Label: Security Code:
Label for this field to display on the form.

Description: Please enter the security code shown in this image. This he
Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.

CSS Class:
Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.

CSS Style:
Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.

- **Check box** – A check box is displayed for the field. The check box label can be specified using HTML. If the check box is selected, the field is submitted with its value set to the check box value (default and recommended value 1). If the check box is not selected, the field is not submitted with the form.

Sample Field: ☐ Checkbox text in HTML
This is a sample field.

* User Interface: Checkbox
The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.

Label: Sample Field:
Label for this field to display on the form.

Description: This is a sample field.
Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.

CSS Class:
Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.

CSS Style:
Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.

HTML:
HTML text to display next to the checkbox, as its clickable label.

Checkbox Value:
Optional value to use for a checked checkbox; the default is '1'.

- **Checklist** – A list of check boxes is displayed. The text displayed for each check box is the value from the options list. Zero or more check boxes may be selected. This user interface type submits an array of values containing the option key values of each selected check box.

Sample Field:	Select Options
	<input type="checkbox"/> Option One
	<input type="checkbox"/> Option Two
	<input type="checkbox"/> Option Three
This is a sample field.	

Because an array value may not be stored directly in a custom field, you should use the conversion and value formatting facilities to convert the array value to and from a string when using this user interface type.

To store a comma-separated list of the selected values, enable the Advanced options, select “NwaImplodeComma” for **Conversion**, select “NwaExplodeComma” for **Display Function** and enter the field’s name for **Display Param**.

The “Vertical” and “Horizontal” layout styles control whether the check boxes are organized in top-to-bottom or left-to-right order. The default is “Vertical” if not specified. When using these options, you may also specify the desired number of columns or rows to adjust the layout appropriately.

* User Interface:	<div>Checklist</div> <div>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.</div>
Label:	<div>Sample Field:</div> <div>Label for this field to display on the form.</div>
Description:	<div>This is a sample field.</div> <div>Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.</div>
CSS Class:	<div></div> <div>Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.</div>
CSS Style:	<div></div> <div>Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.</div>
Legend:	<div>Select Options</div> <div>Optional title for the checkbox or radio button group.</div>
Options Generator:	<div>(Use options)</div> <div>The function used to generate the list of available options.</div>
Options:	<div> one Option One two Option Two three Option Three </div> <div>List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar .</div>
Sort:	<div>No sorting</div> <div>Method to use to sort the available options.</div>
Collapse:	<div><input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable</div> <div>Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available.</div>
Layout:	<div></div> <div>Layout mode for the checklist options.</div>
Vertical Columns:	<div></div> <div>Number of columns to draw in the checklist.</div>

Advanced Properties

These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours.

Advanced:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties
Conversion:	<div>NwaImplodeComma</div> <div>The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to validation.</div>
Type Error:	<div></div> <div>The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied, has an incorrect type, or if conversion fails.</div>
Value Format:	<div>(Use default)</div> <div>The function used to format a field value after validation.</div>
Display Function:	<div>NwaExplodeComma</div> <div>The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the form.</div>
Display Param:	<div>field_name_here</div> <div>Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a display function.</div>

How this works: Suppose the first two check boxes are selected (in this example, with keys “one” and “two”). The incoming value for the field will be an array containing 2 elements, which can be written as `array("one", "two")`. The `NwaImplodeComma` conversion is applied, which converts the array value into the string value “one,two”, which is then used as the value for the field. Finally, when the form is displayed and the value needs to be converted back from a string, the `NwaExplodeComma` display function is applied, which turns the “one,two” string value into an array value `array("one", "two")`, which is used by the checklist to mark the first two items as selected.

- **Date/time picker** – A text field is displayed with an attached button that displays a calendar and time chooser. A date may be typed directly into the text field, or selected using the calendar.

The text value typed is submitted with the form. If using a date/time picker, you should validate the field value to ensure it is a date.

Certain guest account fields, such as **expire_time** and **schedule_time**, require a date/time value to be provided as a UNIX time value. In this case, the conversion and display formatting options should be used to convert a human-readable date and time to the equivalent UNIX time and vice versa.

Sample Field:	<div></div> <div>This is a sample field.</div>
* User Interface:	<div>Date/time picker</div> <div>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.</div>
Label:	<div>Sample Field:</div> <div>Label for this field to display on the form.</div>
Description:	<div>This is a sample field.</div> <div>Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.</div>
CSS Class:	<div></div> <div>Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.</div>
CSS Style:	<div></div> <div>Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.</div>

- **Drop-down list** – The field is displayed allowing a single choice from a drop-down list. The text displayed for each option is the value from the options list. When the form is submitted, the key of the selected value becomes the value of the field.

If the “Hide when no options are selectable” check box is selected, and there is only a single option in the drop-down list, it will be displayed as a static text item rather than as a list with only a single item in it.

Sample Field:	<div>Option One</div> <div>This is a sample field.</div>
---------------	--

* User Interface:	Drop-down list The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing data.
Label:	Sample Field: Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	This is a sample field. Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.
CSS Class:	 Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	 Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
Options Generator:	(Use options) The function used to generate the list of available options.
Options:	<div> <div>one Option One</div> <div>two Option Two</div> <div>three Option Three</div> </div> List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key separated with a vertical bar '.
Sort:	No sorting Method to use to sort the available options.
Collapse:	<input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one option is available.

- **File upload** – Displays a file selection text field and dialog box (the exact appearance differs from browser to browser).

File uploads cannot be stored in a custom field. This user interface type requires special form implementation support and is not recommended for use in custom fields.

- **Hidden field** – If Hidden Field is selected in the User Interface drop-down list, the field is not displayed to the user, but is submitted with the form. This option is often used to force a specific value such as a user's role or an expiration date. However, it is possible for someone to use browser tools to modify the initial value when the form is submitted. If the value should be forced, use the Force Value setting under Advanced Properties to ensure the value cannot be overridden. For more information, see [“Advanced Form Field Properties”](#).

To set the value to submit for this field, use the Initial Value option in the form field editor.

✓ The form was submitted with the following values:

```
array (
  'password' => 'password',
  'sponsor_name' => 'Sponsor',
  'visitor_name' => 'Visitor',
  'visitor_company' => 'Company',
  'email' => 'demo@example.com',
  'expire_after' => 1,
  'expire_time' => 0,
  'role_id' => 2,
  'creator_accept_terms' => true,
  'submit' => NULL,
  'sample_field' => 'value for sample_field',
)
```

* User Interface:	Hidden field ▼
The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.	

Form Validation Properties

These properties control how the value of this field is checked.

Field Required:	<input type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank.
Initial Value:	value for sample_field Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed.
* Validator:	(No validation) ▼ The function used to validate the contents of a field.

- **Password text field** – The field is displayed as a text field, with input from the user obscured. The text typed in this field is submitted as the value for the field.

Sample Field:	••••••
This is a sample field.	

* User Interface:	Password text field ▼
The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.	
Label:	Sample Field: Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	This is a sample field. Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.
CSS Class:	 Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	 Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.

- **Radio buttons** – The field is displayed as a group of radio buttons, allowing one to be selected. The text displayed for each option is the value from the options list. When the form is submitted, the key of the selected value becomes the value of the field.

Sample Field: ☐ Option One
☐ Option Two
☐ Option Three
 This is a sample field.

* User	Radio buttons
Interface:	The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field.
Label:	Sample Field: Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	This is a sample field. Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.
CSS Class:	 Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	 Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
Legend:	Select Options Optional title for the checkbox or radio button group.
No Changes:	<input type="checkbox"/> Add (No changes) Select if you want the list to insert a (No changes) option to the default set.
Options Generator:	(Use options) The function used to generate the list of available options.
Options:	one Option One two Option Two three Option Three List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key value' pairs, where the key and value are separated with a vertical bar .
Sort:	No sorting Method to use to sort the available options.
Collapse:	<input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one choice is available.
Layout:	 Layout mode for the checklist options.

The “Vertical” and “Horizontal” layout styles control whether the radio buttons are organized in top-to-bottom or left-to-right order. The default is “Vertical” if not specified.

- **Static text** – The field’s value is displayed as a non-editable text string. An icon image may optionally be displayed before the field’s value. A hidden element is also included for the field, thereby including the field’s value when the form is submitted.

To set the value of this field, use the **Initial Value** option in the form field editor.

If the **Hide when no options are selectable** check box is selected, the field will be hidden if its value is blank.

Sample Field:  value for sample_field
 This is a sample field.


* User Interface:	Static text <small>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or edi</small>
Label:	Sample Field: <small>Label for this field to display on the form.</small>
Description:	This is a sample field. <small>Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface</small>
CSS Class:	 <small>Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.</small>
CSS Style:	 <small>Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.</small>
Icon Image:	images/icon-info22.png <small>Image to display with the user interface element.</small>
Collapse:	<input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable <small>Select this option to automatically hide the form field when onl</small>

- **Static text (Raw value)** – The field’s value is displayed as a non-editable text string. HTML characters in the value are not escaped, which allows you to display HTML markup such as images, links and font formatting.

Use caution when using this type of user interface element, particularly if the field’s value is collected from visitors. Allowing HTML from untrusted sources is a potential security risk.

To set the value of this field, use **the Initial Value** option in the form field editor.

If the “Hide when no options are selectable” option is selected, the field will be hidden if its value is blank.

Sample Field:	 value may contain HTML This is a sample field.
---------------	---


* User Interface:	Static text (Raw value) <small>The kind of user interface element to use when entering or edi</small>
Label:	Sample Field: <small>Label for this field to display on the form.</small>
Description:	This is a sample field. <small>Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface</small>
CSS Class:	 <small>Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.</small>
CSS Style:	 <small>Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.</small>
Icon Image:	images/icon-warn22.png <small>Image to display with the user interface element.</small>
Collapse:	<input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable <small>Select this option to automatically hide the form field when onl</small>

- **Static text (Options lookup)** – The value of the field is assumed to be one of the keys from the field’s option list. The value displayed is the corresponding value for the key, as a non-editable text string.

An icon image may optionally be displayed before the field’s value. A hidden element is also included for the field, thereby including the field’s value when the form is submitted.

To set the value of this field, use the **Initial Value** option in the form field editor.

If the **Hide when no options are selectable** check box is selected, the field will be hidden if its value is blank.

Sample Field:	 Option Two This is a sample field.
* User Interface:	Static text (Options lookup) ▼ The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing.
Label:	Sample Field: Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	This is a sample field. Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.
CSS Class:	 Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	 Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
Icon Image:	images/icon-key22.png Image to display with the user interface element.
Options Generator:	(Use options) ▼ The function used to generate the list of available options.
Options:	<div> one Option One two Option Two three Option Three </div> List of options available. Enter one or more lines containing 'key' with a vertical bar .
Collapse:	<input type="checkbox"/> Hide when no options are selectable Select this option to automatically hide the form field when only one option is available.
Initial Value:	two Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed.

- **Static group heading** – The label and description of the field is used to display a group heading on the form. The field's value is not used, and the field is not submitted with the form.

When using this user interface element, it is recommended that you use the "nwalimportant" CSS class to visually distinguish the group heading's title.


Group Heading


This is a sample group heading.

* User Interface:	Static group heading ▼ The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing.
Label:	Group Heading Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	This is a sample group heading. Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface element.
CSS Class:	nwalimportant Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	 Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.

- **Submit button** – The field is displayed as a clickable form submit button, with the label of the field the label of the button. The description is not used. The field's value is ignored, and will be set to NULL when the form is submitted. To place an image on the button, an icon may be specified.

To match the existing user interface conventions, you should ensure that the submit button has the highest rank number and is displayed at the bottom of the form.


 Button Label
--

* User Interface:	Submit button 
	The kind of user interface element to use when entering or edi
Label:	Button Label
	Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	
	Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface
CSS Class:	
	Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	
	Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
Icon Image:	images/icon-tick22.png
	Image to display with the user interface element.

- **Text area** – The field is displayed as a multiple-line text box. The text typed in this box is submitted as the value for the field.

It is recommended that you specify the desired minimum dimensions of the text area, either with the Rows and Columns options, or by specifying a width in the CSS Style (for example, “width: 460px; height: 100px;” specifies a 460 x 100 pixel minimum area).

Sample Field:	
	This is a sample field.

* User Interface:	Text area 
	The kind of user interface element to use when entering or edi
Label:	Sample Field:
	Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	This is a sample field.
	Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface
CSS Class:	
	Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:	
	Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
Rows:	3
	Number of rows to display in the user interface element.
Columns:	40
	Number of columns to display in the user interface element.

- **Text field** – The field is displayed as a single-line text box. The text typed in this box is submitted as the value for the field.

A short text label may be placed after the text box using the Label After option.

Sample Field:		(Text)
	This is a sample field.	

* User Interface:	Textfield	The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing
Label:	Sample Field:	Label for this field to display on the form.
Description:	This is a sample field.	Descriptive text for this field, displayed with the user-interface
CSS Class:		Optional CSS class name to apply to this form field.
CSS Style:		Optional CSS style text to apply to this form field.
Label After:	(Text)	Text to display after the user interface element.

Form Validation Properties

The form validation properties control the validation of data entered into a form. By specifying appropriate validation rules, you can detect when users attempt to enter incorrect data and require them to correct their mistake.

Form Validation Properties These properties control how the value of this field is checked.		
Field Required:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied	Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank.
Initial Value:		Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed.
* Validator:	IsNotEmpty	The function used to validate the contents of a field.
Validator Param:	(Use argument)	Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argument to a validator.
Validator Argument:		Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator.
Validation Error:	You cannot leave this field blank.	The error message to display if the field's value fails validation and the validator does not return an error message directly.

The initial value for a form field may be specified. Use this option when a field value has a sensible default. The initial value should be expressed in the same way as the field's value. In particular, for drop-down list and radio button selections, the initial value should be the key of the desired default option. Likewise, for date/time fields that have a display function set, the initial value should be a value that can be passed to the display function.

Select the **Field value must be supplied** check box to mark the field as a required field. Required fields are marked with an asterisk:

* Sample Field:		This is a sample field.
-----------------	--	-------------------------

An optional field may be left blank. In this case, the field is not validated as there is no value for the field. However, any value that is supplied for an optional field is subject to validation checks.

All values supplied for a required field are always validated, including blank values.

Validation errors are displayed to the user by highlighting the field(s) that are in error and displaying the validation error message with the field:

* Visitor's Name:	<div style="border: 1px solid red; width: 100px; height: 15px;"></div>
-------------------	--

You cannot leave this field blank.
Name of the visitor.

All fields must be successfully validated before any form processing can take place. This ensures that the form processing always has user input that is known to be valid.

To validate a specific field, choose a validator from the drop-down list. See “[Form Field Validation Functions](#)” in the Reference chapter for a description of the built-in validators.

The Validator Param is the name of a field on the form, the value of which should be passed to the validator as its argument. This could be used to validate one field based on the contents of another. However, in most deployments this does not need to be set.

Set the Validator Param to its default value, “(Use argument)”, to provide a fixed value as the argument to the validator.

The Validator Argument is used to provide further instructions to the selected validator. Not all validators require an argument; a validator such as **IsValidEmail** is entirely self-contained and will ignore the Validator Argument. Validators such as **IsEqual**, **IsInRange** and **IsRegexMatch** use the argument to perform validation.

Examples of Form field Validation

Example 1 – To create a form field that requires an integer value between 1 and 100 (inclusive) to be provided, use the following settings in the form field editor:

Field Required:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied <small>Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank.</small>
Initial Value:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; width: 150px; height: 15px;"></div> <small>Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed</small>
* Validator:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; width: 150px; height: 15px; display: flex; align-items: center;">IsInRange</div> <small>The function used to validate the contents of a field.</small>
Validator Param:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; width: 150px; height: 15px; display: flex; align-items: center;">(Use argument)</div> <small>Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argu</small>
Validator Argument:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; width: 150px; height: 25px; display: flex; align-items: center;">array(1, 100)</div> <small>Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator.</small>
Validation Error:	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; width: 150px; height: 15px; display: flex; align-items: center;">Please enter a number between 1 and 100.</div> <small>The error message to display if the field's value fails validation message directly.</small>



The form field will contain an integer value, so you should set the field's type to Integer when creating it.

Use the PHP syntax **array(1, 100)** to specify the minimum and maximum values for the **IsInRange** validator. After saving changes on the form, this value will be internally converted to the equivalent code:

```
array (
    0 => 1,
    1 => 100,
)
```

With these validator settings, users that enter an invalid value will now receive a validation error message:

* Sample Field:	<div style="border: 1px solid red; width: 100px; height: 15px; display: flex; align-items: center;">123</div> (1 - 100) Please enter a number between 1 and 100. <small>This is a sample field.</small>
-----------------	---

Furthermore, note that blank values, or non-numeric values, will result in a different error message:

* Sample Field:	<div>xyzyz (1 - 100)</div> <div>Parameter must be an integer</div> <div>This is a sample field.</div>
-----------------	---

The reason for this is that in this case, the validation has failed due to a type error – the field is specified to have an integer type, and a blank or non-numeric value cannot be converted to an integer. To set the error message to display in this case, use the Type Error option under the Advanced Properties.

Example 2 – To create a form field that accepts one of a small number of string values, use the following settings in the form field editor:

Field Required:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied <small>Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank.</small>
Initial Value:	<input type="text" value="sales"/> <small>Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed</small>
* Validator:	<input type="text" value="IsArrayValue"/> <small>The function used to validate the contents of a field.</small>
Validator Param:	<input type="text" value="(Use argument)"/> <small>Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argu</small>
Validator Argument:	<input type="text" value='array ("accounting", "hr", "research", "sales", "support")'/> <small>Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator.</small>
Validation Error:	<input type="text" value="Please select from one of the available options."/> <small>The error message to display if the field's value fails validation message directly.</small>

This example could be used for a string field named **visitor_department**. Because the values are known in advance, a drop-down list is the most suitable user interface. An initial value for the form field, as shown above, could be used if most visitors are in fact there to visit the sales team.

To match against a list of options used for a drop-down list or set of radio buttons, you can use the `IsInOptionsList` validator.

Example 3 – To create a form field that validates U.S. social security numbers using a regular expression, use the following settings in the form field editor:






Field Required:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied <small>Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank.</small>
Initial Value:	<input type="text"/> <small>Value to initialize this field with when the form is first displayed</small>
* Validator:	<input type="text" value="IsRegexMatch"/> <small>The function used to validate the contents of a field.</small>
Validator Param:	<input type="text" value="(Use argument)"/> <small>Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argu</small>
Validator Argument:	<input type="text" value="/^\\d\\d\\d-\\d\\d-\\d\\d\\d\\d\$/"/> <small>Optional value to supply as the argument to a validator.</small>
Validation Error:	<input type="text" value="Please enter a valid SSN."/> <small>The error message to display if the field's value fails validation message directly.</small>


Note that the regular expression used here includes beginning and ending delimiters (in this case the `/` character), and ensures that the whole string matches by the start-of-string marker `^` and the end-of-string marker `$`. The construct `\\d` is used to match a single digit. Many equivalent regular expressions could be written to perform this validation task. See “[Regular Expressions](#)” in the Reference chapter for more information about regular expressions.

Advanced Form Field Properties

Advanced Properties

These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours.

Advanced:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties
Conversion:	(Use default)  The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to validation.
Type Error:	<input type="text"/> The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied, has an incorrect type, or if conversion fails.
Value Format:	(Use default)  The function used to format a field value after validation.
Display Function:	(Use default)  The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the form.
Static Display Function:	(Use default)  The function used to convert a static field to a displayable value on the form.
Force Value:	<input type="checkbox"/> Always use initial value on form submit Sets the field's value to the initial value specified above when the form is submitted. Use this option when the field must have a certain value that cannot be overridden by a user.
Disable Auto-Complete:	<input type="checkbox"/> Disable browser auto-completion within the field Browsers often save values submitted in form fields. If the field is private in nature, it is often beneficial to disable this behaviour.
Pre-Registration:	Field was not pre-registered  Pre-Registration applies for accounts that have been created prior to registration. A field requiring a match will be searched in the account list. If a single match is found, the registration can continue.
Enable If:	<input type="text"/> Javascript conditional expression for this field's enabled property. The expression 'f.value' returns the in-form value of field 'f'.
Visible If:	<input type="text"/> Javascript conditional expression for this field's visibility. The expression 'f.value' returns the in-form value of field 'f'.

 Save Changes

The Advanced Properties control certain optional form processing behaviors. You can also specify JavaScript expressions to build dynamic forms similar to those found elsewhere in the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance user interface.

On the Customize Form Fields page, select the **Show advanced properties** check box to display the advanced properties in the form field editor.

The **Conversion**, **Value Format**, and **Display Function** options can be used to enable certain form processing behavior. See [“Form Field Conversion Functions”](#) and [“Form Field Display Formatting Functions”](#).

In the **Force Value** row, use the **Always use initial value on form submit** check box to prevent attempts to override the value set for a field. When this option is set, if a user modifies the field's value, it reverts to the specified initial value when the form is submitted. A similar effect can be achieved by using appropriate validation rules, but selecting this check box is easier. Using this option is recommended for hidden fields, particularly those related to security, such as role ID or expiration date.

For pre-registered guest accounts, some fields may be completed during pre-registration and some fields may be left for the guest to complete at registration. You can use the **Pre-Registration** field to specify whether the guest's entry must match the preliminary value provided for a field during pre-registration.

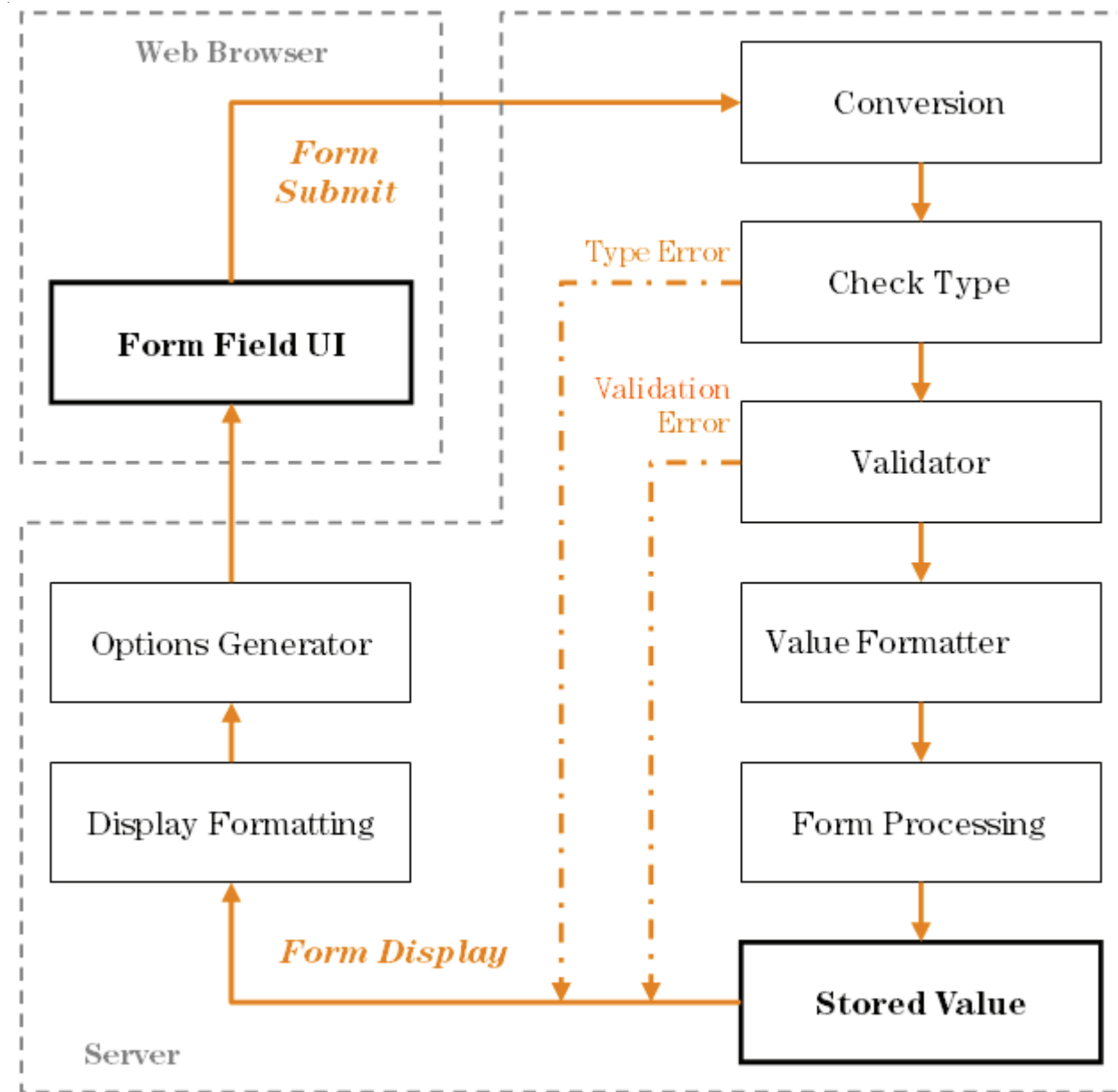
- If a value was not provided for a field when the account was created, choose **Field was not pre-registered** from the drop-down list.

- If a preliminary value was provided for the field but the guest's entered value does not need to match case or all characters, choose **Guest must supply field** from the drop-down list. For example, a bulk account creation might use random usernames, and each visitor's entry in that field would not need to match exactly.
- If a preliminary value was provided for the field and the guest's entered value must match case or all characters, choose **Guest must supply field (match case)** from the drop-down list. If the guest's entry does not successfully match the preregistered value, the account registration will not succeed. For example, if a list of email addresses and phone numbers was imported for pre-registration, each visitor's entries for those fields at registration must match.

Form Field Validation Processing Sequence

The following figure shows the interaction between the user interface displayed on the form and the various conversion and display options. See [Figure 22](#).

Figure 22 Steps involved in form field processing



The Conversion step should be used when the type of data displayed in the user interface is different from the type required when storing the field.

For example, consider a form field displayed as a date/time picker, such as the **expire_time** field used to specify an account expiration time on the **create_user** form. The user interface is displayed as a text field, but the value that is required for the form processing is a UNIX time (integer value).

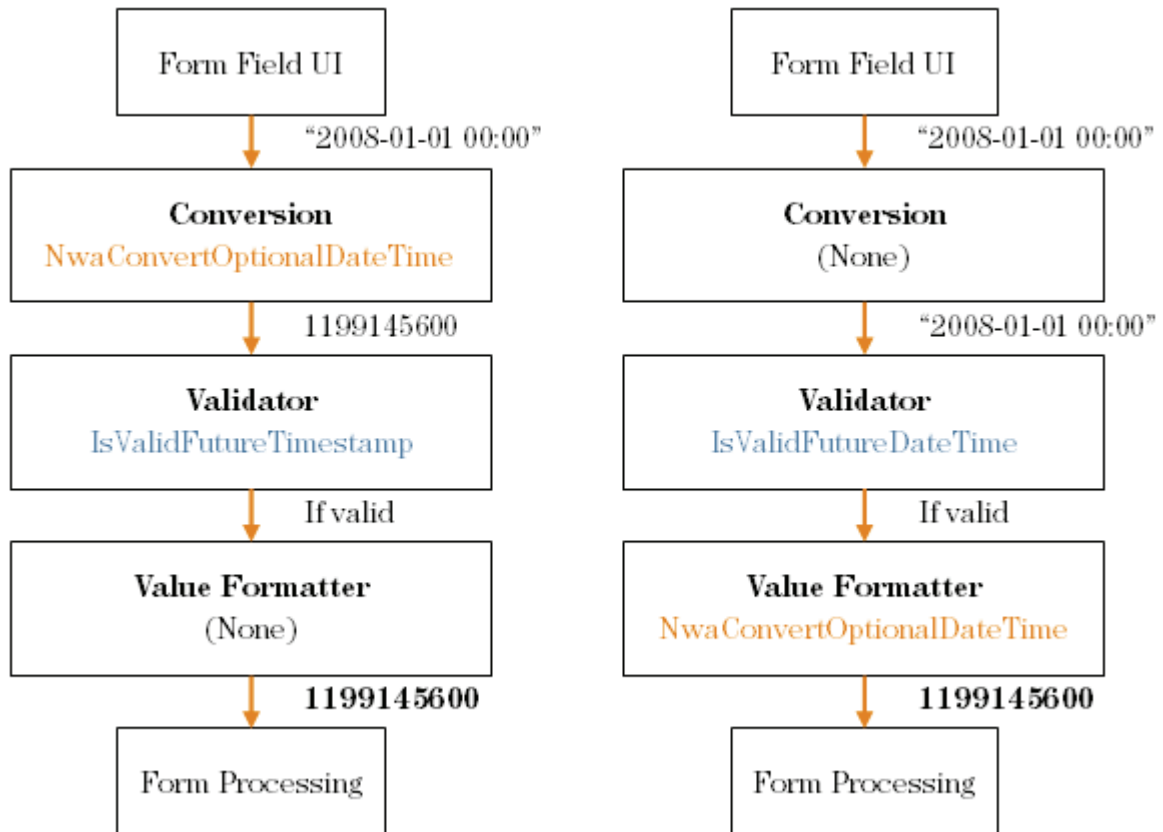
Advanced Properties	
These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours.	
Advanced:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties
Conversion:	<div>NwaConvertOptionalDateTime</div> <div>The function used to convert an incoming field value prior to val</div>
Type Error:	<div>Please enter a valid date and time.</div> <div>The error message to display if the field's value is not supplied,</div>
Value Format:	<div>(None)</div> <div>The function used to format a field value after validation.</div>
Display Function:	<div>NwaDateFormat</div> <div>The function used to convert a field to a displayable value on the</div>
Display Param:	<div>expire_time</div> <div>Optional name of field whose value will be supplied as the argum</div>
Display Arguments:	<div>%Y-%m-%d %H:%M? :</div> <div>Optional value to supply as the argument to a display function.</div>

In this case, the Conversion function is set to `NwaConvertOptionalDateTime` to convert the string time representation from the form field (for example, “2008-01-01”) to UNIX time (for example, 1199145600).

The Validator for the **expire_time** field is **IsValidFutureTimestamp**, which checks an *integer* argument against the current time.

The Value Formatter is applied after validation. This may be used in situations where the validator requires the specific type of data supplied on the form, but the stored value should be of a different type. In the **expire_time** field example, this is not required, and so the value formatter is not used. However, if the Conversion function had not been used, and the Validator had been set to **IsValidFutureDateTime** (which checks a *string* date/time value), then the Value Formatter would need to be set to `NwaConvertOptionalDateTime` to perform the data conversion before the form processing.

A comparison of these two approaches is shown below to illustrate the difference:



When using a Conversion or Value Format function, you will almost always have to set up a Display Function for the form field. This function is used to perform the conversion in the reverse direction – between the internal stored value and the value displayed in the form field.

See [“Form Field Conversion Functions”](#) in the Reference chapter for a detailed list of the options available to you for the Conversion and Value Format functions.

The **Display Param** is the name of a form field, the value of which will be passed to the Display Function. In almost all cases this option should contain the name of the form field.

Display Arguments are available for use with a form field and are used to control the conversion process. In the case of the **expire_time** form field, the Display Function is set to **NwaDateFormat** to perform a conversion from a UNIX time to a date/time string, and the Display Argument specifies the format to use for the conversion.

See [“Form Field Display Formatting Functions”](#) in the Reference chapter for a detailed list of the options available to you for the Display Function and Static Display Function.

The **Enable If** and **Visible If** options in the form field editor allow you to specify JavaScript expressions. The result obtained by evaluating these expressions is used to enable/disable, or show/hide the form field in real time, while an operator is using the form.

Unlike the other parts of the form field editor, the **Enable If** and **Visible If** expressions are evaluated by the operator’s Web browser. These expressions are not used by the server for any other purpose.

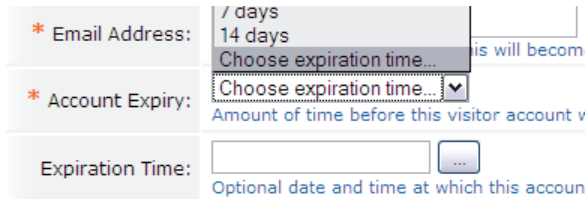
The expression must be a Boolean expression in the JavaScript language; statements and other code should not be included as this will cause a syntax error when the form is displayed in a Web browser.

Because of the scoping rules of JavaScript, all of the user interface elements that make up the form are available as variables in the local scope with the same name as the form field. Thus, to access the current value of a text field named **sample_field** in a JavaScript expression, you would use the code **sample_field.value**.

Most user interface elements support the **value** property to retrieve the current value. For check boxes, however, use the **checked** property to determine if the check box is currently selected.

The most practical use for this capability is to hide a form field until a certain value of some other related field has been selected.

For example, the default **create_user** form has an **Account Expiry** drop-down list. One of the values in this list is special: the **-1** option displays the value **Choose expiration time...**



The screenshot shows a form with three fields. The first field is labeled '* Email Address:' and has a text input with '14 days' and a dropdown menu open showing options: '/ days', '14 days', and 'Choose expiration time...'. The second field is labeled '* Account Expiry:' and has a dropdown menu open showing options: 'Choose expiration time...', 'Amount of time before this visitor account v', and 'Optional date and time at which this account'. The third field is labeled 'Expiration Time:' and has a text input with a button next to it.

When this option is selected, the **Expiration Time** field is then displayed, allowing the user to specify a time other than one of the options in the list.


The **expire_time** field uses the JavaScript expression **expire_after.value < 0** for the **Visible If** option. When the **-1** option has been selected, this condition will become true and the field will be displayed.

Additional examples of the **Visible If** conditional expressions can be found in the **guest_edit** form.

Editing Views

A view consists of one or more columns, each of which contains a single field. You can change which fields are displayed and how each field is displayed.

You can also define your own fields using the Customize Fields page, and then add them to a view by choosing appropriate display options for each new column.


To add a new field to a view, reorder the fields, or make changes to an existing field in a view, select the view in the **Customize Forms & Views** list and click the  **Edit Fields** link. This opens the Customize View Fields editor.


Quick Help		Add Field		
Rank	Field	Type	Title	Width
10	username	sort	Username	160px
20	visitor_company	text	Company	100px
30	visitor_phone	sort	Phone	120px
40	creator_name	sort	Creator	100px
50	sponsor_name	text	Sponsor	100px
60	role_name	sort	Role	120px
70	enabled	sort	Status	75px
80	expire_time	sort	Expiration	180px



View fields have a rank number, which specifies the relative ordering of the columns when displaying the view. The Customize View Fields editor always shows the columns in order by rank.

The type of each field is displayed. This controls what kind of user interface element is used to display the column, and whether the column is to be sortable or not. The title of the column and the width of the column are also shown in the list view. Values displayed in *italics* are default values defined for the field being displayed.


Click a view field in the list view to select it.

Use the  **Edit** link to make changes to an existing column using the view field editor. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply only to this field on this view.

Use the  **Edit Base Field** link to make changes to an existing field definition. Any changes made to the field using this editor will apply to all views that are using this field (except where the view field has already been modified to be different from the underlying field definition).

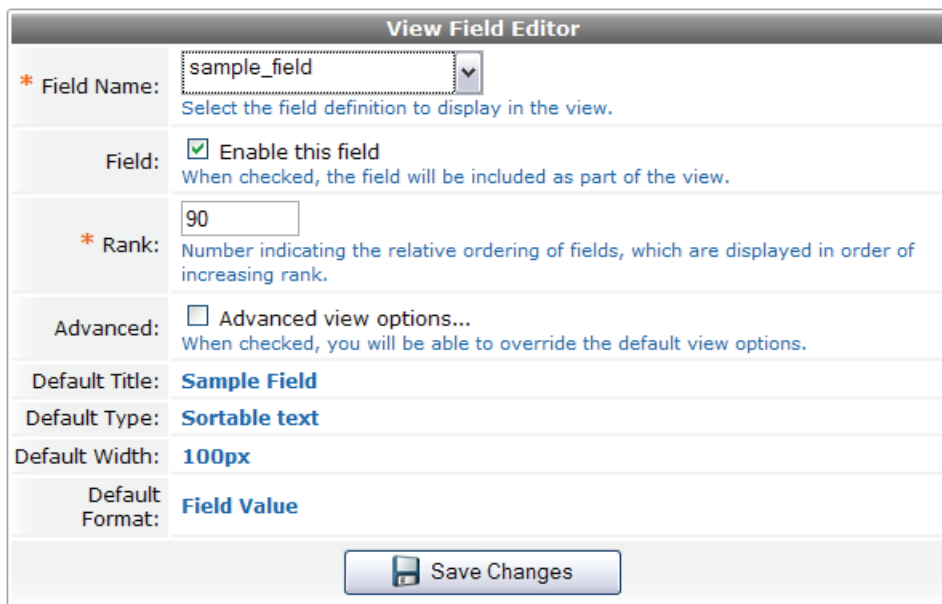
The  **Insert Before** and  **Insert After** links can be used to add a new column to the view. Clicking one of these links will open a blank view field editor and automatically set the rank number of the new column.


Use the  **Enable Field** and  **Disable Field** links to quickly turn the display of a column on or off.

Click the  **Add Field** tab to add a new column to the view.

View Field Editor

The view field editor is used to control the data-display aspects of a column within the view.



View Field Editor	
* Field Name:	sample_field <small>Select the field definition to display in the view.</small>
Field:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this field <small>When checked, the field will be included as part of the view.</small>
* Rank:	90 <small>Number indicating the relative ordering of fields, which are displayed in order of increasing rank.</small>
Advanced:	<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced view options... <small>When checked, you will be able to override the default view options.</small>
Default Title:	Sample Field
Default Type:	Sortable text
Default Width:	100px
Default Format:	Field Value
 Save Changes	

Each column in a view displays the value of a single field.

To use the default view display properties for a field, you only need to select the field to display in the column and then click the  **Save Changes** button.

To customize the view display properties, click the **Advanced view options...** check box.

The column type must be one of the following:

- **Text** – The column displays a value as text.
- **Sortable text** – The column displays a value as text, and may be sorted by clicking on the column heading.
- **Sortable text, case-insensitive** – The same as “Sortable text”, but the column sorting will treat uppercase and lowercase letters the same.
- **Sortable numeric** – The column displays a numeric value, and may be sorted by clicking on the column heading.

The Column Format may be used to specify how the field’s value should be displayed. You may choose from one of the following:

- **Field Value** – The value of the field is displayed as plain text.
- **Field Value (Un-Escaped)** – The value of the field is displayed as HTML.
- **Boolean – Yes/No** – The value of the field is converted to Boolean and displayed as “Yes” or “No”.

- **Boolean – Enabled/Disabled** – The value of the field is converted to Boolean and displayed as “Enabled” or “Disabled”.
- **Boolean – On/Off** – The value of the field is converted to Boolean and displayed as “On” or “Off”.
- **Date** – The value of the field is assumed to be a UNIX timestamp value and is displayed as a date and time.
- **Duration (from seconds)** – The value of the field is assumed to be a time period measured in seconds and is displayed as a duration (for example, “23 seconds”, “45 minutes”)
- **Duration (from minutes)** – The value of the field is assumed to be a time period measured in minutes and is displayed as a duration (for example, “45 minutes”, “12 hours”)
- **Use form options** – The value of the field is assumed to be one of the keys from the field’s option list. The value displayed is the corresponding value for the key.
- **Custom expression...** – The Display Expression text area is displayed allowing a custom JavaScript expression to be entered. See [“View Display Expression Technical Reference”](#) in the Reference chapter for technical information about this display expression and a list of the functions that are available to format the value.

The Display Expression is a JavaScript expression that is used to generate the contents of the column. Generally, this is a simple expression that returns an appropriate piece of data for display, but more complex expressions can be used to perform arbitrary data processing and formatting tasks.



Customizing Self Provisioned Access

Guest self-registration allows an administrator to customize the process for guests to create their own visitor accounts.

The registration process consists of a data collection step (the ‘register page’) and a confirmation step (the ‘receipt page’).

You can define what information is collected from visitors on the registration page. New fields and data validation rules can be defined with the custom form editor. Specific details about the type of visitor accounts created are also set here.

The receipt page also includes a form, although typically this form will only contain static information about the guest account. Several different actions can be included on the receipt page, enabling visitors to obtain their receipt in different ways.

The receipt page can also be used to automatically log the guest into a Network Access Server, enabling them to start using the network immediately.

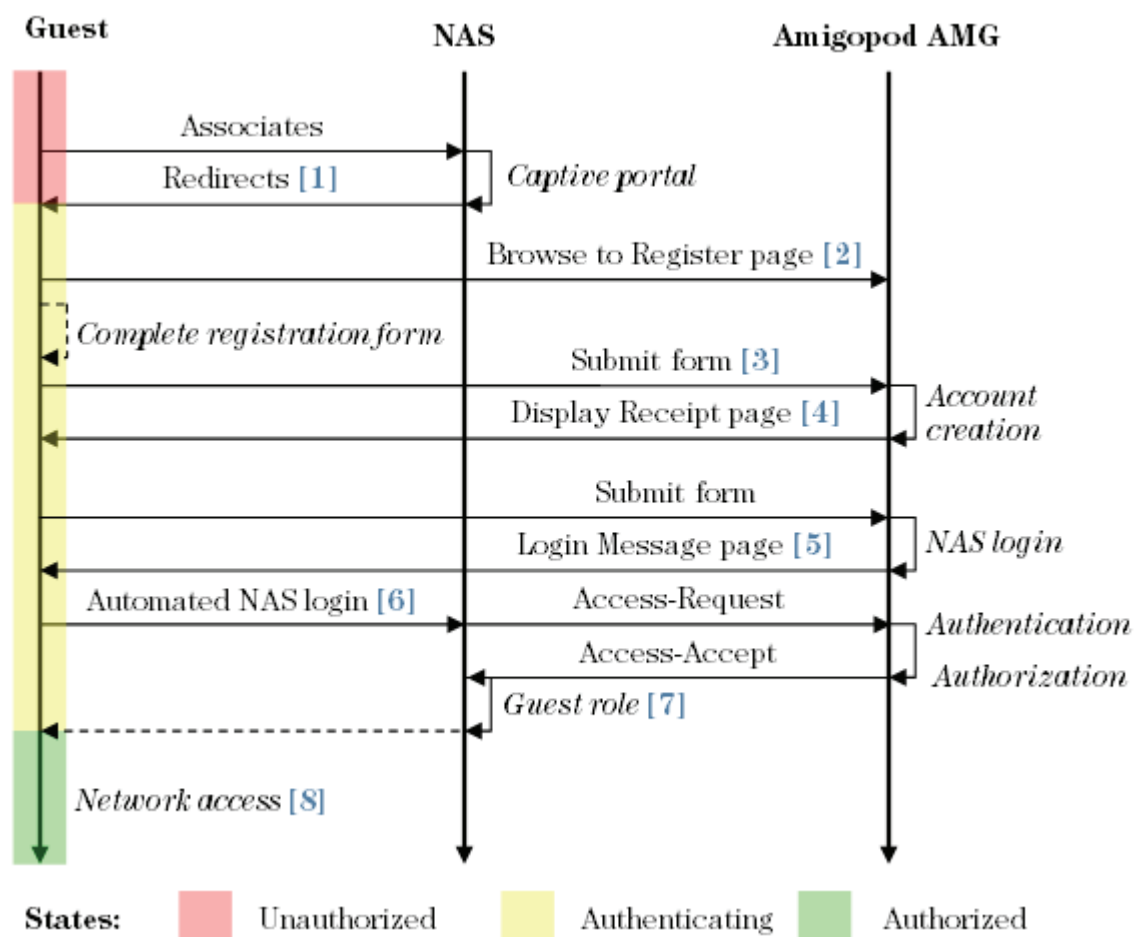
Detailed user interface customization can be performed for all parts of the self-registration process. You can define page titles, template code for the page header and footer, and choose a skin that controls the overall look and feel of self-registration. The default user interface customization can be disabled.

Self-Registration Sequence Diagram

To set up a captive portal with guest self-registration, configure your Network Access Servers to redirect guests to the URL of the ‘Go To’ link. To complete the portal, ensure that the NAS is configured to authorize users with the Amigopod RADIUS server, and set up the self-registration NAS login to redirect registered guests back to the NAS.


This process is shown as follows. See [Figure 23](#).

Figure 23 Sequence diagram for guest self-registration



The captive portal redirects unauthorized users [1] to the register page [2]. After submitting the registration form [3], the guest account is created and the receipt page is displayed [4] with the details of the guest account. If NAS login is enabled, submitting the form on this page will display a login message [5] and automatically redirect the guest to the NAS login [6]. After authentication and authorization the guest's security profile is applied by the NAS [7], enabling the guest to access the network [8].

Creating a Self-Registration Page

Click the  **Create new self-registration page** link. The **Customize Guest Registration** form is displayed.

Customize Guest Registration

Basic Properties


Options controlling basic operation of guest self-registration.


* Name:	<input type="text"/> Enter a name to identify the guest self-registration instance. This is visible only to administrators.
Description:	<div> <input type="text"/> </div> Enter comments about this instance of guest self-registration. This is visible only to administrators.
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable guest self-registration
* Register Page:	<input type="text"/> Enter the base page name for the guest registration page.
Parent:	<div> (No parent - standalone) </div> Fields and text will use the parent's value unless overridden. Simply edit a field to override the parent value.
Hotspot:	<input type="checkbox"/> Prepare self-registration for Hotspot Transactions Check this box if registrants will be required to pay for access.
Authentication:	<input type="checkbox"/> Require operator credentials prior to registering the guest If checked, access to this registration page will require operator credentials. The sponsor's operator profile must have the Guest Manager > Create New Guest Account privilege.

Save Changes

Save and Continue

The Register Page is the name of a page that does not already exist. There are no spaces in this name. This page name will become part of the URL used to access the self provisioning page. For example, the default “guest_register” page is accessed using the URL **guest_register.php**.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to save the self registration page. A diagram of the self registration process is displayed.

Click the  **Save and Continue** button to proceed to the next step of the setup.

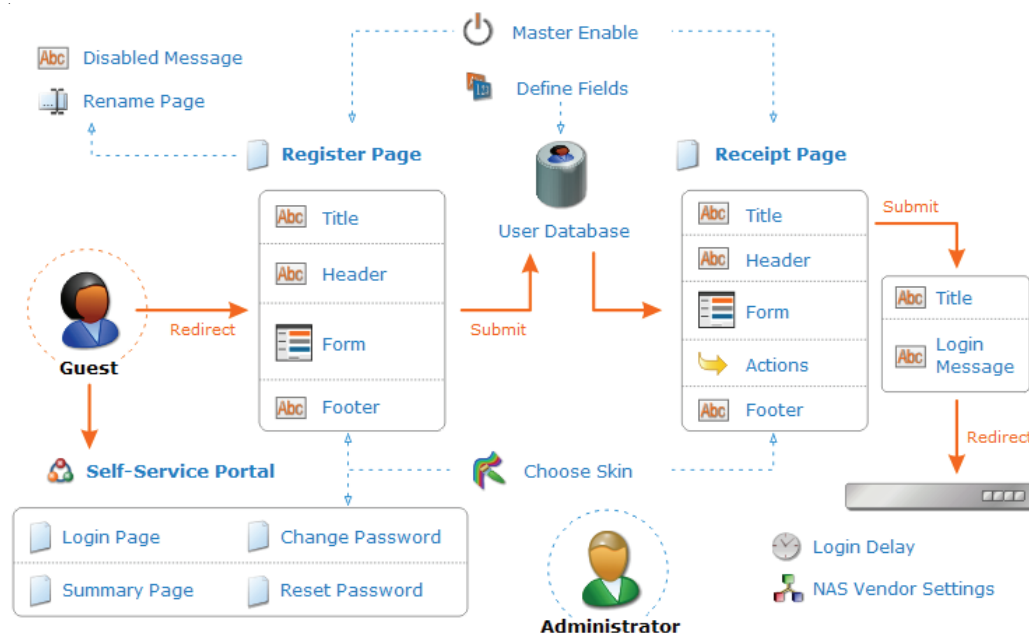
Once a self registration page has been created you are able to edit, delete, duplicate or go to it, providing self-registration has been enabled.

Editing Self-Registration Pages

The guest self-registration process is displayed in graphical form, shown below in **See Figure 24**. The workflow for the guest is shown using solid orange arrows, while the administrator workflow is shown with dotted blue arrows. To access this page in the WebUI:

1. Navigate to **Customization > Guest Self-Registration**
2. Select an entry in the **Guest Self-Registration** list, then click **Edit**.
3. The **Customize Guest Registration** workflow page appears, as shown below

Figure 24 Guest self-registration process



A guest self-registration page consists of many different settings, which are divided into groups across several pages. Click an icon or label in the diagram to jump directly to the editor for that item.

Basic Properties for Self-Registration

Click the **Master Enable**, **User Database**, **Choose Skin**, or **Rename Page** links to edit the basic settings for guest self-registration.

Customize Guest Registration	
Basic Properties Options controlling basic operation of guest self-registration.	
* Name:	<input type="text" value="Guest Self-Registration"/> <small>Enter a name to identify the guest self-registration instance. This is visible only to administrators.</small>
Description:	<div>Default settings for visitor self-registration.</div> <div><small>Enter comments about this instance of guest self-registration. This is visible only to administrators.</small></div>
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable guest self-registration
* Register Page:	<input type="text" value="guest_register"/> <small>Enter the base page name for the guest registration page.</small>
* User Database:	Local RADIUS Server <small>Self provisioned visitor accounts are created using this service handler.</small>
* Skin:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> <small>Choose the skin for the self-registration pages.</small>

The Basic Properties window has configurable settings such as Name, Description, enabling guest-self registration, Register Page, Parent, and Authentication.

Using a Parent Page

To use the settings from a previously configured self-registration page, select an existing page name from the **Parent** drop-down menu. This is useful if you need to configure multiple registrations. You can always override parent page values by editing field values yourself. To create a self-registration page with new

values, select the **Guest Self-Registration (guest_register)** option from the **Parent** field drop-down menu.

Paying for Access

If you select a standalone self-registration, (**No parent- standalone**) option you can also configure the Hotspot option. You can configure this setting so that registrants have to pay for access.

Requiring Operator Credentials

If you want to require an operator to log in with their credentials before they can create a new guest account, select the **Require operator credentials prior to registering guest** check box. The sponsor's operator profile must have the **Guest Manager > Create New Guest Account privilege** already configured.

If you choose this option, the authenticated page it produces for creating accounts is very simple, and does not include navigation or other links that would otherwise be available in the operator user interface.

You can specify access restrictions for the self-registration page in the **Access Control** section of this form.

Access Control

Controls access to the registration page.

Authentication:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require operator credentials prior to registering the guest Revert If checked, access to this registration page will require operator credentials. The sponsor's operator profile must have the Guest Manager > Create New Guest Account privilege .
Allowed Access:	<div></div> <p>Enter the IP addresses and networks from which self-registration is permitted.</p>
Denied Access:	<div></div> <p>Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied self-registration access.</p>
* Deny Behavior:	Show Access Denied page Revert Select the response of the system to a request that is not permitted.
Time Access:	<div></div> <p>Enter a list of time ranges during which self-registration is enabled, one per line. For example, 'weekdays 7:00 to 19:00'. Leave blank to enable registration at all times.</p>

Save Changes **Save and Continue**

The **Allowed Access** and **Denied Access** fields are access control lists that determine if a client is permitted to access this guest self-registration page. You can specify multiple IP addresses and networks, one per line, using the following syntax:

- **1.2.3.4** – IP address

- **1.2.3.4/24** – IP address with network prefix length
- **1.2.3.4/255.255.255.0** – IP address with explicit network mask

Use the **Deny Behavior** drop-down list to specify the action to take when access is denied. The **Time Access** field allows you to specify the days and times that self-registration is enabled. Times must be entered in 24-hour clock format. For example:

- Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays, 8:00 to 17:00
- Weekdays, 6:00 to 18:00
- Weekends 10:00 to 22:00 and Thursday 11:00 to 13:00

The access control rules will be applied in order, from the most specific match to the least specific match.

Access control entries are more specific when they match fewer IP addresses. The most specific entry is a single IP address (for example, **1.2.3.4**), while the least specific entry is the match-all address of **0.0.0.0/0**.

As another example, the network address **192.168.2.0/24** is less specific than a smaller network such as **192.168.2.192/26**, which in turn is less specific than the IP address **192.168.2.201** (which may also be written as **192.168.2.201/32**).

To determine the result of the access control list, the most specific rule that matches the client's IP address is used. If the matching rule is in the **Denied Access** field, then the client will be denied access. If the matching rule is in the **Allowed Access** field, then the client will be permitted access.

If the **Allowed Access** field is empty, all access will be allowed, except to clients with an IP address that matches any of the entries in the **Denied Access** field. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the **Allowed Access** field.

If the **Denied Access** list is empty, only clients with an IP address that matches one of the entries in the **Allowed Access** list will be allowed access. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the **Denied Access** list.

Registration Page Properties

To edit the properties of the registration page:

1. Navigate to **Customization > Guest Self-Registration**
2. Select and edit an entry in the **Guest Self-Registration** list

3. Click the **Register Page** link, or one of the **Title**, **Header** or **Footer** fields for the Register Page.

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Customize Guest Registration". Below the title is a section "Register Page UI" with a subtitle "Options controlling the appearance of the guest registration page." The interface has three main sections: "Title", "Header HTML", and "Footer HTML". The "Title" field contains "Guest Registration" and has a subtitle "The title to display on the guest registration page." The "Header HTML" field contains a code block:


```
<h2>
  Guest Self-Registration
</h2>
<p>
  Please register to access the network.
</p>
```


 and has a subtitle "HTML template code displayed before the guest registration form." The "Footer HTML" field is empty and has a subtitle "HTML template code displayed after the guest registration form." Each of the HTML fields has an "Insert content item..." button with a dropdown arrow. At the bottom, there is an "Override Form:" section with a checkbox labeled "Do not include guest registration form contents" and a subtitle "Select this option if you want to replace the HTML of the form." Below this are three buttons: "Save and Reload", "Save Changes", and "Save and Continue".

Template code for the title, header, and footer may be specified. See [“Smarty Template Syntax”](#) in the Reference chapter for details on the template code that may be inserted.

Select the **Do not include guest registration form contents** check box to override the normal behavior of the registration page, which is to display the registration form between the header and footer templates.

Click the  **Save and Reload** button to update the self-registration page and launch or refresh a second browser window to show the effects of the changes.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.

Click the  **Save and Continue** button to update the self-registration page and continue to the next editor.

Default Self-Registration Form Settings

Click the **Form** link for the Register Page to edit the fields on the self-registration form.

The default settings for this form are as follows:

- The **visitor_name** and **email** fields are enabled. The email address of the visitor will become their username for the network.
- The **expire_after** field is hidden, and set to a value of 24 by default; this sets the default expiration time for a self-registered visitor account to be 1 day after it was created.
- The **role_id** field is hidden, and set to a value of 2 by default; this sets the default role for a self-registered visitor account to the built-in Guest role.

- The **auto_update_account** field is set by default. This is to ensure that a visitor who registers again with the same email address has their existing account automatically updated.

Receipt Page Properties

Click the **Receipt Page** link or one of the **Title**, **Header** or **Footer** fields for the Receipt Page to edit the properties of the receipt page. This page is shown to guests after their visitor account has been created.

Customize Guest Registration

Receipt Page UI

Options controlling the appearance of the guest receipt page.

Title:

Guest Registration Receipt

The title to display on the guest receipt page.

Header HTML:

```
<h2>
  Guest Self-Registration
</h2>
<p>
  Your account details are shown below.
</p>
```

Insert content item... ▼

HTML template code displayed before the guest receipt.

Footer HTML:

Insert content item... ▼

HTML template code displayed after the guest receipt.


Override Receipt:

☐ Do not include guest receipt contents


Select this option if you want to replace the HTML of the guest receipt.

Save Changes

Save and Continue

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.

Receipt Actions

Click the  **Actions** link to edit the actions that are available once a visitor account has been created.

Customize Guest Registration	
Receipt Actions	
Options for delivering a receipt to a self-registered guest.	
Download	
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable download of guest receipt
Rank:	<input type="text" value="10"/> Rank ordering number for this receipt action.
Print Template:	<input type="text" value="Download Receipt"/> Print template to use to generate this receipt.
Filename:	<input type="text" value="Guest%20Receipt{\$visitor_name urlencode}.txt"/> Template code to evaluate to generate the filename for the receipt.
Action Icon:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> Optional custom icon to use for this receipt action.
Action Text:	<input type="text"/> Optional custom label to use for this receipt action.
Print	
Enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable print window for guest receipts
Email Delivery	
Enabled:	<input type="text" value="Disable sending guest receipts by email"/>
SMS Delivery	
Enabled:	<input type="text" value="Disable sending guest receipts by SMS"/>
Sponsorship Confirmation	
Enabled:	<input type="checkbox"/> Require sponsor confirmation prior to enabling the account
<input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Continue"/>	

Download and Print Actions

Select the **Download** or **Print** check box to enable the template and display options to deliver a receipt to the user as a downloadable file, or display the receipt in a printable window in the visitor's browser.

Download	
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable download of guest receipt
Rank:	<input type="text" value="10"/> Rank ordering number for this receipt action.
Print Template:	<input type="text" value="Download Receipt"/> Print template to use to generate this receipt.
Filename:	<input type="text" value="Receipt%20for%20{\$visitor_name urlencode}.txt"/> Template code to evaluate to generate the filename for the receipt.
Action Icon:	<input type="text" value="(Default)"/> Optional custom icon to use for this receipt action.
Action Text:	<input type="text"/> Optional custom label to use for this receipt action.

Email Delivery of Receipts

The Email Delivery options available for the receipt page actions allow you to specify the email subject line, the print template and email format, and other fields relevant to email delivery.

Email Delivery	
Enabled:	Always auto-send guest receipts by email
* Email Field:	(Use Default: email) The field containing the visitor account's email address.
Subject Line:	<input type="text"/> Template specifying the subject line for emailed visitor account receipts. Leave blank to use the default (Visitor account receipt for {email})
* Email Receipt:	(Use Default: GuestManager Receipt) The plain text or HTML print template to use when generating an email receipt.
* Email Skin:	(Use Default: No skin - HTML only) The format in which to send email receipts.
* Send Copies:	(Use Default: Use 'Bcc:' if sending to a visitor) Specify when to send visitor account receipts to the recipients in the Copies To list.
Copies To:	default An optional list of email addresses to which copies of visitor account receipts will be sent.
Reply-To:	<input type="checkbox"/> Allow the reply-to address to be overridden If checked, the reply-to address will be overridden by the sponsor_email field. Leave unchecked to use the global from address.

When email delivery is enabled, the following options are available to control email delivery:

- **Disable sending guest receipts by email** – Email receipts are never sent for a guest registration.
- **Always auto-send guest receipts by email** – An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent to the visitor's email address.
- **Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set** – If the Auto-Send Field available for this delivery option is set to a non-empty string or a non-zero value, an email receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's email address. The auto-send field can be used to create an “opt-in” facility for guests. Use a check box for the `auto_send_smtp` field and add it to the `create_user` form, or a guest self-registration instance, and email receipts will be sent to the visitor only if the check box has been selected.
- **Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email** – A link is displayed on the receipt page; if the visitor clicks this link, an email receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's email address.
- **Send an email to a list of fixed addresses** – An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent only to the list of email addresses specified in “Copies To”.

SMS Delivery of Receipts

The SMS Delivery options available for the receipt page actions allow you to specify the print template to use, the field containing the visitor's phone number, and the name of an auto-send field.

SMS Delivery	
Enabled:	Display a link enabling a guest receipt via SMS ▼
Phone Number Field:	(Use Default: visitor_phone) ▼ <small>The field containing the visitor's phone number.</small>
Service Provider:	amigopod SMS Service ▼ <small>The service provider to use when sending SMS messages.</small>
SMS Receipt:	(Use Default: SMS Receipt) ▼ <small>The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt.</small>
Rank:	30 <small>Rank ordering number for this receipt action.</small>
Action Icon:	(Default) ▼ <small>Optional custom icon to use for this receipt action.</small>
Action Text:	<input type="text"/> <small>Optional custom label to use for this receipt action.</small>

These options under Enabled are available to control delivery of SMS receipts:

- **Disable sending guest receipts by SMS** – SMS receipts are never sent for a guest registration.
- **Always auto-send guest receipts by SMS** – An SMS receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent to the visitor's phone number.
- **Auto-send guest receipts by SMS with a special field set** – If the Auto-Send Field is set to a non-empty string or a non-zero value, an SMS receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's phone number. The **auto-send** field can be used to create an “opt-in” facility for guests. Use a check box for the **auto_send_sms** field and add it to the **create_user** form, or a guest self-registration instance, and SMS messages will be sent to the specified phone number only if the check box has been selected.
- **Display a link enabling a guest receipt via SMS** – A link is displayed on the receipt page; if the visitor clicks this link, an SMS receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's phone number. Only one SMS receipt per guest registration can be sent in this way.

NAS Login Properties

To enable and edit the properties for automatic NAS login, click the **NAS** box or the **NAS Vendor Settings** link in the lower right corner of the **Customize Guest Registration**. The NAS Login form opens.

Customize Guest Registration



NAS Login
Options controlling logging into a NAS for self-registered guests.

Enabled: ☐ Enable guest login to a Network Access Server

Save Changes

Save and Continue

Mark the **Enabled** check box to expand the form.

Customize Guest Registration	
NAS Login Options controlling logging into a NAS for self-registered guests.	
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable guest login to a Network Access Server
* Vendor Settings:	Aruba Networks Select a predefined group of settings suitable for standard network configurations.
IP Address:	securelogin.arubanetworks.com Enter the IP address or hostname of the vendor's product here.
Secure Login:	Use vendor default Select a security option to apply to the web login process.
Dynamic Address:	<input type="checkbox"/> The controller will send the IP to submit credentials In multi-controller deployments, it is often required to post credentials to different addresses made available as part of the original redirection. The address above will be used whenever the parameter is not available or fails the requirements below.
Default Destination Options for controlling the destination clients will redirect to after login.	
Default URL:	 Enter the default URL to redirect clients. Please ensure you prepend "http://" for any external domain.
Override Destination:	<input type="checkbox"/> Force default destination for all clients If selected, the client's default destination will be overridden regardless of its value.
<div>  Save Changes  Save and Continue </div>	

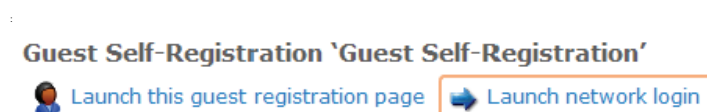
If automatic guest login is not enabled, the submit button on the receipt page will not be displayed, and automatic NAS login will not be performed.

Many of the properties on this page are the same as for a RADIUS Web Login page. For details about specifying NAS login settings, extra fields, or URL redirection parameters, See [“Creating a Web Login Page”](#) in the RADIUS Services chapter.

Login Page Properties

Click the **Title** or **Login Message** fields for the login page to edit the properties of the login page. This page is displayed if automatic guest login is enabled and a guest clicks the submit button from the receipt page to log in.

The login page is also a separate page that can be accessed by guests using the login page URL. The login page URL has the same base name as the registration page, but with **_login** appended. To determine the login page URL for a guest self-registration page, first ensure that the “Enable guest login to a Network Access Server” option is checked, and then use the ➔ **Launch network login** link from the self-registration process diagram, as shown below



The options available under the **Login Form** heading may be used to customize the login page. These options are equivalent to the same RADIUS Web Login page. See [“Creating a Web Login Page”](#) in the RADIUS Services chapter for a description.

Customize Guest Registration	
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable guest login to a Network Access Server
Login Form Options controlling the appearance of the NAS login form.	
Custom Form:	<input type="checkbox"/> Provide a custom login form If selected, you must supply your own HTML login form in the Header or Footer HTML areas.
Custom Labels:	<input type="checkbox"/> Override the default labels and error messages If selected, you will be able to alter labels and error messages for the current login form.
Pre-Auth Check:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Perform a local authentication check If checked, the username and password will be checked locally before proceeding to the NAS authentication. This option should not be selected if an external authentication server is in use.
Terms:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation If checked, the user will be forced to accept a Terms and Conditions checkbox.

The login page consists of two separate parts: the login form page, and a login message page.

The login form page contains a form prompting for the guest's username and password. The title, header and footer of this page can be customized. If the **Provide a custom login form** option is selected, then the form must also be provided in either the Header HTML or Footer HTML sections.


Login UI	
Options controlling the appearance of the NAS login page.	
Login Page Title:	<input type="text" value="Network Login"/> The page title to display on the login page.
Header HTML:	<div><input type="text"/></div> <div>Insert content item... ▼</div> HTML template code displayed before the login form.
Footer HTML:	<div><pre><p> Need an account? Click Here </p></pre></div> <div>Insert content item... ▼</div> HTML template code displayed after the login form.

The login message page is displayed after the login form has been submitted, while the guest is being redirected to the NAS for login. The title and message displayed on this page can be customized.

Title:	<input type="text" value="Network Login In Progress..."/> The page title to display while logging into the NAS.
Login Message:	<div><pre>Please wait while you are logged into the network...</pre></div> <div>Insert content item... ▼</div> HTML template code displayed while the login attempt is in progress.

The login delay can be set; this is the time period, in seconds, for which the login message page is displayed.

Automatic Login	
Options controlling automatically logging in from the receipt form.	
* Login Delay:	<input type="text" value="0"/> seconds The time in seconds to delay while displaying the login message.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.



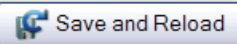
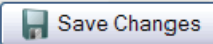
Self-Service Portal Properties

Click the **Self-Service Portal** link or one of the **Login Page**, **Summary Page**, **Change Password** or **Reset Password** links for the Self-Service Portal to edit the properties of the portal.

The self-service portal is accessed through a separate link that must be published to guests. The page name for the portal is derived from the registration page name by appending “_portal”.

When the self-service portal is enabled, a ➡ **Go To Portal** link is displayed on the list of guest self-registration pages, and may be used to determine the URL that guests should use to access the portal.

The portal offers guests the ability to log in with their account details, view their account details, or change their password. Additionally, the Reset Password link provides a method allowing guests to recover a forgotten account password.

Customize Guest Registration	
Self-Service Portal Options controlling details and actions a visitor has to their own account.	
Enabled:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable self-service portal
Disabled Users:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prohibit disabled users from accessing the service portal
Silent Login:	<input type="checkbox"/> Auto login by IP address If set, and the user has an active accounting session, they will be logged in automatically.
Login Page	
UI Overrides:	<input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels
Summary Page	
UI Overrides:	<input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels
Change Password	
Change Password:	<input type="checkbox"/> Disable the ability to change passwords
UI Overrides:	<input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels
Reset Password	
Reset Password:	<input type="checkbox"/> Disable the ability to reset passwords
* Required Field:	(Secret Question)  The field containing a value the visitor must match prior to resetting their password.
* Password Generation:	Passwords will be randomly generated  Select the policy for reset password generation.
UI Overrides:	<input type="checkbox"/> Display fields to override UI text and labels
 	

To adjust the user interface, use the override check boxes to display additional fields on the form. These fields allow you to customize all text and HTML displayed to users of the self-service portal.


The behavioral properties of the self-service portal are described below:

- The “Enable self-service portal” check box must be selected for guests to be able to access the portal. Access to the portal when it is disabled results in a disabled message being displayed; this message may be customized using the “Disabled Message” field.
- The “Disabled Users” check box controls whether a user account that has been disabled is allowed to log in to the portal.
- The “Change Password” check box controls whether guests are permitted to change their account password using the portal.
- The “Reset Password” check box controls whether guests are permitted to reset a forgotten account password using the portal. If this check box is enabled, the “Required Field” may be used to select a field value that the guest must match in order to confirm the password reset request.

If the “Auto login by IP address” option is selected, a guest accessing the self-service portal will be automatically logged in if their client IP address matches the IP address of an active RADIUS accounting

session (that is, the guest's HTTP client address is the same as the RADIUS Framed-IP-Address attribute for an active session).

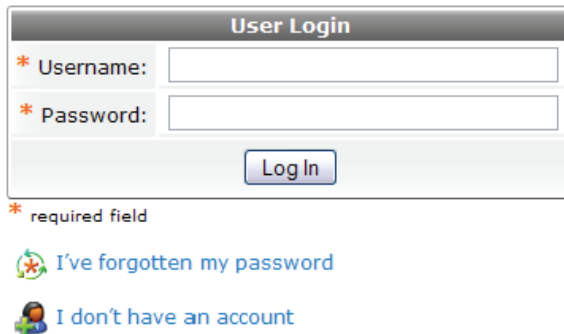
The Password Generation drop-down list controls what kind of password reset method is used in the portal. The default option is "Passwords will be randomly generated", but the alternative option "Manually enter passwords" may be selected to enable guests to select their own password through the portal.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the process diagram for self-registration.

Resetting Passwords with the Self-Service Portal

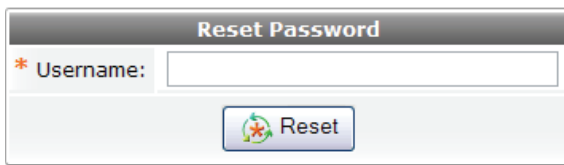
The self-service portal includes the ability to reset a guest account's password.

The default user interface for the self-service portal is shown below:



The "User Login" form features a title bar with the text "User Login". Below it, there are two input fields: "Username:" and "Password:", both preceded by an asterisk (*) indicating they are required fields. A "Log In" button is positioned below the password field. At the bottom of the form, there are two links: "I've forgotten my password" (with a circular arrow icon) and "I don't have an account" (with a person icon). A legend below the form indicates that the asterisk (*) denotes a "required field".

Clicking the  **I've forgotten my password** link displays a form where the user password may be reset:



The "Reset Password" form has a title bar with the text "Reset Password". It contains a single input field for "Username:" with an asterisk (*) indicating it is required. A "Reset" button, featuring a circular arrow icon, is located below the input field.

Entering a valid username will reset the password for that user account, and will then display the receipt page showing the new password and a login option (if NAS login has been enabled).

This feature allows the password to be reset for any guest account on the system, which may pose a security risk. It is strongly recommended that when this feature of the self-service portal is enabled, guest registrations should also store a secret question/secret answer field.

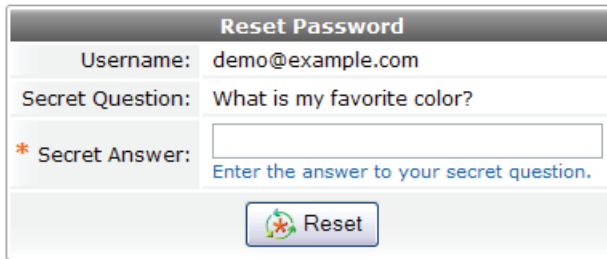
To enable a more secure password reset operation, first enable the **secret_question** and **secret_answer** fields to the registration form. The default appearance of these fields is shown below:



The "Visitor Registration" form has a title bar with the text "Visitor Registration". It contains several input fields: "Your Name:", "Email Address:", "Secret Question:", and "Secret Answer:", all preceded by an asterisk (*) indicating they are required. Below each input field is a blue instruction text: "Please enter your full name.", "Please enter your email address. This will become your username to log into the network.", "Enter your own secret question. The answer will be required to reset your password.", and "Enter the answer to your secret question." respectively. There is also a "Confirm:" field with a checkbox and the text "I accept the terms of use". A "Register" button with a green checkmark icon is at the bottom.

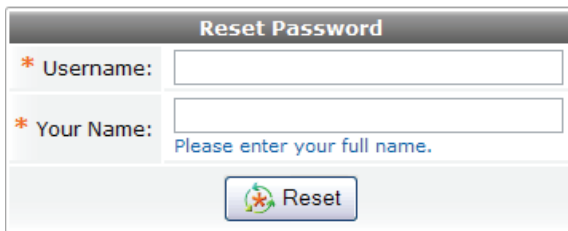
Next, enable the “Required Field” option in the Self-Service Portal properties. Setting this to **(Secret Question)** will ask the guest the **secret_question** and will only permit the password to be reset if the guest supplies the correct **secret_answer** value.

With these settings, the user interface for resetting the password now includes a question and answer prompt after the username has been determined:



The form is titled "Reset Password". It contains three input fields: "Username:" with the value "demo@example.com", "Secret Question:" with the value "What is my favorite color?", and "Secret Answer:" which is empty. Below the "Secret Answer" field is a blue link that says "Enter the answer to your secret question.". At the bottom of the form is a "Reset" button with a circular arrow icon.

Selecting a different value for the “Required Field” allows other fields of the visitor account to be checked. These fields should be part of the registration form. For example, selecting the **visitor_name** field as the “Required Field” results in a **Reset Password** form like this:




The form is titled "Reset Password". It contains two input fields: "Username:" which is empty, and "Your Name:" which is empty. Below the "Your Name" field is a blue link that says "Please enter your full name.". At the bottom of the form is a "Reset" button with a circular arrow icon.

Customizing Print Templates








Print templates are used to define the format and appearance of a guest account receipt.

The Print Templates menu item is now located under the **Customization > Print Templates** navigation menu.

Click a print template’s row in the table to select it. You can then choose to edit, duplicate, delete or preview the template.

The  **Edit code** action is displayed for a print template when it has been created using the wizard, but subsequently modified. See [“Modifying Wizard-Generated Templates”](#) in this chapter for further information.


Options to show where a print template is being used, and to control individual permissions for a print template, are also available when selecting a print template. See [“Setting Print Template Permissions”](#) in this chapter.

 Quick Help		
▲ Name		
Format		Status
 Account List	List	Enabled
 Download Receipt	Plain Text	Enabled
 GuestManager Receipt	Page	Enabled
 One account per page	Page	Enabled
 Two-column scratch cards	2-column list	Enabled
5 print templates  Reload		20 rows per page ▼

Plain text print templates may be used with SMS services to send guest account receipts; See [“About SMS Guest Account Receipts”](#) in this chapter for details. Because SMS has a 160 character limit, the number of

character used in the plain text template will be displayed below the preview. If you are including a guest account's email address in the SMS, remember to allow for lengthy email addresses (up to 50 characters is a useful rule of thumb).

Creating New Print Templates

Print templates can be defined using the  **Create new print template** link. This opens a window with four parts. The first part lists the variables that can be used in the template together with their meaning and an example of each.

Variable	Description	Example
{\$.username}	User account name	12345678
{\$.password}	User account password	87654321
{\$.enabled}	Non-zero if the user account is enabled	1
{\$.role_name}	Role assigned to user account	Guest
{\$.schedule_time}	Time at which the user account will become active	1155772123
{\$.expire_time}	Time at which the user account will expire	1155858523
{\$.expire_postlogin}	Lifetime of the user account login in minutes after login	120
{\$.visitor_name}	User's name	Susan Guest
{\$.visitor_company}	User's company name	Acme Sprockets
{\$.sponsor_name}	Sponsor's name	John Sponsor
{\$.custom_field}	Custom fields attached to the account	
{\$.action}	Action taken on account (create, delete or edit)	create
{\$.source}	Source of account action (create_user, reset_password, etc.)	create_user
{\$.result.error}	Non-zero if an error occurred while creating the user account	0
{\$.result.message}	Message related to the account creation	
{\$.timestamp}	Time at which the receipt was generated	1155752000
{\$.site_ssid}	SSID of the wireless LAN	amigopod
{\$.site_wpa_key}	WPA key for the wireless LAN	

This section is followed by three other sections: the body, the header and the footer. Each section must be written in HTML. There is provision in each section for the insertion of multiple content items such as logos.

You are able to add Smarty template functions and blocks to your code. These act as placeholders to be substituted when the template is actually used.

See [“Smarty Template Syntax”](#) in the Reference chapter for further information on Smarty template syntax.

You are able to use an `{if}` statement to define a single print template that caters for multiple situations. For example if you want to customize the print template to display different content depending on the action that has been taken, the following code could be used:

```
{if $action == "create"}
<p>
  Your guest account has been created and is now ready to use!
</p>
<ul>
  {if $site_ssid}
    <li>Connect to the wireless network named: <b>{$site_ssid}</b></li>
  {/if}
    <li>Make sure your network adapter is set to 'DHCP - Obtain an IP address Automatically'.</li>
    <li>Open your Web browser.</li>
    <li>Enter your username and password in the spaces provided.</li>
  </ul>
{elseif $action == "edit"}
<p>
  Your guest account has been updated.
</p>
{elseif $action == "delete"}
{/if}
```


```

<table {$table_class_content} width="500">
  <tbody>
    {if $u.guest_name}
      <tr>
        <th class="nwaLeft">guest name</th>
        <td class="nwaBody">{$u.guest_name}</td>
      </tr>
    {/if}
  </tbody>
</table>

```

If this code is placed in the User Account HTML section it will cater for the create, edit and delete options.

Print Template Wizard

The  **Create new print template using wizard** link provides a simplified way to create print templates by selecting a basic style and providing a logo image, title and content text, and selecting the guest account fields to include.

A real-time preview allows changes made to the design to be viewed immediately.

To use the Print Template Wizard, first select a style of print template from the Style list. Small thumbnail images are shown to indicate the basic layout of each style. There are four built-in styles:

- **Table** – Best for square or nearly square logo images, and well suited for use with “scratch card” guest accounts.
- **Simple** – Best for wide or tall logo images and for situations where an operator will print a page with guest account details.
- **Centered** – Best for wide logo images; less formal design.
- **Label Printer** – These print template styles are designed for small thermal printers in various widths. On-screen assistance is provided when printing to ensure that a consistent result can be obtained.

Click the  **Preview at right** or  **Preview at bottom** link at the top of the page to move the real-time preview of the print template.

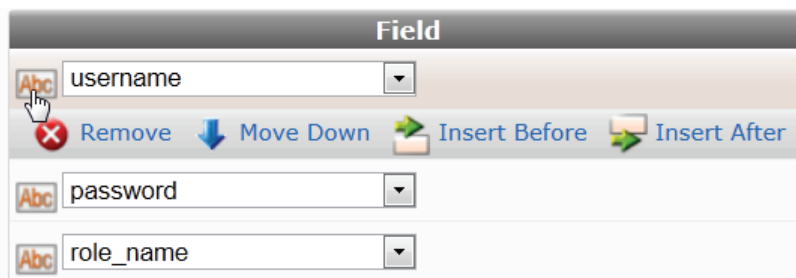
Each of the basic styles provides support for a logo image, title area, subtitle area, notes area, and footer text. These items can be customized by typing in an appropriate value in the Print Template Wizard.




As the print template is a HTML template, it is possible to use HTML syntax as well as Smarty template code in these areas. See [“Reference”](#) chapter for reference material about HTML and Smarty template code.

The print template may also contain visitor account fields. The value of each field is displayed in the print template. By default, the wizard sets up the template with the **username**, **password** and **role_name** fields, but these may be customized.

Options in the **Fields** row let you add, remove, or change the order of fields. Use the drop-down list to choose the field name, then click the icon at the left of the drop-down list. The field’s row expands to include the option links.




Use the  **Remove**,  **Move Up**,  **Move Down**,  **Insert Before**, and  **Insert After** links to adjust the fields that are to be included on the print template.

Click the  **Create Template** button to save your newly created print template and return to the list.

Modifying Wizard-Generated Templates


Once you have created a print template using the print template wizard, you can return to the wizard to modify it.

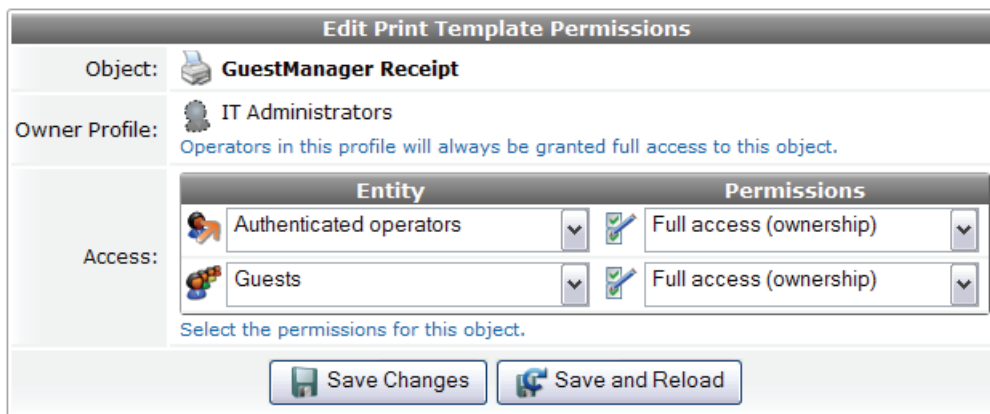
Click the  **Edit print template code (Advanced)** link to use the standard print template editor. See [“Creating New Print Templates”](#) in this chapter for a description.



















If you use the wizard to edit a print template after changes have been made to it outside the wizard, those changes will be lost. This is indicated with the warning message “The print template code has been modified. Making changes using the wizard will destroy any changes made outside of the wizard.”

Setting Print Template Permissions



The  **Permissions** link can be used to control access to an individual print template, at the level of an operator profile. The Permissions link is only displayed if the current operator has the Object Permissions privilege. This privilege is located in the Amigopod Administrator group of privileges.







Edit Print Template Permissions												
Object:	 GuestManager Receipt											
Owner Profile:	 IT Administrators <small>Operators in this profile will always be granted full access to this object.</small>											
Access:	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Entity</th><th></th><th>Permissions</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td> Authenticated operators</td><td></td><td>Full access (ownership)</td></tr><tr><td> Guests</td><td></td><td>Full access (ownership)</td></tr></tbody></table> <small>Select the permissions for this object.</small>			Entity		Permissions	 Authenticated operators		Full access (ownership)	 Guests		Full access (ownership)
	Entity		Permissions									
	 Authenticated operators		Full access (ownership)									
 Guests		Full access (ownership)										
<div> Save Changes  Save and Reload</div>												

The permissions defined on this screen apply to the print template identified in the “Object” line.



The owner profile always has full access to the print template.

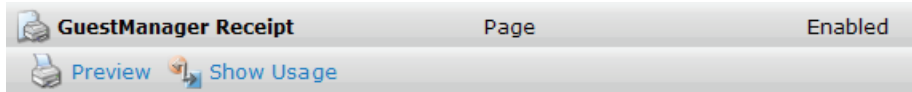
To control access to this print template by other entities, add or modify the entries in the “Access” list. To add an entry to the list, or remove an entry from the list, click one of the icons in the row. A  **Delete** icon and an  **Add** icon will then be displayed for that row.

Select one of the following entities in the Entity drop-down list:

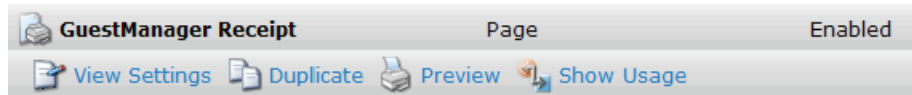
-  **Operator Profiles** – a specific operator profile may be selected. The corresponding permissions will apply to all operators with that operator profile.
-  Other Entities
 -  **Authenticated operators** – the permissions for all operators (other than the owner profile) may be set using this item. Permissions for an individual operator profile will take precedence over this item.
 -  **Guests** – the permissions for guests may be set using this item.

The permissions for the selected entity can be set using the Permissions drop-down list:

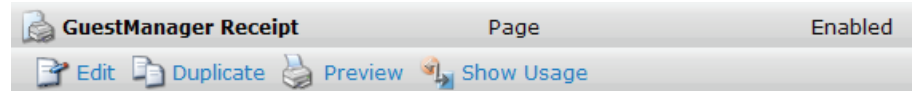
-  **No access** – the print template is not visible in the list, and cannot be used, edited, duplicated, or deleted.
-  **Visible-only access** – the print template is visible in the list, but cannot be edited, duplicated, or deleted.



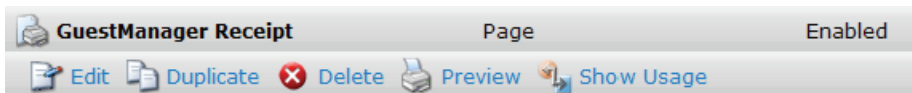
- **Read-only access** – the print template is visible in the list, and the settings for it may be viewed. The print template cannot be edited or deleted.



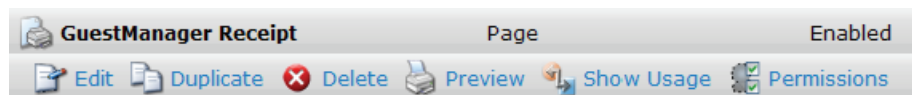
- **Update access** – the print template is visible in the list, and may be edited. The print template cannot be deleted and the permissions for the print template cannot be modified.



- **Update and delete access** – the print template is visible in the list, and may be edited or deleted. The permissions for the print template cannot be modified.



- **Full access (ownership)** – the print template is visible in the list, and may be edited or deleted. The permissions for the print template can be modified, if the operator has the Object Permissions privilege.



Configuring Access Code Logins

This section explains how to configure the Guest Manager to create multiple accounts that have the ability to log in with only the username. We will refer to this as an **Access Code**. Access Code logins requires the following plugin versions: Amigopod RADIUS Services 3.0.4 or later, and GuestManager Plugin 3.0.3. To verify you have the correct plugin versions installed, navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins** and check the version number in the list.


Customize Random Username and Passwords

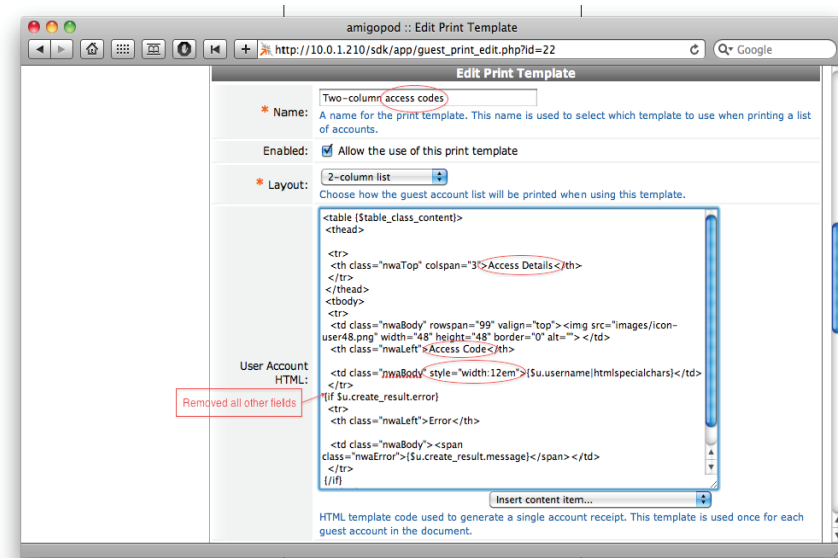
In this example we will set the random usernames and passwords to be a mix of letters and digits.

1. Navigate to **Customization > Guest Manager**. The **Customize Guest Manager** field appears.
2. In the **Username Type** field, select **Random Letters and digits**. Note that the generator matching the complexity will also include a mix of upper and lower case letters.
3. In the Username **Length field**, select **8** characters.
4. Configure other settings. See “[Default Settings for Account Creation](#)” in this chapter for a description, then click **Save Configuration** to save your changes.

Create the Print Template


By default, the print templates include username, password, expiration, as well as other options. For the purpose of access codes, we only want the username presented. This access code login example bases the print template off an existing scratch card templates.

1. Navigate to **Customization > Print Templates**.
2. Select **Two-column scratch cards** and click **Duplicate**.
3. Select the **Copy of Two-column scratch cards** template, then click  **Edit**.
4. In the **Name** field, substitute **Access Code** for **Username** as shown below.



5. Remove extraneous data from the **User Account HTML** field. Example text is shown below.

```
<table {$table_class_content}>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th class="nwaTop" colspan="3">Access Details</th>
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td class="nwaBody" rowspan="99" valign="top"></td>
      <th class="nwaLeft">Access Code</th>
    <td class="nwaBody" style="width:12em">{$u.username|htmlspecialchars}</td>
    </tr>
    {if $u.create_result.error}
    <tr>
      <th class="nwaLeft">Error</th>
    <td class="nwaBody"><span class="nwaError">{$u.create_result.message}</span></td>
    </tr>
    {/if}
  </tbody>
</table>
```

6. Click  **Save Changes** to save your settings.
7. To preview the new template, select the template in the Guest Manager Print Templates list, then click **Preview**. The template created in this example appears as shown below.

Customize the Guest Accounts Form

Next, modify the **Guest Accounts** form to add a flag that allows access-code based authentication.

1. Navigate to **Customization > Forms & Views**.
2. In the **Customize Forms & Views** list, select **create_multi** and then click **Edit Fields**.
3. In the **Edit Fields** list, look for a field named **username_auth**. If the field exists, but is not bolded and enabled, select it and click **Enable Field**.

If the field does *not* exist, select any field in the list (for example, **num_accounts**) and select **Insert After**. Click the **Field Name** drop-down list, select **username_auth** and allow the page to refresh. The defaults should be acceptable, but feel free to customize the label or description.

Use this form to add a new field to the form **create_multi**.

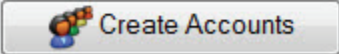
4. Click **Save Changes** to save your settings. Once the field is enabled or inserted, you should see it bolded in the list of fields.


Create Access Code Guest Accounts

Once the account fields have been customized, you can create new accounts.

1. Navigate to **Guests > Create Multiple**.

2. Select the **Username Authentication** field added in the procedure above. (If you do not select this check box and if the username is entered on the login screen, the authentication will be denied.) The example shown below will create 10 accounts that will expire in two weeks, or four hours after the visitors first log in, whichever comes first.

Create Guest Accounts	
* Number of Accounts:	<input type="text" value="10"/> Number of visitor accounts to create.
Account Activation:	<input type="text" value="Now"/> Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.
Account Expiration:	<input type="text" value="Account expires after..."/> Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.
Expires After:	<input type="text" value="2 weeks"/> Amount of time before this visitor account will expire.
* Expire Action:	<input type="text" value="Delete and logout at specified time"/> Select an option for controlling the expiration of this account. Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.
Account Lifetime:	<input type="text" value="4 hours"/> The amount of time after the first login before the visitor account will expire and be deleted.
* Account Role:	<input type="text" value="Contractor"/> Role to assign to this visitor account.
	

3. Click  **Create Accounts** to display the **Finished Creating Guest Accounts** page. If you create large number of accounts are created at one time they may not all be displayed at the same time. (This will not affect the printing action in the following step.)

Finished creating 10 guest accounts.

The details about each of the accounts created are shown below.

Account Details	
	Username u1243dfx
	Password L3B7HdqP
	Role Guest
	Account Expiration Wednesday, 28 September 2011, 04:34 PM or 4 hours after first login

Account Details	
	Username yvvvtq1rd
	Password 3tdkRo28
	Role Guest
	Account Expiration Wednesday, 28 September 2011, 04:34 PM or 4 hours after first login

Account Details	
	Username z9wakxnk
	Password 2v8O32AG
	Role Guest
	Account Expiration Wednesday, 28 September 2011, 04:34 PM or 4 hours after first login

Account Details	
	Username mc3xpwim
	Password 8wm3UEMX
	Role Guest

4. Confirm that the accounts settings are as you expected with respect to letters and digits in the username and password, expiration, and role.
5. Click the **Open print window using template** drop-down list and select the new print template you created using this procedure. See [“Create the Print Template”](#) for a description of this procedure. A new window or tab will open with the cards.

MAC Authentication on Amigopod

Amigopod supports a number of options for MAC Authentication and the ability to authenticate devices.

The advanced features described in this section generally require a WLAN capable of MAC authentication with captive portal fallback. Please refer to the Aruba WLAN documentation for setting up the controller appropriately.

To verify that you have the most recent MAC Authentication Plugin installed and enabled before you configure these advanced features, go to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > List Available Plugins**. For information on plugin management, see [“Plugin Manager”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter.

MAC Address Formats

Different vendors format the client MAC address in different ways—for example:

- 112233AABBCC
- 11:22:33:aa:bb:cc
- 11-22-33-AA-BB-CC

Amigopod supports adjusting the expected format of a MAC address. To configure formatting of separators and case in the address, as well as user detection and device filtering for views, go to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins** and click the **Configuration** link for the **MAC Authentication Plugin**. The MAC Authentication Plugin page opens.

Figure 25 MAC Authentication Plugin—Configuration

Configure MAC Authentication Plugin 3.7.0

* MAC Separator:

(No separator)

The separator to use when normalizing a MAC address.
Standard IEEE 802 value is the dash '-'.

* Case:

UPPER

The case of letters used when normalizing a MAC address.

* MAC Detect:

☐ Allow users to be detected via their MAC address
Provides access to user configuration for headers, footers, etc on login and registration pages.
Please note that a passed MAC can be easily changed by the user, so personal details should not be displayed.
Requires a vendor that passed the mac as part of the redirection.

Device Filter:

☒ List Accounts
☐ Edit Accounts
Select which views should not display devices (user accounts with the 'mac_auth' field set).

Save Configuration

On the controller, the fields look as follows:

Figure 26 MAC Authentication Profile

MAC Authentication Profile > amigopod-mac

Show Reference Save As

Delimiter

none

Case


upper

Max Authentication failures

0

Managing Devices

To view the list of current MAC devices, go to **Guests > List Devices**.



List Devices

View a list of all current devices.

The Guest Manager Devices page opens.

Quick Help

Create

More Options

Filter:

MAC Address	Role	Status	Expiration
02-AA-BB-12-34-56	Guest	Enabled	N/A
02-AA-BB-12-34-78	Contractor	Disabled	N/A

Change expiration

Remove

Activate

Edit

Sessions

Print

Refresh

1

Showing 1 – 2 of 2


20 rows per page

All devices created by one of methods described in the following section are listed. Options on the form let you change a device's account expiration date; remove, activate, or edit the device; view active sessions or details for the device; or print details, receipts, confirmations, or other information.

You can use the **Filter** field to narrow the search parameters. You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of any fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 19 Operators supported in filters

Operator	Meaning	Additional Information
=	is equal to	You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality (!=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character (). For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value".
!=	is not equal to	
>	is greater than	
>=	is greater than or equal to	
<	is less than	
<=	is less than or equal to	
~	matches the regular expression	
!~	does not match the regular expression	

To restore the default view, click the  **Clear Filter** link.

Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.



To select a device, click the device you want to work with.

Changing a Device's Expiration Date

To change a device's expiration date, click the device's row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Change expiration** link. The row expands to include the Change Expiration form.

Change Expiration	
Username:	11-22-33-AA-BB-CC
Account Expiration:	Account will expire at Friday, 22 March 2013, 05:30 PM
Account Expiration:	<div> <div>(No changes: 2013-03-22 17:30:00)</div> <div> <div>(No changes: 2013-03-22 17:30:00)</div> <div>n time of this account.</div> </div> </div> <div> <div>Account will not expire</div> <div>Now</div> <div>Lengthen expiration time by 1 hour</div> <div>Lengthen expiration time by 1 day</div> <div>Lengthen expiration time by 1 week</div> <div>Shorten expiration time by 1 hour</div> <div>Shorten expiration time by 1 day</div> <div>Shorten expiration time by 1 week</div> <div>Tonight</div> <div>Friday night</div> <div>1 hour from now</div> <div>1 day from now</div> <div>1 week from now</div> <div>Account expires after...</div> <div>Account expires at specified time...</div> <div>Adjust expiration action...</div> </div>
* required field	
Refresh	
Back to guests	
Back to main	
	Copyright © 20

- In the **Account Expiration** row, choose one of the options in the drop-down list to set an expiration date:
 - If you choose **Account expires after**, the **Expires After** row is added to the form. Choose an interval of hours, days, or weeks from the drop-down list.
 - If you choose **Account Expires at a specified time**, the **Expiration Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
- If you choose any option other than “will not expire” or “now” in the Account Expiration field, the **Expire Action** row is added to the table. Use the drop-down list in this row to specify one of the following actions: delete, delete and log out, disable, or disable and log out.
- Click **Update Account** to commit your changes.

Disabling and Deleting Devices

To remove a device’s account by disabling or deleting it, click the device’s row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Remove** link. The row expands to include the Remove Account form.

Remove Account	
Username:	02-AA-BB-12-34-78
* Action:	<div> <div><input type="radio"/> Disable account</div> <div><input checked="" type="radio"/> Delete account</div> </div> <div>Caution: Deleting a guest account cannot be undone! Use this option with care.</div>
<div> </div>	

You may choose to either disable or delete the account. If you disable it, it remains in the device list and may activate it again later. If you delete the account, it is removed from the list permanently.

Activating a Device

To activate a disabled device's account, click the device's row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Activate** link. The row expands to include the Enable Guest Account form.

Enable Guest Account	
Username:	02-AA-BB-12-34-78
Account Expiration:	No expiration time set
Activate Account:	<div>Activate at specified time... (No changes: No auto-activation) Now Tomorrow Next Monday 1 hour from now 1 day from now 1 week from now Activate at specified time...</div>
Activation Time:	
<div>Enable Account</div>	

1. In the **Activate Account** row, choose one of the options in the drop-down list to specify when to activate the account. You may choose an interval, or you may choose to specify a time.
2. If you choose **Activate at specified time**, the **Activation Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
3. Click **Enable Account** to commit your changes.

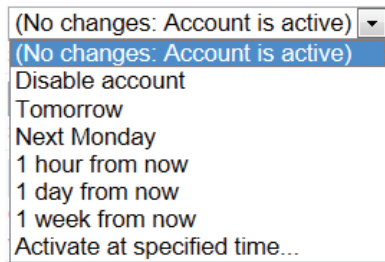
Editing a Device

To edit a device's account, click the device's row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Edit** link. The row expands to include the Edit MAC form.

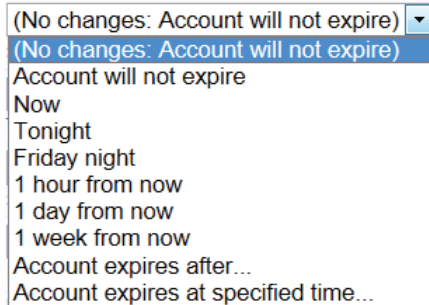
Edit MAC	
* MAC Address:	<div>02-AA-BB-12-34-78</div> <div>MAC address of the device.</div>
Account Activation:	<div>(No changes: No auto-activation)</div> <div>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</div>
Account Expiration:	<div>(No changes: Account will not expire)</div> <div>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</div>
Account Lifetime:	<div>(No changes: N/A)</div> <div>The amount of time after the first login before the visitor account will expire and be deleted.</div>
Total Allowed Usage:	<div>(No changes)</div> <div>Select an option for changing the allowed usage time of this account.</div>
Account Role:	<div>(No changes: Contractor)</div> <div>Role to assign to this visitor account.</div>
Session Limit:	<div>1</div> <div>The number of simultaneous sessions allowed for this visitor account. Type 0 for unlimited use.</div>
<div>Update MAC</div>	

1. You can change the device's address in the **MAC Address** row.
If you need to modify the configuration for expected separator format or case, go to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins** and click the **Configuration** link for the **MAC Authentication Plugin**.

2. If you need to change the activation time, choose one of the options in the **Account Activation** drop-down list. You may choose to activate the account immediately, at a preset interval of hours or days, or at a specified time.



- If you choose **Activate at a specified time**, the **Activation Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
3. If you need to change the expiration time, choose one of the options in the **Account Expiration** drop-down list. You may terminate the account immediately, at a preset interval of hours or days, or at a specified time.



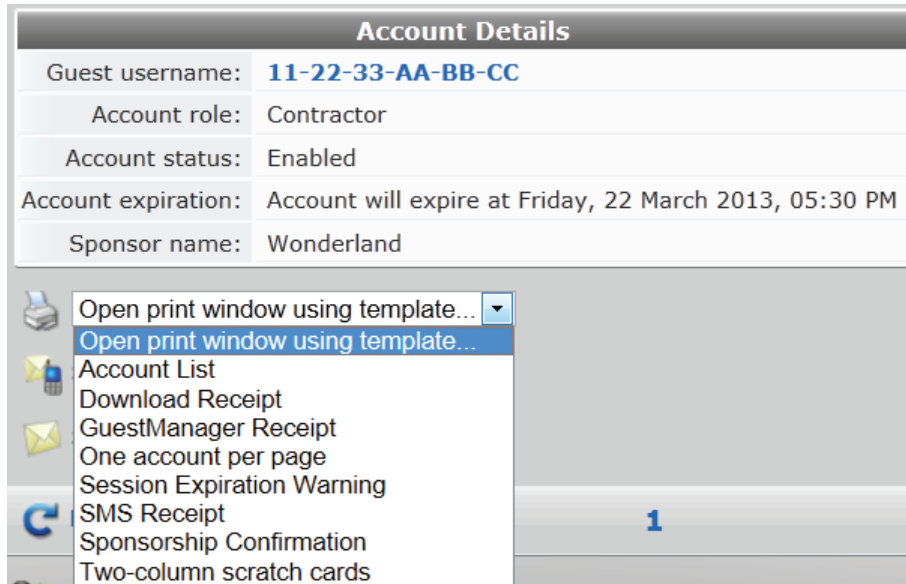
- If you choose any time in the future, the **Expire Action** row is added to the form. Use this drop-down list to indicate the expiration action for the account—either delete, delete and log out, disable, or disable and log out. The action will be applied at the time set in the Account Expiration row.
 - If you choose **Account expires after**, the **Expires After** row is added to the form. Choose an interval of hours, days, or weeks from the drop-down list. The maximum is two weeks.
 - If you choose **Account Expires at a specified time**, the **Expiration Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
4. To change a visitor account's duration after first login, you may choose a preset interval of hours or days from the **Account Lifetime** drop-down list. The visitor's account expires and is deleted when this interval has passed after they first log in. The maximum is one week.
 5. To change the maximum usage allowed for the account, choose an option from the **Total Allowed Usage** drop-down list. You may set the total usage to one or two hours, add one or two hours to the existing setting, or subtract one or two hours from the existing setting.
 6. You can use the **Account Role** drop-down list to change the visitor's assigned role.
 7. In the **Session Limit** row, you may enter the number of simultaneous sessions to allow for this account. To allow an unlimited number of simultaneous sessions, enter 0.
 8. To commit your changes, click **Update MAC**.

Viewing Current Sessions for a Device

To view any sessions that are currently active for a device, click the **Sessions** link in the device's row on the Guest Manager Devices form. The Active Sessions list opens. For more information, see [“Active Sessions Management”](#).

Viewing and Printing Device Details

To print details, receipts, confirmations, or other information for a device, click the device's row in the Guest Manager Devices list, then click its **Print** link. The row expands to include the Account Details form and a drop-down list of information that can be printed for the device.



The screenshot shows a web interface for 'Account Details'. The form contains the following information:

Guest username:	11-22-33-AA-BB-CC
Account role:	Contractor
Account status:	Enabled
Account expiration:	Account will expire at Friday, 22 March 2013, 05:30 PM
Sponsor name:	Wonderland

Below the form is a print menu with the following options:

- Open print window using template...
- Open print window using template...
- Account List
- Download Receipt
- GuestManager Receipt
- One account per page
- Session Expiration Warning
- SMS Receipt
- Sponsorship Confirmation
- Two-column scratch cards

Choosing an option in the **Open print window using template** drop-down list opens a print preview window and the printer dialog. Options include account details, receipts in various formats, a session expiration alert, and a sponsorship confirmation notice.

MAC Creation Modes

MAC device accounts may be created in three ways:

- Manually in Amigopod using the Create Device form
- During guest self-registration by a mac parameter passed in the redirect URL, if the process is configured to create a MAC device account
- During guest self-registration by a mac parameter passed in the redirect URL, creating a parallel account paired with the visitor account

Creating Devices Manually in Amigopod

If you have the MAC address, you can create a new device manually. Go to **Guests > List Devices** and click the **Create** link, or you can go to the Guests navigation page and click the **Create Device** command. The New MAC Authentication page opens.

New MAC Authentication	
* Sponsor's Name:	<input type="text" value="Wonderland"/> <small>Name of the person sponsoring this visitor account.</small>
* Device Name:	<input type="text" value="RabbitHole"/> <small>Name of the device.</small>
* MAC Address:	<input type="text" value="11:22:33:aa:bb:cc"/> <small>MAC address of the device.</small>
Account Activation:	<div>Activate at specified time... ▼</div> <small>Select an option for changing the activation time of this account.</small>
Activation Time:	<div>2013-03-21 17:30 ...</div> <small>Scheduled date and time at which to enable the visitor account. If blank, the account will be enabled immediately.</small>
Account Expiration:	<div>Account expires after... ▼</div> <small>Select an option for changing the expiration time of this account.</small>
Expires After:	<div>1 day ▼</div> <small>Amount of time before this visitor account will expire.</small>
* Expire Action:	<div>Delete and logout at specified time ▼</div> <small>Select an option for controlling the expiration of this account. Note that a logout can only occur if the NAS is RFC-3576 compliant.</small>
* Account Role:	<div>Contractor ▼</div> <small>Role to assign to this visitor account.</small>
* Terms of Use:	<input type="checkbox"/> I am the sponsor of this visitor account and accept the terms of use
<div>Create MAC</div>	

1. In the **Sponsor's Name** row, enter the name of the person sponsoring the visitor account.
2. Enter the name for the device in the **Device Name** row.
3. Enter the address in the **MAC Address** row.

If you need to modify the configuration for expected separator format or case, go to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins** and click the **Configuration** link for the **MAC Authentication Plugin**.

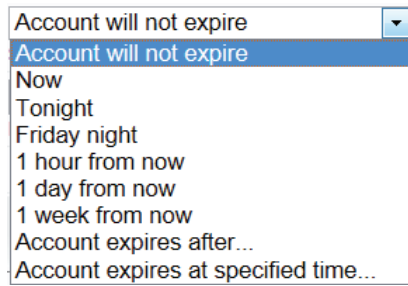
4. Choose one of the options in the **Account Activation** drop-down list. You may choose to activate the account immediately, at a preset interval of hours or days, at a specified time, or leave the account disabled.

Now ▼

Now
Disable account
Tomorrow
Next Monday
1 hour from now
1 day from now
1 week from now
Activate at specified time...

- If you choose **Activate at a specified time**, the **Activation Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.

5. To set the account's expiration time, choose one of the options in the **Account Expiration** drop-down list. You may set the account to never expire, or to expire at a preset interval of hours or days, or at a specified time.



- If you choose any time in the future, the **Expire Action** row is added to the form. Use this drop-down list to indicate the expiration action for the account—either delete, delete and log out, disable, or disable and log out. The action will be applied at the time set in the Account Expiration row.
 - If you choose **Account expires after**, the **Expires After** row is added to the form. Choose an interval of hours, days, or weeks from the drop-down list. The maximum is two weeks.
 - If you choose **Account Expires at a specified time**, the **Expiration Time** row is added to the form. Click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
6. Use the **Account Role** drop-down list to assign the visitor's role.
 7. In the **Terms of Use** row, first click the **terms of use** link and read the agreement, then mark the check box to agree to the terms.
 8. To commit your changes and create the device, click **Create MAC**. The Account Details and print options are displayed. For more information, see [“Viewing and Printing Device Details”](#).

Creating Devices During Guest Self-Registration - MAC Only

This section describes how to configure a guest self-registration so that it creates a MAC device account. Once the guest is registered, future authentication can take place without the need for the guest to enter their credentials. A registration can be converted to create a MAC device instead of standard guest credentials.



This requires a vendor passing a **mac** parameter in the redirect URL. Amigopod does not support querying the controller or DHCP servers for the client's MAC based on IP.



To edit the registration form fields, go to **Customization > Forms and Views**. In the **guest_register** row, click the **Edit Fields** link. The Customize Form Fields page opens. If you do not see **mac** or **mac_auth** in the list, click the **Customize fields** link above the list. Click the **Edit** link in the field's row. In the Define Custom Field form, edit the registration form fields:

- Add or enable **mac**
 - UI: **Hidden field**
 - Field Required: checked
 - Validator: **IsValidMacAddress**
- Add or enable **mac_auth**
 - UI: **Hidden field**
- Any other expiration options, role choice, surveys, and so on can be entered as usual.

Figure 27 *Modify fields*

Use this list view to modify the fields of the form **guest_register_mac**.

 [Customize fields](#)  [Back to list of forms & views](#)  [Use the guest registration](#)

 Quick Help		 Preview Form		
Rank	Field	Type	Label	Description
20	visitor_name	text	Your Name:	Please enter your full name.
25	visitor_phone	text	Phone Number:	Please enter your contact phone number.
30	visitor_company	text	Company Name:	Please enter your company name.
40	email	text	Email Address:	Please enter your email address
45	mac	hidden	MAC Address:	MAC address of the client.
47	mac_auth	hidden		
50	schedule_time	datetime	Activation Time:	Optional date and time at which to enable the visitor account. If blank, the visitor account will be enabled immediately.
60	expire_after	hidden	Account Expiry:	Amount of time before this visitor account will expire.
65	expire_time	datetime	Expiration Time:	Optional date and time at which this account will expire. If blank, the expiration time will not be set.
70	role_id	hidden	Account Role:	Role to assign to this visitor account.
75	enabled	checkbox	Account State:	Select an option for changing the status of this visitor account.
90	creator_accept_terms	checkbox	Confirm:	
99	auto_update_account	hidden		
100	submit	submit	Register	

Edit the receipt form fields:

- Edit **username** to be a **Hidden field**
- Edit **password** to be a **Hidden field**

Adjust any headers or footers as needed.

When the visitor registers, they should be able to still log in via the **Log In** button. The MAC will be passed as their username and password via standard captive portal means.

The account will only be visible on the **List Devices** page.

If the guest logs out and reconnects, they should be immediately logged in without being redirected to the captive portal page.

Creating Devices During Guest Self-Registration - Paired Accounts

Paired accounts is a means to create a standard visitor account with credentials, but to have a MAC account created in parallel that is directly tied to the visitor account. These accounts share the same role, expiration and other properties.

This requires a vendor passing a **mac** parameter in the redirect URL. Amigopod does not support querying the controller or DHCP servers for the client's MAC based on IP.

To edit the registration form fields, go to **Customization > Forms and Views**. In the **guest_register** row, click the **Edit Fields** link. The Customize Form Fields page opens. If you do not see **mac** or **mac_auth_pair** in the list, click the **Customize fields** link above the list. Click the **Edit** link in the field's row. In the Define Custom Field form, edit the registration form fields:

- Add or enable **mac**

- UI: **Hidden field**
- Field Required: optional
- Validator: **IsValidMacAddress**
- Add or enable **mac_auth_pair**
 - UI: **Hidden field**
 - Initial Value: **-1**
- Any other expiration options, role choice, surveys and so on can be entered as usual.

You will see an entry under both **List Accounts** and **List Devices**. Each should have a **View Pair** action that cross links the two. Note if you delete the base account, all of its pairings will also be deleted. If RFC-3576 has been configured, all pairs will be logged out.

Accounting-Based MAC Authentication

Accounting-based MAC authentication is a way to cache the MAC used during an initial authentication so that the device does not need to authenticate again. The visitor authenticates with their regular credentials, using a regular Web login or some form of transparent login, and the Amigopod server registers the MAC for future use. The device may be configured to do this automatically, or you may enter the following PHP code.

Edit the role of your guests and add the following:

- Attribute: **Tmp-String-0**
- Value: *blank*
- Condition: **Enter condition expression...**

Expression:

```
return
empty($user['mac_auth'])
&& NwaDynamicLoad('NwaCreateUser')
&& NwaDynamicLoad('NwaNormalizeMacAddress')
&& ($mac=NwaNormalizeMacAddress(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id')))
&& ((!empty($user['id']) && NwaCreateUser(array(
    'creator_accept_terms'=>1,
    'mac'=>$mac,
    'mac_auth'=>1,
    'mac_auth_pair'=>$user['id'],
    'create_time' => time(),
    'auto_update_account'=>1)))
|| (empty($user['id']) && NwaCreateUser(array(
    'creator_accept_terms'=>1,
    'role_id'=>$user['role_id'],
    'mac'=>$mac,
    'mac_auth'=>1,
    'sponsor_name'=>$user['username'],
    'modify_expire_time'=>'today 17:00',
    'do_expire'=>4,
    'create_time' => time(),
    'auto_update_account'=>1)))
)
&& 0;
```

Annotated Expression: the following code is an annotated explanation of how the above code works.

```
return
empty($user['mac_auth']) // Not already a MAC device...
&& NwaDynamicLoad('NwaCreateUser') // Required call
```

```

    && NwaDynamicLoad('NwaNormalizeMacAddress') // Required call
    && ($mac=NwaNormalizeMacAddress(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'))) // All MACs need to
    be normalized
    && (!!empty($user['id'])) && NwaCreateUser(array(// We are caching the MAC for a
    local user account
        'creator_accept_terms'=>1,
        'mac_auth'=>1, // Flag as a MAC so it shows in List Devices
        'mac'=>$mac, // The normalized MAC
        'mac_auth_pair'=>$user['id'], // Formally pair the two accounts. Cross links
        and whatnot in the GUI. A number of data items synced
        //'modify_expire_time'=>'Friday 17:00', // OPTIONAL. Fixed caching time.
        Default inherits paired account.
        'create_time' => time(), // initialize the creation time
        'auto_update_account'=>1)))
    || (empty($user['id']) && NwaCreateUser(array( // This is an external server
        'creator_accept_terms'=>1,
        'role_id'=>$user['role_id'], // Match the role to the current.
        'mac_auth'=>1, // Flag as a MAC Device
        'mac'=>$mac,
        'sponsor_name'=>$user['username'],// Set sponsor_name so we know who created it
        and our sponsor filtering can kick in.
        'modify_expire_time'=>'Friday 18:00', // Fixed caching time. Choose an
        appropriate expression.
        //'do_expire'=>4, // This will default to the global and is not needed unless
        overriding.
        'create_time' => time(), // initialize the creation time
        'auto_update_account'=>1)))
    )
    && 0;

```

Figure 28 *RADIUS Role Editor*

Role ID: 49

* Role Name: MAC Cache

Enter a name for this role.

Description: Caches the MAC

Enter comments or descriptive text about the role.

Session Warnings: ☐ Disable sending session expiration warnings to accounts in this role

See Customization>Guest Manager for enabling session warnings.

RADIUS Attributes

Quick Help

Add Attribute

Attribute	Value	Condition
<div>Tmp-String-0</div>		Expression: return empty(\$user['mac_auth']) && NwaDynamicLoad('NwaCreateUser') && NwaDynamicLoad('NwaNormalizeMacAddress') && (\$mac=NwaNormalizeMacAddress(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'))) && (empty(\$user['id']) && NwaCreateUser(array('creator_accept_terms'=>1, 'mac'=>\$mac, 'mac_auth'=>1, 'mac_auth_pair'=>\$user['id'], 'auto_update_account'=>1))) && (empty(\$user['id']) && NwaCreateUser(array('creator_accept_terms'=>1, 'role_id'=>\$user['role_id'], 'mac'=>\$mac, 'mac_auth'=>1, 'sponsor_name'=>\$user['username'], 'modify_expire_time'=>'today 17:00', 'do_expire'=>4, 'auto_update_account'=>1))) && 0;

Edit

Delete

Attributes:

RADIUS Attribute Editor

Vendor: Standard RADIUS Attributes

Select a vendor.

Attribute: Tmp-String-0

Select a vendor-specific attribute.

Value:

Enter a value for this attribute.

Condition: Enter condition expression...

Select when this attribute should be returned in a RADIUS Access-Accept packet.

Expression:

```
return
empty($user['mac_auth'])
&& NwaDynamicLoad('NwaCreateUser')
&& NwaDynamicLoad('NwaNormalizeMacAddress')
&& ($mac=NwaNormalizeMacAddress(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id')))
```

Type an expression that determines if this attribute should be returned.

Save Changes

Cancel

Reply-Message

<?=

\$role["name"]

Always

Modify the list of RADIUS attributes that are attached to this role.

Save Changes

Note that **modify_expire_time** supports any valid syntax of `strtotime`.

Importing MAC Devices

The standard **Guests > Import Guests** supports importing MAC devices. At a minimum the following two columns are required: **mac** and **mac_auth**.

```
mac_auth,mac,notes
1,aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa,Device A
1,bb:bb:bb:bb:bb:bb,Device B
1,cc:cc:cc:cc:cc:cc,Device C
```

Any of the other standard fields can be added similar to importing regular guests.

Advanced MAC Features

2-Factor Authentication

2-factor authentication checks against both credentials and the MAC address on record.

Tying the MAC to the visitor account will depend on the requirements of your deployment. In practice you would probably add **mac** as a text field to the **create_user** form. When **mac** is enabled in a self-registration it will be included in the account as long as **mac** is passed in the URL. Relying on self-registration may defeat the purpose of two-factor authentication, however.

The 2-factors are performed as follows:

1. Regular RADIUS authentication using username and password
2. Role checks the user account mac against the passed Calling-Station-Id.

Edit the user role and the attribute for **Reply-Message** or **Aruba-User-Role**. Adjust the condition from **Always** to **Enter conditional expression**.

```
return !MacEqual(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'), $user['mac']) && AccessReject();
```

There is an alternative syntax where you keep the condition at **Always** and instead adjust the **Value**.

```
<?= MacEqual(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'), $user['mac']) ? $role["name"] :
AccessReject()
```

or

```
<?= MacEqual(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'), $user['mac']) ? 'Employee' : AccessReject()
```

MAC-Based Derivation of Role

Depending on whether the MAC address matches a registered value, you can also adjust which role is returned. The controller must be configured with the appropriate roles and the reply attributes mapping to them as expected.

Edit the **Value** of the attribute within the role returning the role to the controller.

If you are on the registered MAC, apply the **Employee** role, otherwise set them as **Guest**.

```
<?= MacEqual(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'), $user['mac']) ? 'Employee' : 'Guest'
```

This can be expanded if you create multiple MAC fields. Navigate to **Customize > Fields** and duplicate **mac**. Rename it as **mac_byod** and then add it to the 'create_user and guest_edit forms. In this example the account has a registered employee device under mac, and a registered BYOD device under mac_byod.

```
<?= MacEqual(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'), $user['mac_byod']) ? 'BYOD' :
(MacEqual(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'), $user['mac']) ? 'Employee' : 'Guest')
```

User Detection on Landing Pages

When **mac** is passed in the redirect URL, the user is detected and a customized message displays on the landing page.

Navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins: MAC Authentication: Configuration** and enable **MAC Detect**.

Edit the header of your redirect landing page (login or registration) and include the following:

```
<p>{if $guest_receipt.u.visitor_name}
Welcome back to the show, {$guest_receipt.u.visitor_name|htmlspecialchars}!
{else}
Welcome to the show!
{/if}</p>
```

For debugging purposes, include the following to see all the fields available:

```
{dump var=$guest_receipt export=html}
```

Click-Through Login Pages

A click-through login page will present a splash or terms screen to the guest, yet still provide MAC-auth style seamless authentication. Under this scenario, you could have people create an account, with a paired MAC, yet still have them click the terms and conditions on every new connection.

Disable MAC authentication on the controller.

Navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins: MAC Authentication: Configuration** and enable **MAC Detect**.

Create a **Web Login**

- Authentication: **Anonymous**
- Anonymous User: **_mac** (*_mac is a special secret value*)
- Pre-Auth Check: **Local**
- Terms: **Require a Terms and Conditions confirmation**

Set the Web login as your landing page and test. Using a registered device the 'Log In' button should be enabled, otherwise it will be disabled.

You may also want to add a message so visitors get some direction.

```
<p>{if $guest_receipt.u.username}
{if $guest_receipt.u.visitor_name}
Welcome back, {$guest_receipt.u.visitor_name|htmlspecialchars}!
{else}
Welcome back.
{/if}
    Please accept the terms before proceeding.
{else}
You need to register...
{/if}</p>
```

You can hide the login form by having the final line of the header be:

```
{if !$guest_receipt.u.username}<div style="display:none">{/if}
```

and the first line of the footer be:

```
{if !$guest_receipt.u.username}</div>{/if}
```



Active Sessions Management

The RADIUS server maintains a list of active visitor sessions. If your NAS equipment has RFC 3576 support, the RADIUS dynamic authorization extensions allow you to disconnect or modify an active session.



Active Sessions

View active accounting sessions and disconnect or change authorization for sessions.

To view and manage active sessions for the RADIUS server, go to **Guests > Active Sessions**. The Active Sessions list opens. You can use this list to modify, disconnect or reauthorize, or send SMS notifications for active visitor sessions; manage multiple sessions; or customize the list to include additional fields.

Quick Help

Manage Multiple

Filter









SMS

More Options

Filter:

Search all fields that have been configured for 'quick search'.

Showing: Active sessions only.

| Username | IP Address | MAC Address | Role | NAS | Session Start | Session Time | Session Traffic |
|---|-----------------|-------------------|-------|-----------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
|  1332178700-898@example.com | 151.33.34.93 | 1c:00:00:00:ce:f6 | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03-19 11:06 | | 0.0 MB |
|  1332178700-784@example.com | 66.191.156.195 | e0:00:00:00:b4:b0 | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03-19 11:06 | | 0.0 MB |
|  1332178700-648@example.com | 234.19.170.49 | 70:00:00:00:95:58 | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03-19 11:05 | | 0.0 MB |
|  1332178700-846@example.com | 99.42.139.153 | 44:00:00:00:c2:fa | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03-19 11:05 | | 0.0 MB |
|  1332178700-162@example.com | 167.206.206.191 | dc:00:00:00:25:56 | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03-19 11:05 | | 0.0 MB |
|  1332178700-254@example.com | 35.71.164.53 | e4:00:00:00:3a:8a | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03-19 11:05 | | 0.0 MB |
|  1332178700-190@example.com | 215.122.248.139 | 64:00:00:00:2b:ca | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03-19 11:05 | | 0.0 MB |
|  1332178700- | 181.40.214.248 | 0a:00:00:00:7a:61 | Guest | 127.0.0.1 | 2012-03- | | 0.0 MB |


- On the Manage Multiple Sessions form, the start time of each session is used to select the sessions to work with. To find relevant sessions easily, sort the list view by the **Session Start** column before you begin session management tasks.
- You can use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.




- To display only sessions that meet certain criteria, click the **Filter** tab. For more information, see [“Filtering the List of Active Sessions”](#).
- To perform actions on multiple sessions, such as closing open or stale sessions or disconnecting or reauthorizing active sessions, click the **Manage Multiple** tab. For more information, see [“Managing Multiple Active Sessions”](#).
- To send SMS notifications to visitors, click the **SMS** tab. For more information, see [“Sending Multiple SMS Alerts”](#).
- To include additional fields in the Active Sessions list, or delete fields from it, click the **More Options** tab. The Customize View Fields page opens. For more information, see [“Editing Forms”](#).


Session States

A session may be in one of three possible states:

-  **Active**—An active session is one for which the RADIUS server has received an accounting start message and has not received a stop message, which indicates that service is being provided by a NAS on behalf of an authorized client.

While a session is in progress, the NAS sends interim accounting update messages to the RADIUS server. This maintains up-to-date traffic statistics and keeps the session active. The frequency of the accounting update messages is configurable in the RADIUS server.
-  **Stale**—If an accounting stop message is never sent for a session—for example, if the visitor does not log out—that session will remain open. After 24 hours without an accounting update indicating session traffic, the session is considered ‘stale’ and is not counted towards the active sessions limit for a visitor account. To ensure that accounting statistics are correct, you should check the list for stale sessions and close them.



For information on configuring RADIUS server options, see “[Server Configuration](#)” in the RADIUS Services chapter. For details of the options that can be configured, including accounting update intervals and elapsed time before a session is considered stale, see “[RADIUS Server Options](#)” in the Reference chapter.

-  **Closed**—A session ends when the visitor logs out or if the session is disconnected. When a session is explicitly ended in either of these ways, the NAS sends an accounting stop message to the RADIUS server. This closes the session. No further accounting updates are possible for a closed session.

RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization

Dynamic authorization describes the ability to make changes to a visitor account’s session while it is in progress. This includes disconnecting a session, or updating some aspect of the authorization for the session.

The Active Sessions page provides two dynamic authorization capabilities that apply to currently active sessions:

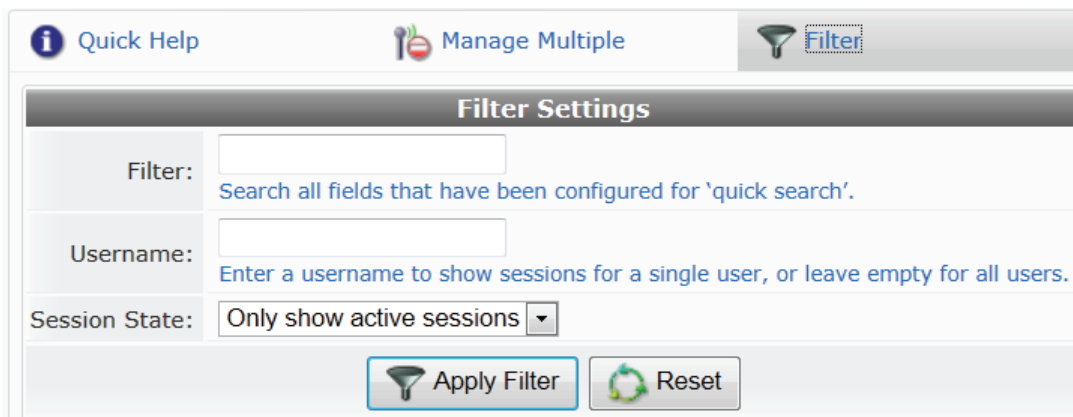
-  **Disconnect** causes a Disconnect-Request message to be sent to the NAS for an active session, requesting that the NAS terminate the session immediately. The NAS should respond with a Disconnect-ACK message if the session was terminated or Disconnect-NAK if the session was not terminated.
-  **Reauthorize** causes a Disconnect-Request message to be sent to the NAS for an active session. This message will contain a Service-Type attribute with the value ‘Authorize Only’. The NAS should respond with a Disconnect-NAK message, and should then reauthorize the session by sending an Access-Request message to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server’s response will contain the current authorization details for the visitor account, which will then update the corresponding properties in the NAS session.


If the NAS does not support RFC 3576, attempts to perform dynamic authorization will time out and result in a ‘No response from NAS’ error message.

Refer to [RFC 3576](#) for more details about dynamic authorization extensions to the RADIUS protocol.

Filtering the List of Active Sessions

You can use the  **Filter** tab to narrow the search parameters and quickly find all matching sessions:




Enter a username or IP address in the **Filter** field. Additional fields can be included in the search if the “Include values when performing a quick search” option was selected for the field within the view. To control this option, use the **Choose Columns** command link on the  **More Options** tab.



You may enter a simple substring to match a portion of the username or any other fields that are configured for search, and you can include the following operators:

Table 20 Operators supported in filters

| Operator | Meaning | Additional Information |
|----------|---------------------------------------|--|
| = | is equal to | You may search for multiple values when using the equality (=) or inequality !=) operators. To specify multiple values, list them separated by the pipe character ().

For example, specifying the filter "role_id=2 3, custom_field=Value" restricts the accounts displayed to those with role IDs 2 and 3 (Guest and Employee), and with the field named "custom_field" set to "Value". |
| != | is not equal to | |
| > | is greater than | |
| >= | is greater than or equal to | |
| < | is less than | |
| <= | is less than or equal to | |
| ~ | matches the regular expression | |
| !~ | does not match the regular expression | |

To restore the default view, click the  **Clear Filter** link.

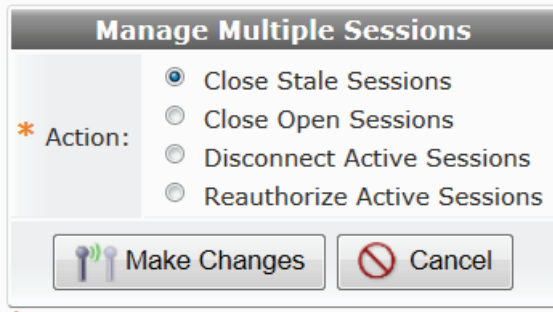
Click the  **Apply Filter** button to save your changes and update the view, or click the  **Reset** button to remove the filter and return to the default view.

Managing Multiple Active Sessions

To close multiple stale or open sessions, or disconnect or reauthorize multiple sessions, click the  **Manage Multiple** tab. the Manage Multiple Sessions form opens.

Closing All Stale Sessions Immediately

By default, the Close Stale Sessions option is selected when the Manage Multiple Sessions form opens. This option allows you to quickly close all stale sessions with one click. Stale sessions should be closed to keep accounting statistics accurate.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Manage Multiple Sessions". On the left, there is a label "* Action:". To its right are four radio button options: "Close Stale Sessions" (which is selected), "Close Open Sessions", "Disconnect Active Sessions", and "Reauthorize Active Sessions". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Make Changes" (with a green checkmark icon) and "Cancel" (with a red X icon).

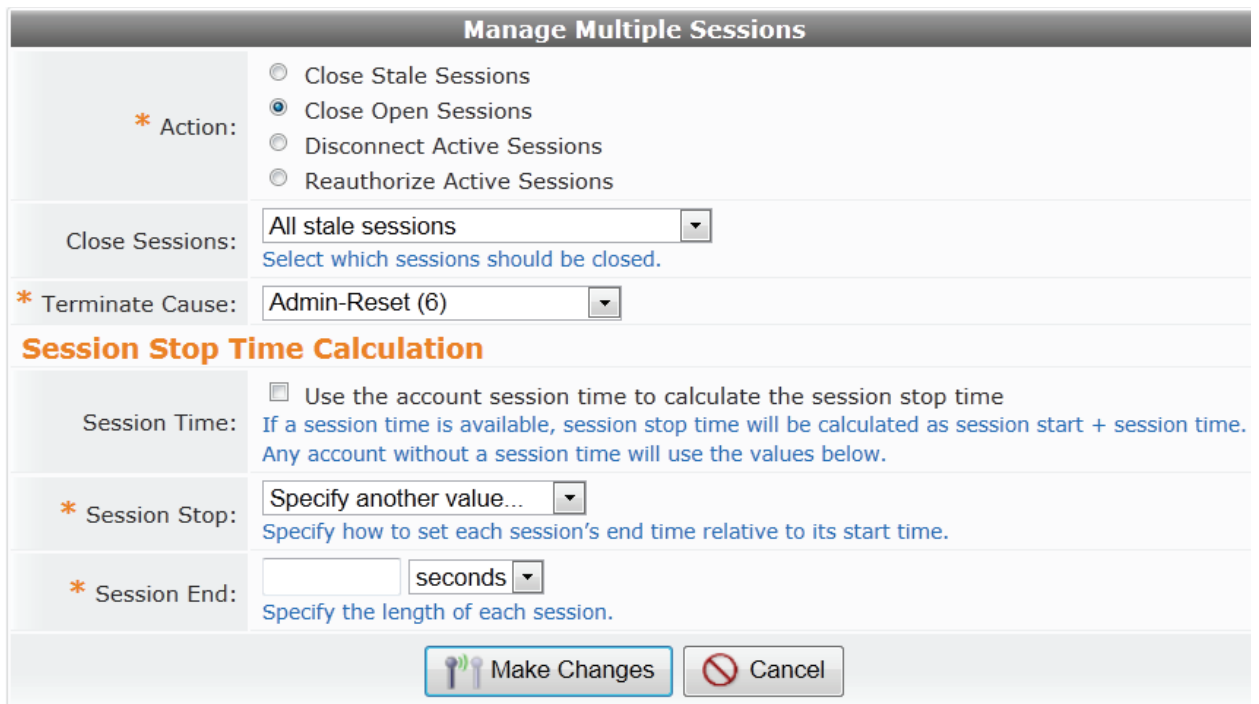
- To close all stale sessions, leave the **Close Stale Sessions** radio button marked and click **Make Changes**. All stale sessions are closed and are removed from the Active Sessions list.

A session is considered stale after 24 hours without an accounting update indicating session traffic. This is the default value, and can be configured for the RADIUS server.

Closing All Stale Sessions and Specifying a Duration

You can choose to close all stale sessions at a specified time, and include the reason for closing them.

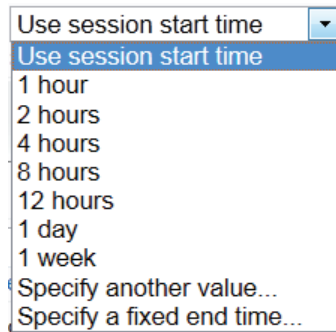
1. To close all stale sessions at a certain time, mark the **Close Open Sessions** radio button on the Manage Multiple Sessions form. The form expands to include rows for calculating the stop time.



The image shows the "Manage Multiple Sessions" form expanded. It includes the same radio button options as the previous form, but with "Close Open Sessions" selected. Below the radio buttons are three new sections: "Close Sessions:" with a dropdown menu set to "All stale sessions" and a link "Select which sessions should be closed."; "* Terminate Cause:" with a dropdown menu set to "Admin-Reset (6)"; and a section titled "Session Stop Time Calculation" which contains a checkbox "Use the account session time to calculate the session stop time" (which is unchecked), a "Session Time:" label, a "Session Stop:" label with a dropdown menu set to "Specify another value...", and a "Session End:" label with a text input field and a dropdown menu set to "seconds". At the bottom are "Make Changes" and "Cancel" buttons.

2. In the **Close Sessions** drop-down list, leave the **All stale sessions** option selected.
3. In the **Terminate Cause** drop-down list, select the reason for closing the sessions.
4. (Optional) If you mark the **Session Time** check box, sessions with an elapsed session time available will be closed when you commit your changes on this form. The session's stop time will be calculated as the session start time plus the elapsed session time.

5. Use the **Session Stop** drop-down list to specify how the stop time will be calculated for each session.







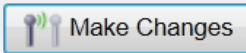



- If you choose **Use session start time**, the session will be closed when you commit your changes on this form.
 - To specify a range of time after a session's start time, choose one of the options for hours, day, or week. Sessions will be closed when that amount of time has elapsed after the start time. Since this setting is relative to start time, each session may be closed at a different time.
 - To specify a range of time that is not included in the list, select the **Specify another value** option. This adds the Session End row to the form, where you can set a time interval.
 - In the **Session End** row, enter a number value in the text box, and choose the time interval from the drop-down list—either seconds, minutes, hours, days, or weeks.
 - To set a specific date and time, choose **Specify a fixed end time** from the drop-down list. This adds the Session End row to the form, with a calendar option.
 - In the **Session End** row, click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the number s in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
6. When your entries on the form are complete, click **Make Changes**. The stale sessions are closed according to the criteria you specified.

Closing Specified Open Sessions

You can select open sessions within a time range to close, include the reason for closing them, and specify when to close them.

1. To close a selection of open sessions, mark the **Close Open Sessions** radio button on the Manage Multiple Sessions form. The form expands to include rows for calculating the stop time.
2. In the **Close Sessions** row, choose **Select open sessions by time range** from the drop-down list. The form expands to also include rows for selecting the range of open sessions.

| Manage Multiple Sessions | |
|---|---|
| * Action: | <input type="radio"/> Close Stale Sessions
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Close Open Sessions
<input type="radio"/> Disconnect Active Sessions
<input type="radio"/> Reauthorize Active Sessions |
| Close Sessions: | Select open sessions by time range... 
Select which sessions should be closed. |
| Start Time: | <input type="text"/> 
The selected action will apply to sessions that started after this point.
Leave blank to use the earliest available session start time. |
| End Time: | <input type="text"/> 
The selected action will apply to sessions that started before this point.
Leave blank to use the current time. |
| * Terminate Cause: | User-Request (1)  |
| Session Stop Time Calculation | |
| Session Time: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the account session time to calculate the session stop time
If a session time is available, session stop time will be calculated as session start + session time.
Any account without a session time will use the values below. |
| * Session Stop: | Specify another value... 
Specify how to set each session's end time relative to its start time. |
| * Session End: | <input type="text"/> seconds 
Specify the length of each session. |
| <div>   </div> | |

- Use the **Start Time** row to indicate the beginning of the time range for selecting sessions. To specify a time for the beginning of the range, click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
 - If this field is left empty, the earliest available session start time is used.
 - If you leave both the Start Time and End Time fields empty, all open sessions are selected.
- Use the **End Time** row to indicate the end of the time range for selecting sessions. To use the current time, leave this field blank. To specify a time for the end of the range, click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
 - If this End Time field is specified and the Start Time field is left empty, all sessions that started before the specified end time are selected.
 - If this End Time field and the Start Time field are both specified, all sessions that started between the start time and end time are selected.
- In the **Terminate Cause** drop-down list, select the reason for closing the sessions.
- (Optional) If you mark the Session Time check box, sessions with an elapsed session time available will be closed when you commit your changes on this form. The session's stop time will be calculated as the session start time plus the elapsed session time.
- Use the **Session Stop** drop-down list to specify how the stop time will be calculated for each session.

- If you choose **Use session start time**, the session will be closed when you commit your changes on this form.
 - To specify a range of time after a session's start time, choose one of the options for hours, day, or week. Sessions will be closed when that amount of time has elapsed after the start time. Because this setting is relative to start time, each session may be closed at a different time.
 - To specify a range of time that is not included in the list, select the **Specify another value** option. This adds the Session End row to the form, where you can set a time interval.
 - In the **Session End** row, enter a number value in the text box, and choose the time interval from the drop-down list—either seconds, minutes, hours, days, or weeks.
 - To set a specific date and time for closing that will apply to all selected sessions, choose **Specify a fixed end time** from the drop-down list. This adds the Session End row to the form, with a calendar option.
 - In the **Session End** row, click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
8. When your entries on the form are complete, click **Make Changes**. The selected sessions are closed according to the criteria you specified.

Disconnecting or Reauthorizing Active Sessions

If the NAS equipment has RFC 3576 support, you can disconnect or dynamically reauthorize active sessions.

1. On the Manage Multiple Sessions form, to disconnect sessions, mark the **Disconnect Active Sessions** radio button. To reauthorize sessions, mark the **Reauthorize Active Sessions** radio button. The form expands to include rows for specifying the time range of sessions to select.

2. Use the **Start Time** row to indicate the beginning of the time range for selecting sessions. To specify a time for the beginning of the range, click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
 - If this field is left empty, the earliest available session start time is used.
 - If you leave both the Start Time and End Time fields empty, all open sessions are selected.
3. Use the **End Time** row to indicate the end of the time range for selecting sessions. To use the current time, leave this field blank. To specify a time for the end of the range, click the button to open the calendar picker. In the calendar, use the arrows to select the year and month, click the numbers in the **Time** fields to increment the hours and minutes, then click a day to select the date.
 - If this End Time field is specified and the Start Time field is left empty, all sessions that started before the specified end time are selected.
 - If this End Time field and the Start Time field are both specified, all sessions that started between the start time and end time are selected.
4. When your entries on the form are complete, click **Make Changes**.
 - If you selected Disconnect Active Sessions as the action, the selected sessions are immediately terminated.
 - If you selected Reauthorize Active Sessions as the action, the selected active sessions are dynamically reauthorized and corresponding session properties are updated.

Sending Multiple SMS Alerts

The SMS tab on the Active Sessions page lets you send an SMS alert message to all active sessions that have a valid phone number. An SMS alert during an active session can be used to send a group of visitors information you might want them to have immediately—for example, a special offer that will only be available for an hour, a change in a meeting’s schedule or location, or a public safety announcement.

1. To create an SMS message, click the **SMS** tab on the Active Sessions page. The Send SMS Notification form opens.

The screenshot shows the 'Send SMS Notification' form within the Amigopod interface. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Quick Help' (with an information icon), 'Manage Multiple' (with a mobile phone icon), and 'Filter' (with a funnel icon). The main form area has a title bar 'Send SMS Notification'. Below this, there is a large text input field for the message. To the left of the input field is a label '* Message:'. To the right of the input field, it says '160 characters left'. Below the input field, there is a blue link that says 'Enter the message to send (maximum 160 characters)'. Below the input field and the link is a 'Send' button with a mobile phone icon. Below the 'Send' button, there is a label '* required field'. At the bottom of the form, there is a 'Filter:' label followed by a text input field. Below the 'Filter:' input field, there is a blue link that says 'Search all fields that have been configured for 'quick search''. At the very bottom, there is a 'Showing:' label followed by the text 'Active sessions only.'

2. Use the filter to specify the group of addresses that should receive the message. See [Filtering the List of Active Sessions](#). Only accounts with valid phone numbers can be sent SMS alerts.

3. Enter the message in the **Message** text box. Messages may contain up to 160 characters.
4. Click **Send**.



SMS Services

With SMS Services, you can configure the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance to send SMS messages to guests. You can use SMS to send a customized guest account receipt to your guest's mobile phone.

You are also able to use SMS Services to send an SMS from your Web browser.

To use the SMS features of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance, you must have the SMS Services plugin installed.




Configuring SMS Gateways




You can configure the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance to send SMS messages using the **Manage SMS Gateways** link on the **Administrator > SMS Services** page.



Manage SMS Gateways


Create and manage the SMS gateways used for text messaging services.

The **SMS Gateways** window displays the name and available credits for any currently defined SMS gateways. To create a new SMS gateway, click the  **Create new SMS gateway** link to display the **SMS Service Configuration** form.

| SMS Gateway Configuration | |
|---|--|
| * SMS Gateway: |  Amigopod SMS Service
Select the SMS gateway you have service with. |
| Service Settings | |
| Display Name: | <input type="text"/>
The name for this service handler. This will be displayed to operators using the system. |
| * Service Username: | <input type="text"/>
Your authorization username for the SMS service provider. |
| * Service Password: | <input type="password"/>
Your authorization password for the SMS service provider. |
| Confirm Password: | <input type="password"/>
Your authorization password for the SMS service provider. |
| Mobile Number Settings | |
| Country Code: | <input type="text"/>
The default country code to use for mobile telephone numbers that start with the national prefix. |
| Default Length: | <input type="text"/>
Most SMS providers require the number sent with the country code.
If your country has a default length, enter it here and the country code above will be automatically added where necessary.
For example, North American numbers have a default length of 10, and country code 1. |
| National Prefix: | <input type="text" value="0"/>
Optional national dialing prefix to recognize. |
| Connection Settings | |
| * Connect Timeout: | <input type="text" value="15"/>
The connection timeout for the SMS service, in seconds. |
| * HTTP Timeout: | <input type="text" value="60"/>
The timeout for the HTTP transfer to complete, in seconds. |
| Debug | |
| Enable Debug: | <input type="checkbox"/> Log detailed information to the application log
If selected, debug messages will be generated for each stage of the HTTP transaction for the service provider. |
| Test SMS Settings | |
| Send a test SMS message. | |
| * Message: | <div> <input type="text"/> <div>160 characters left</div> </div> Enter the message to send (maximum 160 characters). |
| * Recipient: | <input type="text"/>
Enter the mobile telephone number of the recipient in international format. |
| <div>  Send Test Message  Save and Close </div> | |

* required field

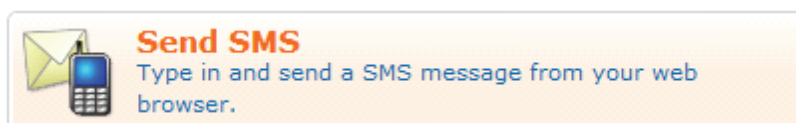
If your country uses a national dialing prefix such as “0”, you may enter this on the form. When sending an SMS to a number that starts with the national dialing prefix, the prefix is removed and replaced with the country code instead.

Click the  **Save Changes** button when you have completed the form. The new configuration settings will take effect immediately.



Sending an SMS

You are able to send an SMS, if the system has been configured to allow this, by clicking the **Send SMS** command link on the **Administrator > SMS Services** page.



The New SMS Message form appears



Complete the form by typing in the SMS message and entering the mobile phone number that you are sending the SMS to. If multiple services are available, you may also choose the service to use when sending the message.



The SMS is limited to a maximum length of 160 characters. The number of remaining characters is displayed on this form.

Click the  **Send Message** button to send the SMS.

About SMS Credits

Each SMS message sent consumes one credit.

To determine the number of remaining SMS credits, navigate to the **Administrator > SMS Gateways** window. The **Credits Available** field indicates the number of remaining SMS credits for your account. This value is determined once the first message has been sent, and is updated after sending each message.

When credits are running low, a warning message is emailed to the administrator group. The email address is determined by looking up all local operators with the special IT Administrators operator profile, and using any configured email address for those operators.

Up to three messages will be sent:

- A low-credit warning is sent once the “Credits Available” value reaches the warning threshold (the default value is 50).
- A second low-credit warning is sent once the “Credits Available” value reaches half the warning threshold.
- A final message is sent once the “Credits Available” value reaches zero.



To adjust the warning threshold, set the Credit Warning value in the configuration for the SMS Services Plugin.



About SMS Guest Account Receipts

You can send SMS receipts for guest accounts that are created using either sponsored guest access or self-provisioned guest access. This is convenient in situations where the visitor may not be physically present to receive a printed receipt.

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance may be configured to automatically send SMS receipts to visitors, or to send receipts only on demand.

To manually send an SMS receipt, navigate to the **Guests > List Accounts** window, select the guest to which you want to send a receipt, then click the  **Send SMS receipt** link displayed on the guest account receipt page.

When using guest self-registration, SMS Delivery options are available for the receipt page actions; **See “SMS Delivery of Receipts”** in this chapter for full details.



SMS Receipt Options

The SMS Services plugin configuration allows you to configure options related to SMS receipts. These settings can be viewed and modified using the Plugin Manager.

Figure 29 Configure SMS Services Plugin

Configure SMS Services Plugin 3.5.0

Service Provider:

Amigopod SMS

The default SMS gateway to use when sending SMS messages.

Receipt Options

Select options for the SMS receipt.

SMS Receipt:

SMS Receipt

The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt.

Fields

Select the visitor account fields related to the SMS receipt.

Phone Number Field:

visitor_phone

The field containing the visitor's phone number.

Auto-Send Field:

visitor_phone

The field which, if it contains a non-empty string or non-zero value, will cause an account receipt SMS to be automatically sent upon creation of a visitor account.

* Credit Warning:

50

When the number of available credits reaches this threshold, a warning message is sent to the system administrator.

* Advanced Gateways:

☒ Allow advanced SMS handlers

Select this option to create more types of SMS gateways and define custom SMS gateways.

* SMS via SMTP:

☒ Enable management of SMTP Carrier List

Select this option to enable support for sending SMS messages via SMTP (e-mail).

Phone Number Normalization

Options for the NwaNormalizePhoneNumber conversion function.

Default Number Format:

Use the visitor's value

Optionally force the addition or removal of a country code.

Logout Warnings

Configure the options used to send an alert when a session is about to be logged out.
See Customization > Guest Manager: Session Warning for timing configuration.

Enable:

☒ Enable warnings

If checked, sessions will be warned prior to being logged out.

* Message:

Your internet session is set to expire
{\$. _session.next_timeout|nwdateformat:"iso-8601t"}

Insert content item...

The alert message.
The logout time itself is available as:
{\$. _session.next_timeout|nwdateformat:"iso-8601t"}.

Save Configuration

SMS Receipt – Select the print template to be used when an SMS receipt is created. The print template used for the receipt must be in plain text format.

- **Phone Number Field** – Select which guest account field contains the guest's mobile telephone number. This field is used to determine the SMS recipient address.

- **Auto-Send Field** – Select a guest account field which, if set to a non-empty string or non-zero value, will trigger an automatic SMS when the guest account is created or updated. The **auto-send** field can be used to create an “opt-in” facility for guests. Use a check box for the **auto_send_sms** field and add it to the **create_user** form, or a guest self-registration instance, and SMS messages will be sent to the specified phone number only if the check box has been selected.
- **Credit Warning** – When SMS credits get below this threshold, the system will send a warning to the system administrator.
- **Advanced Gateways** – Select this option to configure SMS gateways from multiple SMS providers. Amigopod SMS services support Amigopod SMS USA, Amigopod SMS Worldwide, AQL, Sirocco, Tempos 21 and Upside Wireless SMS gateways.
- **SMS via SMTP** – Select this option to allow visitor account receipt messages to be sent in an email using the defined SMTP server.
- **Phone Number Normalization** – The phone number normalization process translates phone strings that are entered in various formats into a single standard format. Click this drop-down list and select one of the following options:
 - **Use the visitors value:** When you select this option, the SMS gateway will always send the SMS message using the phone number and country code entered by the visitor.
 - **Always include the country code:** When you select this option, the SMS gateway will always send the SMS message using the global country code and default phone number length specified in the **Default Country Code** and **Default Phone Length** fields. For example, consider an Australian mobile phone number with a default number length of 9 plus a leading zero, and a country code of 61. If you selected the **Always include the country code** option, the Australian mobile number *0412345678* would normalize to *+61412345678* in the internationalized format.
 - **Never include the country code:** When you select this option, Amigopod will remove any country code specified by the visitor before sending SMS message.
- **Logout Warnings** – Check **Enable warnings** if you to send an alert sent when the session is about to be logged out. Enter the exact text that you want to appear as the alert. You can set the time for warnings using the Guest Manager customization page.

Customize SMS Receipt

Navigate to **Customization > SMS Receipts** to configure SMS receipt options. These fields are described for the SMS plugin configuration page. Use the SMS receipt page for further customization.

Figure 30 *Customize SMS Receipt page*

Customize SMS Receipt

Receipt Options

Select options for the SMS receipt.

SMS Receipt:

SMS Receipt

The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt.

Fields

Select the visitor account fields related to the SMS receipt.

Phone Number Field:

visitor_phone

The field containing the visitor's phone number.

Auto-Send Field:

visitor_phone

The field which, if it contains a non-empty string or non-zero value, will cause an account receipt SMS to be automatically sent upon creation of a visitor account.

Logout Warnings

Configure the options used to send an alert when a session is about to be logged out. See Customization > Guest Manager: Session Warning for timing configuration.

Enable:

☒

Enable warnings

If checked, sessions will be warned prior to being logged out.

Message:

*

Your internet session is set to expire
{\$. _session.next_timeout|nwdateformat:"iso-8601t"}

Insert content item...

The alert message.
The logout time itself is available as:
{\$. _session.next_timeout|nwdateformat:"iso-8601t"}.

Save Configuration

SMS Receipt Fields

The behavior of SMS receipt operations can be customized with certain guest account fields. You can override global settings by setting these fields.

- **sms_enabled** – This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an SMS receipt. If unset, the default value is true.
- **sms_handler_id** – This field specifies the handler ID for the SMS service provider. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used.
- **sms_template_id** – This field specifies the print template ID for the SMS receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used.
- **sms_phone_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor's phone number. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used.
- **sms_auto_send_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. Additionally, the special

Amigopod 3.7 | Deployment Guide

Guest Management | 233

values “_Disabled” and “_Enabled” may be used to never send an SMS or always send an SMS, respectively.

- **sms_warn_before_message** – This field overrides the logout warning message. If blank or unset, the default value from the Customize SMS Receipt page is used.

The logic used to send an SMS receipt is:

- If SMS receipts are disabled, take no action.
- Otherwise, check the auto-send field.
 - If it is “_Disabled” then no receipt is sent.
 - If it is “_Enabled” then continue processing.
 - If it is any other value, assume the **auto-send** field is the name of another guest account field. Check the value of that field, and if it is zero or the empty string then no receipt is sent.
- Determine the phone number – if the **phone number** field is set and the value of this field is at least 7 characters in length, then use the value of this field as the phone number. Otherwise, if the value of the **auto-send** field is at least 7 characters in length, then use the value of this field as the phone number.
- If the phone number is at least 7 characters long, generate a receipt using the specified plain-text print template and send it to the specified phone number.



SMTP Services

With SMTP Services, you can configure the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance to send customized guest account receipts to visitors and sponsors by email.

Email receipts may be sent in plain text or HTML format.

As of SMTP Services 2.1.0, you may also send email receipts using any of the installed skins to provide a look and feel.

To use the email sending features of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance, you must have the SMTP Services plugin installed.



Configuring SMTP Services

You can configure the default settings used when generating an email receipt by clicking the **Customize Email Receipt** command link, which is available on the Customize Guest Manager page.



Email Receipt

Configure the settings to use when emailing visitor account receipts.

See “[Email Receipt Options](#)” in this chapter for details about the email receipt options.

See “[SMTP Configuration](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter for details about configuring the SMTP server settings used to deliver outbound email messages.



About Email Receipts

You can send email receipts for guest accounts that are created using either sponsored guest access or self-provisioned guest access. This is convenient in situations where the visitor may not be physically present to receive a printed receipt.

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance may be configured to automatically send email receipts to visitors, or to send receipts only on demand.

Email receipts may be sent manually by clicking the  **Send email receipt** link displayed on the guest account receipt page.

When using guest self-registration, the Email Delivery options available for the receipt page actions allow you to specify the email subject line, the print template and email format, and other fields relevant to email delivery.

| | |
|------------------|--|
| Enabled: | <input type="text" value="Always auto-send guest receipts by email"/> |
| * Email Field: | <input type="text" value="(Use Default: email)"/>
<small>The field containing the visitor account's email address.</small> |
| Subject Line: | <input type="text" value="Visitor account receipt for { \$email }"/>
<small>Template specifying the subject line for emailed visitor account receipts.</small> |
| * Email Receipt: | <input type="text" value="(Use Default: GuestManager Receipt)"/>
<small>The plain text or HTML print template to use when generating an email receipt.</small> |
| * Email Skin: | <input type="text" value="(Use Default: No skin - HTML only)"/>
<small>The format in which to send email receipts.</small> |
| * Send Copies: | <input type="text" value="Use 'Bcc:' if sending to a visitor"/>
<small>Specify when to send visitor account receipts to the recipients in the Copies To list.</small> |
| Copies To: | <input type="text"/>
<small>An optional list of email addresses to which copies of visitor account receipts will be sent.</small> |

These options under Enabled are available to control email delivery:

- **Disable sending guest receipts by email** – Email receipts are never sent for a guest registration.
- **Always auto-send guest receipts by email** – An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent to the visitor's email address.
- **Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set** – If the **Auto-Send** Field is set to a non-empty string or a non-zero value, an email receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's email address. The **auto-send** field can be used to create an “opt-in” facility for guests. Use a check box for the **auto_send_sms** field and add it to the **create_user** form, or a guest self-registration instance, and SMS messages will be sent to the specified phone number only if the check box has been selected.
- **Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email** – A link is displayed on the receipt page; if the visitor clicks this link, an email receipt will be generated and sent to the visitor's email address.
- **Send an email to a list of fixed addresses** – An email receipt is always generated using the selected options, and will be sent only to the list of email addresses specified in the “Copies To” field.

Email Receipt Options

The **Customize Email Receipt** form may be used to set default options for visitor account email receipts.

Figure 31 *Customize Email Receipt page*

Customize Email Receipt

Receipt Options
Select options for the email receipt.

Subject Line: Visitor account receipt for {Semail}
Template specifying the subject line for visitor account receipts sent by email.

* Email Receipt: GuestManager Receipt
The plain text or HTML print template to use when generating an email receipt.

* Skin: No skin – HTML only
The format in which to send email receipts.

Copies To:
An optional list of email addresses to which copies of visitor account receipts will be sent.

* Send Copies: Use 'Bcc:' if sending to a visitor
Specify when to send visitor account receipts to the recipients in the Copies To list.

Reply-To: ☐ Allow the reply-to address to be overridden per operator
If checked, the reply-to address will be overridden by the sponsor_email field of a user, or the admin's email. Leave unchecked to use the global from address.

Fields
Select the visitor account fields related to the email receipt.

* Email Field: email
The field containing the visitor account's email address.

* Auto-Send Field: auto_send_smtp
The field which, if it contains a non-empty string or non-zero value, will cause an account receipt email to be automatically sent upon creation of a visitor account.

The Subject line may contain template code, including references to guest account fields. The default value, Visitor account receipt for {Semail}, uses the value of the **email** field. See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter for more information on template syntax.

The Skin drop-down list allows you to specify a skin to be used to provide the basic appearance of the email. You may select from one of the installed skins, or use one of these special options:

- **No skin – Plain text only** – A skin is not used, and the email will be sent in plain text format. Use this option to remove all formatting from the email.
- **No skin – HTML only** – A skin is not used, but the email will be sent in HTML format. Use this option to provide a basic level of formatting in the email.
- **No skin – Native receipt format** – A skin is not used. The email will be sent in either plain text or HTML format, depending on the type of print template that was selected.
- **Use the default skin** – The skin currently marked as the default skin is used.

When sending an email message using HTML formatting, the images and other resources required to display the page will be included in the message.

Copies of the generated email receipts may be sent to one or more additional email addresses, which can be specified in the Copies To list. The Send Copies drop-down list specifies how these copies are sent:

- **Do not send copies** – The Copies To list is ignored and email is not copied.
- **Always send using ‘cc:’** – The Copies To list is always sent a copy of any guest account receipt (even if no guest account email address is available).
- **Always send using ‘bcc:’** – The Copies To list is always sent a blind copy of any guest account receipt (even if no guest account email address is available).
- **Use ‘cc:’ if sending to a visitor** – If a guest account email address is available, the email addresses in the Copies To list will be copied.
- **Use ‘bcc:’ if sending to a visitor** – If a guest account email address is available, the email addresses in the Copies To list will be blind copied.

Figure 32 *Customize Email Receipt page—continued*

Logout Warnings

Configure the options used to send an alert when a session is about to be logged out.
See [Customization > Guest Manager: Session Warning](#) for timing configuration.

| | |
|------------------|--|
| Enable: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable warnings
If checked, sessions will be warned prior to being logged out. |
| Subject Line: | <input type="text" value="Your internet session is about to expire"/>
Template specifying the subject line for email warnings. |
| * Email Receipt: | <input type="text" value="Session Expiration Warning"/>
The plain text or HTML print template to use when generating an email warning. |
| * Skin: | <input type="text" value="No skin – HTML only"/>
The format in which to send email warnings. |
| Copies To: | <input type="text"/>
An optional list of email addresses to which copies of warnings will be sent. |
| * Send Copies: | <input type="text" value="Always send using 'cc:'"/>
Specify when to send warnings to the recipients in the Copies To list. |
| Reply-To: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow the reply-to address to be overridden per operator
If checked, the reply-to address will be overridden by the sponsor_email field of a user, or the admin's email.
Leave unchecked to use the global from address. |
| Override From: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override the from address instead of using reply-to
If checked, the from address will be overridden in lieu of the reply-to value above.
Note, this feature may require configuration on your mail server to allow the override. |

Save Configuration

Check **Enable warnings** if you to send an alert sent when the session is about to be logged out. Enter the exact text that you want to appear as the alert in the **Subject Line** field. You can set the time for warnings using the Guest Manager customization page. See [“Guest Manager Customization”](#).

Check **Allow the reply-to address to be overridden per operator** if you want the reply-to address to be overridden by the sponsor_email field of the user or the admin’s email. If you check this field than the **Override the from address instead of using reply-to** check box displays. Check this if you want the from address to be overridden instead of the reply-to value. field may require configuration on your mail server to allow the override.

Click the **Save Changes** button when you have completed the form. The new configuration settings will take effect immediately.

SMTP Receipt Fields

The behavior of email receipt operations can be customized with certain guest account fields. You do this on a per user basis.

- **smtp_enabled** – This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an email receipt. If unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. The special values “_Auto” (Always auto-send guest receipts by email), “_AutoField” (Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set), “_Click” (Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email), and “_Cc” (Send an email to a list of fixed addresses) may also be used.
- **smtp_subject** – This field specifies the subject line for the email message. Template variables appearing in the value will be expanded. If the value is “default”, the default subject line from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_template_id** – This field specifies the print template ID to use for the email receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_receipt_format** – This field specifies the email format to use for the receipt. It may be one of “plaintext” (No skin – plain text only), “html_embedded” (No skin – HTML only), “receipt” (No skin – Native receipt format), “default” (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_email_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor’s email address. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special value “_None” indicates that the visitor should not be sent any email.
- **smtp_auto_send_field** – This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special values “_Disabled” and “_Enabled” may be used to never send email or always send email, respectively.
- **smtp_cc_list** – This field specifies a list of additional email addresses that will receive a copy of the visitor account receipt. If the value is “default”, the default carbon-copy list from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_cc_action** – This field specifies how to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of “never”, “always_cc”, “always_bcc”, “conditional_cc”, or “conditional_bcc”. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.

The logic used to send an email receipt is:

- If email receipts are disabled, take no action.
- Otherwise, check the auto-send field.
 - If it is “_Disabled” then no receipt is sent.
 - If it is “_Enabled” then continue processing.
 - If it is any other value, assume the **auto-send** field is the name of another guest account field. Check the value of that field, and if it is zero or the empty string then no receipt is sent.
- Determine the email recipients:
 - Address the email to the value specified by the **email** field in the visitor account. If the **email** field is “_None” then do not send an email directly to the visitor.
 - Depending on the value of the Send Copies setting, add the email addresses from the Copies To: list to the email’s “Cc:” or “Bcc:” list.
- If there are any “To:”, “Cc:” or “Bcc:” recipients, generate an email message using the specified print template and send it to the specified recipient list.
- **smtp_warn_before_subject** – This field overrides what is specified in the subject line under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the default subject line under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used.

- **smtp_warn_before_template_id** – This field overrides the print template ID specified under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the default template ID under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_warn_before_receipt_format** – This field overrides the email format under Logout Warnings to use for the receipt. It may be one of “plaintext” (No skin – plain text only), “html_embedded” (No skin – HTML only), “receipt” (No skin – Native receipt format), “default” (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value in the Email Field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_warn_before_cc_list** – This overrides the list of additional email addresses that receive a copy of the visitor account receipt under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the default carbon-copy list under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **smtp_warn_before_cc_action** – This field overrides how copies are sent as indicated under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of “never”, “always_cc”, “always_bcc”, “conditional_cc”, or “conditional_bcc”. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **warn_before_from_sponsor** – This field overrides the **Reply To** field (that is, the sponsor_email field of a user, or the admin's email) under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the **Reply To** field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used.
- **warn_before_from** – This field overrides the **Override From** field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the **Override From** field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used.



The Reporting Manager provides you with a set of tools to summarize the visitor accounts that have been created and analyze the accounting data collected by the RADIUS server. Through the predefined reports and the custom reports you can create using the report editor, you can get a complete picture of the network usage of your guests.

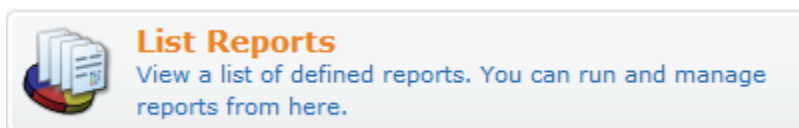
Accessing Reporting Manager

Use the **Reporting** command link on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance home page to access the reporting features.



Viewing Reports


Use this list view to run reports, view reports that have already been generated, and manage the report definitions.




There are twelve predefined reports.










- **Average link utilization** – This report calculates the average link utilization for all accounting traffic in the selected period.
- **Average session time per day** – This report calculates the average elapsed time for each session in the selected period.
- **Average traffic volume per session** – This report calculates the average amount of data traffic for each session in the selected time period.
- **Average traffic volume per user** – This report calculates the average traffic volume from accounting traffic per unique user per day.
- **Daily link utilization** – This report calculates the average daily link utilization for accounting traffic in the selected period.
- **Number of concurrent sessions** – This report shows the total number of concurrent sessions throughout a time interval, sampling every 5 minutes.

- **Number of concurrent sessions by role** – This report shows the number of concurrent sessions according to the user's role across a time interval.
- **Number of sessions per NAS** – This report shows the total number of sessions per NAS in the selected period.
- **Number of sessions per day** – This report shows the total number of sessions per day.
- **Number of users per day** – This report shows the number of distinct users per day.
- **Top 10 users by total traffic** – This report summarizes the total data volume of all users, and displays the top 10 users by total data sent and received.
- **Total data traffic per day** – This report shows how the total amount of sent and received data traffic for all sessions varies on a daily basis.

You can create new report definitions with the report editor by clicking the  **Create new report** link. See **“Resetting Report Definitions”** in this chapter for an overview of custom reports.


Click the  **More Options** tab to access functions for importing and exporting report definitions.



Running and Managing Reports

Click the predefined report that you want to run. This displays an action row containing links to the following commands:  **View HTML**,  **History**,  **Run Preview**,  **Run Default**,  **Run...**,  **Edit**,  **Delete** and  **Duplicate** and  **Permissions**.


The View HTML and History options are only available if the report has been run at least once.

Viewing the Most Recent Report

To view the most recently generated report, click the  **View HTML** link. This opens a window with the report's name, date generated and date range. A graph is displayed in your default graph style. The data for the graph is displayed below the graph in table format.

If you initially selected to run the report in a number of formats, you will also have these options listed—for example,  **View Text** and  **View CSV**.

Report History



Clicking the  **History** link opens the **Report History** form. This form allows you to select a previously run report to be viewed. If the report was originally run in a number of formats, you are able to select the format to view. If you only ran the report in one format, only that format is available.

Previewing the Report

To see a preview of the report, click the  **Run Preview** link. A progress window appears as the report is generated, and then the report will be displayed automatically. The Run Preview link is not available for reports that require user interaction.

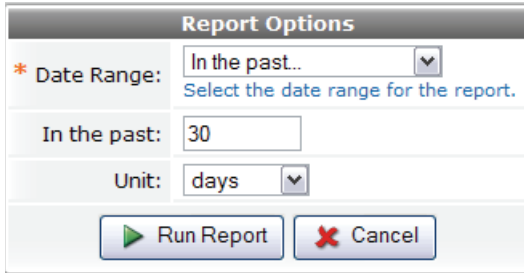
The report preview uses the default format and date range for the report, as displayed next to the report name in the list of reports. The output of the preview run is not stored in the report history, and the Last Run date will not be updated.

Run Default

Clicking the  **Run Default** runs the report using all defaults for both format and date range. A progress window appears as the report is generated, and then the report is displayed automatically. The Run Default link is not available for reports that require user interaction. To print the report, click the  **Print** icon in your Web browser.

Run



The  **Run** option allows you to change the date range of the report before it is run. Choose a time period for the report from the Date Range drop-down list.



The **Report Options** dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- * Date Range:** A dropdown menu set to "In the past..." with a link "Select the date range for the report."
- In the past:** A text input field containing the value "30".
- Unit:** A dropdown menu set to "days".
- At the bottom are two buttons: **Run Report** (with a green play icon) and **Cancel** (with a red X icon).

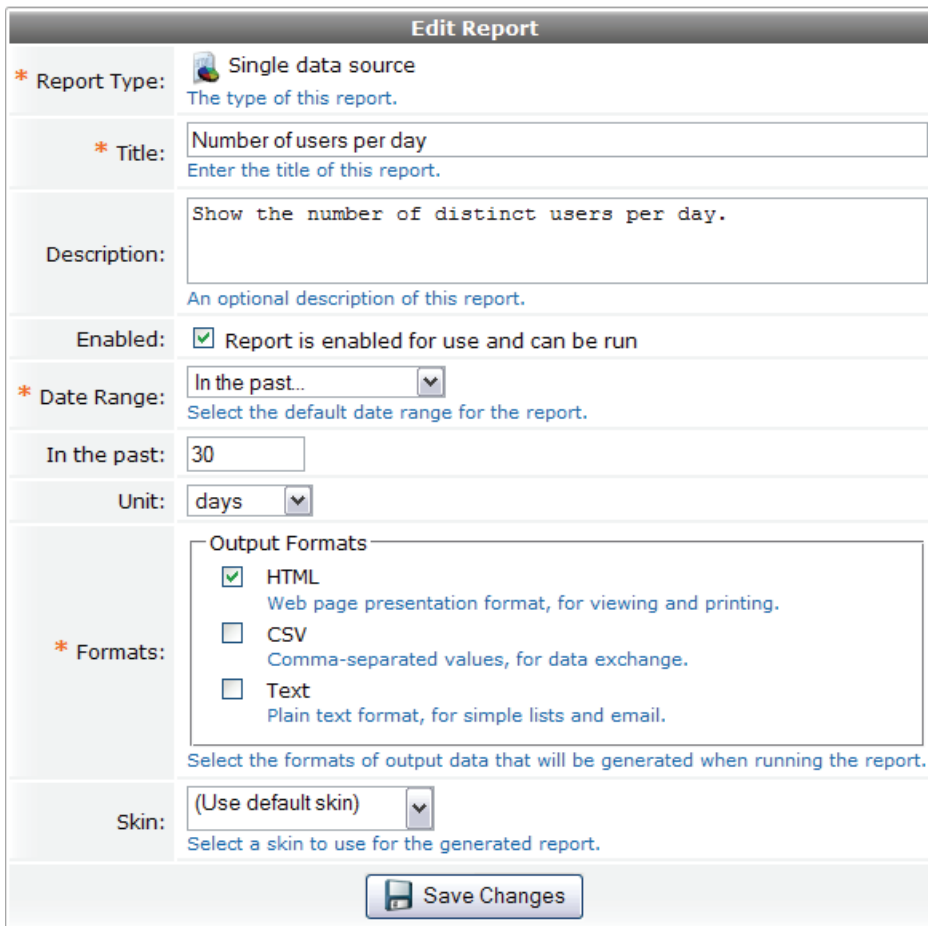
If the report definition includes any additional parameters that have a user interface, these will also be displayed as part of the **Report Options** form.

Click the  **Run Report** button to generate the report using the selected parameters. A progress window will appear as the report is generated, and then the report will be displayed automatically. To print the report, click the  **Print** icon in your Web browser.

Edit a report


You can edit any of the predefined reports. Clicking the  **Edit** link opens the Report Editor window. See “Components of the Report Editor” in this chapter for more details.

You can change the defaults for your report in the Report Editor window by selecting the **Report Type** link.




The **Edit Report** dialog box contains the following fields and controls:


- * Report Type:** A dropdown menu set to "Single data source" with a link "The type of this report."
- * Title:** A text input field containing "Number of users per day" with a link "Enter the title of this report."
- Description:** A text area containing "Show the number of distinct users per day." with a link "An optional description of this report."
- Enabled:** A checkbox labeled "Report is enabled for use and can be run" which is checked.
- * Date Range:** A dropdown menu set to "In the past..." with a link "Select the default date range for the report."
- In the past:** A text input field containing the value "30".
- Unit:** A dropdown menu set to "days".
- * Formats:** A section titled "Output Formats" containing three checkboxes:
 - ☒ **HTML**: Web page presentation format, for viewing and printing.
 - ☐ **CSV**: Comma-separated values, for data exchange.
 - ☐ **Text**: Plain text format, for simple lists and email.A link "Select the formats of output data that will be generated when running the report." is located below this section.
- Skin:** A dropdown menu set to "(Use default skin)" with a link "Select a skin to use for the generated report."
- At the bottom is a **Save Changes** button with a floppy disk icon.

The Report Type editor allows you to change the defaults for the Date Range and the Formats for the report you have selected. If you want to change the default for another report you must also edit that report. Click the  **Save Changes** button to have these changes become the new default.


Delete a Report

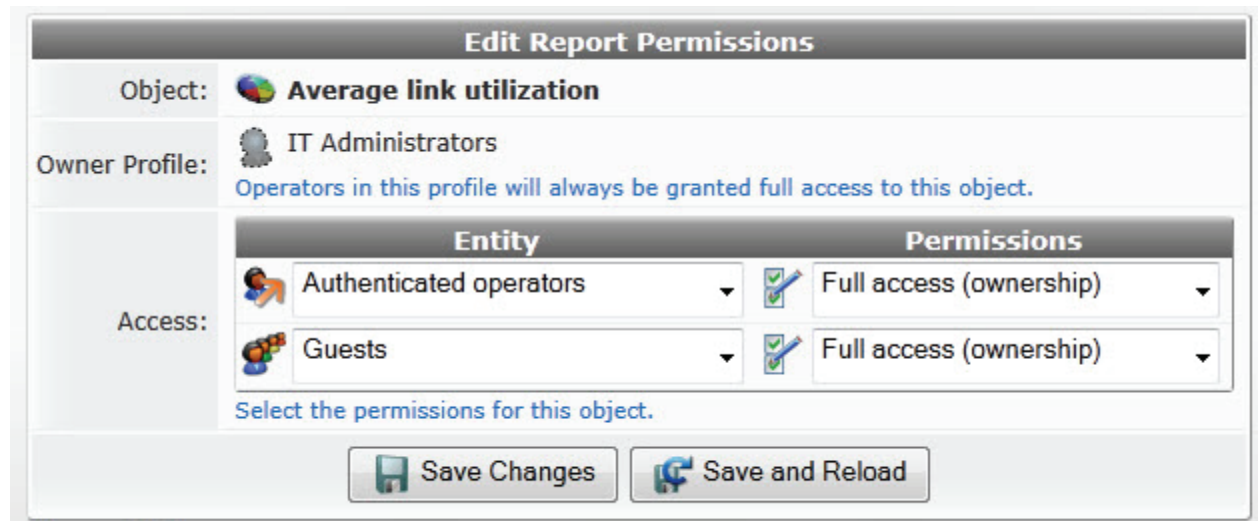
You can delete any predefined reports by selecting the report and clicking the  **Delete** link. You are asked to confirm the deletion. Once you delete a report, it is permanently deleted. Use this option with care.









Duplicate a Report

You are able to duplicate a report by clicking on the  **Duplicate** icon link. This is an easy way to start creating a new report that is similar to an existing report. See “[Report Created by Duplicating an Existing Report](#)” in the Reference chapter for an example.

Permissions



Use the  **Permissions** link to edit report premissions . You can change who can use, view, edit or delete the report. The Permissions link is only displayed if the current operator has the Object Permissions privilege. This privilege is located in the Amigopod Administrator group of privileges.







| Edit Report Permissions | | | |
|---|---|---|-------------------------|
| Object: |  Average link utilization | | |
| Owner Profile: |  IT Administrators
<small>Operators in this profile will always be granted full access to this object.</small> | | |
| Access: | Entity | | Permissions |
| |  Authenticated operators |  | Full access (ownership) |
| |  Guests |  | Full access (ownership) |
| <small>Select the permissions for this object.</small> | | | |
| <div> Save Changes  Save and Reload</div> | | | |

The permissions defined on this page apply to the report identified in the “Object” line.



The owner profile always has full access to the report.





To control access to this report by other entities, add or modify the entries in the “Access” list. To add an entry to the list, or remove an entry from the list, click one of the icons in the row. A  **Delete** icon and an  **Add** icon will then be displayed for that row.


Select one of the following entities in the Entity drop-down list:







-  **Operator Profiles** – a specific operator profile may be selected. The corresponding permissions apply to all operators with that operator profile.
-  Other Entities
 -  **Authenticated operators** – the permissions for all operators (other than the owner profile) may be set using this item. Permissions for an individual operator profile will take precedence over this item.
 -  **Guests** – the permissions for guests may be set using this item.


The permissions for the selected entity can be set using the Permissions drop-down list:







-  **No access** – the report is not visible on the list, and cannot be used, edited, duplicated, or deleted.
-  **Visible-only access** – the report is visible in the list. It can be viewed in HTML but cannot be edited


| ▲ Title | Format | Range | Last Ru |
|---|--------|------------------|----------------|
| Average link utilization
Calculate the average link utilization for all accounting traffic in the selected | HTML | The last 30 days | 2011-11-21 12: |
| w HTML  History  Run Preview  Run Default  Run... | | | |








-  **Read-only access** – the report is visible in the list and it may be viewed and duplicated. The report cannot be edited or deleted.


| ▲ Title | Format | Range | Last Ru |
|--|--------|------------------|----------------|
| Average link utilization
Calculate the average link utilization for all accounting traffic in the selected | HTML | The last 30 days | 2011-11-21 13: |
| w HTML  History  Run Preview  Run Default  Run...  View  Duplicate | | | |

-  **Update access** – the report is visible in the list and may be duplicated and edited. The report cannot be deleted and the permissions for the report cannot be modified.

| ▲ Title | Format | Range | Last Ru |
|--|--------|------------------|----------------|
| Average link utilization
Calculate the average link utilization for all accounting traffic in the selected | HTML | The last 30 days | 2011-11-22 08: |
| v HTML  History  Run Preview  Run Default  Run...  Edit  Duplicate | | | |

-  **Update and delete access** – the report is visible in the list, and may be edited or deleted. The permissions for the report cannot be modified.

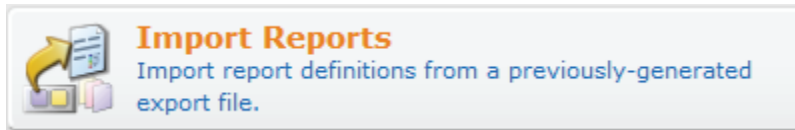
| ▲ Title | Format | Range | Last Ru |
|---|--------|------------------|----------------|
| Average link utilization
Calculate the average link utilization for all accounting traffic in the selected | HTML | The last 30 days | 2011-11-22 08: |
| v HTML  History  Run Preview  Run Default  Run...  Edit  Delete  Dupli | | | |

-  **Full access (ownership)** – the report is visible in the list, and may be edited or deleted. Permissions can be changed when you have Full Access, but this also requires that you have the **Administrator > Object Permissions** privilege set in your operator profile.

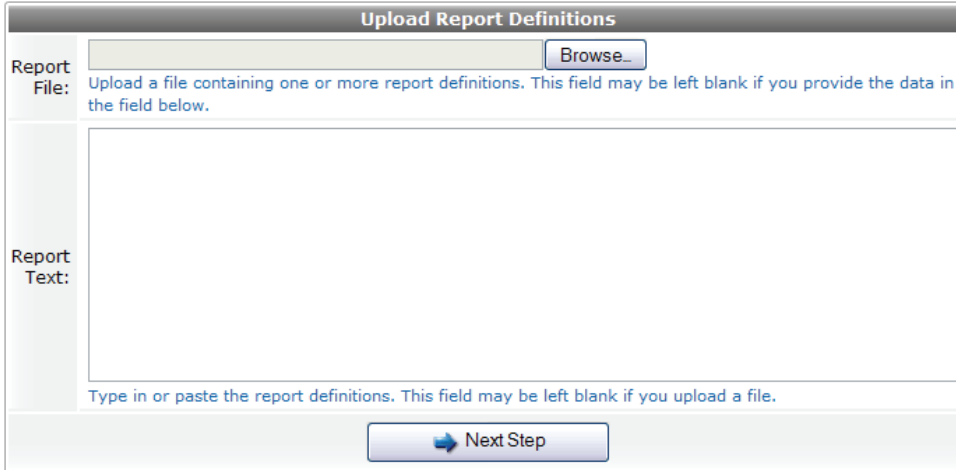
Importing report Definitions

Report definitions may be imported from a file that has been generated with the Export Reports command.

Click the  **More Options** tab at the top of the report list to access the Import Reports command link. (This link also appears on the **Reporting** start page.)





You may select a file to upload using your Web browser, or alternatively the report definition may be pasted into the text area provided.

A web form titled "Upload Report Definitions". It has two main sections: "Report File:" with a text input field and a "Browse..." button, and "Report Text:" with a large text area. Below the text area is a "Next Step" button with a blue arrow icon. Instructions are provided for both sections: "Upload a file containing one or more report definitions. This field may be left blank if you provide the data in the field below." and "Type in or paste the report definitions. This field may be left blank if you upload a file."


A report definition begins and ends with the lines

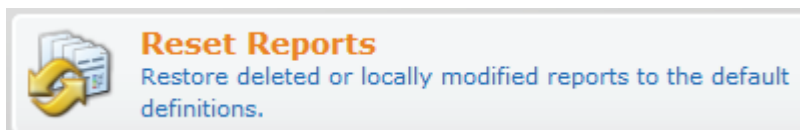
```
-----BEGIN REPORT DEFINITION-----  
-----END REPORT DEFINITION-----
```

Click the  **Next Step** button to proceed. A list of the available reports for import will be displayed. Use the check boxes to select the reports to import and click the  **Import Reports** button to create new reports. Importing a report that already exists will replace the existing report definition.


Resetting Report Definitions

Report definitions may be individually reset to the factory defaults. Use this option if you have modified a report and it is no longer functioning correctly, or if you have accidentally deleted a standard report.

Click the  **More Options** tab at the top of the report list to access the **Reset Reports** command link. (This link also appears on the **Reporting** start page.)



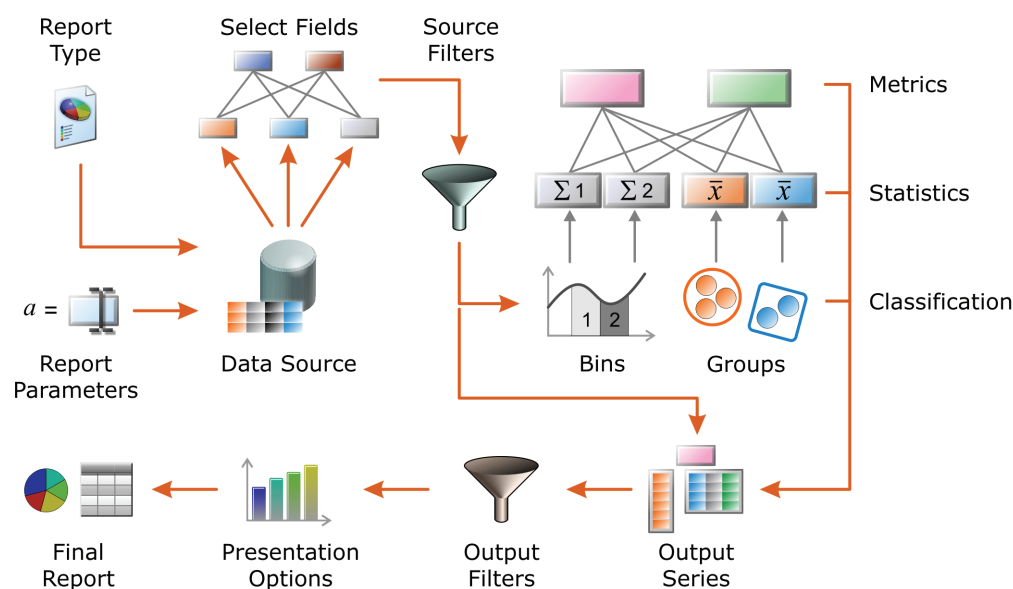
The set of default reports is displayed as a checklist, with each report shown in the list with an indicator if it has been deleted or modified from the default settings.

To restore the default settings for one or more reports, select the reports to reset and click the  **Reset Reports** button.

About Custom Reports

The Report Editor is used to build a custom report. The process used to generate a report is shown in the figure below. In this diagram, the arrows represent the flow of data, while the icons represent the processing stages that the data goes through.

Figure 33 Report generation process



Starting from the top left, and working clockwise:

- The **Report Type** (“[Report Type](#)”) specifies the basic properties for the report.
- **Report Parameters** (“[Report Parameters](#)” in this chapter) are used as an input to the report generation process, before any data is selected.
- Report data is taken from the **Data Source** (“[Data Source](#)” in this chapter), and by selecting fields of interest (“[Select Fields](#)” in this chapter). Some fields are used directly (“source fields”), while some fields are derived from the source fields (“derived fields”).
- One or more **Source Filters** (“[Source Filters](#)” in this chapter) is used to restrict which data is included in the report.
- In some reports, data is classified and grouped into **Bins** and **Groups** (“[Classification Groups](#)”). Using these classification groups allows for summary information to be calculated (“[Statistics and Metrics](#)” in this chapter).
- The result of the report is one or more **Output Series** (“[Output Series](#)” in this chapter), which can contain data from the source fields, derived fields, or the statistic and metric fields calculated from the classification groups.
- **Output Filters** (“[Output Filters](#)” in this chapter) can be used to select specific data to output from the report.
- The report itself consists of charts, tables and text content that are arranged using the **Presentation Options** (“[Presentation Options](#)” in this chapter) to yield the **Final Report** (“[Final Report](#)” in this chapter).

The data classification steps in the top right corner of the diagram are detailed in in this chapter. See “[Report History](#)” and “[Groups](#)” in this chapter. Understanding how to use bins and groups will allow you to classify related data records and extract statistics of interest from them.

Data Sources

The available data sources are:

- **Local RADIUS Accounting** – Accounting traffic consists of summary information about visitor sessions, reported by NAS devices to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. In the RADIUS Accounting data source, each data record corresponds to a single visitor session. The data record contains information such as the start and stop times for the session, the NAS IP address, client IP address and MAC address, and statistics such as the total amount of input and output traffic and the length of the session.
- **Local Visitor Accounts** – In this data source, each data record corresponds to a single visitor account. The data record contains all the fields defined for the visitor account, including standard fields such as username, role, and expiration time, as well as any custom fields that have been defined (See “[Customization of Fields](#)” in the Guest Management chapter).

Binning

Binning is a classification method that converts a continuous measurement into a discrete measurement. For example, converting a time measurement into a date is a ‘bin’ classification, because all time measurements that are made on any particular date will fall into the same ‘bin’ when this classification is applied.

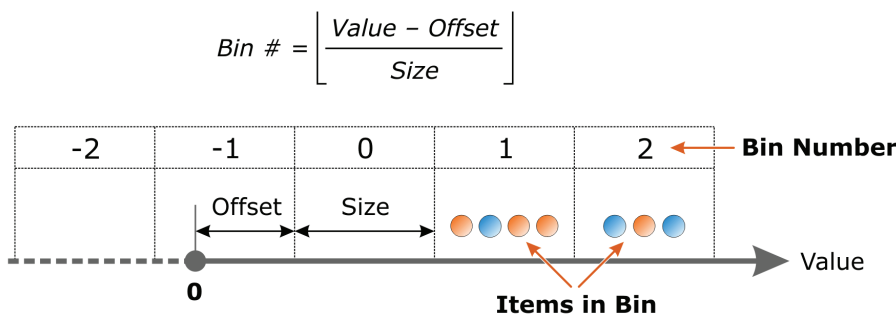
Binning can only be applied to numerical values, such as time measurements, traffic measurements, or the duration of a user’s session, where the range of possible values is potentially unlimited.

Classifying into bins is achieved by calculating a **bin number** for each item of data. The bin number is a calculation that results in related items of data being collected together. Related pieces of information may have slightly different values (for example, time measurements) but they are considered to be sufficiently the same to be placed in the same bin.

Bin numbers do not need to be consecutive numbers.

The formula used to calculate the bin number is shown in the diagram below.

Figure 34 Bin number calculation



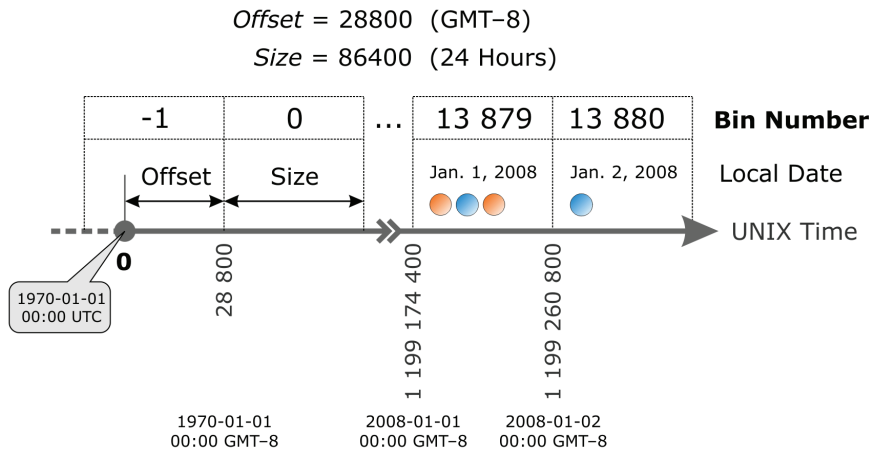
Bin classifications may be created using the report editor. See “[Groups](#)” in this chapter for a list of the available bin classification methods.

Binning Example – Time Measurements

The following diagram explains how to derive the offset for time bins into days, based on being west of GMT.

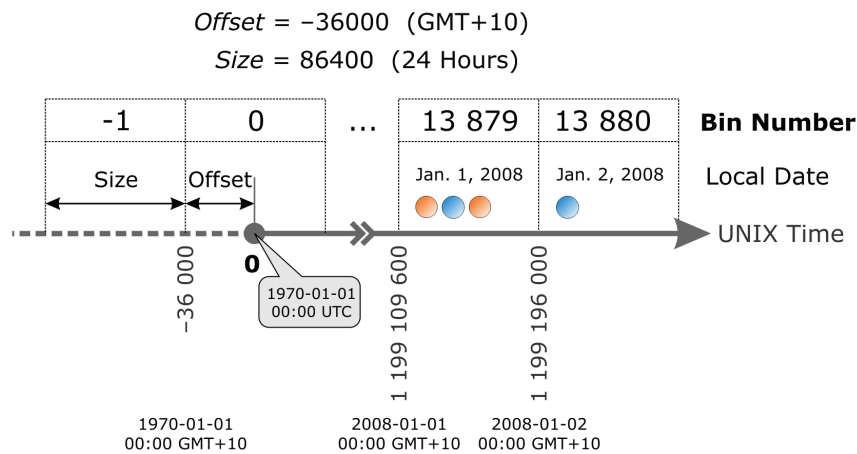
Reporting uses seconds as the time measurement. Therefore, as there are 3600 seconds in an hour, GMT – 8 makes the offset 28800 (3600 * 8).

Figure 35 Reporting – Bin west of GMT



The next diagram is similar but for time zones that are east of GMT

Figure 36 Reporting – Bin east of GMT



This process may be automated by entering an expression as the value for the time zone offset. The correct expression to use for the Bin Offset is:

```
<?= -date("Z")
```

Explanation: The PHP `date()` function returns the time zone offset in seconds when passed the “Z” format string. Because this is a positive value for east of GMT, and a negative value for west of GMT, the value is negated.

Groups

Grouping is a classification method that applies to discrete values. For example, collecting together data records that have the same username is a group classification.

Some time measurements can be grouped; for example, grouping all time measurements based on the hour of the day, or day of the week, is a group classification rather than a bin classification, as the set of values is discrete.

As in bin classifications, the group classification results in related items of data being collected together. The difference is that all the related items must have the same group value to be placed in the same group.

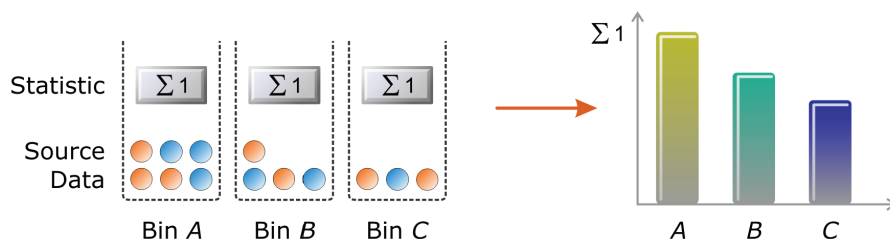
Group classifications may be created using the report editor. See **“Groups”** in this chapter for a list of the available group classification methods.

Statistics from Classification Groups

The classification groups that you define in a report will determine what type of statistics that can be derived for that report. This is shown in the following diagrams.

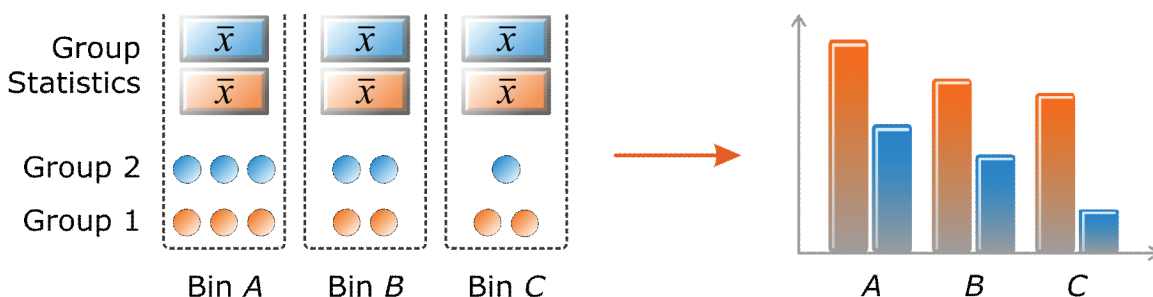
The following figure shows how statistics are calculated per bin when bins are present but groups are not present. For example, if each bin represents a different date, and the source data is a traffic measurement, then the statistic here could be the total amount of traffic per day. See [Figure 37](#).

Figure 37 Reporting – Bin statistics without groups



The next figure shows statistics calculated per group when both bins and groups are present. For example, if each bin represents a different date, the source data is a traffic measurement, and the grouping is done by username, then the group statistic here is “traffic per user”, and the end result is “traffic per user per day”.

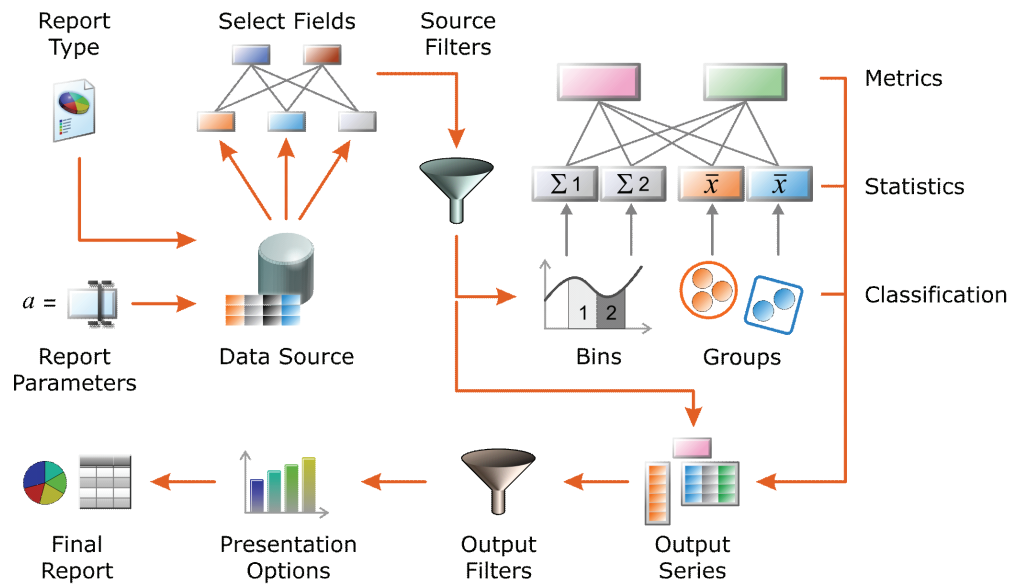
Figure 38 Reporting – Bin statistics with groups



Components of the Report Editor

To create a new report using the Report Editor (shown above), start at the top left and go clockwise, following the arrows, until you have a final report.

Figure 39 *Components of the Report Editor*



Report Type

| Edit Report | |
|---|--|
| * Report Type: | Single data source
The type of this report. |
| * Title: | <input type="text" value="Number of users per day"/>
Enter the title of this report. |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="Show the number of distinct users per day."/>
An optional description of this report. |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Report is enabled for use and can be run |
| * Date Range: | <input type="text" value="In the past.."/>
Select the default date range for the report. |
| In the past: | <input type="text" value="30"/> |
| Unit: | <input type="text" value="days"/> |
| * Formats: | <div> <div>Output Formats</div> <div> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTML
 Web page presentation format, for viewing and printing. </div> <div> <input type="checkbox"/> CSV
 Comma-separated values, for data exchange. </div> <div> <input type="checkbox"/> Text
 Plain text format, for simple lists and email. </div> </div> Select the formats of output data that will be generated when running the report. |
| Skin: | <input type="text" value="(Use default skin)"/>
Select a skin to use for the generated report. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> | |

The Report Type link opens a window where you type a distinct name or Title for the report. You can add additional information in the **Description** field. This could be used to explain the purpose of the report.

While you are working on creating the report you could leave the **Enabled** field unchecked. When you want the report to be available for use, mark the Enabled check box.

You should set a default Date Range for the report. The available options are listed under the drop down menu. You are able to change the Unit for this date range to seconds, minutes, hours, weeks, months or years.

You must select one or more of the Output Formats. When the report is run, it will be generated in each of these formats.

A skin for the generated report may be selected. This skin will be used when a HTML formatted report is generated. The (**No skin**) option may be selected to use a blank template, while the (**Use default skin**) option will use the skin that is currently marked as enabled in the Plugin Manager.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the Report Editor.

The selections you make in the **Edit Report** form will become the defaults used when running this report.

Report Parameters

Report parameters are fixed values defined at the start of a report run.

The value of a parameter may be obtained from the operator as input before running the report, or may be a fixed internal value that is set by the report designer.

A report parameter can be used in many places throughout the report including:

- In an expression used to calculate the value of a derived field
- As a value used in a source filter (range, match or list)
- As a value used in data classification (discrete bins)
- In an expression used to calculate a metric for the report
- As a component of an output series
- In an expression used to calculate a component of an output series
- As part of an output filter
- As text displayed in a presentation block
- As a formatting option for a chart or table

Each parameter has a name that is unique within the report. You can also attach a description to the parameter for use by the report designer.

To use a report parameter as a replacement for a field value, select the parameter from the list of fields.

To use a report parameter in a PHP expression, use the syntax `$parameter` – where the name of the parameter is preceded with a dollar sign \$. All the power of PHP expressions can be used to work with the value of this parameter.

These are the places in the report where PHP expressions are used:

- Derived field expressions
- Metric field expressions
- Output series field expressions
- Advanced custom expressions for filters


These are the places in the report where template syntax may be used:

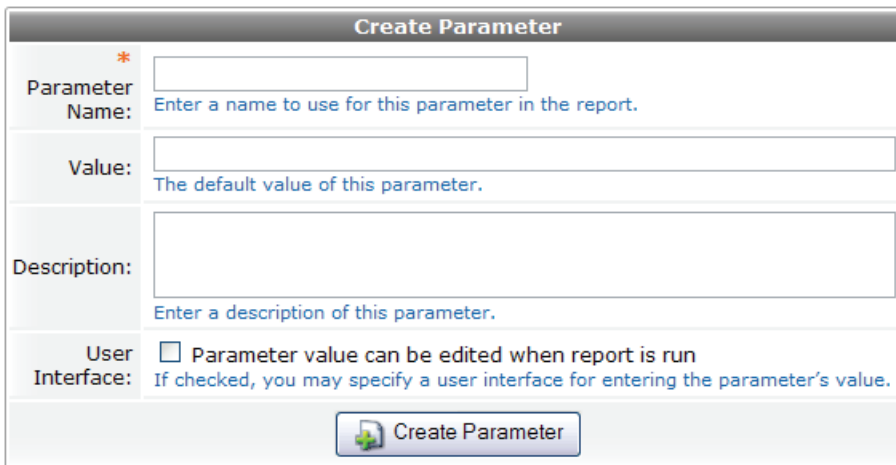
- Properties for source and output filters (range, match and list values)
- Properties for classification methods (bin size and offset)
- Properties for output series (limit and remainder category)

- Properties for individual fields within an output series (header)
- Properties for presentation blocks (container CSS style)
- Properties for table cells within a presentation block (CSS style)
- Within text presentation blocks

In these cases the report editor may simply indicate that a value is required. To use the value of a report parameter in a template, use the syntax `{ $parameter }`. Standard template syntax, such as modifiers and substitutions, are available to modify the display of the parameter. See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in this chapter for more information about template syntax. Some examples are given below:

- `{ $parameter | strtoupper }` Substitutes the uppercase version of the parameter
- `{ $parameter | default: "text" }` Substitutes the parameter, or “text” if the parameter is blank or not set
- `{ if $parameter } true { else } false { /if }` Substitutes the word “true” or “false” depending on the value of the parameter

To create a parameter click the  **Create Parameter** tab at the top of the Edit Parameters list view. The **Create Parameter** form will be displayed.




Parameters share the same namespace as the other types of field within the report (source fields, derived fields, statistic fields and metric fields). Choose a Parameter Name that is unique in the report.

Enter a value for the parameter in the **Value** field. This value will be substituted elsewhere in the report where the parameter is used.

You are able to type a description of this parameter in the **Description** field.

If the value of the parameter should be obtained from the operator as input before running the report, select the User Interface check box.

Click the  **Create Parameter** button to add this parameter to the report. You can create as many parameters as you need.


If the parameter should have a user interface, the **Edit Parameter** form will be displayed after clicking the  **Create Parameter** button.

Parameter User Interface Editing

| Edit Parameter | |
|---|--|
| * Parameter Name: | <input type="text"/>
Enter a name to use for this parameter in the report. |
| Value: | <input type="text"/>
The default value of this parameter. |
| Description: | <input type="text"/>
Enter a description of this parameter. |
| User Interface: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Parameter value can be edited when report is run
If checked, you may specify a user interface for entering the parameter's value. |
| Form Display Properties
These properties control the user interface displayed for this field. | |
| * Rank: | <input type="text" value="10"/>
Number indicating the relative ordering of user interface fields, which are displayed in order of increasing rank. |
| * User Interface: | <input type="text" value="No user interface"/>
The kind of user interface element to use when entering or editing this field. |
| Form Validation Properties
These properties control how the value of this field is checked. | |
| Field Required: | <input type="checkbox"/> Field value must be supplied
Select this option if the field cannot be omitted or left blank. |
| * Validator: | <input type="text" value="(No validation)"/>
The function used to validate the contents of a field. |
| Advanced Properties
These properties control conversion, display and dynamic behaviours. | |
| Advanced: | <input type="checkbox"/> Show advanced properties |
| <input type="button" value="Save Changes"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |

The **Edit Parameter** form is used to specify the default value for a parameter as well as the type of user interface to use for this parameter.



If **No user interface** is selected, then the parameter will have a fixed value and cannot be edited before the report is run.

Otherwise, if another type of user interface element is selected, clicking the  **Run...** icon link from the list of reports will display a **Run Options** form that includes an additional user interface element that corresponds to the parameter. In this way the value for a parameter may be selected by the operator before the report is generated.

For example, to generate a report with information about a specific username, you could define a parameter **in_username** that presents a text field to the operator, as shown in the figure below.

| Report Options | |
|---|--|
| * Date Range: | <input type="text" value="In the past..."/>
Select the date range for the report. |
| In the past: | <input type="text" value="30"/> |
| Unit: | <input type="text" value="days"/> |
| * Username: | <input type="text"/>
Enter a username to search for. |
| <input type="button" value="Run Report"/> | |

The initial value displayed on this form for a report parameter may be specified as the Value for the parameter.

The  **Run Preview** and  **Run Default** icon links will be available for a report if all parameters have an acceptable default value. This is determined by the validation properties for each parameter. If no validation properties are specified, all parameter values are considered to be valid.

To require an operator to make a selection for a parameter, you must specify how to validate the parameter, and you should also specify a default value that is not valid according to the validation properties. When this is done, the Run Preview and Run Default links will be unavailable, and appropriate parameter values must be specified by the operator before the report can be generated. A message will be displayed in the report editor indicating that this is the case.

The options for the form display, form validation and advanced properties are similar to customizing forms in Guest Manager. See [“Form Display Properties”](#) in this chapter for information about form display properties. See [“Form Validation Properties”](#) for form validation properties, or [“Advanced Form Field Properties”](#) for advanced properties.

Data Source

You must select a data source for the report using the **Select Data Source** form. You should also select the fields that are required by the report.

Different fields will be displayed, depending on which data source has been selected. See [“Data Sources”](#) in this chapter for details about the data sources that are available for use.

To select a field for inclusion in the report, mark the check box on the left hand side next to the field. You are able to select multiple fields in this window. The report is generated based on the fields that you select.

One of the selected fields must be a date/time field.

If you are building a new report by using the Create Report link, the fields you select here will be used to automatically construct an output series in the report. In this case, **Create Report: Step 2** will be displayed at the top of the page.

Returning to the **Select Data Source** form after creating a report will not automatically generate a corresponding output series for the selected fields. This means that selecting a field in the data source will not automatically add it to the output of the report; you must specify how to classify and format the data before it can be displayed in the generated report.

Select Data Source

* Data Source:







Local RADIUS Accounting

The data source to use for this report.

Data Source Explorer

Examine the fields available in the selected data source.

Fields:

| | Field Name | Details | Datatype | Unit |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|----------|---------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | bytes_in | Bytes In
Total bytes received from the user in this user session | float | bytes |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | bytes_out | Bytes Out
Total bytes sent to the user in this user session | float | bytes |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | called_station_id | Called Station ID
Destination of the user session, often the MAC address of the NAS | string | macaddr |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | calling_station_id | Calling Station ID
Origin of the user session, often the MAC address of the user | string | macaddr |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  nas_ip_address | NAS IP Address
IP address of the NAS reporting the session | string | ipaddr |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  nas_port_id | NAS Port ID
Port ID from the NAS reporting the session | string | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  nas_port_type | NAS Port Type
Port type from the NAS reporting the session | string | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |  session_start_time | Start Time
Start time of the user session | datetime | utc |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  session_stop_time | Stop Time
Time that the user session completed | datetime | utc |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  session_time | Session Time
Elapsed time in seconds of the user session | float | seconds |

13 items

10 rows per page

Fields available in the selected data source. Checked source fields are included in the report.

Save Changes



Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the Report Editor.

Select Fields

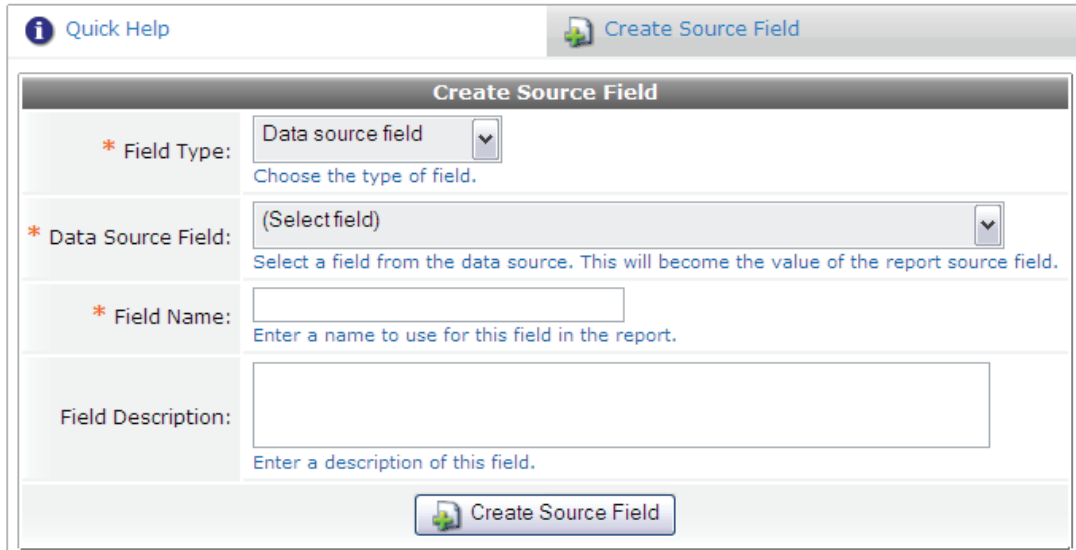
If you have not selected fields in the **Data Source** form, you must select the required source fields here. Fields can be defined one at a time by clicking the  **Create Source Field** tab.

Source fields are the basic building blocks from which the rest of the report is constructed. You should add source fields for any item of data on which you want to filter; any items that must be aggregated or grouped together; or any item over which statistics are to be calculated.

Source fields are of two kinds:

-  **Data source fields** are individual items of data taken from the data source for the report. This is the smallest fundamental unit of data available in the report.
-  **Derived fields** are source fields that are created from other data source fields or derived fields. A derived field is one that can be calculated for each data record selected from the data source.

Each source field has a name that is unique within the report. You can also attach a description to the field for use by the report designer. If you select a field from the **Data Source Field** drop down list, that field name is automatically placed in the **Field Name** area. It can be changed if you want.

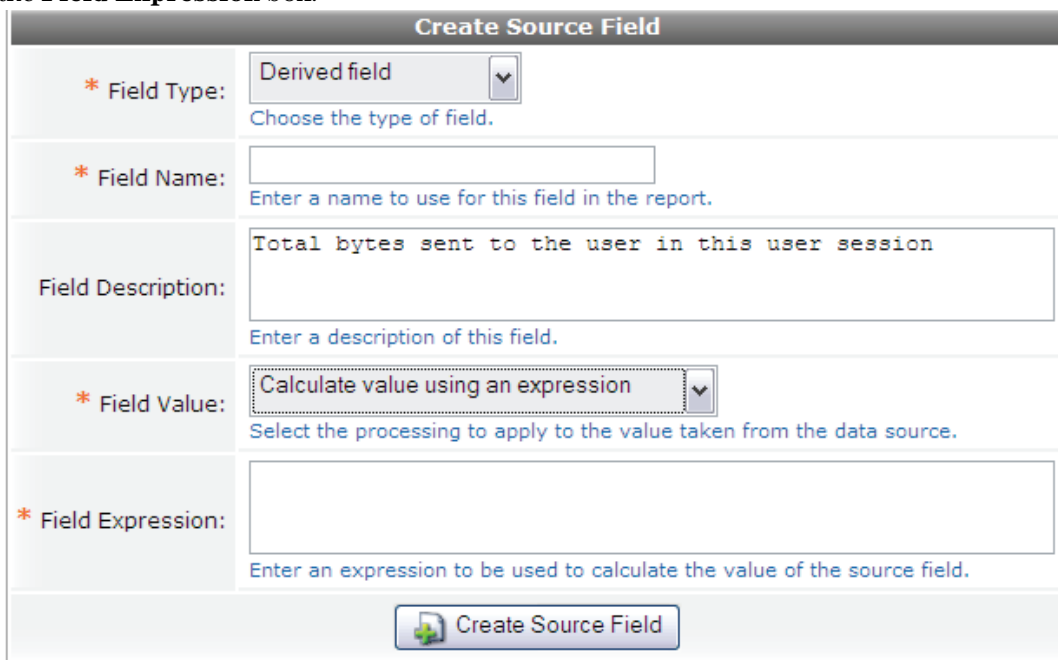


The screenshot shows the 'Create Source Field' dialog box. At the top, there is a 'Quick Help' icon and a 'Create Source Field' button. The dialog has a title bar 'Create Source Field'. Below the title bar, there are four sections:

- * Field Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Data source field' selected. Below it is the text 'Choose the type of field.'
- * Data Source Field:** A dropdown menu with '(Select field)' selected. Below it is the text 'Select a field from the data source. This will become the value of the report source field.'
- * Field Name:** An empty text input field. Below it is the text 'Enter a name to use for this field in the report.'
- Field Description:** An empty text input field. Below it is the text 'Enter a description of this field.'

At the bottom of the dialog is a 'Create Source Field' button.

As derived fields do not exist in the Data Source, you will need to give each field a unique name. You are also required to give the field a value. This can be by calculating a value using a PHP expression entered in the **Field Expression** box.



The screenshot shows the 'Create Source Field' dialog box. At the top, there is a 'Quick Help' icon and a 'Create Source Field' button. The dialog has a title bar 'Create Source Field'. Below the title bar, there are five sections:

- * Field Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Derived field' selected. Below it is the text 'Choose the type of field.'
- * Field Name:** An empty text input field. Below it is the text 'Enter a name to use for this field in the report.'
- Field Description:** A text input field containing 'Total bytes sent to the user in this user session'. Below it is the text 'Enter a description of this field.'
- * Field Value:** A dropdown menu with 'Calculate value using an expression' selected. Below it is the text 'Select the processing to apply to the value taken from the data source.'
- * Field Expression:** An empty text input field. Below it is the text 'Enter an expression to be used to calculate the value of the source field.'

At the bottom of the dialog is a 'Create Source Field' button.

If you select to calculate a value by summing over source fields, you are required to nominate the fields to be summed.

Create Source Field

* Field Type: **Derived field**
Choose the type of field.

* Field Name:
Enter a name to use for this field in the report.

Field Description:
Enter a description of this field.

* Field Value: **Sum over source fields**
Select the processing to apply to the value taken from the data source.

* Source Field 1: **(Select field)**
Choose the first source field to include in the calculation.

* Source Field 2: **(Select field)**
Choose the second source field to include in the calculation.

Create Source Field

Click the **Create Source Field** button to create the source or derived field in the report.

Source Filters

Source filters are applied to the data source fields to determine whether a data record will be included for processing in the report. The statistics, metrics and output data of the report can only be generated from source data that has passed through the source filters.

You should define source filters to specify what parts of the input data you are interested in.

The first source filter has a special property. When a report is run, the time range for the report is calculated and is set as the minimum and maximum values for the range of the first source filter. This allows the time range for a particular report to be easily specified when a report is run (for example, by selecting the “last month” option for the report range). When running a report, you can also select specific date and time values for the start and end of the report, which will become the minimum and maximum values for the first source filter.

You should ensure that the first source filter is applied to a time field, in order to maintain this expected behavior of the report.




The remaining source filters are ordered, which means these filters will always be applied in the same order to each data record.

You can reorder the filters to obtain precise control over exactly which data will be included in the report.


Source filters are of three basic kinds:

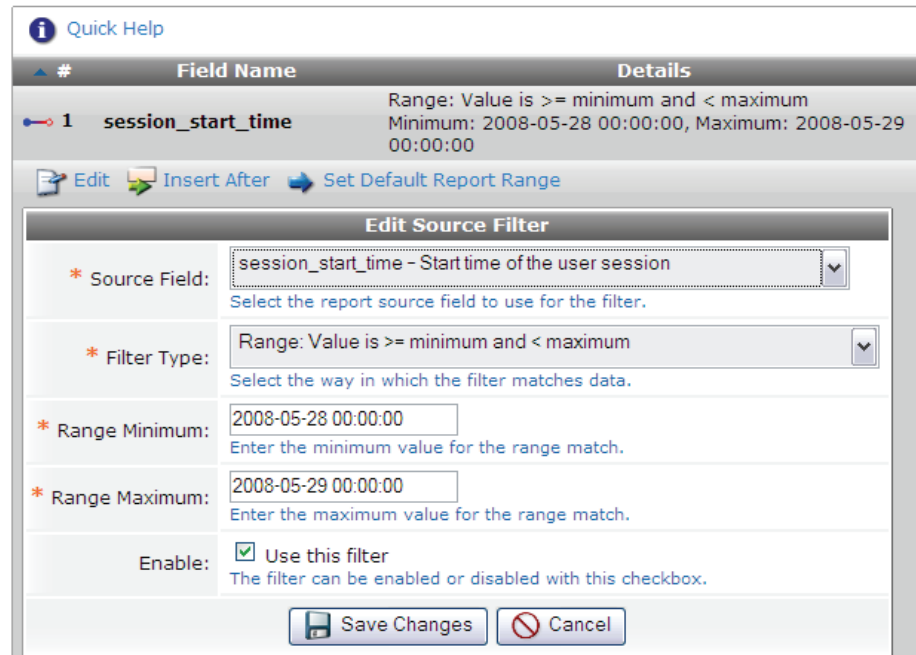
- **Range** filters check to see if the data value falls within a certain range.
- **Match** filters check if the data value matches a particular condition, which could be a regular expression or other match value.
- **List** filters check to see if the data value is found in a list.


As one of the selected fields is a date/time field, this is automatically set as the first source filter for you.


To add additional filters, click the first source filter. An action row is displayed with  **Edit** and  **Insert After** links. There is also a  **Set Default Report Range** option for the first date/time filter.

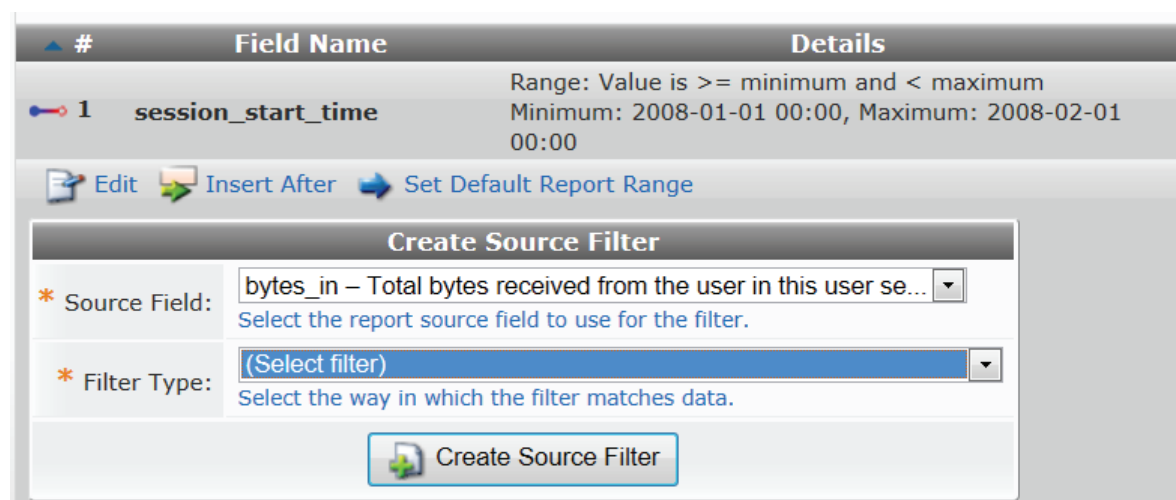


The  **Edit** link allows you to alter the options for the source filter as well as being able to disable the filter.



















Click the  **Save Changes** button to keep any changes you have made.

The  **Insert After** link allows you to create additional filters.



You are required to select a field from the **Source Field** drop down list. This displays a list of the fields that you previously created in the **Data Source** or the **Select Fields** sections of the Report Editor.

You must then select the filter from the **Filter Type** drop down list. The following options are available:

-  List: Value is not one of a list
-  List: Value is not one of a list (case sensitive)
-  List: Value is one of a list
-  List: Value is one of a list (case sensitive)
-  Match: Value does not match regular expression
-  Match: Value does not match regular expression (case sensitive)
-  Match: Value matches regular expression
-  Match: Value matches regular expression (case sensitive)
-  Match: Value is equal to
-  Match: Value is equal to (case sensitive)
-  Match: Value is not equal to
-  Match: Value is not equal to (case sensitive)
-  Range: Value is > minimum and < maximum
-  Range: Value is > minimum and <= maximum
-  Range: Value is >= minimum and < maximum
-  Range: Value is >= minimum and <= maximum

Additional options are displayed depending on the filter type – list, match or range. Complete the form by entering appropriate options for use by the filter.

Click the  **Create Source Filter** button to add this filter.

Classification Groups

Classification groups are ways of collecting together groups of related input data records.

Often, the purpose of a report is to discover any underlying patterns or trends in the data. This can usually be done by looking at the raw data of the report, subdividing it into various groups of related data, and then analyzing the groups using statistics and graphs to identify the desired features.

Classification groups perform the task of grouping related input data into sets, which makes it possible to calculate statistics over the items of interest.

There are two types of classification groups:

- **Bins** are classification methods that convert a continuous measurement into a discrete measurement. For example, converting a time measurement into a date is a 'bin' classification, because all time measurements that are made on any particular date will fall into the same 'bin' when this classification is applied. Binning applies to numerical values only, such as time measurements, data traffic measurements, or the duration of a user's session, where the range of possible values is potentially unlimited. See **"Data Sources"** in this chapter for more information about bin classifications.
- **Groups** are classification methods that apply to discrete values. For example, collecting together data records that have the same username is a group classification, as is grouping based on just the first letter of the username. Some time measurements can be grouped; for example, grouping all time measurements based on the hour of the day, or day of the week, is a group classification rather than a bin classification, because the set of possible values is fixed. See **"Groups"** in this chapter for more information about group classifications.

| Quick Help | | Create Classifier |
|-----------------|--------------------|---|
| Name | Field | Details |
| Group 1 | username | Groups that have same value of source field (case sensitive) |
| Bin 1 | session_start_time | Time measurement: bin by days
Bin Size: 86400, Bin Offset: 36000 |
| 2 items Reload | | 20 rows per page |

To create a bin or a classification group, click the **Create Classifier** tab in the Edit Classification Groups list view.

Quick Help
 Create Classifier

Create Classification Group

* Classification:
Select how to classify each data record.

* Source Field:
Select the report source field to use for the classification.

Create Classifier

* required field

| Name | Field | Details |
|-----------------|--------------------|---|
| Group 1 | username | Groups that have same value of source field (case sensitive) |
| Bin 1 | session_start_time | Time measurement: bin by days
Bin Size: 86400, Bin Offset: 36000 |
| 2 items Reload | | 20 rows per page |

You are required to choose the classification method and the Source Field to use for the classification.




The **Create Classifier** tab can be accessed from the Classification, Bins or Groups options in the Report Editor.

The available classification methods are explained below:

- **Discrete bins from start and stop values** – See [“Data Sources”](#) in this chapter for a bin number formula description. The bin classification requires two source fields from a data record. The bin formula is applied to both source field values to obtain start and stop bin numbers. The data record is classified with each bin number between the start and stop numbers, inclusive of the endpoints of the range. The bin offset is used to account for time zones. See [“Binning Example – Time Measurements”](#) in this chapter for a description.
- **Discrete bins from value of source field** – See [“Data Sources”](#) in this chapter for a bin classification description. The bin classification method applies the bin number formula, described in the , to the value of the source field to calculate a bin number for the data record.
- **Groups that have same value of source field** – This group classification method collects together all data records that have the same value for the specified source field, ignoring case.
- **Groups that have same value of source field (case sensitive)** – This group classification method collects together all data records that have the same value for the specified source field.

- **Time measurement: bin by days** – See “[Binning Example – Time Measurements](#)” in this chapter for the bin classification method description. The bin classification method uses the specified date/time field to calculate a day number. Times that fall within the same day are assigned the same bin number. The bin offset is used to account for time zones as explained in the .
- **Time measurement: bin by hours** – This bin classification method uses the specified date/time field to calculate an hour number. Times that fall within the same hour are assigned the same bin number.
- **Time measurement: bin by months** – This bin classification method uses the specified date/time field to calculate a year and month number. Multiple months may be grouped together by specifying a bin size greater than 1; for example, to bin by quarters of the year, use 3 for the bin size. Times that fall within the same month or group of months are assigned the same bin number.
- **Time measurement: bin by weeks** – This bin classification method uses the specified date/time field to calculate a week number. Times that fall within the same week are assigned the same bin number.
- **Time measurement: group by day of the month** – This group classification uses the specified date/time field to calculate the day of the month from 1 to 31. This is used as the group number, which collects together all data records that have the same day of the month.
- **Time measurement: group by day of the week** – This group classification uses the specified date/time field to calculate the day of the week, from 0 to 6 where 0 is Sunday and 6 is Saturday. This is used as the group number, which collects together all data records that have the same day of the week.
- **Time measurement: group by hour of the day** – This group classification uses the specified date/time field to calculate the hour of day, from 0 to 23 where 0 is midnight, 12 is midday and 23 is 11 pm. This is used as the group number, which collects together all data records that have the same hour of the day.
- **Time measurement: group by month of the year** – This group classification uses the specified date/time field to calculate the month of the year, from 1 to 12 where 1 is January and 12 is December. This is used as the group number, which collects together all data records that have the same month of the year.

The remaining options in the form will change depending on your selection. See “[Resetting Report Definitions](#)” in this chapter for more information about binning and grouping classification methods.

Click the  **Create Classifier** button to define the classification group in the report.

Statistics and Metrics

Statistics are fields with values that are calculated from a group of source fields. For example, the total sum of all fields in a particular group would be a statistic field.

Define statistic fields for any item of data over which you want to calculate some kind of summary information, such as a count, sum or average.

To select which classification group to use for a statistic or metric field, consider which items you want to calculate across. This is called a ‘dimension’ of the report. To calculate a single statistic for all the items in a particular group, select that group as the classification group. To calculate a single statistic over all the items in the report, select the ‘All data’ dimension of the report.

There is a close relationship between statistics and classification groups. In general, you should define classification groups to define how you want to break up the report data, then define statistic fields to extract the desired information about those groups.

Metrics are fields with values calculated from other statistics. For example, converting a total sum to a cost by multiplying by a rate would be a metric field.

Define metric fields to calculate quantities that are related to the report statistics, such as averages, costs or performance measurements.

To derive a metric from one or more statistics, the metric must be calculated using the same dimension of the report as for the statistics.

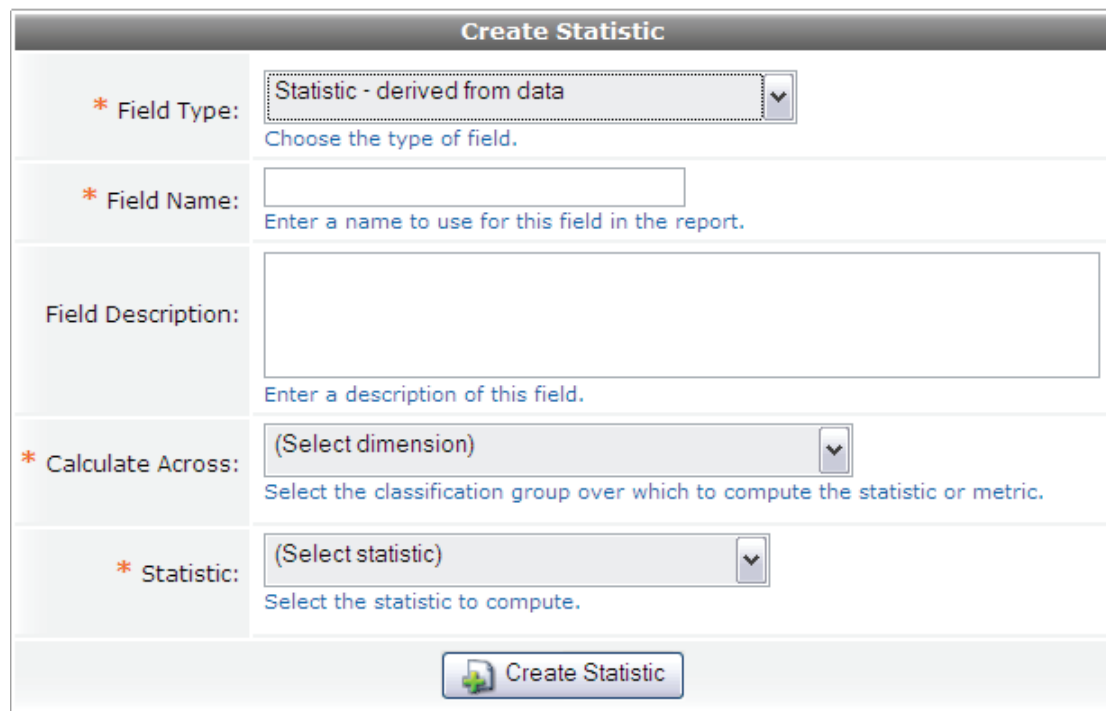
Like the statistic fields, metrics share a close relationship with the report's classification groups. When designing a report, consider the metrics that you would like to generate, and work backwards to determine the statistics you will need in order to calculate each metric and the classification groups will be needed to calculate each statistic.

Each statistic and metric field has a name that is unique within the report. You can also attach a description to the field for use by the report designer.

When designing the structure of the report, it may help to consider these questions:

- *What is the metric supposed to tell me?* (Indicates the field name and description.)
- *Is the metric a single value, or a collection of values?* (Indicates if the metric's dimension is 'All data', or another classification group.)
- If a collection of values – what is the common property that each value shares? (Indicates the structure of the classification group.)
- *What is the underlying data that is being summarized?* (Indicates the type of statistic or metric, and the source fields to consider.)
- *How is the metric calculated from the underlying data?* (Indicates the metric expression, or statistic computation method.)

To create a statistic or a metric, click the  **Create Statistic** tab at the top of the Edit Statistics list view.



The **Field Type** parameter determines whether you are creating a statistic or a metric. If you are creating a statistic for the report, you must enter a field name. This cannot be a name of an existing field or parameter. You are also required to enter how this statistic is to be calculated. This is specified in the **Calculate Across** field.

The type of statistic is then selected from the **Statistic** drop down list, which is one of the following options:

- **Average value** – the average value of the source field over the selected classification group is calculated
- **Maximum value** – the maximum value of the source field over the selected classification group is calculated

- **Median value** – the median (middle) value of the source field over the selected classification group is calculated
- **Minimum value** – the minimum value of the source field over the selected classification group is calculated
- **Number of bins** – the number of different bin classification groups is calculated
- **Number of distinct values** – the number of distinct values that the source field takes over the selected classification group is calculated
- **Number of groups** – the total number of classification groups in all bins is calculated
- **Number of values in a particular group** – the total number of items in a specified classification group is calculated
- **Sum of values** – the sum of all values of the source field over the selected classification group is calculated

The form is slightly different if you select to create a metric.


The **Field Type** parameter must be changed to **Computed metric** and the Field Name must be unique. You should select what data the metric is to be calculated over in the Calculate Across field.

The type of metric can be one of:

- **Add (value 1 + value 2)** – the values are added
- **Average value** – the average value of the statistic field over the selected report dimension is calculated
- **Divide (value 1 ÷ value 2)** – the values are divided
- **Maximum value** – the maximum value of the statistic field over the selected report dimension is calculated
- **Median value** – the median (middle) value of the statistic field over the selected report dimension is calculated
- **Minimum value** – the minimum value of the statistic field over the selected report dimension is calculated
- **Multiply (value 1 × value 2)** – the values are multiplied

- **Number of distinct values** – the number of distinct values that the statistic field takes over the selected report dimension is calculated
- **Subtract (value 1 – value 2)** – the values are subtracted
- **Sum of values** – the sum of all values of the statistic field over the selected report dimension is calculated
- **Use an expression to calculate value** – a PHP expression is used to calculate a value for the metric over the selected report dimension from one or more statistic fields

Value 1 and Value 2 list the fields previously created in the report. Unless you are using an expression to calculate the metric, you are required to select the fields for Value 1 and Value 2.

Click the  **Create Statistic** button to create the statistic or metric field in the report.

Output Series


A report has one or more output series, which contain the data tables generated from the input data and statistics calculations in the report.

An output series is used by the output filters and presentation blocks defined in the report. Each output series can have multiple fields within it; the fields within the output series can also perform basic calculations and formatting on the data to be output.

For each output series, one item in the series is generated for each item in the selected 'dimension' of the report. For example, the report might define a group which contains sets of related input records; this group is a dimension of the report. A statistic can be defined in that dimension that is computed for each group, across all of the input data in each set. An output series for that dimension can include the statistic calculated for each group set, but cannot include the original data (as there might be more than one data record in each group).

As another example, consider the same report with a group definition and a statistic calculated in that dimension of the report. An output series for the 'Source data' dimension of the report can include a field for the statistic calculated in each group; this may produce duplicate copies of the statistic in the output series, because it will be included for each group item that has the statistic, and there may be multiple group items used to calculate the statistic.

You should define the report's output series according to how you want to collect and organize the input data and the calculated statistics for display. To generate a report containing a table or graph of data, you should define an output series that contains the fields that are to be displayed.

Click the  **Create Output Series** tab at the top of the Edit Output Series list view to create an output series in the report.

Quick Help

Create Output Series

Create Output Series

* Name:

Enter a name to identify this series.

* Dimension:

(Select dimension)

Select the report dimension from which to generate the items in the output series.

Create Output Series

* required field


| Name | Dimension | Details |
|----------|-----------|---|
| Series 1 | Bin 1 | Fields: Date, Number of Users
Sort By: (Bin value) – ascending |

1 items

Reload

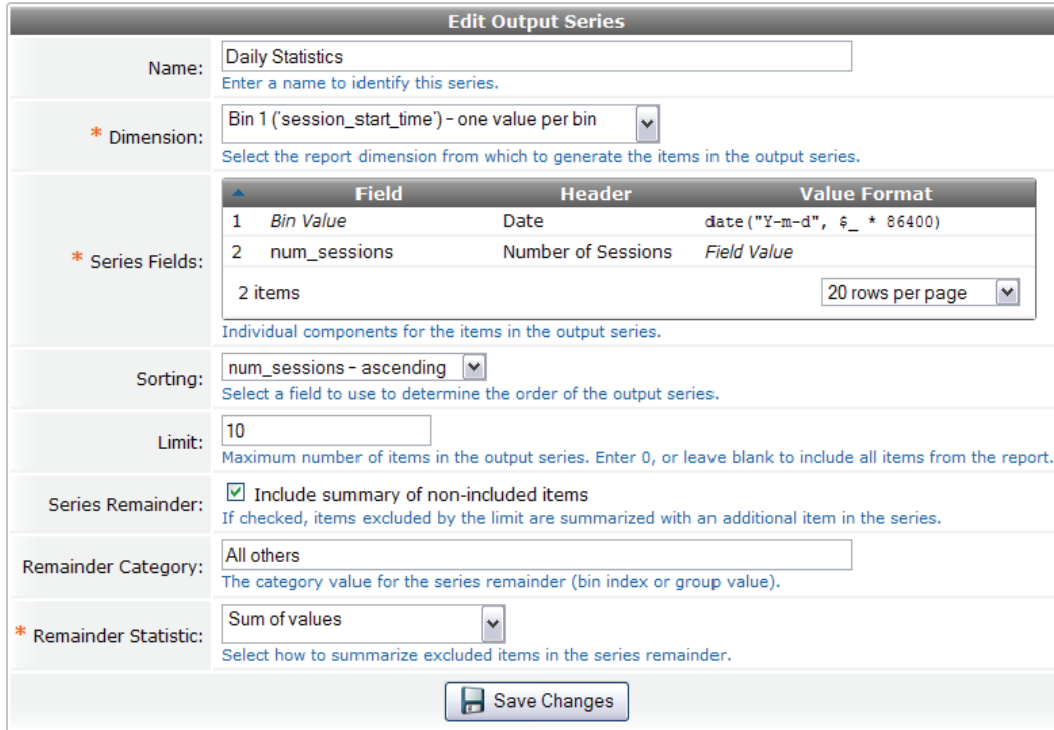
20 rows per page

You are required to enter a unique name for this output series. You must also select the Dimension to be used. This could be the source data or one of the classification groups defined in the report.

Click the  **Create Output Series** button to add the output series definition to the report. The **Edit Output Series** form will then be displayed to allow the components of the output series to be defined.

Output Series Fields





The **Edit Output Series** form is used to define the components and properties of an output series.



| | Field | Header | Value Format |
|---|--------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 | Bin Value | Date | date("Y-m-d", \$_ * 86400) |
| 2 | num_sessions | Number of Sessions | Field Value |

2 items 20 rows per page

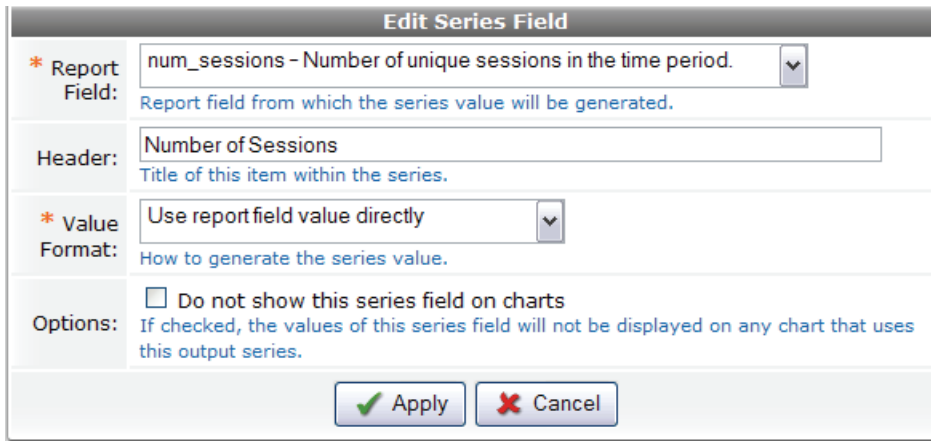
The list of series fields will highlight any invalid field names with a red border. Fields may be marked as invalid because they are not available for the selected output series dimension or because they have been deleted from the report definition.

The order in which you select output fields is significant, because table and chart presentation blocks will display the fields of an output series in order. You may reorder the fields by using the  **Move Up** and  **Move Down** links. To insert a new field into the output series, select an existing field and click either the  **Insert Before** or  **Insert After** links.

An output series may be sorted in ascending or descending order by selecting the appropriate option in the **Sorting** drop-down list.

If you also specify a value for the Limit, you can create an output series that contains only the “Top X” or “Bottom X” items. In this case, you may select the **Include summary of non-included items** check box to add a “remainder” row to the output series that summarizes all the remaining items in a single entry.

To edit an output series field, click the  **Edit** link for the field. The **Edit Series** field opens, as shown below.



| Edit Series Field | |
|-------------------------|---|
| * Report Field: | num_sessions - Number of unique sessions in the time period.
<small>Report field from which the series value will be generated.</small> |
| Header: | Number of Sessions
<small>Title of this item within the series.</small> |
| * Value Format: | Use report field value directly
<small>How to generate the series value.</small> |
| Options: | <input type="checkbox"/> Do not show this series field on charts
<small>If checked, the values of this series field will not be displayed on any chart that uses this output series.</small> |
| <div>Apply Cancel</div> | |

The Header is displayed in tables and charts that use this output series. Use a short description of the values contained in this field.

The Value Format specifies how to generate the value for the output series field. You can specify an expression to calculate the value; in the expression, use the variable `$_` to obtain the value of the report field for this output series.

In most cases it is not necessary to perform data formatting for the fields in the output series, as this is normally achieved in the report's presentation blocks. Use a value expression only if the actual value to be displayed should be modified (for example, converting from bytes to megabytes), or if the underlying format of the value should be changed (for example, converting from a bin number to a date).

Select the **Do not show this series field on charts** check box to prevent the display of the series field on charts. This option is useful if the same output series is used in two presentation blocks, one being a chart showing summary data and the other being a table showing detailed statistics.

Output Filters

Output filters are applied to the output series defined in the report to determine whether a particular item will be included in the output of the report. The presentation blocks of the report can only include the output data that has passed through the output filters.

You should define output filters to specify what parts of the output data you are interested in looking at. You can also define output filters to specify what output data should be excluded from the report.

Output filters can filter on either unformatted source data or formatted output data. Unformatted source data is the data used to generate the output series; depending on the dimension of the output series, this may include either raw source data and derived fields or statistic and metric fields. Formatted output data is the actual content of the output series after any data processing has been applied in the output series definition.

Use filtering based on unformatted source data to exclude output series items based on a certain data field, statistic or metric value in the data. Use filtering based on the formatted output series to exclude output data based on group or bin values, as these typically need to be formatted before they are of use.

The output filters are ordered, which means the filters will always be applied in the same order to each item of the output series.

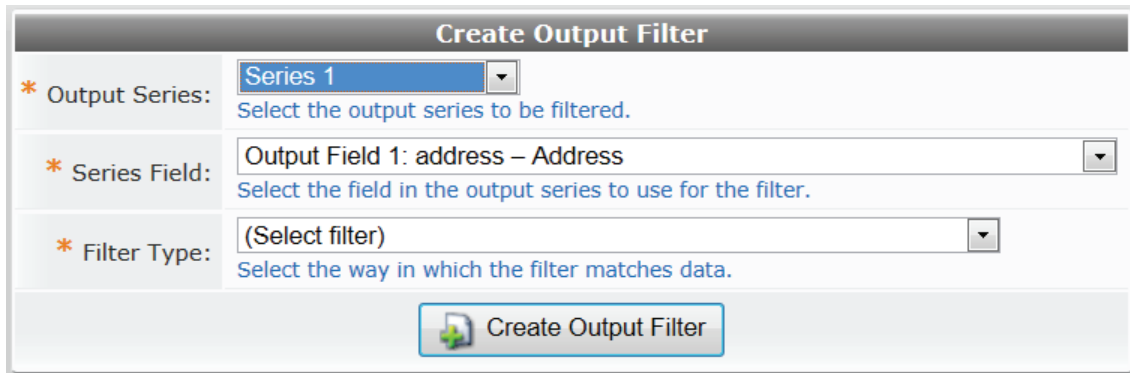
You can reorder the filters to obtain precise control over exactly which data will be included in the report's output.

Output filters are of three basic kinds:

- **Range** filters check to see if a value falls within a certain range.

- **Match** filters check if a value matches a particular condition, which could be a regular expression or other match value.
- **List** filters check to see if a value is found in a list.

Click the  **Create output filter** link to create an output filter.

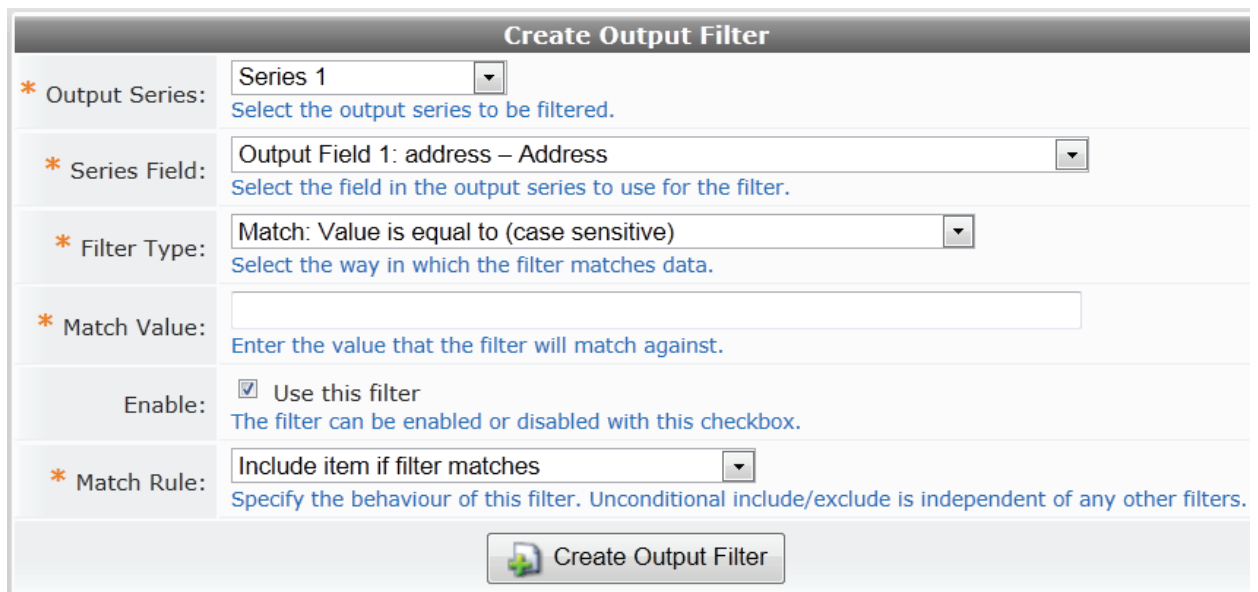


The dialog box is titled "Create Output Filter". It contains three rows of configuration options:

- * Output Series:** A dropdown menu showing "Series 1". Below it is the text "Select the output series to be filtered."
- * Series Field:** A dropdown menu showing "Output Field 1: address – Address". Below it is the text "Select the field in the output series to use for the filter."
- * Filter Type:** A dropdown menu showing "(Select filter)". Below it is the text "Select the way in which the filter matches data."

At the bottom of the dialog is a button with a plus icon and the text "Create Output Filter".

Select the output series you want to filter in order to view the remaining filter options.



This dialog box is similar to the previous one but includes additional options:

- * Output Series:** Same as before, "Series 1".
- * Series Field:** Same as before, "Output Field 1: address – Address".
- * Filter Type:** A dropdown menu showing "Match: Value is equal to (case sensitive)". Below it is the text "Select the way in which the filter matches data."
- * Match Value:** An empty text input field. Below it is the text "Enter the value that the filter will match against."
- Enable:** A checkbox that is checked, with the text "Use this filter" and "The filter can be enabled or disabled with this checkbox."
- * Match Rule:** A dropdown menu showing "Include item if filter matches". Below it is the text "Specify the behaviour of this filter. Unconditional include/exclude is independent of any other filters."

At the bottom is the same "Create Output Filter" button.


You can select any of the source fields that would be available to the output series, or any of the fields in the output series. This allows output filtering to be performed based on either the report data store, or the output series data.

The types of output filter that are available are the same as used in the source filters. See [“Source Filters”](#) in this chapter for details about the types of filter that are available.

The Match Rule allows you to construct more complex filtering rules. You can choose from the following matching rules:

- **Include item if filter matches** – If the filter matches the item in the output series, the item will be included. The remaining filters will be applied in order.
- **Exclude item if filter matches** – If the filter matches the item in the output series, the item will not be included. The remaining filters will be applied in order.
- **Unconditionally include item if filter matches** – If the filter matches the item in the output series, the item will always be included in the output. No further filters will be applied to the data once this filter has matched.

- **Unconditionally exclude item if filter matches** – If the filter matches the item in the output series, the item will never be included in the output. No further filters will be applied to the data once this filter has matched.

Click the  **Create Output Filter** button to add the new output filter to the report definition.

Presentation Options

The Presentation Options provide you with a number of choices regarding the final presentation of your report.

The presentation blocks of the report define the visual appearance of the report, such as what data to display and how to display it.

There are three different types of presentation block:

- **Chart** presentations allow an output series to be shown graphically using different styles of graph. (For details, See **“Chart Presentations”** in this chapter.)
- **Table** presentations list the contents of an output series in a formatted table. (For details, See **“Table Presentations”** in this chapter.)
- **Text** presentations are blocks of text included in the report. You may insert the values of metrics or perform custom processing to include the output data from the report in the text. For details, See **“Text Presentations”** in this chapter.)

Presentation blocks are included in the final report in the order they are defined.

Chart Presentations

A chart presentation block displays the values of an output series graphically. Charts are only displayed in reports where the HTML output format is selected. Charts are not supported in CSV or plain text reports.

The chart is displayed within a HTML **<div>** container element. The styles applied to this element may be specified. For example, to align the chart with the center of the page, use the container style `text-align: center;`

Most of the chart options are used to control the visual appearance of the chart. You can specify layout options, chart colors and opacity, line widths and styles, font size, axis formatting options, and more.

Different types of chart are supported, including:

- Line
- Pie
- Pie 3-D
- Column
- Stacked Column
- Floating Column
- Column 3-D
- Stacked Column 3-D
- Parallel Column 3-D
- Bar
- Stacked Bar
- Floating Bar
- Area
- Stacked Area
- Candlestick

- Scatter
- Polar

In general, the first field in the output series is used as the category values for the chart. The second and subsequent fields are used as the values to display on the chart.

The Pie and Pie 3-D charts support only a single data point for each category value. A pie chart is used to compare the relative proportions of different values in a single data series.

The Floating Column and Floating Bar charts require two data points for each category value. The data points are the high and low values for each category (in that order).

The Candlestick chart requires four data points for each category value. The data points are the maximum, minimum, open and close value for each category (in that order).

The Scatter chart allows plotting of one or more data series consisting of (x, y) pairs. This chart requires that the category values alternate between x and y coordinates.

Table Presentations

A table presentation block displays the value of an output series in a formatted table.

For reports generated using the HTML output format, you may specify the table's alignment relative to the page and any styles that should be applied to the table.

The table may be displayed in one of two ways. Assuming the output series dimension covers three values (A, B and C), the default table layout will display the output series fields organized by columns:

Table 21 *Default Table Layouts*

| Field 1, value A1 | Field 1, value B1 | Field 1, value C1 |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Field 2, value A ₂ | Field 2, value B ₂ | Field 2, value C ₂ |
| Field 3, value A ₃ | Field 3, value B ₃ | Field 3, value C ₃ |

If you select the **Transpose table** check box, the columns and rows will be interchanged, which results in the following layout:

Table 22 *Transposed Table Layouts*

| Field 1, value A1 | Field 2, value A2 | Field 3, value A3 |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Field 1, value B ₁ | Field 2, value B ₂ | Field 3, value B ₃ |
| Field 1, value C ₁ | Field 2, value C ₂ | Field 3, value C ₃ |

Transposed tables are recommended if the output series will contain more than a few values, as in the default layout the table will end up containing more columns than rows, making it more difficult to read.

Text Presentations

A text presentation block may be used to insert template code into the generated report. The template for the text presentation block is evaluated when the report output is generated. See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter for details about the template syntax that is supported.

The default reports include a standard header block for generated reports using the syntax:

```
{include file=report_template_header.html}
```


This standard header includes the report title, the time at which the report was run, and the date range included in the report.

The variables available for use in the template include any of the parameters defined in the report, as well as the following special variables:

Table 23 *Template Variables*

| Variable | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| \$_data | Data store for this report instance; See “Report Preview with Debugging” in this chapter for information about the structure of this variable |
| \$_format | Name of format of this report instance (“CSV”, “HTML”, “Text”) |
| \$_info | Information about the report run |
| \$_options | Miscellaneous options for report generation |
| \$_report_id | ID of the report |
| \$_report | Report definition |
| \$_report.desc | Description of the report |
| \$_report.structure | Report structure definition; describes the fields, filters, classification groups, output series and presentation blocks that make up the report |
| \$_report.title | Title of the report |
| \$_skin_id | Skin ID to use for presentation (set to false if no skin is selected, or if the format is not HTML) |
| \$_timestamp | Timestamp of this report instance |

Final Report

You are able to view the final report by clicking on the Final Report option. The report is displayed in a new window.

If the report has not met your expectations, you are able to return to the Report Editor by closing the final report window. Changes can then be made in the appropriate area of the Report Editor.



Creating Reports

You can create a report by clicking the Report Manager’s **Create New Report** command link on the **Reporting start** page.



Create New Report

Define a new report by choosing data source fields. Use the report editor to fill in the structure of the report.

Using this command link creates a basic data report for the specified time range, and for the specified data fields.

The report editor may then be used to further customize the report by defining new filters, classification groups and output series.

Creating the Report – Step 1

The following form will be displayed when the **Create New Report** link is clicked.

Create Report: Step 1

Complete the form below to proceed to step 2.

Create Report

* Report Type: Single data source
The type of this report.

* Title:
Enter the title of this report.

Description:
An optional description of this report.

Enabled: ☐ Report is enabled for use and can be run

* Date Range:
Select the default date range for the report.

* Formats:

Output Formats
☐ HTML
Web page presentation format, for viewing and printing.
☐ CSV
Comma-separated values, for data exchange.
☐ Text
Plain text format, for simple lists and email.

Select the formats of output data that will be generated when running the report.

Skin:
Select a skin to use for the generated report.

Continue

This is the same form that you would obtain if you clicked the Report Type option in the Report Editor. See **“Report Type”** in this chapter for more details about this form.

Click the **Continue** button to move to Step 2.

Creating the Report – Step 2

In step 2, the **Select Data Source** form is displayed.

This is the same form that you would obtain if you clicked the **Data Source** option in the Report Editor. See **“Data Sources”** in this chapter for more details about this form.






When you are first creating a report, the fields you select here will be used to automatically construct an output series in the report. The output series will be for the Data dimension of the report and will include all the fields selected in step 2. This allows you to create simple reports that list the available data without additional processing. You can then use this basic report to define additional filters, classification groups, output series and presentation blocks to generate summarized data of interest to you.

Click the **Save Changes** button to continue to the Report Editor.

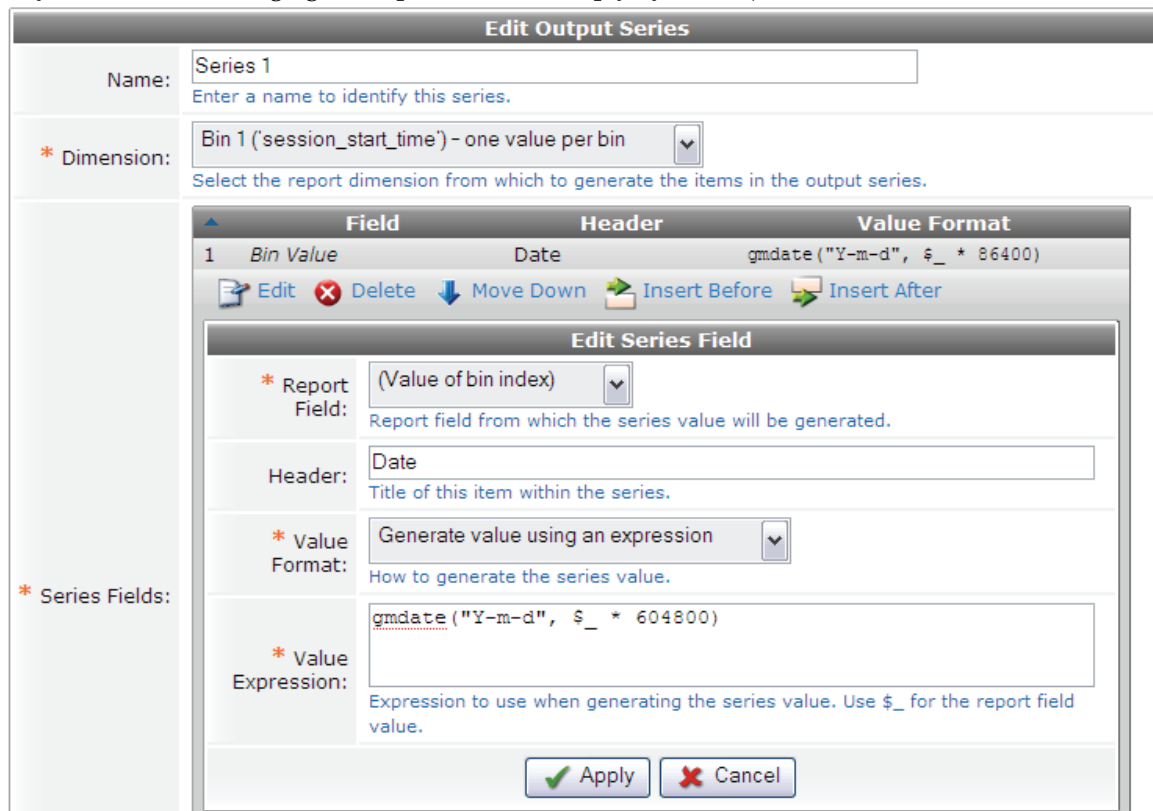
Creating Sample Reports

Report Based on Modifying an Existing Report

This sample involves modifying the predefined Number of users per day report to report on the number of users per week.

1. Select the “Number of users per day” report.
2. Click the  **Edit** link. This opens the Report Editor.
3. Click Report Type in the Report Editor, as you need to change the title of the report to “Number of users per week”. Because you want to report on weekly data, the date range should also be changed to a figure that is divisible by 7. To see the last 6 weeks of user numbers, enter **42** for the date range.
4. Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the Report Editor.
5. Click the Classification option in the Report Editor. The Bin classification needs to be changed from days to weeks. This is done by clicking on the Bin and then clicking the  **Edit** button.
6. The Classification method should be changed to **Time measurement: bin by weeks**. The Bin Offset may be changed to suit your time zone, See “[Binning Example – Time Measurements](#)” in this chapter for more information.
7. Click the  **Save Changes** button.
8. Click the  **Back to report editor** link to return to the Report Editor.

Click the Output Series option because you need to change the formula to calculate in weeks instead of days. This means changing the expression to multiply by 604800, as shown in the screen below.








Edit Output Series

Name:
Enter a name to identify this series.

* Dimension:
Select the report dimension from which to generate the items in the output series.

| Field | Header | Value Format |
|-------------|--------|------------------------------|
| 1 Bin Value | Date | gmdate("Y-m-d", \$_ * 86400) |

 Edit  Delete  Move Down  Insert Before  Insert After



Edit Series Field


* Report Field:
Report field from which the series value will be generated.

Header:
Title of this item within the series.

* Value Format:
How to generate the series value.

* Value Expression:
Expression to use when generating the series value. Use \$_ for the report field value.

 Apply  Cancel

Click the  **Apply** button to make your changes take effect.

Click the  **Save Changes** button at the bottom of the window to save the changes to the output series.

Click the  **Back to report editor** link to return to the Report Editor.

Click **Final Report** to run the report and verify the changes you have made.

Report Created from Report Manager using Create New Report

To create a report that lists today's user sessions, follow this process.

1. To create a new report without it being based on an existing report, click **Create New Report**.
2. You must give the report a Title. For this report, **Today's Sessions** would be an appropriate name.
3. Enable the report by marking the Enabled check box.
4. Ensure that the Date Range is Today and select an Output Format. These changes are shown in the screen below.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Report' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- * Report Type:** Single data source (with a small icon and a link 'The type of this report.')
- * Title:** Today's Sessions (with a link 'Enter the title of this report.')
- Description:** A report of the sessions today. (with a link 'An optional description of this report.')
- Enabled:** ☒ Report is enabled for use and can be run
- * Date Range:** Today (with a dropdown arrow and a link 'Select the default date range for the report.')
- * Formats:** A section titled 'Output Formats' containing three options:
 - ☒ **HTML**
Web page presentation format, for viewing and printing.
 - ☐ **CSV**
Comma-separated values, for data exchange.
 - ☐ **Text**
Plain text format, for simple lists and email.(with a link 'Select the formats of output data that will be generated when running the report.')

At the bottom right of the dialog is a 'Continue' button with a right-pointing arrow.

5. Click the ➡ **Continue** button to move to Step 2.

- Select the required fields in Step 2. For this report the fields are shown in the screen below. These are the fields of interest for the report.

Select Data Source

* Data Source: Local RADIUS Accounting
 The data source to use for this report.

Data Source Explorer
 Examine the fields available in the selected data source.

Fields:

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Field Name | Details | Datatype | Unit |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|--|----------|---------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bytes_in | Bytes In
Total bytes received from the user in this user session | float | bytes |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bytes_out | Bytes Out
Total bytes sent to the user in this user session | float | bytes |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | called_station_id | Called Station ID
Destination of the user session, often the MAC address of the NAS | string | macaddr |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | calling_station_id | Calling Station ID
Origin of the user session, often the MAC address of the user | string | macaddr |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | nas_ip_address | NAS IP Address
IP address of the NAS reporting the session | string | ipaddr |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | nas_port_id | NAS Port ID
Port ID from the NAS reporting the session | string | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | nas_port_type | NAS Port Type
Port type from the NAS reporting the session | string | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | session_start_time | Start Time
Start time of the user session | datetime | utc |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | session_stop_time | Stop Time
Time that the user session completed | datetime | utc |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | session_time | Session Time
Elapsed time in seconds of the user session | float | seconds |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | unique_id | Unique ID
Unique ID of user session with NAS | string | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | user_role | User Role
Name of the user role at the time the session started | string | role |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | username | Username
Authenticated username for user session | string | user |

13 items
 Show all rows

Fields available in the selected data source. Checked source fields are included in the report.

Save Changes

- Click the **Save Changes** button to have the report created. The Report Editor screen is displayed.
- If you click the Final Report option in the Report Editor you can see the report as it is after these two steps.

Today's Sessions

Report generated at 2008-05-29 14:31:43






Date range: **Today** (2008-05-29 00:00:00 to 2008-05-29 14:31:43)

| Bytes In | Bytes Out | Calling Station ID | NAS IP Address | NAS Port ID | Start Time | Session Time | User Role | Username |
|----------|------------|--------------------|----------------|-------------|------------------------|--------------|------------|----------------------|
| 7,929 | 278,825 | 00-17-31-47-DD-23 | 192.168.88.13 | 21 | 2008-05-29 00:45:39+09 | 1,926 | Guest | demo6018@example.com |
| 951,112 | 21,906,354 | 00-17-31-38-49-13 | 192.168.88.12 | 19 | 2008-05-29 01:10:32+09 | 29,002 | Contractor | demo0177@example.com |
| 416,399 | 12,542,501 | 00-17-31-CF-58-9D | 192.168.88.12 | 3 | 2008-05-29 05:31:44+09 | 23,886 | Contractor | demo1600@example.com |
| 104,467 | 725,507 | 00-17-31-A8-32-B6 | 192.168.88.12 | 2 | 2008-05-29 11:41:42+09 | 5,457 | Contractor | demo2363@example.com |
| 183,424 | 3,753,684 | 00-17-31-75-77-9E | 192.168.88.12 | 18 | 2008-05-29 11:54:33+09 | 28,337 | Employee | demo5425@example.com |

9. You can continue to further enhance this report using the Report Editor. To change the formatting of the table you would use the Presentation Options; to remove a column you would use the Output Series option; to restrict the data in the table you would use a filter, for example, a source filter to limit by NAS IP address; a classification group would enable you to carry out statistical analysis, for example, grouping by NAS IP address.

Report Created by Duplicating an Existing Report

To create an Average Traffic Volume per NAS report by duplicating the Average Traffic Volume per User report, you would need to do the following.

1. Select the **Average traffic volume per user** report from the list of reports.
2. Click the  **Duplicate** link. This creates a copy of the report which will be titled **Copy of Average Traffic Volume per User**.
3. Click the **Copy of Average Traffic Volume per User** report.
4. Click the  **Edit** link to open the Report Editor.
5. Click **Report Type** in the Report Editor. You need to change the name of the report and its description. The new report will be called “Average traffic volume per NAS”.
6. Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the Report Editor.
7. Click **Data Source** in the Report Editor. Ensure that you have the correct fields selected. For this new report you need to select the **nas_ip_address** field. You may also want to deselect the **username** field as it will no longer be used.
8. Click the  **Save Changes** button to return to the Report Editor.
9. Click **Statistics** in the Report Editor. The **total_users** field needs to be changed to reflect the change in the report. You may also want to alter the field description.
10. Click the **total_users** field and then click the  **Edit** link.

11. The Source Field will be changed to **nas_ip_address**, as this report is to calculate the average traffic by NAS rather than the average traffic by user. The field will also be renamed to **total_nas** to reflect the new value it will contain. These changes are shown in the screen below.

Quick Help
 Create Statistic

| Type | Field Name | Description | Dimension | Details |
|-----------|-------------|---|-----------|---|
| Statistic | total_users | Total number of distinct users in each time interval. | Bin 1 | Number of distinct values
Source Field: username |

Edit
 Delete

Edit Statistic

* Field Type: Statistic - derived from data
Choose the type of field.

* Field Name: total_nas
Enter a name to use for this field in the report.

Field Description: Total number of distinct nas_ip addresses in each time interval.
Enter a description of this field.

* Calculate Across: Bin 1 ('session_start_time') - one value per bin
Select the classification group over which to compute the statistic or metric.

* Statistic: Number of distinct values
Select the statistic to compute.

* Source Field: nas_ip_address
Select the report source field to use.

Save Changes
 Cancel

* required field

| | | | | |
|-----------|---------------|---|-------|--|
| Statistic | total_bytes | Total bytes sent and received by all users in each time interval. | Bin 1 | Sum of values
Source Field: bytes_io |
| Metric | average_kb | Average traffic volume sent and received per user in each time interval, to the nearest kilobyte. | Bin 1 | Use an expression to calculate value |
| Metric | average_bytes | Average traffic volume sent and received per user, in each time interval. | Bin 1 | Divide (value 1 + value 2)
Fields: total_bytes, total_users |

4 items
 Reload
 20 rows per page

12. Click the **Save Changes** button.
13. Because the **total_users** field is no longer available in the report, the **average_bytes** field must be updated to refer to the **total_nas** field instead. Click the **average_bytes** field, and then click the **Edit** link. Change Value 2 to **total_nas**.
14. Click the **Save Changes** button.
15. Click the **Back to report editor** link to return to the Report Editor.
16. Click **Output Series** in the Report Editor. Select Series 1. The description should be changed. Click the **Edit** link and then click the **average_kb** row.
17. Click the **Edit** link. The Header should be changed to read “NAS Average Traffic (KB)”.
18. Click the **Apply** button.
19. Click the **Save Changes** button at the bottom of the window to save the changes to the output series.

20. Click the  **Back to report editor** link to return to the Report Editor.

21. As there are no further changes required, click the **Final Report** icon to preview your new report.

Report Troubleshooting

Report Preview with Debugging

If you are experiencing problems with your report, you can receive help with the Report Diagnostics. The diagnostics run the report and show you the internal data that is being used to generate the contents of the final report.

The report data store contains all the source data records, organized by classification group, as well as the statistics and metrics calculated from this data.

The report's output series and presentation blocks are generated from the contents of the data store, so if you are not getting the results you expect from the report, this could be because the data store either does not contain the right data, or does not contain the right classification groups. Examining the data store will help you find the cause of the problem.

No Classification Groups

When there are no classification groups, the report data store is a simple list of the source data.

```
array (  
  0 => first data record  
  1 => second data record  
  ...  
)
```

Classification Using Either Bins or Groups

When using either bins or groups, the report data store is indexed by the bin or group number, then the bin or group value.

```
array (  
  0 => /* bin or group 0 */  
  array (  
    123 => /* bin or group value: 123 */  
    array (  
      0 => first data record  
      1 => second data record  
      ...  
    ),  
    234 => /* bin or group value: 234 */  
    array (  
      /* bin items */  
    ),  
  ),  
  1 => /* bin or group 1 */  
  ...  
)
```

Classification Using Both Bins and Groups

When using both bins and groups, the report data store is indexed first by bin and then by group.

```
array (  
  0 => /* bin 0 */  
  array (  
    123 => /* bin value: 123 */  
    array (  
      0 => first data record  
      1 => second data record  
      ...  
    )  
  )  
  ...  
)
```

```

0 => /* group 0 */
array (
  'a' => /* group value: 'a' */
  array (
    0 => first data record
    1 => second data record
    ...
  ),
),
),
234 => /* bin value: 234 */
array (
  /* bin items organized by group */
)
),
1 => /* bin 1 */
...
)

```

Troubleshooting Tips

The following tips may be useful to you when developing new reports.

- **Draw a diagram** – Make a sketch of any charts or tables you want to include in the report. Identifying the necessary contents will help you to select the right data source fields, classification groups and output series.
- **Examine similar reports** – When creating a new report, look at the structure of the predefined reports in order to find a similar report.
- **Ensure you have a time source field** – The first input filter is always used to restrict the time range of the report to an interval that is specified by the user. You must therefore select a time field from the data source to be able to do this filtering.
- **Use only one classification group** – Multiple bin and group classification groups can be defined, but this can complicate the report's structure unnecessarily. To build an easily understood and maintainable report, stick to a single classification bin or group, or the combination of a single bin with a single group.
- **Remove unnecessary fields** – Each record from the data source will have a value for each of the data source fields and derived fields stored in the report data store. When looking at moderate to large data sets, you should remove fields that are not used anywhere in the report. This will improve the speed of the report.
- **Reduce amount of data** – When developing a new report, you may find the process easier if you select a small set of data to use. For example, choose one specific date for the range of the report in the report editor. This will allow you to develop the basic structure of the report. Once you have defined the structure, you can increase the amount of data in the report and shift your focus to the output formatting options.



The Amigopod Administrator provides tools used by a network administrator to perform both the initial configuration and ongoing maintenance of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

Accessing Administrator

Use the Administrator command link on the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance home page to access the system administration features.



Alternatively, use the Administrator navigation menu to jump directly to any of the system administration features.

Network Setup

The Network Setup command allows you to configure the system's network interfaces and other related network parameters. To access network setup and configuration tasks, choose **Administrator > Network Setup** in the left menu.

A summary of the system's current network configuration is displayed on the Network Setup page, and the results of the network connectivity test are shown below the summary. Additional commands on the Network Setup page let you navigate to various network configuration tasks.

Network Summary

| Network Summary | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Hostname: | amigopod.localdomain |
| Primary DNS: | 8.8.8.8 |
| Secondary DNS: | 10.1.1.50 |
| Network interfaces: | 3 of 4 are up |
| Default gateway: | 10.100.9.1 (amigopod.localdomain) |
| Total traffic received: | 3,219,381 packets, 465,668,660 bytes |
| Total traffic sent: | 2,897,092 packets, 586,816,477 bytes |
| Total errors: | 0 |
| Networks: | MGT 10.100.9.69/255.255.255.0
LAN 192.168.9.130/255.255.255.0 |
| HTTP Proxy: | not set |

✓ Default gateway is active. (10.100.9.1)


✓ DNS name resolution verified.

✗ Internet access is not available.

 [Re-run network test](#)

Automatic Network Diagnostics

When you view or edit the appliance's network configuration on the Network Setup, HTTP Proxy, Network Diagnostics, or Network Interfaces page, an automatic network connectivity test determines the current status of the network, and the results of the diagnostic are displayed.

✓ No network problems found.  [Re-run network test](#)

The problems that can be detected with this built-in diagnostic include:

- No default gateway set
- Default gateway is not responding to ICMP echo request
- DNS name resolution is not available
- System services need to be restarted to verify DNS
- HTTP proxy access is not available
- Internet access is not available

System Hostname

The system hostname is a fully-qualified domain name. By default, this is set to **amigopod.localdomain**, but you may specify another valid domain name.

System Hostname

* Hostname:

amigopod.localdomain

Enter the hostname of the system, as a fully-qualified domain name.

Save Changes

* required field



The system hostname should match the common name of the installed SSL certificate. If these names do not match, then HTTPS access to the appliance may result in security warnings from your Web browser.

A valid hostname is a domain name that contains two or more components separated by a period (.).
 Hostname parameters are:

- Each component of the hostname must not exceed 63 characters
- The total length of the hostname must not exceed 255 characters
- Only letters, numbers, and the hyphen (-) and period (.) characters are allowed
- Hostnames may start with numbers, and may contain only numbers

Network Interfaces

The Network Interfaces List lets you view details and configure settings for the system's network interfaces. You can enable and disable network interfaces; change the IP address, static routing, or other configuration items for an interface; and add or remove new network interfaces. To open this page, choose

Administrator > Network Setup > Network Interfaces.

Use the list below to view, define and edit the system's network interfaces.





| Name | Type | Status | IP Address | Netmask |
|---|----------------|-------------|---------------|--------------------|
| LAN | Ethernet | Up, Dynamic | 192.168.9.130 | 255.255.255.0 |
| MGT | Ethernet | Up, Dynamic | 10.100.9.69 | 255.255.255.0 |
| Show Details Edit Routes Bring Down Cycle | | | | |
| loopback | Local Loopback | Up | 127.0.0.1 | 255.0.0.0 |
| sit0 | IPv6-in-IPv4 | Down | | |
| 4 items Reload | | | | 20 rows per page ▼ |

The icons for each network interface indicate its state:

- **Down** – Network interface is disabled
- **Up** – Network interface is enabled
- **Default** – Network interface is enabled, and the current default gateway uses this network interface

Click a network interface in the list to select it. You can then choose from the following actions:

- **Show Details** – Display detailed information and statistics about a network interface.
- **Edit** – Change the configuration of a network interface, including IP address, DNS settings, or Ethernet settings. See **“Changing Network Interface Settings”** in the Administrator Tasks chapter for details.

-  **Delete** – Remove a network interface. Manually created network interfaces may be deleted—for example, tunnel, VLAN, or secondary interfaces. The standard system network interfaces cannot be deleted.
-  **Routes** – Define static routes that specify the gateway IP addresses for other networks.
-  **Bring Down** – Disables the network interface.
-  **Bring Up** – Enables the network interface.





Changing Network Interface Settings

The **Network Interface Settings** form can be used to configure network addressing and other properties of the network interface.



To change the configuration of a network interface, choose **Administrator > Network Setup > Network Interfaces** to display the Network Interfaces List. Click the network interface's row in the list, then click the **Edit** command. The row expands to provide configuration options.

Use the Configuration drop-down list to select the IP address configuration method for the network interface. LAN and MGT network interfaces may be configured for automatic settings using DHCP or BOOTP, or can be manually configured for an IP address. When you choose one of these settings from the Configuration drop-down list, additional options are displayed.

- To configure the network interface using DHCP, select **Automatic settings using DHCP**. When using automatic settings, you can also mark the **Automatically obtain DNS server addresses** check box to use DNS server information provided by the DHCP server.

| Network Interface Settings | |
|--|---|
| Activate: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this interface at boot time |
| * Configuration: | Automatic settings using DHCP 
Select how this network interface will be configured. |
| DNS Settings: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Automatically obtain DNS server addresses |
| MTU: | <input type="text"/>
Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU) value for this network interface. Leave blank to use the system default. |
| Ethernet Settings: | Automatic 
Select Ethernet port settings and auto-negotiation. |
| <div>  Save Changes  Cancel </div> | |

- To specify an IP address for the network interface, select **Manually configure IP address**. The following form is displayed for IP address details.

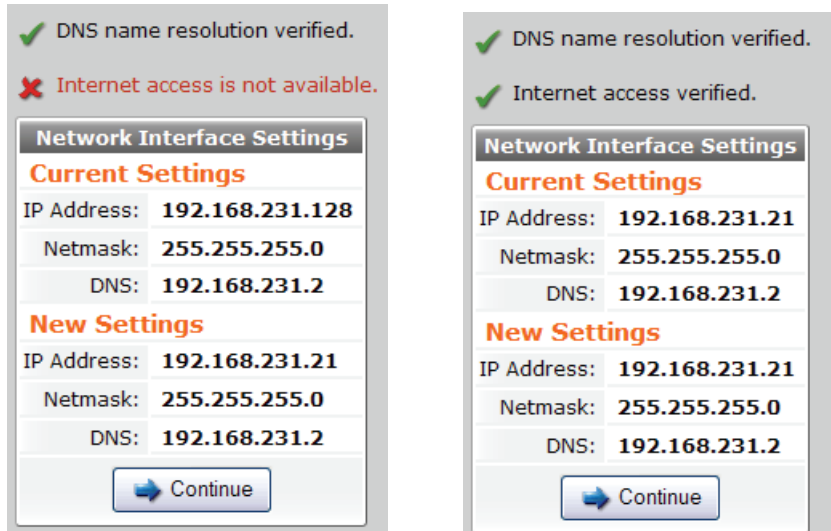
| Network Interface Settings | |
|--|---|
| Activate: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this interface at boot time |
| * Configuration: | Manually configure IP address ▼
<small>Select how this network interface will be configured.</small> |
| IP Address: | <input type="text"/>
<small>The IP address of this network interface.</small> |
| Netmask: | <input type="text"/>
<small>The network address mask for this network interface.</small> |
| Gateway: | <input type="text"/>
<small>Gateway IP address for this network interface.</small> |
| Primary DNS: | <input type="text"/>
<small>The IP address of the primary domain name system (DNS) server.</small> |
| Secondary DNS: | <input type="text"/>
<small>The IP address of the secondary domain name system (DNS) server.</small> |
| MTU: | <input type="text"/>
<small>Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU) value for this network interface. Leave blank to use the system default.</small> |
| Ethernet Settings: | Automatic ▼
<small>Select Ethernet port settings and auto-negotiation.</small> |
| <div>  Save Changes  Cancel </div> | |

The MTU field allows you to specify the Maximum Transfer Unit size in bytes for the network interface. While standard Ethernet uses a MTU of 1500 bytes, you may find it necessary to reduce the MTU slightly in some network topologies. The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance uses a default MTU of 1476 bytes unless otherwise specified in this form.

The Ethernet Settings field specifies the physical layer link parameters to use for this network interface. You may select one of the following:

- **Automatic** uses link auto-negotiation to determine the best available speed. This is the recommended setting.
- 1000 Mbit, full duplex
- 100 Mbit, full or half duplex
- 10 Mbit, full or half duplex

Click the  **Save Changes** button to update the network interface with the specified settings. The new settings will be tested and the results of the test displayed.




Two screenshots of the Network Interface Settings form. The left screenshot shows a status message: "Internet access is not available." with a red X icon. The right screenshot shows a status message: "Internet access verified." with a green checkmark icon. Both screenshots show the following settings:

| Network Interface Settings | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Current Settings | |
| IP Address: | 192.168.231.128 |
| Netmask: | 255.255.255.0 |
| DNS: | 192.168.231.2 |
| New Settings | |
| IP Address: | 192.168.231.21 |
| Netmask: | 255.255.255.0 |
| DNS: | 192.168.231.2 |

Both screenshots have a "Continue" button at the bottom.

- If DNS name resolution is not working, the system will be unable to perform many common tasks. To resolve this issue, check the DNS server settings for the network interface. If you are using DHCP, check that your DHCP server provides DNS server information, and enable this option for the network interface. If you are assigning network addresses manually, check that you have provided the correct DNS server addresses.
- If DNS name resolution is working, but Internet access is not available, the system will not be able to check for updates. To resolve this issue, check that the correct gateway address is configured.

Click the  **Continue** button to apply the new network settings. If the appliance's IP address has changed, you will be automatically redirected to the new IP address. If the computer you are using to configure the appliance does not have suitable network settings to access the new IP address, the redirect will fail. You can update your computer's network settings and then click the Refresh icon in your Web browser to reconnect.

About default gateway settings

When more than one default gateway is set, the interface with the lowest "metric" takes priority.

The default metric for each network interface is set as follows:


Table 24 *Default Interface Settings*


| Interface | Adapter Name | Default Metric |
|-----------|--------------|----------------|
| MGT | eth0 | 1 |
| LAN | eth1 | 11 |


These values cannot be changed through the **Network Interface Settings** form.


In practice, this means that any default gateway set for the MGT port will be used by default. To use a default gateway configured for the LAN port, a default gateway for the MGT port must not be configured.


Managing Static Routes


In the Network Interfaces list view, click the network interface to edit, and then click  **Routes**. The Network Interface Routes list view will be displayed.


 Quick Help


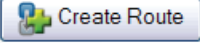
 Create


| IP Address | Netmask | Gateway |
|---|---------------|---------------|
|  10.11.1.0 | 255.255.255.0 | 192.168.2.106 |




1 route  Reload

20 rows per page 

Click the  **Create** tab to add a new static route. You must specify the network address of the destination network as an IP address and netmask, and the gateway for the destination network. The gateway IP address must be reachable directly from the network interface.

| Interface Route Editor | |
|---|---|
| Device Name: | eth0 |
| Device Address: | 192.168.2.102 |
| Device Netmask: | 255.255.255.0 |
| * IP Address: | <input type="text"/>
<small>The IP address of this network route.</small> |
| * Netmask: | <input type="text"/> 
<small>The network address mask for this network route.</small> |
| * Gateway: | <input type="text"/>
<small>Gateway IP address for this network route.</small> |
|  | |

Click the  **Create Route** button to add the route. Changes made to the routing table entries are applied immediately.

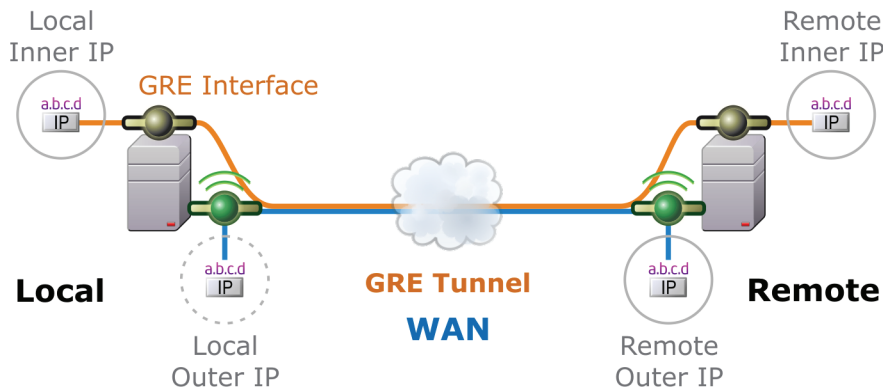
To manage existing routing entries, click the entry in the table. The  **Edit** link may be used to modify the settings for a routing entry. Click  **Delete** to remove a routing entry. Click  **Test Gateway** to verify that the gateway IP address is reachable via an ICMP ping.

Creating a Tunnel Network Interface


The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance supports creating a generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnel. This protocol can be used to create a virtual point-to-point link over a standard IP network or the Internet.

The following figure shows how the local and remote servers are connected using the tunnel, and where the inner and outer IP addresses for the tunnel are used. **See Figure 40.**

Figure 40 Network diagram showing IP addressing for a GRE tunnel



To create a GRE tunnel, navigate to the Network Interfaces page and click the  **Create a tunnel network interface** link. The **Network Interface Settings** form is displayed.

| Network Interface Settings | |
|---|--|
| * Tunnel Type: | <div>GRE Tunnel</div> <div>Select the type of tunnel interface.</div> |
| * Interface Name: | <div>gre1</div> <div>Enter a name for the system's network interface.</div> |
| Display Name: | <div></div> <div>Enter an optional name for the tunnel interface.
This will be used to identify the tunnel in the list of network interfaces.</div> |
| * Local Inner IP: | <div></div> <div>The local IP address of the tunnel network interface.</div> |
| * Remote Outer IP: | <div></div> <div>The IP address of the remote tunnel endpoint.</div> |
| Local Outer IP: | <div></div> <div>The IP address of the local tunnel endpoint.
Leave blank to have the system choose an IP address automatically.</div> |
| Remote Inner IP: | <div></div> <div>The remote IP address of the tunnel network interface.
Enter a value here to automatically create a route to this address through the tunnel.</div> |
| Activate: | <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this interface</div> |
| <div> Create Interface</div> | |

The Interface Name is the system's internal name for this tunnel interface. A default value is supplied, which may be used without modification. A Display Name may be specified to identify the connection in the list of network interfaces.


The IP address settings for the GRE tunnel must be specified in order for it to be created successfully.

Select the **Enable this interface** check box to activate the tunnel interface immediately after it has been created.

Click the  **Create Interface** button to add the new tunnel interface.

Creating a VLAN Interface

Navigate to **Administrator > Network Setup > Network Interfaces** to view the list of interfaces currently configured on the system.

Use the  **Create a VLAN interface** link to create a new network interface with a specific VLAN tag. The **Create a New VLAN** form is displayed.

Create a new VLAN

* Physical Interface:

MGT (192.168.2.88)

Select the physical port on which to create the VLAN interface.

* VLAN Name:

Guest

Enter a name for the VLAN interface.
This will be used to identify the VLAN in the list of network interfaces.


* VLAN ID:

100 (1 – 4094)

Enter the 802.1Q VLAN identifier.

Create VLAN

In this form, select the physical interface through which the VLAN traffic will be routed, and enter a name for the VLAN and the corresponding VLAN ID. Use a descriptive name for the VLAN Name field, as this is only used by administrators to identify the network interface. The corresponding VLAN ID is used by the network infrastructure to identify a specific virtual LAN. You can enter a value between 1 and 4094 inclusive. The VLAN ID cannot be changed after the VLAN interface has been created. To specify a different VLAN IDs, you will need to create a new VLAN interface.








Click the  **Create VLAN** button to create a new network interface with the corresponding VLAN identifier.

Your network infrastructure must support tagged 802.1Q packets on the physical interface selected. VLAN ID 1 is often reserved for use by certain network management components; avoid using this ID unless you know it will not conflict with a VLAN already defined in your network.

Managing VLAN Interfaces

After creating a VLAN interface, you will be returned to the Network Interfaces list view to edit the properties of the new interface.







VLAN network interfaces have the same properties as a physical network interface. Refer to the *Amigopod Deployment Guide* or the online help for additional details about setting the properties for the interface.








| Name | Type | Status | IP Address | Netmask |
|---|----------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|
|  Guest VLAN | Ethernet | Up, VLAN 5 | 192.168.5.22 | 255.255.255.0 |
|  Staff VLAN | Ethernet | Up, VLAN 10 | 192.168.10.22 | 255.255.255.0 |
|  MGT | Ethernet | Up, Dynamic | 192.168.2.102 | 255.255.255.0 |
|  LAN | Ethernet | Up, Dynamic | 192.168.231.145 | 255.255.255.0 |
|  loopback | Local Loopback | Up | 127.0.0.1 | 255.0.0.0 |
|  sit0 | IPv6-in-IPv4 | Down | | |
| <div>6 items  Reload</div> <div>20 rows per page</div> | | | | |








The VLAN Name that is displayed in the list of network interfaces may be modified here. See [“Changing Network Interface Settings”](#) in this chapter for details about the remaining network interface settings, which may be configured for a VLAN interface in the same way as a physical network interface.

VLAN interfaces are distinguished from other network interfaces with blue icons. The possible states for the system's network interfaces are summarized in the table below

Table 25 *Network Interface States*


| Interface State | Physical | VLAN |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| Active (up) |  |  |
| Active with default gateway |  |  |
| Inactive (down) |  |  |



| | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|---|
|  Guest VLAN | Ethernet | Up, VLAN 5 | 192.168.5.22 | 255.255.255.0 | |
|  Show Details |  Edit |  Routes |  Delete |  Bring Down |  Cycle |

-  **Show Details** – Displays detailed information and statistics about the network interface.
-  **Edit** – Change the configuration of the VLAN interface, including IP address, DNS settings, MTU, and whether to enable the interface when the system starts.
-  **Routes** – Define static routes that specify the gateway IP addresses for other networks.
-  **Delete** – Removes the VLAN interface.
-  **Bring Up** – Enables the VLAN interface.
-  **Bring Down** – Disables the VLAN interface.
-  **Cycle** – Disables and re-enables the VLAN interface. This operation may be used to renew a DHCP lease.


Creating a Secondary Network Interface

A secondary network interface is a secondary IP address assigned to a physical network interface. The secondary network interface is displayed as a separate logical network interface.








From the Network Interfaces page, click the  **Create a secondary network interface** link. The **Create Secondary Interface** form will be displayed.

| Create Secondary Interface | |
|---|--|
| * Physical Interface: | <div>MGT (192.168.2.88) </div> <div>Select the physical port on which to add the secondary interface.</div> |
| * Configuration: | <div>Manually configure IP address</div> <div>Select how this network interface will be configured.</div> |
| * IP Address: | <div>192.168.2.89</div> <div>The IP address of this network interface.</div> |
| * Netmask: | <div>255.255.255.0</div> <div>The network address mask for this network interface.</div> |
| Activate: | <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this interface</div> |
| <div> Create Interface</div> | |

A secondary IP address must be a statically configured IP address. It is not possible to configure more than one IP address using DHCP on the same network interface.

Click the  **Create Interface** button to create a new secondary interface with the specified IP address. The network interface will appear in the list and will be automatically brought up.

Secondary network interfaces have the same name as the underlying physical interface, with a suffix such as “:1”, “:2” and so on for each subsequent IP address created.


| | | | | |
|---|----------|----|--------------|---------------|
|  MGT | Ethernet | Up | 192.168.2.88 | 255.255.255.0 |
|  MGT:1 | Ethernet | Up | 192.168.2.89 | 255.255.255.0 |
|  Show Details  Edit  Delete  Bring Down  Cycle | | | | |

All secondary interfaces will be brought down if the corresponding physical interface is brought down.

Login Access Control

Both guests and operators may use HTTP or HTTPS to access the Amigopod user interface. The system does not distinguish between these types of users at the protocol level. Authentication and role based access control is used to identify operators and their level of access to the system.

For security reasons, it may be desirable to prevent guests from obtaining login access to the administrator user interface. This may be achieved by first ensuring that guests and operators are using different network address ranges, and then defining those networks in the **Network Login Access** form. To access this form, navigate to **Administrator > Network Setup** then click the **Network Login Access** command link.

| Network Login Access | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Security: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require HTTPS for operator login access
If checked, HTTP access by operators will be redirected to use HTTPS instead. |
| Security: | <input type="checkbox"/> Require HTTPS for guest access
If checked, HTTP access by guests will be redirected to use HTTPS instead. |
| Allowed Access: | <div></div>
Enter the IP addresses and networks from which operator logins are permitted. |
| Denied Access: | <div></div>
Enter the IP addresses and networks that are denied operator login access. |
| * Deny Behavior: | Show Access Denied page 
Select the response of the system to a request that is not permitted. |
| <div>Save Changes</div> | |

The login access rules that have been defined will only apply to the components of the system that require an operator login. Guest specific pages that do not require an operator login are not affected by any allow/deny rules and are always available, regardless of the IP address used to access them.

The **Network Login Access** form also controls the access restrictions used for SSH console access, if it is enabled. See **“Changing Network Security Settings”** in this chapter for more information about remote console access via SSH.

The ‘Allowed Access’ and ‘Denied Access’ fields are access control lists that determine if an operator is permitted to view the login page. You can specify multiple IP addresses and networks, one per line, using the following syntax:

- **1.2.3.4** – IP address
- **1.2.3.4/24** – IP address with network prefix length
- **1.2.3.4/255.255.255.0** – IP address with explicit network mask

The 'Deny Behavior' drop-down list may be used to specify the action to take when access is denied.

The access control rules will be applied in order, from the most specific match to the least specific match.

Access control entries are more specific when they match fewer IP addresses. The most specific entry is a single IP address (for example, **1.2.3.4**), while the least specific entry is the match-all address of **0.0.0.0/0**.

As another example, the network address **192.168.2.0/24** is less specific than a smaller network such as **192.168.2.192/26**, which in turn is less specific than the IP address **192.168.2.201** (which may also be written as **192.168.2.201/32**).

To determine the result of the access control list, the most specific rule that matches the client's IP address is used. If the matching rule is in the Denied Access list, then the client will be denied access. If the matching rule is in the Allowed Access list, then the client will be permitted access.

If the Allowed Access list is empty, all access will be allowed, except to clients with an IP address that matches any of the entries in the Denied Access list. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the Allowed Access list.

If the Denied Access list is empty, only clients with an IP address that matches one of the entries in the Allowed Access list will be allowed access. This behavior is equivalent to adding the entry **0.0.0.0/0** to the Denied Access list.

For example, assuming that visitors are assigned IP addresses in the **10.1.0.0/16** network, and operators are using the **192.168.88.0/24** network:

- If the 'Allowed' list is empty and the 'Denied' list contains **10.1.0.0/16**, operator logins will be permitted to all IP addresses other than those on the guest network.

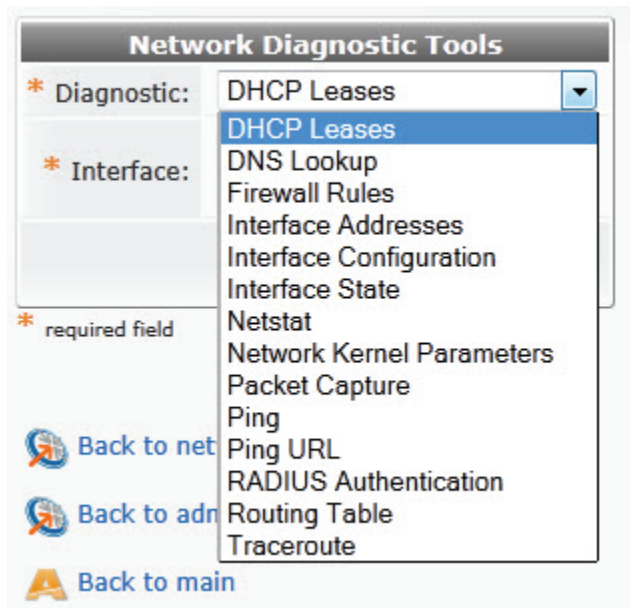
For greater security, the operator logins may be restricted more explicitly:

- If the 'Allowed' list is set to **192.168.88.0/24**, and the 'Denied' list is set to **0.0.0.0/0**, operators may only access the system from the specified network.
- Guest self-registration is still permitted regardless of guest IP address.

The 'Deny Behavior' drop-down list may be used to specify the action to take when access is denied.

Network Diagnostic Tools

A number of built-in diagnostic tools are available to verify different aspects of your network's configuration. To view these tools, navigate to **Administrator > Network Setup**, then click the **Network Diagnostics** command link.



Select a diagnostic from the drop-down list. Depending on the diagnostic you have selected, additional parameters will also be available:

- **DHCP Leases** – Select a network interface to view the DHCP lease information for that interface.
- **DNS Lookup** – Enter a hostname to perform a domain name lookup and display the results.
- **Firewall Rules** – Displays the iptables firewall rules that are currently in effect.
- **Interface Addresses** – Displays all active IP addresses and interface details.
- **Interface Configuration** – Select a network interface to view the system settings for that interface. The information displayed includes physical layer parameters such as port auto-negotiation, speed, duplex, packet and byte counters; data link layer parameters including the hardware address; and network layer parameters including IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
- **Interface State** – Displays a summary of all network interfaces and the internal state of each interface.
- **Netstat** – Displays a list of currently open TCP and UDP sockets.
- **Network Kernel Parameters** – Displays a list of system configuration settings related to networking. If required, these settings can be changed using the system configuration parameters (sysctl) editor; See [“Changing Network Security Settings”](#) for details.
- **Packet Capture** – Sets up packet capturing. See [“Network Diagnostics – Packet Capturing”](#) for more information.
- **Ping** – Enter a hostname or IP address to test connectivity using an ICMP echo request. The test will take approximately 5 seconds to run.
- **Ping URL** – Enter a URL to test connectivity using a HTTP request. Only the headers for the specified Internet resource are retrieved. This test can be used to verify Internet connectivity, or that your HTTP proxy settings are correct.
- **RADIUS Authentication** – Enter a username and password to test the results of a RADIUS Access-Request. Values for the NAS-IP-Address and NAS-Port RADIUS attributes may be specified using this

form. Additional RADIUS attributes may also be included by adding Attribute-Name = Value pairs in the Extra Arguments field; see the example below.

| Network Diagnostic Tools | |
|--------------------------|---|
| * Diagnostic: | RADIUS Authentication |
| * Username: | testuser
<small>The visitor account username for the authentication test.</small> |
| * Password: |
<small>The visitor account password for the authentication test.</small> |
| NAS IP Address: |
<small>The value to use as the NAS IP address.</small> |
| NAS Port: | 0
<small>The value to use as the NAS port.</small> |
| Extra Arguments: | <div>Framed-IP-Address = 10.11.22.33
Framed-Netmask = 255.255.255.0</div> <small>Enter a list of arguments to send, using the format Name = Value. One pair per line.</small> |
| <div>Run</div> | |

* required field

```
Sending Access-Request of id 226 to 127.0.0.1 port 1812
  User-Name = "testuser"
  User-Password = "password"
  Framed-IP-Address = 10.11.22.33
  Framed-Netmask = 255.255.255.0
rad_recv: Access-Accept packet from host 127.0.0.1:1812, id=226,
```

- **Routing Table** – Displays the current IPv4 routing table. The list shows the static, network addresses and default routes configured for the system.
- **Traceroute** – Enter a hostname or IP address to determine the route that packets traverse to that host. The test may take a considerable amount of time (30 seconds or more), depending on network conditions.

Network Diagnostics – Packet Capturing



The Packet Capture network diagnostic can be used to capture network traffic for in-depth debugging of network issues. To access the Network Diagnostics tools for Packet Capturing, click the **Network Diagnostics** command link on the **Administrator > Network Setup** page.


| Network Diagnostic Tools | |
|--|---|
| * Diagnostic: | Packet Capture ▼ |
| * Interface: | eth0 (192.168.2.102) ▼
<small>Select the interface to diagnose.</small> |
| Service: | Custom... ▼ |
| * Protocol: | Any ▼
<small>Select the desired protocol.</small> |
| Port: | <input type="text"/>
<small>TCP/UDP ports to filter. Can be a single port or a port range (i.e. 1812-1814)</small> |
| Source IP: | <input type="text"/>
<small>Match the packet's source address.</small> |
| Destination IP: | <input type="text"/>
<small>Match the packet's destination address.</small> |
| Records: | 100
<small>Total number of packets to capture.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="➡ Capture"/> | |


Select the network interface and, if required, enter filtering parameters to restrict the type and number of packets to be captured.


You can enter network addresses in the Source IP and Destination IP fields by using an IP address and a network address length; for example, **192.168.2.0/24**.

Click the ➡ **Capture** button to begin the packet capture operation. While packet capturing is in effect, the status of the packet capture is displayed as part of the **Network Diagnostics** form.

| Network Diagnostic Tools | |
|---|--|
| * Diagnostic: | Packet Capture |
| Packet Count: | 100 |
| Last Message: | tcpdump: listening on eth0, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 65535 bytes
100 packets captured
102 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel |
| Download: |  Download packet capture file |
| * Delete: | <input type="checkbox"/> Delete current packet capture file
A packet capture file currently exists. |
| * Interface: | eth0 (192.168.2.102)
Select the interface to diagnose. |
| Service: | Custom... |
| * Protocol: | Any
Select the desired protocol. |
| Port: | <input type="text"/>
TCP/UDP ports to filter. Can be a single port or a port range (i.e. 1812-1814) |
| Source IP: | 192.168.2.0/24
Match the packet's source address. |
| Destination IP: | 192.168.2.0/24
Match the packet's destination address. |
| Records: | 100
Total number of packets to capture. |
|  Capture | |

Once the packet capture has completed, the status is updated, and a link to  **Download packet capture file** is available. Click this link to download a packet capture file, which may be analyzed using the [Wireshark](#) utility or another tool capable of reading the “pcap” file format.

To delete the saved file, select the **Delete current packet capture file** check box and click the  **Delete** button.

To start another packet capture, modify the filtering parameters if required and click the  **Capture** button.

Network Hosts

The built-in hosts file may be edited, to make resolving hostnames easier in certain situations, or to work around DNS issues that may be present in a complex network. To manage and view the current host configuration, click the **Network Hosts** command link on the **Administrator > Network Setup** page.

The hosts file is a simple text file that associates IP addresses with hostnames. Each line of the file should contain one IP address.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses may be entered.

Comments may be entered on lines that begin with a # character.

For each host a single line should be present with the following information:

```
IP_address canonical_hostname [aliases...]
```

The fields on each line are separated by any number of blanks or tab characters. Any text from a # character to the end of the line is a comment, and is ignored.

Hostnames may contain only alphanumeric characters, minus signs (“-”), and periods (“.”). A hostname must begin with an alphabetic character and end with an alphanumeric character.



After making changes in the Hosts field, click the  **Save Changes** button to update the system’s hosts file.

HTTP Proxy Configuration

If your network requires the use of a HTTP proxy to access the internet, the proxy’s details should be entered on this form. To manage and view the current HTTP Proxy configuration click the **HTTP Proxy** command link on the **Administrator > Network Setup** page.



Common port numbers for HTTP proxy access are 3128 and 8080. These port numbers can be specified in the Proxy URL. For example, **http://192.168.88.30:3128/** is a valid proxy URL with a port specification. The default port is 80 if not otherwise specified.

For proxies that require authentication, a username and password must also be supplied.

SNMP Configuration

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) may be used to obtain system information and perform management tasks in a distributed network environment. To manage and view the current SNMP configuration click the **SNMP Configuration** command link on the **Administrator > Network Setup** page.

The **SNMP Setup** form is used to configure the system's SNMP server and enable SNMP access.

| SNMP Configuration | |
|--------------------|--|
| * SNMP Mode: | <div>Off</div> <div>Select the SNMP mode.</div> |
| * System Contact: | <div>System Admin</div> <div>Enter contact information for the system administrator.
This information will be available in the "system" MIB.</div> |
| * System Location: | <div>System Location</div> <div>Enter a description of the system's location.
This information will be available in the "system" MIB.</div> |
| Allowed Access: | <div></div> <div>Enter a list of the IP addresses and networks from which SNMP access is permitted, one per line.</div> |

To enable SNMP access, one of the available modes must be selected. Version 2c, version 3, or both versions may be enabled.

The System Contact and System Location parameters are basic SNMP "system" MIB parameters that are frequently used to identify network equipment. See **"Supported MIBs"** in this chapter for a list of supported MIBs.

To restrict access to the SNMP server, a list of IP address and networks may be provided from which SNMP access will be permitted. Network addresses may be specified using either a network prefix length (for example, **1.2.3.4/24**) or a network mask (for example, **1.2.3.4/255.255.255.0**).

If the Allowed Access field is left blank, all IP addresses will be able to perform SNMP queries. It is recommended that you enter either the IP address of your network management station or the network address of your management network in order to prevent guest access to the SNMP server.

| SNMP v2c | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Options related to SNMP version 2c. | |
| * Read-Only Community String: | <div>*****</div> <div>Enter the read-only community string.
Clients must be configured with the same community string to gain access to SNMP services.</div> |


SNMP version 2c has only one configuration option, which is the name of the community string. SNMP clients must provide this value in order to access the server. The default community string is **public**.

| | |
|--|---|
| SNMP v3
Options related to SNMP version 3. | |
| Encrypt Session: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Encrypt the session when using SNMP v3
Ensure your client can support DES encryption. Generally known as "priv" or "authPriv". |
| * Read-Only Username: | <input type="text"/>
Enter the SNMPv3 read-only username. |
| * Read-Only Password: | <input type="text"/>
Enter the SNMPv3 read-only password. |

SNMP version 3 adds authentication and encryption capabilities to the protocol. You must supply a set of credentials to be used for SNMP v3 access. You can also select whether encryption should be used.

| | |
|---|--|
| Traps
Options related to sending SNMP trap notification messages. | |
| Trap Server: | <input type="text"/>
Enter the hostname or IP address of a server capable of receiving SNMP v2 traps. |
| Trap Community String: | <input type="text"/>
Enter the community string for traps. |

Traps are notification messages sent when certain conditions are reached. A trap server and community string may be provided. Currently there are no defined SNMP trap messages.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new SNMP server settings. The settings will take effect immediately.

Supported MIBs

The SNMP server currently supports the following MIBs:

- DISMAN-EVENT-MIB
- HOST-RESOURCES-MIB
- IF-MIB
- IP-FORWARD-MIB
- IP-MIB
- IPV6-MIB
- MTA-MIB
- NET-SNMP-AGENT-MIB
- NET-SNMP-EXTEND-MIB
- NOTIFICATION-LOG-MIB
- RFC1213-MIB
- SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB
- SNMP-MPD-MIB
- SNMP-TARGET-MIB
- SNMP-USER-BASED-SM-MIB
- SNMPv2-MIB

- SNMP-VIEW-BASED-ACM-MIB
- TCP-MIB
- UCD-DISKIO-MIB
- UCD-DLMOD-MIB
- UCD-SNMP-MIB
- UDP-MIB

SMTP Configuration

The **SMTP Configuration** form is used to provide system default settings used when sending email messages. To manage and view the current SMTP configuration click the **SMTP Configuration** command link on the **Administrator > Network Setup** page.

See “[SMTP Services](#)” in the Guest Management chapter for additional configuration options for SMTP services.

| SMTP Configuration | |
|---|---|
| Mail Transfer Settings
Configure the options used to send a mail message. | |
| Local MTA: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Sendmail
If checked, Sendmail will be used as the mail transfer agent (MTA). |
| * From Address: | <input type="text" value="noreply@amigopod.localdomain"/>
Enter the email address from which mail will be sent. |
| Additional Headers: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 80px; width: 100%;"></div> (Advanced) Provide any additional SMTP headers, one per line.
Use the format 'Header: Value'. |
| Test Mail Settings
Send a test mail message. | |
| To: | <input type="text"/>
To send a test message, enter the recipient's address. |
| Message: | <div>Plain text ▼</div> Select a test message to send. |
| <div> <input type="button" value="Send Test Message"/> <input type="button" value="Save and Close"/> </div> | |

The built-in Sendmail mail transfer agent may be used to deliver email directly. This option requires that the server have outbound internet access using port 25.


Alternatively, you may configure an outbound mail server to which messages will be delivered. This option does not require outbound internet access. You can also specify the credentials to use if your mail server requires authentication.


| | |
|----------------|--|
| * SMTP Server: | <input type="text"/>
The IP address or hostname of the outbound mail server. |
| * Port: | <div>25 <input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL encryption</div> The port number to use. Default SMTP port is 25, or 465 for SSL connections. |
| Username: | <input type="text"/>
If your SMTP server requires authentication, enter the username here.
Leave this field blank if authentication is not required. |
| Password: | <input type="text"/>
If your SMTP server requires authentication, enter the password here. |

The From Address must be specified. This is the sender of the email and will be visible to all email recipients. It is recommended that you provide a valid email address so that guests receiving email receipts are able to contact you.

When using the SMTP Server option, the following special header values are recognized:

- **X-Smtp-Timeout** – Sets the timeout for SMTP server operations in seconds (minimum 5; the default is system defined)
- **X-Smtp-Debug** – Set to 1 to enable a debugging mode, where log messages are displayed on the test screen. **Note:** Do not use this setting in a production environment.

Click the  **Send Test Message** button to send an email to a test email address in the selected format. This can be used to verify the SMTP configuration, as well as check the delivery of HTML formatted emails.

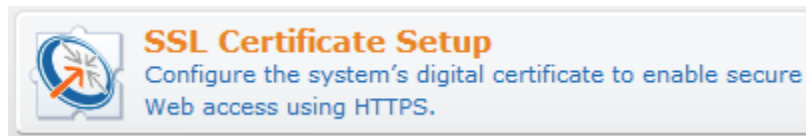
Click the  **Save and Close** button to save the updated SMTP configuration.





SSL Certificate

The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is a cryptographic protocol that enables secure communications across a potentially insecure network. The security guarantees offered by the protocol include both privacy (so that the content of communications cannot be intercepted or modified), and authentication (so that the identity of the server can be verified). The public key infrastructure (PKI) that provides these guarantees is based on the X.509 standard for digital certificates.

To manage and view SSL certificates, click the **SSL Certificate Setup** command link on the **Administrator > Network Setup** page.






If you already have a valid digital certificate for this server, it may be uploaded and used directly. The  **SSL Certificate Install** command is used to do this. See “[SSL Certificate](#)” in this chapter for details.

If you do not have a digital certificate, you must first create a certificate signing request using the  **SSL Certificate Request** command. The certificate signing request should then be provided to a certification authority, which will create the actual digital certificate. See “[Requesting an SSL Certificate](#)” in this chapter for more details.

Requesting an SSL Certificate

Use the **New Certificate Request** form to create a new certificate signing request.

If you have already created a certificate signing request, the **New Certificate Request** form will not be displayed. You are presented with these options instead:

-  **Download the current server certificate** – Downloads the current SSL certificate to your Web browser. This command can be used to back up an installed SSL certificate.
-  **Install a signed certificate** – See “[Installing an SSL Certificate](#)” in this chapter for details on installing an SSL certificate.
-  **Create a new CSR** – Displays the New Certificate Request form and allows you to start over.


You can also use the **New Certificate Request** form to create and install a self-signed certificate for the SSL hostname you specify. Self-signed certificates allow for the connection to the server to be secured, but Web browsers will display security warnings as the issuer of the certificate is not trusted.

A completed sample certificate request is shown below.

| New Certificate Request | |
|--|---|
| Certificate Details
These details are used to create a Distinguished Name for the digital certificate. | |
| * Country: | <input type="text" value="AU"/>
Enter the 2-letter ISO country code of your country. |
| * State: | <input type="text" value="New South Wales"/>
Enter the full name of your state or province. |
| * Locality: | <input type="text" value="North Sydney"/>
Enter the name of your locality (town or city). |
| * Organization: | <input type="text" value="amigopod"/>
Enter the name of your organization or company. |
| Organizational Unit: | <input type="text"/>
Enter the name of your organizational unit (e.g. section or division of the company). |
| * SSL Host: | <input type="text" value="demo.amigopod.com"/>
Enter the hostname of your SSL server. This is the 'common name' of the digital certificate. |
| * Email Address: | <input type="text" value="info@amigopod.com"/>
Enter an email address. |
| Advanced Options
Adjust technical parameters related to the digital certificate. (Advanced) | |
| Sign Certificate: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create and install a self-signed certificate
Select this option to create a temporary self-signed certificate.
This certificate can be used until you receive a signed certificate from the certification authority (CA). |
| * Private Key: | <input type="text" value="1024-bit RSA"/>
Select the type of private key to create for this certificate request. |
| * Digest Algorithm: | <input type="text" value="SHA-1"/>
Select the algorithm used to sign the digital certificate request. |
| Server Software: | Apache
The certificate authority may need to know the type of server this certificate is for. |
| <input type="button" value="✔ Create Certificate Request"/> | |

Click the  **Create Certificate Request** button to generate the certificate signing request.

The certificate signing request is displayed in a text field in the browser. This can be used to copy and paste the request directly to a certificate authority that supports this form of request submission.

Alternatively, you may click the  **Download the current CSR** link to download a **.csr** file to your browser. This file should be sent to your certificate authority to be signed and converted into a digital certificate.

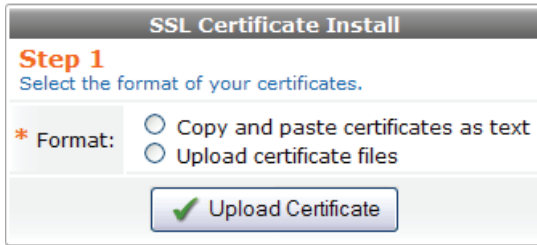
Some certificate authorities will also request the type of server that the certificate is to be used for, or will make the certificate available in several different formats. You should choose a certificate for the “Apache” Web server.

Changing the SSL certificate requires the system’s Web server to be restarted. You will be prompted to do this with the message “system services need to be restarted due to configuration changes.”

Installing an SSL Certificate

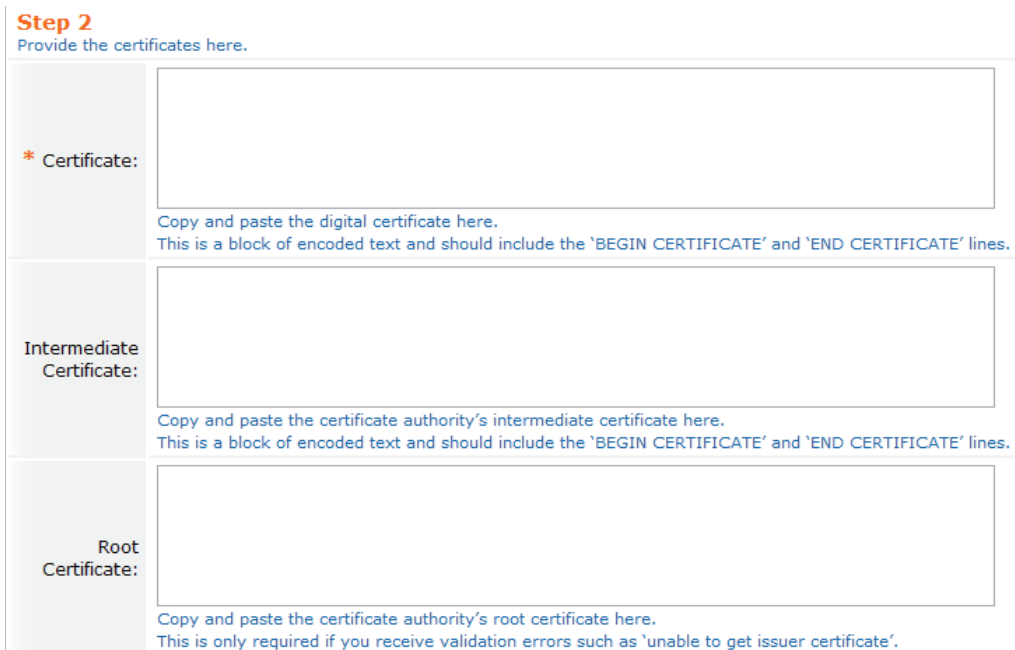
To install an SSL certificate, use the **SSL Certificate Install** form.

The process for installing an SSL certificate has been simplified. In the first step, select whether you will be copying and pasting the certificate as plain text, or uploading the certificate from a file.



The screenshot shows a web form titled "SSL Certificate Install". Under "Step 1", the instruction is "Select the format of your certificates." There are two radio button options: "Copy and paste certificates as text" and "Upload certificate files". Below these is a button with a green checkmark icon and the text "Upload Certificate".

In the second step, you must provide between one and three items of information:




The screenshot shows the "Step 2" form with the instruction "Provide the certificates here." It contains three text input fields. The first field is labeled "* Certificate:" and has a note below it: "Copy and paste the digital certificate here. This is a block of encoded text and should include the 'BEGIN CERTIFICATE' and 'END CERTIFICATE' lines." The second field is labeled "Intermediate Certificate:" and has a note below it: "Copy and paste the certificate authority's intermediate certificate here. This is a block of encoded text and should include the 'BEGIN CERTIFICATE' and 'END CERTIFICATE' lines." The third field is labeled "Root Certificate:" and has a note below it: "Copy and paste the certificate authority's root certificate here. This is only required if you receive validation errors such as 'unable to get issuer certificate'."

- The **Certificate** field must contain the digital certificate. This can be a file containing a base-64 representation of the certificate, or it can be a block of text that contains the certificate.
Your certificate authority will provide this certificate to you. If required, select the Apache format to ensure that you receive the certificate in the correct format (PEM, or a base-64 encoded version of the certificate).
When copying and pasting a certificate, ensure that you include the beginning and ending lines of the certificate; these are `-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----` and `-----END CERTIFICATE-----`.
- The **Intermediate Certificate** is optional, but is typically required for many public certificate authorities. The reason for this is that the certificate authority's root certificate is not used to sign your certificate directly; rather, the root certificate is used to issue one or more intermediate certificates, which are then used to sign the issued certificates.
Your certificate authority will provide this certificate to you. Check your certificate authority's "How To" instructions for details on obtaining the intermediate certificate. Often, it is available from the same page where you downloaded your certificate.
- The **Root Certificate** is optional, and is not required for many public certificate authorities. When you install your server's certificate, the certificate and its issuing intermediate certificate will be verified against a list of **trusted root** certificates, many of which are pre-installed.
You will need to provide a root certificate only if you receive a validation error when attempting to install your certificate.

This validation error is typically displayed as a message that includes the statement "unable to get local issuer certificate".

To resolve this error, first check that you have provided the correct intermediate certificate. If the problem persists, check with your certificate authority for the appropriate root certificate to use.

As an optional third step, if you have a private key that corresponds to the SSL certificate, it may be specified separately. This is only required if you did not generate the certificate signing request on the server.

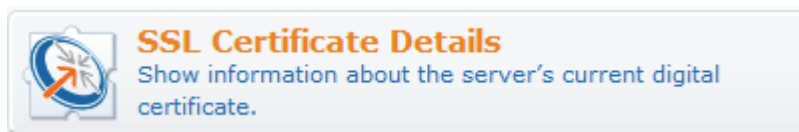
Click the  **Upload Certificate** button to install the new SSL certificate.








Changing the SSL certificate requires the system's Web server to be restarted. You will be prompted to do this with the message "System services need to be restarted due to configuration changes."

Displaying the Current SSL Certificate

After a certificate has been installed (either a self-signed certificate created with the certificate signing request, or a certificate issued by a certification authority), you may use the **SSL Certificate Details** link on the **Administrator > Network Setup** page to display detailed information about the certificate.



The **SSL Certificate** form displays details about the certificate, its issuer, and technical information about the certificate. Click the **Show** link at the bottom of the form to view advanced information and details about the certificate.

| SSL Certificate | |
|---|--|
| Certificate Details
Details about the certificate and its owner. | |
| Issued To: |  demo.amigopod.com |
| Valid From: |  Tuesday, 04 August 2009, 12:42 AM |
| Valid To: |  Thursday, 04 August 2011, 12:42 AM |
| Subject: | <div>Organization demo.amigopod.com</div> <div>Org.Unit Domain Control Validated</div> <div>Common Name demo.amigopod.com</div> |
| Issuer Details
Details about the certificate authority that issued the certificate. | |
| Issued By: |  Go Daddy Secure Certification Authority |
| Issuer: | <div>Country US</div> <div>State Arizona</div> <div>Locality Scottsdale</div> <div>Organization GoDaddy.com, Inc.</div> <div>Org.Unit http://certificates.godaddy.com/repository</div> <div>Common Name Go Daddy Secure Certification Authority</div> <div>Serial No. 07969287</div> |
| Advanced
Technical information about the certificate. | |
| Fingerprint: | 2b1e fcb8 83b1 6174 8632 5c8a c230 a507 46b6 4fa9
This is the SHA-1 "fingerprint" or "thumbprint" of the certificate. |
| Details: |  Show |



Backup and Restore

Click the **Backup & Restore** command link on the Administrator start page to make backups of the appliance's current configuration as well as restore a previous backup.



Backup & Restore

Make backups of the system's current configuration set, or restore an existing backup.

It is recommended that you make a complete configuration backup of the system after completing a deployment and after making configuration changes. The scheduled backup command described in the Import and export visitor accounts can be of use to ensure that the system's configuration can be restored in case of hardware failure or an unintended change to the configuration.



Backing Up Appliance Configuration

The **Configuration Backup** command allows you to back up the current configuration of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. You can do either a complete backup (default) or a custom backup.

Configuration Backup

* Backup Mode:

Complete backup

Select what kind of backup you would like to perform.

* Backup Name:

amigopod.localdomain 2009-06-05-1511

Enter a name for this backup.

Download Backup

The complete backup does not require any input from you unless you want to alter the backup filename. Click the **Download Backup** button to begin the backup. You will be prompted by your Web browser to save the backup file.

You are also able to do a custom backup.

Configuration Backup

* Backup Mode:

Custom backup

Select what kind of backup you would like to perform.

* Backup Name:

amigopod.localdomain 2009-06-05-1511

Enter a name for this backup.

Backup Set:


| Configuration Item | Backup |
|-------------------------------|--------|
| Guest Manager | |
| Operator Logins | |
| RADIUS Services | |
| Reporting Manager Definitions | |
| SMS Services | |
| SMTP Services | |
| Server Configuration | |

10 rows per page
















Select the subset of the amigopod's configuration to backup.


Download Backup

The custom backup allows you to choose which configuration items of the system should be backed up. Within each area (Guest Manager, Operator Logins, RADIUS Services, Reporting Manager Definitions and

Server Configuration), you can select to back up the entire area or only a particular part of that area. To access the components within an area, click the down arrow .

There are five possible states for each area, described below:

1. **Complete backup** – The tick mark is highlighted:   . The components of the area are not displayed, but the entire area and all of its components will be backed up.
2. **Partial backup** – The down arrow is highlighted:   . The components of the area are displayed; those that are marked with a tick will be backed up, and those that are marked with a cross will not be backed up.
3. **Partial/complete backup** – Both the down arrow and tick marks are highlighted:   . The components of the area are displayed, and any that have not been specifically marked for no backup will be changed to a complete backup.
4. **Partial/no backup** – Both the down arrow and cross marks are highlighted:   . The components of the area are displayed, and any that have not been specifically marked for a complete backup will be changed to no backup.
5. **No backup** – The cross is highlighted:   . The components of the area are not displayed, and will not be backed up.

Click the  **Download Backup** button to start the backup. You will be prompted by your Web browser to save the backup file.



Scheduling Automatic Backups

Click the **Backup Schedule** command on the **Administrator > Backup & Restore** page to schedule an automatic backup. You should schedule backups on a regular basis.

Automatic Backup Schedule

Backup Options

Select options related to the backup.

* Backup Mode: Complete backup ▾
Select what kind of backup you would like to perform.

* Backup Filename: amigopod.localdomain
Enter the filename prefix for backup files. The full backup filename has the current time stamp and .dat appended.

* Target URL: ftp://username:password@example.com/path/
Enter the URL where the backups are to be stored, e.g. ftp://user:pass@host:port/path/

Schedule Options

Select options related to the task schedule.

Enabled: ☒ Run the backup on this schedule

Recurrence: Weekly ▾
Select how frequently to run the task.

Weekdays:

Weekdays

☐ Sunday

☐ Wednesday

☐ Saturday

☐ Monday

☐ Thursday

☐ Tuesday

☐ Friday

☒ Select all
☐ Clear selection

Select the days of the week on which the task will run.

Time of Day: :
Select the time of day at which the task will run.

Verify Target
 Run Backup Now
 Save and Close

You are able to select either a complete or custom backup to run on the schedule. The options available are the same as for the manual backup.

You are required to enter a prefix for the backup filename. The backup name is used as the basis for the name of the backup file. The current time and date is used to identify different backups, in the format YYYYMMDD-hhmmss. For example, with the backup name 'backup', the backup filename will be **backup.20080101-123456.dat**.

The target URL specifies where the automatic backups are stored. The following URL schemes are supported:

- **FTP:** Use the syntax ftp://user:password@example.com/path/to/backups/
- **FTP over SSL:** Use the syntax ftps://user:password@example.com/path/to/backups/
- **SMB:** Use the syntax smb://user:password@server/share/path/to/backups/

Additional protocol-specific options can be specified as the query string component of the URL (**?query-string**).

The available options are:

- **FTP options**
 - **create-dirs:** create directories remotely if required
 - **limit-rate=N:** limit transfer speed to N bytes per second
 - **pasv:** enable PASV mode (default)
 - **port:** enable PORT mode


- **proxy***: proxy related arguments
- **quote=CMD**: send custom command to FTP server
- **require-ssl**: require SSL connection for success
- **SMB options**
 - **kerberos**: use Kerberos authentication (Active Directory)
 - **domain=NAME** or **workgroup=NAME**: set the workgroup to NAME
 - **debug**: generate additional debugging messages which are logged to the application log


Multiple options should be separated with semicolons. Special characters (such as space) can be URL encoded with the standard %XX syntax as described in [RFC 1738](#).


Example target URLs:

`ftp://example.com:4567/path?create-dirs;require-ssl;limit-rate=100k`

`smb://myuser:mypassword@domain.example.com/backup/server%20backups/`

Click the  **Verify Target** button to create a test file in the backup directory. Use this command to verify that you have entered the target URL correctly, and the remote server is able to accept backup files.

Click the  **Run Backup Now** button to run the scheduled backup immediately. A progress window is displayed as the backup is run.

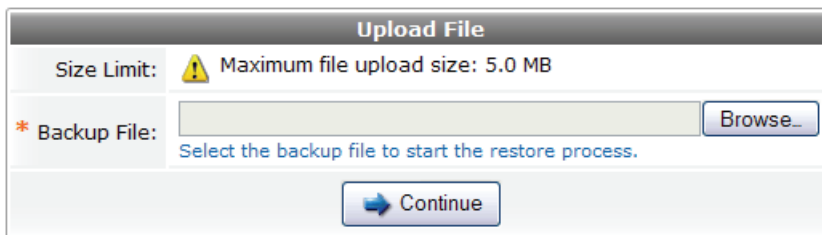
Click the  **Save and Close** button to save the new backup schedule and return to the Backup & Restore page.




Restoring a Backup

To restore a backup, click the **Configuration Restore** command link on the **Administrator > Backup & Restore** page. This procedure has six steps.

1. Enter the name of the backup file. You are able to browse to locate the required file.




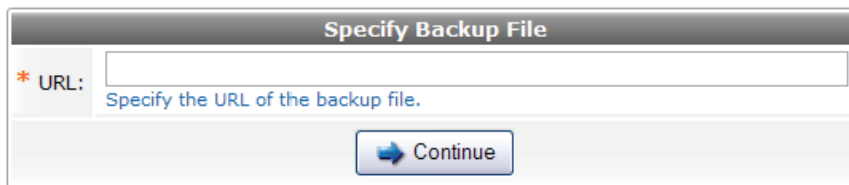
Upload File

Size Limit:  Maximum file upload size: 5.0 MB

* Backup File:

Select the backup file to start the restore process.


If the backup file is larger than the maximum file upload size, you cannot upload the backup file using your Web browser. In this case, click the  **Restore a backup from a URL** link, and provide a URL that refers to the backup file that is to be restored.



Specify Backup File

* URL:

Specify the URL of the backup file.

2. Click the  **Continue** button.
3. You are then required to select the items that you want to restore. By default, most options are automatically selected, however certain server configuration options will not be automatically restored, such as the server's network interface configuration and subscription IDs. To perform a complete

restore, be sure to select the appropriate items by clicking the tick icon for each configuration item to restore.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Configuration Backup". At the top, it says "Backup: amigopod.localdomain 2009-06-05-1614 (complete)". Below this is a table with two columns: "Configuration Item" and "Restore". The table lists several items, each with a "Restore" column containing a tick icon (checked) or a cross icon (unchecked). The items are: Guest Manager, Guest Manager Configuration, Guest Manager Custom Fields, Guest Manager Custom Forms, Guest Manager Custom Views, Guest Manager Print Templates, Guest Manager Self Registration, Operator Logins, LDAP Servers, and LDAP Translation Rules. Below the table is a "Restore Set:" label and a "10 rows per page" dropdown. At the bottom, there is a "Confirm:" section with a checkbox labeled "Restore settings from backup" and a warning message: "Select this option to confirm the restore operation. Caution! This may overwrite your current settings." A "Restore Configuration" button is at the bottom right.

| Configuration Item | Restore |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Guest Manager | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Guest Manager Configuration | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Guest Manager Custom Fields | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Guest Manager Custom Forms | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Guest Manager Custom Views | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Guest Manager Print Templates | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Guest Manager Self Registration | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Operator Logins | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| LDAP Servers | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| LDAP Translation Rules | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

10 rows per page

Select the items from this configuration backup to restore.

* ☐ Restore settings from backup
 Confirm: Select this option to confirm the restore operation. Caution! This may overwrite your current settings.

Restore Configuration

4. Mark the **Restore settings from backup** check box. Be aware that it is possible to overwrite any local configuration changes that have been made since the backup was created.
5. Click the **Restore Configuration** button for the restore to commence. A progress window is shown for the restore operation.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Configuration Restore: Step 2". It has a "Status" section that says "Restoring: AZ RADIUS Dictionary" and a "Progress" section that shows "62%" with a progress bar.

| Status | Restoring: AZ RADIUS Dictionary |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| Progress | 62% |

6. You are presented with a 'System restore operation completed successfully' message.

If any problems were found during the system restore, a diagnostic message will be displayed indicating the error. More details about the error will be available in the application log.

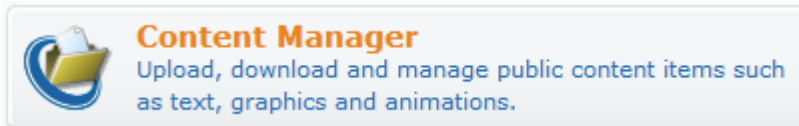
One or more warning messages will be displayed if there is a difference in software version numbers between the system at the time of the backup, and the restore system. This warning is issued because the software version number cannot be changed by the restore process to the same version at the time of the backup. However, this does not necessarily indicate a problem with the restore.



Content Manager

The Content Manager allows you to upload content items to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. Content items are resources such as text, images and animations that are made available for guest access

using the Amigopod's built-in Web server. To access the Content Manager, click the **Content Manager** command link on the **Customization** start page.



You can add content items by using your Web browser to upload them. You can also copy a content item stored on another Web server by downloading it.


To use a content item, you can insert a reference to it into any custom HTML editor within the application. To do this, select the content item you want to insert from the drop-down list located in the lower right corner of the editor. The item will be inserted using HTML that is most suited to the type of content inserted.

To manually reference a content item, you can use the URL of the item directly. For example, an item named **logo.jpg** could be accessed using a URL such as: **http://192.168.88.88/public/logo.jpg**.


Uploading Content

You are able to add a new content item using your Web browser by clicking the  **Upload New Content** tab. The **Add Content** form will be displayed.

The 'Add Content' form has a title bar with the text 'Add Content'. It contains several fields: 'Size Limit:' with a warning icon and text 'Maximum file upload size: 5.0 MB'; '* File:' with a text input field, a 'Browse...' button, and a hint 'Choose a file to upload from your computer.'; 'Description:' with a larger text input field and a hint 'Enter an optional description of this content item.'; and 'Overwrite:' with a checked checkbox and text 'Replace existing item with same name' and a hint 'Select this option to overwrite an existing content item that has the same name.' At the bottom are two buttons: 'Upload Content' with an upload icon and 'Cancel' with a cancel icon.

After you have completed the form, click the  **Upload Content** button to have the file uploaded. The file is then displayed in the list view and will be placed in the **public** directory on the Web server. You are then able to reference this file when creating custom HTML templates.


Downloading Content





You are able to download a file from the Internet for use in the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance by clicking on the  **Download New Content** tab. The **Fetch Content** form will be displayed.

The 'Fetch Content' form has a title bar with the text 'Fetch Content'. It contains several fields: '* Content URL:' with a text input field and a hint 'Enter the URL of the resource to download.'; 'Description:' with a larger text input field and a hint 'Enter an optional description of this content item.'; and 'Overwrite:' with a checked checkbox and text 'Replace existing item with same name' and a hint 'Select this option to overwrite an existing content item that has the same name.' At the bottom are two buttons: 'Fetch Content' with a green checkmark icon and 'Cancel' with a cancel icon.


After you have completed the form, click the  **Fetch Content** button to have the file downloaded. The file is placed in the **public** directory on the Web server. You are then able to reference this file when creating custom HTML templates.


Additional Content Actions


The  **Properties** link allows you to view and edit the properties of the item. Editable properties include the content item's filename and description. Read-only properties include the content type, modification time, file size, and other content-specific properties such as the image's size.


| Content Item Properties | |
|--|---|
| Owner: |  admin
<small>The operator that added this content item.</small> |
| * Filename: | <input type="text" value="amigopod.png"/>
<small>The filename component of the content item.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="amigopod logo"/>
<small>Enter an optional description of this content item.</small> |
| Content Type: |  image/png |
| Image Size: | 67 × 92 pixels |
| Date Modified: | Friday, 05 June 2009, 04:29 PM |
| File Size: | 3.4 KB (3,432 bytes) |
| <div> Save Changes  Cancel</div> | |

You are able to delete the content item using the  **Delete** link. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.

You can rename the content item using the  **Rename** link.

Click the  **Download** link to save a copy of the content item using your Web browser.

You are able to open a new window to view the item using the  **View Content** link.

The  **Quick View** link can be used to display certain types of content inline, such as images and text. This link is not available for all content types.




Security Manager






The Amigopod Security Manager has a built-in audit capability that can analyze the configuration of the Amigopod and check for common security problems.


Performing a Security Audit


Use the **Check Security** command link on the **Administrator > Security Manager** page to start a security audit of the system.

A security assessment will be performed and a report will be displayed containing the recommendations from the security assessment.

 Quick Help

| Severity | Message |
|---|---|
|  Critical | Operator login `admin` has an easily-guessed password |
|  Critical | Operators should be required to use the HTTPS protocol |
|  Important | Visitors should be required to use the HTTPS protocol |
|  Important | Operator logins should be restricted to defined management IP addresses |
|  Moderate | Operator login access controls are not denying all by default |






5 items  Reload

20 rows per page 

Reviewing Security Audit Results





For each of the security recommendations presented, you can choose to accept the recommendation, ignore the recommendation, or disable the recommendation.

A **Details** link may be provided, containing more information about this security message or guidance on a recommended fix.

| | |
|---|--|
|  Critical | Operator login 'admin' has an easily-guessed password |
|  Details |  Edit Operator  Disable Check  Mark as Resolved |

Use the links provided to review the appliance's configuration, and make modifications where necessary. In some cases, a suggested configuration is supplied with the recommendation; in this cases, click the **Fix this Problem** link to apply the changes.

To disable a security check, and prevent it from reappearing in future security audits, click the **Disable Check** icon link.

| | |
|---|---|
|  Ignored | Operator login 'admin' has an easily-guessed password |
|  Details |  Edit Operator  Re-enable Check |



NOTE

Disabled recommendations will not be shown in future security audits. Make sure that you are comfortable with the security implications of this decision. A message that has been disabled can be re-enabled while you are still viewing the security recommendations. Alternatively, all previously disabled security checks can be re-enabled by clicking the **Re-enable all checks and run the security audit again** link below the list view.

If you have taken steps to correct a security problem, a message can be marked as resolved by clicking the **Mark as Resolved** link. When this is done, the status of the message will change to Resolved:

| | |
|---|---|
|  Resolved | Operator login 'admin' has an easily-guessed password |
|  Details |  Edit Operator  Disable Check |



Marking a message as **Resolved** does not disable the corresponding security check. Future security audits will still perform this check, and will generate the same warning message if the same security problem still exists. For this reason, the Resolved status is intended only for use as a “checklist” of items requiring attention. Use the **Disable Check** link to prevent the security audit from raising warnings about a specific security condition.



Changing Network Security Settings

Use the **Network Security** command link to check the current settings for remote console access.

The Amigopod appliance has a command line interface (CLI) which may be accessed using the appliance console or SSH.

Typical usage scenarios where command line access might be used are:

- Changing the initial network configuration of the appliance
- Resetting the appliance to factory default settings
- Resetting a forgotten 'admin' operator login password
- Rebooting the appliance
- Enabling or disabling remote SSH access

Command line access is not required to perform any normal configuration or management tasks, and should never be required after the initial setup of an Amigopod appliance has been completed.

For this reason, SSH access has been disabled by default. It is recommended to leave this network service disabled unless you have specific requirements to the contrary.

Network access restrictions for SSH console access may be specified using the **Network Login Access** form for operator logins. This can be used to ensure that guests do not have SSH console access, even if it is enabled for operators; See [“Creating a VLAN Interface”](#) in this chapter for details on configuring the access control list for operators.

Resetting the Root Password

The root password is required to log into the appliance's console user interface (either directly at the console, or remotely via SSH). See [“Console Login”](#) in the Setup Guide chapter for an explanation.

The default root password for the appliance is **Amigopod**.

During the initial setup wizard, the root password is updated to correspond to the administrator's password.

Once you have set the initial password, future changes to the administrator password **will not** change the appliance's root password.

In order to recover from a forgotten root password, you must have administrative access to the graphical user interface. Navigate to **Administrator > Security Manager**, click the **Network Security** command link, and then click the ➔ **Reset Root Password** link at the bottom of the page.

Provide your current operator password, and confirm the new root password by entering it in the appropriate fields. Click the **Set Password** button to have the new root password take effect.



The **Reset Root Password** form is only available to operators with both the Plugin Manager and Network Setup privileges.



Notifications

Operators with the IT Administrator profile can choose to receive warning notifications by email when disk space is low. You can configure notification frequency according to remaining disk space, or disable notifications.

1. To configure notifications, go to **Administrator > Notifications**. The Configure Notifications page opens.

Configure Notifications

Low Disk Space

Configure low disk space warnings.

| | | |
|--------------------------|----|---|
| * Warning Levels: | 4 | Select the number of disk space warning levels to alert on. |
| * Level 1: | 25 | percent free
Free space percentage at which to issue first alert. |
| * Level 2: | 15 | percent free
Free space percentage at which to issue second alert. |
| * Level 3: | 5 | percent free
Free space percentage at which to issue third alert. |
| * Level 4: | 1 | percent free
Free space percentage at which to issue fourth alert. |

Save Changes

2. In the **Warning Levels** drop-down list, specify the maximum number of alerts to receive. If you do not want to receive notifications, choose **0-Disable warnings**.
3. If you enabled warnings, in the **Level 1** field, enter the amount of remaining disk space at which the first notification should be sent.
4. If you specified more than one alert level in the Warning Levels field, use the Level 2 through Level 4 fields to specify the percent of remaining disk space at which each alert should be sent, then click the **Save Changes** button.



OS Updates

The server's operating system software is automatically maintained by the Plugin Manager. You can check for and install software updates using the process. See [“Adding or Updating New Plugins”](#) in this chapter for details.

In some situations, manual OS updates may be required. Click the **Manual OS Updates** link to perform manual system maintenance tasks.



Manual Operating System Updates

Use the **Check For System Updates** command link to start a background check for any updates that may be available. If the system makes any changes, it automatically displays the most recent log file in the **System Updates Log** window.



Reviewing the Operating System Update Log

Use the **System Updates Log** command link to view log files from previous system update operations. To view log files from previous system update operations, click the **Log File** drop-down list, select the log file you want to display, then click **View Log**.

Use this page to view logs of previous system update operations.

Select Log

* Log File:

2011-03-21 14:46:23 - 5 minutes ago

Select the log file you would like to review.

View Log

* required field

System Updates Log – 20110321-144623

```

No updates required
Cleaning up OS update state:
Loaded plugins: fastestmirror
Cleaning up Everything
Cleaning up list of fastest mirrors
Loaded plugins: fastestmirror
0 metadata files removed
0 sqlite files removed
0 metadata files removed

Checking for available updates:
Loaded plugins: fastestmirror
Determining fastest mirrors

No updates to install
  
```

Determining Installed Operating System Packages

Use the Advanced view of the System Information page to display a list of the installed operating system packages, together with the corresponding version numbers.



Plugin Manager

Plugins are the software components that fit together to make your Web application. The Plugin Manager allows you to manage subscriptions, list available plugins, add new plugins, and check for updates to the installed plugins.

To access Plugin Manager tasks, navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager**. The Available Plugins page is displayed. Plugins are listed by category and include:

- Standard application plugins—Provide corresponding functionality for interactive use by operators
- Kernel plugins—Provide the basic framework for the application
- License plugins—Authorize access to features of the application
- Skin plugins—Provide the style for the application's visual appearance
- Transaction Processor plugins—Provide services primarily reserved for internal use by the software and are not exposed in the user interface

Plugins cannot be updated while High Availability is running. Because exact synchronization of the two servers is required for High Availability Services, you must first destroy the clusters, then re-create the clusters after the plugins are updated. Please see [Destroying a Cluster](#) and [Cluster Setup](#) in the High Availability Services chapter.



Managing Subscriptions

A subscription ID is a unique number used to identify your software license and any custom software modules that are part of your Amigopod solution. To view current subscription IDs, navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager**, then click **Manage Subscriptions**. The Amigopod Subscription page opens.

amigopod Subscription

Subscription ID:

1abcd2-3efgh4-5ijkl6-7mnop8-9qrst0

You can provide more than one subscription identifier by placing each subscription ID on a different line.

Save Changes

Comments can be added in front of the subscription ID if you place the subscription ID inside parentheses, for example, Hotspot Plugin (abc123-abc123-abc123-abc123-abc123) This allows you to keep track of which subscription ID is for which plugin. The above subscription would be for the Hotspot Plugin.



Viewing Available Plugins

Plugins are the software components that fit together to make your Web application. The Available Plugins list shows all the plugins currently included in your application and lets you manage them. Depending on the plugin, options in the list let you view details, configure, enable or disable, or remove the plugin. To view the list of available plugins, choose **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Manage Plugins**. The Available Plugins page opens.

Click a plugin's **Configuration** link to view or modify its settings. See “[Configuring Plugins](#)” in this chapter for details about the configuration settings.

The **About** link displays information about the plugin, including the installation date and update date. The About page for the Amigopod Kernel and Amigopod Administrator plugins also includes links to verify the integrity of all plugin files, or perform an application check.

Plugin Information

amigopod OS

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| Version: | 3.7.0 |
| Type: | Standard Plugin |
| Installed: | 06 January 2012 |
| Last Updated: | Not Available |
| Configurable: | Yes |
| Copyright: | Copyright © 2009 amigopod Pty Ltd |

Verify integrity of plugin files

Use the **Disable**, **Enable** and **Remove** links to make changes to the available features of the application.

Plugins cannot be disabled or removed if other enabled plugins are dependent on them. An error message will be displayed if an operation is attempted that would leave the application in an inconsistent state.



Adding or Updating New Plugins

You can add or update plugins either from the Internet or from a file provided to you by email.



- If your new plugin was emailed to you as a file, navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager > Add New Plugin**. On the Add New Plugin page, choose the Add Plugin from File command, then browse to the file to upload it. The Add New Plugin page also provides the option to choose the internet download method.

To add a new plugin, select one of the following options.



Add Plugin from the Internet

Install or update plugins from the Internet. You can choose the plugin to install from a list.



Add Plugin from File

Upload a plugin file using your Web browser. You will need a .plugin file provided to you by your reseller.









- To upload plugins or updates from the internet, navigate to **Administrator > Plugin Manager** and choose the Check for Updates command. The Add New Plugins page opens. Use this page to select the plugins or updates you want to install.


Your subscription has a total of **43** plugins. [? Help](#)


New Plugins: 11 new plugins are available for installation.

Updated Plugins: 8 updated plugins are available for installation.

☒ Make default selections ☐ Clear selection [↑ Display all plugins](#)

| Name | Version | Status |
|---|---------|--|
|  Advertising Services
Control the delivery of advertising content. | 1.5.2 |  Not installed |
|  Portal Welcome Page
Post authentication welcome page and logout popup. | 3.1.19 |  Not installed |
|  Software Test Plugin
Provides a framework for source code unit testing and functional tests. | 0.6.15 |  Not installed |
|  Unlimited License
The software license authorizes access to the features of this web application. | 3.7.1 |  Update available |

☒ Install Software Test Plugin ( 0.6.15)

☒ Update Unlimited License (2.1.4  3.7.1)

[Back](#) [Finish](#)

The default view of the Add New Plugins page lists all available updates and plugins that are not yet installed on your system. You can configure the list to display all plugins (including those already installed on the system) or just new plugins and updates. To change the list, click the [↑ Display All Plugins](#) or [↓ Display Changed Plugins](#) link. The default selections include all new plugins and any updated plugins that are available. To install the default selections, click the [Finish](#) button to download and install the selected plugins.

When you select multiple available updates on the Add New Plugins page and click the Finish button, the system updates them sequentially. If an update for one plugin cannot be completed—for example, due to low disk space—the update for that plugin is cancelled. The other updates are not affected, and the system continues to process the rest of the plugin updates in the queue.



Plugins cannot be updated while High Availability is running, as exact synchronization of the two servers is required for High Availability Services. Please see [Destroying a Cluster](#) and [Cluster Setup](#) in the [High Availability Services](#) chapter.

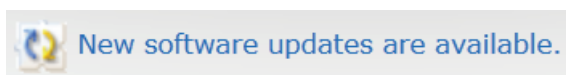


Configuring Plugin Update Notifications

To have the system automatically check for plugin updates and provide notification when they are available, go to the **Administrator > Plugin Manager** page and click the **Configure Update Checks** command. The Check for Plugin Updates page opens.

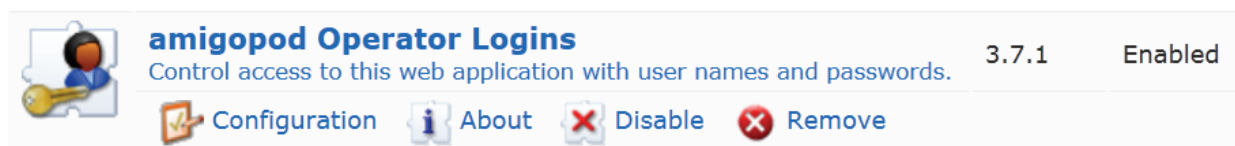
You can use the Plugin Updates form on this page to specify how often you want to be notified of plugin updates. The notification frequency may be set to daily, weekly, monthly, or disabled (the default).

When new updates are available, the following notification message is displayed at the top of the page. This message is only displayed to administrators.



Configuring Plugins

You can configure most standard, kernel, and skin plugins. To view or change a plugin's configuration, go to the **Administrator > Plugin Manager** page and click the **List Available Plugins** command. Depending on the plugin, options in the Available Plugins list let you view details, configure, enable or disable, or remove the plugin. Plugins cannot be disabled or removed if other enabled plugins are dependent on them. An error message is displayed if an operation is attempted that would leave the application in an inconsistent state.



To view or change the configuration settings for a plugin, click the plugin's **Configuration** link. The **Configure Plugin** form shows the current configuration settings for a plugin, and allows you to make changes to these settings.

| Configure MAC Authentication Plugin 3.7.0 | |
|---|--|
| * MAC Separator: | <div>- (Dash) ▾</div> <p>The separator to use when normalizing a MAC address.
Standard IEEE 802 value is the dash '-'.
Standard IEEE 802 value is the dash '-'.</p> |
| * Case: | <div>UPPER ▾</div> <p>The case of letters used when normalizing a MAC address.</p> |
| * MAC Detect: | <div><input type="checkbox"/> Allow users to be detected via their MAC address</div> <p>Provides access to user configuration for headers, footers, etc on login and registration pages.
Please note that a passed MAC can be easily changed by the user, so personal details should not be displayed.
Requires a vendor that passed the mac as part of the redirection.</p> |
| Device Filter: | <div> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List Accounts
 <input type="checkbox"/> Edit Accounts </div> <p>Select which views should not display devices (user accounts with the 'mac_auth' field set).</p> |
| <div>Save Configuration</div> | |

To undo any changes to the plugin's configuration, click the plugin's **Restore default configuration** link. The plugin's configuration is restored to the factory default settings.


In most cases, plugin configuration settings do not need to be modified directly. Use the customization options available elsewhere in the application to make configuration changes.

For more information about plugin configuration:

- **Amigopod Kernel**— See “[Configuring the Amigopod Kernel Plugin](#)” in this chapter
- **Amigopod Operator Logins**— See “[Security Manager](#)” in this chapter
- **Amigopod OS**— See “[Security Manager](#)” in this chapter
- **Amigopod RADIUS Services**— See “[Server Configuration](#)” in the RADIUS Services chapter
- **Amigopod Skin**— See “[Configuring the Amigopod Skin Plugin](#)” in this chapter
- **GuestManager**— See “[Default Settings for Account Creation](#)” in the Guest Management chapter
- **SMS Services**— See “[Sending an SMS](#)” in the Guest Management chapter
- **SMTP Services**— See “[SMTP Services](#)” in the Guest Management chapter
- **MAC Authentication**— See “[MAC Authentication on Amigopod](#)” in the Guest Management chapter

Configuring the Amigopod Kernel Plugin

The Amigopod Kernel Plugin provides the basic framework for the application. Settings you can configure for this plugin include the application title, the debugging level, the base URL, and the application URL.


| Configure amigopod Kernel 3.7.2 | |
|--|---|
| * Application Title: | <input type="text" value="Unified Visitor Management"/>
The title of the web application. This is displayed as the title of the main page. |
| * Debug Level: | <input type="text" value="1"/>
Debugging level for the application. Zero is off, 1 logs PHP messages, and 2 logs PHP messages with full debugging details. |
| * Update Base URL: | <input type="text" value="http://10.100.8.10/webservice"/>
Base URL for application update checks. |
| Application URL: | <input type="text"/>
Base URL for the application. |
| <input type="button" value="Save Configuration"/> | |
| <p>* required field</p> <p> Restore default configuration</p> | |

1. To change the application's title, enter the new name in the **Application Title** field (for example, your company name) to display that text as the title of your Web application. Click **Save Configuration**.
2. The Kernel plugin's **Debug Level**, **Update Base URL** and **Application URL** options should not be modified unless you are instructed to do so by Aruba support.
3. To restore the plugin's configuration to the original settings, click the **Restore default configuration** link below the form. A message alerts you that the change cannot be undone, and a comparison of the current and default settings highlights the changes that will be made.
4. Review the differences between the current settings and the default configuration. To commit the change to the default settings, click the **Restore Default Configuration** link.

| Plugin Information | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
|  | amigopod Kernel |
| Version: | 3.7.6 |
| Type: | Kernel Plugin |
| Installed: | 06 January 2012 |
| Last Updated: | 20 March 2012 |
| Configurable: | Yes |
| Copyright: | Copyright © 2010 amigopod Pty Ltd |

Configuring the Amigopod Skin Plugin

A Web application's skin determines its visual style—the colors, menus, and graphics. You can use either Amigopod's standard skin plugin, a blank plugin if you are providing your own complete HTML page, or custom skin plugins that let you configure the colors, navigation, logo, and icons.

1. To modify the standard Aruba Amigopod skin plugin, click its  **Configuration** link on the Available Plugins page.

2. The default navigation layout is “expanded.” To change the behavior of the navigation menu, click the **Navigation Layout** drop-down list and select a different expansion level for menu items.
3. The **Page Heading** field allows you to enter additional heading text to be displayed at the very top of the page.

The default skin used by the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance is the one that is enabled in the Plugin Manager. To change the default skin globally, navigate to the plugin list and click the **Enable** link for the skin you would like to use as the default. When you install a new custom skin, it is automatically enabled and becomes the default skin. If your application’s appearance does not automatically change, find the custom plugin in the list, click **Configure**, and click its **Enable** link. If you prefer to use the standard Aruba Amigopod skin, navigate to it in the Available Plugins list and click its **Enable** link.

The default skin is displayed on all visitor pages, and on the login page if no other skin is specified for it. However, you can override this for a particular operator profile, an individual operator, or give the login page a different appearance than the rest of the application. You can also specify a skin for guest self-registration pages.

- To use a different skin for a particular operator profile, see “[Creating an Operator Profile](#)” in the Operator Logins chapter.
- To use a different skin for an individual operator login, see “[Local Operator Authentication](#)” in the Operator Logins chapter.
- To have the login page use a different skin than the rest of the application, see “[Operator Logins Configuration](#)” in the Operator Logins chapter.
- To specify a skin for a customized guest self-registration page, see “[Basic Properties for Self-Registration](#)” in the Guest Management chapter.



Server Time

The **Server Time** form allows you to configure the time and date properties of the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance.

To ensure that authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) is performed correctly, it is vital that the server maintains the correct time of day at all times. It is strongly recommended that you configure one or more NTP servers to automatically synchronize the server's time.

NTP can interfere with timekeeping in virtual machines. The default virtual machine configuration will automatically synchronize its time with the host server, and so you should not configure NTP if you are using virtualization for the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. However, make sure that the host is configured to keep its clock in sync with a suitable time source.

If one is available, it is strongly recommended that you use an NTP server that is available on your local network. This will improve timekeeping and will eliminate the need for additional Internet traffic for the time server.

To use a public NTP server, enter the following hostnames:

```
0.pool.ntp.org
1.pool.ntp.org
2.pool.ntp.org
```

You can also use NTP pool servers located in your region. For more information, refer to the NTP Pool Project Web site: <http://www.pool.ntp.org>.

Select the **Set server's clock using NTP server** check box to perform a single clock synchronization with the specified time servers. The synchronization will take place when you click the Save Changes button.



You should provide a local NTP server. Do not use the default setting as this may be unreliable.

To set the server's time manually, enter a value in the Server Time field using the recommended format, or click the ... button to display a date/time chooser.

Click the **Save Changes** button to apply the new time and date settings.



If the server's clock is running slow, changing the server's time may cause your current login to expire. In this case you will need to log in again after clicking the Save Changes button.



System Control

The **System Control** commands on the **Administrator > System Control** page allow you to:


- Shut down the server immediately.
- Reboot the system which stops all services while the reboot is taking place.
- Restart the system services without stopping the server. This would usually be done after a plugin installation if required, or if performing other system changes such as installing a new SSL certificate or changing the server's time zone.
- Schedule a reboot or shutdown operation to take place at a future point in time.
- Configure the database and advanced system settings
- Configure system-level log files
- Configure Web servers and Web applications.

Changing System Configuration Parameters

The **System Configuration** form allows “sysctl” parameters to be modified. These parameters may be used to adjust advanced networking and kernel options and control other system properties that apply at the operating system level.



Changing kernel options to incorrect values can result in a non-functional system. For this reason it is recommended not to change these values unless you are advised by Aruba support, or you have carefully tested the result of the change in a controlled environment.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new configuration parameters. The settings will be applied to the operating system immediately, but in some cases the new settings will not take effect until the system is rebooted. For this reason, it is recommended that you always reboot after modifying any of these parameters.

System Log Configuration

The **System Log Configuration** form allows you to modify options related to locally stored system log files, including the HTTP access log, HTTP error log, and the general-purpose system message log. You can also define a remote syslog server to which log messages will be sent, and specify which syslog messages should be sent.

The syslog protocol is used to send log messages from one system to a syslog server (also known as a ‘collector’). Log messages are grouped according to both facility and priority.

The following priority levels are defined in the protocol:

- 0—Emergency: system is unusable
- 1—Alert: action must be taken immediately
- 2—Critical: critical conditions
- 3—Error: error conditions
- 4—Warning: warning conditions
- 5—Notice: normal but significant condition
- 6—Informational: informational messages
- 7—Debug: debug-level messages

When a syslog server has been defined, messages matching the rules defined here are sent to the syslog server. The syslog protocol uses UDP port 514.

| System Log Configuration | |
|--|---|
| Local Settings
Options related to the local storage of system log files. | |
| Log Rotation: | Configure data retention |
| Log Collector: | <input type="checkbox"/> Store syslog messages received from remote hosts
Select this option to enable the server to receive syslog messages. |
| Application Log Settings
Options related to the application log. | |
| * Facility: | (Nothing – Do not send application log messages to syslog) <input type="button" value="v"/>
To enable sending the application log to a syslog server, select the facility to use for the log messages. |
| Syslog Settings
Options related to the system log. | |
| Syslog Server: | <input type="text"/>
Optional hostname or IP address to which system log messages will be sent. |
| * Auth: | Do not log these messages <input type="button" value="v"/>
Select the minimum priority level for security and authorization messages. |
| * Private Auth: | Do not log these messages <input type="button" value="v"/>
Select the minimum priority level for private security and authorization messages. |
| * Cron: | Do not log these messages <input type="button" value="v"/>
Select the minimum priority level for clock daemon (cron and at) messages. |
| * Daemons: | Priority: Info <input type="button" value="v"/>
Select the minimum priority level for other system daemon messages. |
| * Kernel: | Priority: Notice <input type="button" value="v"/>
Select the minimum priority level for kernel messages. |
| * Local 0: | Priority: Info <input type="button" value="v"/>
Select the minimum priority level for local messages. |
| * Local 1: | Priority: Info <input type="button" value="v"/> |

Log Rotation: Configuring Data Retention

To configure the number of weeks to retain records for data, log files, disabled accounts, and mobile device certificates, click the **Configure data retention** link in **Log Rotation** row. The Data Retention Policy page opens. Log files are rotated and expired logs are cleared according to the database maintenance schedule you define. See [Managing Data Retention](#).

Log Collector: Storing Incoming Syslog Messages

Your Amigopod server can also act as a syslog server. To configure the Amigopod server to receive syslog messages sent by remote hosts in the network, mark the check box in the **Log Collector** row. The **Allowed Access** row is added. You can specify IP addresses and networks from which messages may be received, or allow syslog messages to be received from any IP address.

Storing incoming syslog messages can use a lot of disk space. If you choose the log collector option, be sure to set appropriate data retention limits and enable low disk space notifications.

| System Log Configuration | |
|--|---|
| Local Settings
Options related to the local storage of system log files. | |
| Log Rotation: | Configure data retention |
| Log Collector: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Store syslog messages received from remote hosts
Select this option to enable the server to receive syslog messages. |
| Warning: | Receiving syslog messages may consume a large amount of disk space.
Be sure you understand the type and quantity of syslog messages that will be received.
Set the data retention policy appropriately, and enable low disk space notifications. |
| Allowed Access: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; width: 100%;"></div> Enter the IP addresses and networks from which syslog messages are permitted.
If this is blank, syslog messages may be received from any IP address (not recommended). |

Application Log Settings

Facility: Redirecting Application Log Messages

To redirect log messages from the application log to the syslog, select an option from the **Facility** field drop-down menu. The default option **None – Do not send application log messages to syslog** stores all application-generated messages in the separate application log. If you select a specific syslog facility, the minimum priority level for the corresponding syslog facility determines whether the syslog message is forwarded to the remote collector.

| System Log Configuration | |
|--|---|
| Local Settings
Options related to the local storage of system log files. | |
| Log Rotation: | Configure data retention |
| Application Log Settings
Options related to the application log. | |
| * Facility: | <div> <div>(None - Do not send application log messages to syslog)</div> <div> <div>(None - Do not send application log messages to syslog)</div> <div>Auth facility: Security/authorization messages</div> <div>Authpriv facility: Private security/authorization messages</div> <div>Cron facility: Clock daemon messages</div> <div>Daemon facility: Other system daemon messages</div> <div>Kernel facility: System kernel messages</div> <div>Local 0 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Local 1 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Local 2 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Local 3 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Local 4 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Local 5 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Local 6 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Local 7 facility: Local messages</div> <div>Lpr facility: Print related messages</div> <div>Mail facility: Mail subsystem messages</div> <div>News facility: Usenet (news) messages</div> <div>Syslog facility: Internal syslog messages</div> <div>User facility: Generic user-level messages</div> <div>UUCP facility: UUCP subsystem messages</div> </div> </div> |
| Syslog Server: | |
| * Auth: | |
| * Private Auth: | |
| * Cron: | |
| * Daemons: | |
| * Kernel: | |

For details on defining a database maintenance schedule, See [“Changing Database Configuration Parameters”](#) in this chapter.

For high-traffic sites that are maintaining many weeks of log files, enter a non-zero value for Disk Space to ensure that the log files cannot fill up the system's disk. If the disk space check is enabled, the server's free disk space is checked daily at midnight, and if it is below the specified threshold, old log files are deleted to free up space.

Syslog Settings

Options related to the system log.

| | |
|--|--|
| Syslog Server: | <input type="text"/> |
| Optional hostname or IP address to which system log messages will be sent. | |
| * Auth: | <input type="button" value="Do not log these messages"/> |
| Select the minimum priority level for security and authorization messages. | |


The syslog protocol is used to send log messages from one system to a syslog server (also known as a 'collector'). The syslog protocol uses UDP port 514. Log messages are grouped according to both facility and priority.

When a syslog server has been defined, messages that match the rules defined in this form will be sent to the specified syslog server.

The following priority levels are defined in the syslog protocol, which is fully specified in [RFC 3164](#):

Table 26 *Sylog Priority Levels*


| Level | Name | Meaning |
|-------|---------------|--|
| 0 | Emergency | System is unusable |
| 1 | Alert | Action must be taken immediately |
| 2 | Critical | Critical conditions that warrant urgent attention |
| 3 | Error | Error conditions that should be investigated more closely |
| 4 | Warning | Warning conditions that may need to be investigated more closely |
| 5 | Notice | Normal but significant condition |
| 6 | Informational | Informational messages |
| 7 | Debug | Debugging messages |

Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new system log parameters. The changes will take effect immediately.

Managing Data Retention

The Data Retention Policy page (**Administrator > System Control > Data Retention**) lets you manage historical data by archiving or deleting it. For a data retention policy to take effect, you must schedule and enable database maintenance. To do this, go to **Administrator > System Control > Database Config**.

Figure 41 Data Retention Policy page

| Manage Data Retention | |
|---|--|
| * Enable: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable data retention policy
If enabled, records will be deleted after the period set below. |
| * Retain For: | 52 weeks
Number of weeks to retain data. |
| System Log | |
| * Log Rotation: | 4 weeks
How many weeks to keep log files before deleting them. |
| * Disk Space: | 10 % free
Old log files will be deleted to keep at least this much disk space free.
Enter 0 to disable the disk free checks. |
| Guest Accounts | |
| * Account Retention: | 52 weeks
Weeks after being disabled an account will persist for being deleted. Requires the expiration action to be set accordingly. |
| Mobile Device Certificates | |
| Minimum Period: | 12 weeks
The minimum delay required before an expired certificate (or a rejected request) can be deleted.
Leave blank to allow certificates and requests to be deleted at any time, including before expiration. |
| Maximum Period: | 52 weeks
The period after which an expired certificate (or a rejected request) will be automatically deleted.
Leave blank to disable automatic deletion. |
|  Set Data Retention Policy | |

Select **Enable** to enable the the data retention policy option and enter how many weeks in the **Log Rotation** field to indicated how many weeks you want log files kept before they are deleted.

You can specify how many weeks a guest account persists after the account is disabled in the **Guest Accounts** field.

For mobile device certificates, select the minimum delay, in weeks, required before an expired certificate or rejected request can be deleted. The maximum period is the number of weeks after which an expired certificate is automatically deleted.

Changing Database Configuration Parameters

The **Database Configuration** form allows you to configure the system's database and manage its maintenance schedule. Access this form by navigating to **System Control > Database Config**.

Database Configuration

Configuration Options

Override the default database configuration.

Status: The database is responding to queries.

Warning: The database service will be **restarted** if any database 'Configuration Options' are changed.

Options:

Additional database configuration options. Enter 'name = value' pairs on separate lines. Comments may be entered on lines starting with a '#'.

Database Maintenance

Configure the maintenance schedule for the database.

Enabled: ☒ Enable periodic maintenance of the database.
Periodic maintenance is highly recommended.

Weekdays:

Weekdays

☐ Sunday

☐ Wednesday

☐ Saturday

☒ Monday

☐ Thursday

☐ Tuesday

☐ Friday

☒ Select all

☐ Clear selection

Select the days of the week on which maintenance will run.

Time of Day: :
Select the time of day at which maintenance will run.


Save Changes

The **Options** field is a text field that accepts multiple **name = value** pairs. You can also add comments by entering lines starting with a **#** character.

The Database Maintenance of this form allows you to adjust the time (or times) at which the system will run maintenance tasks and remove expired log files. You should adjust the maintenance schedule to coincide with those times when your system is least in use. A periodic maintenance schedule is highly recommended. You should not disable periodic maintenance unless you have a specific requirement.

Changing Web Application Configuration


Certain performance and security options may be configured that affect the operation of the Web application GUI. Use the **Web Application Configuration** command link to adjust these configuration parameters.

| System Configuration Options | |
|--|--|
| Resource Limits
Server configuration options controlling resource usage. | |
| * Memory Limit: | <input type="text" value="128M"/> bytes
The PHP memory limit per page. Enter -1 to disable the memory limit. (Default 128M) |
| * Form POST Size: | <input type="text" value="10M"/> bytes
The maximum size of form POST data that the server will accept. (Default 10M) |
| * File Upload Size: | <input type="text" value="5M"/> bytes
The maximum size of an uploaded file that the server will accept. (Default 5M) |
| Time Limits
Server configuration options controlling timeout values. | |
| * Input Time: | <input type="text" value="60"/> seconds
The maximum amount of time each page will spend parsing request data. Enter -1 for no limit. |
| * Socket Timeout: | <input type="text" value="60"/> seconds
The default timeout for socket based streams. |
| Performance Options
Server configuration options controlling performance. | |
| Compression: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable zlib output compression
Automatically compress output if supported by the web browser. |
| Security Options
Server configuration options related to security. | |
| Expose PHP: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include PHP header in web server response
Adds a PHP signature line to the HTTP headers returned with each request. |
|  Save Changes | |

The **Memory Limit** may be increased to allow larger reports to be run on the system.


The **File Upload Size** may be increased to allow larger content items to be uploaded, or larger backup files to be restored.

Use the **Enable zlib output compression** check box to compress output sent to the Web server. This option may provide faster loading pages, particularly on slow networks, but may also increase the CPU load on the server.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new Web application configuration parameters. Changing the parameters requires the Web server to be restarted, which will be performed immediately. Other users of the system may find the system is unavailable for a short period while the restart takes place.


Changing Web Server Configuration

High-traffic deployments may need to adjust certain performance options related to the system's Web server. Use the Web Server Configuration command link to adjust these configuration parameters.

| Web Server Configuration | |
|--|---|
| Basic Options
Server configuration options controlling basic operation. | |
| * Maximum Clients: | <input type="text" value="256"/>
Maximum number of simultaneous clients to support. |
| * Timeout: | <input type="text" value="120"/> seconds
The number of seconds before receives and sends time out. |
| Performance Options
Server configuration options controlling performance. | |
| Keep Alive: | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable persistent HTTP connections
Allows multiple requests to reuse the same TCP connection. |
|  Save Changes | |

The **Maximum Clients** option specifies the maximum number of clients that may simultaneously be making HTTP requests. The default value should only need to be increased for high-traffic sites.

Persistent HTTP connections (also known as pipelining) may be enabled using the **Enable persistent HTTP connections** check box. This feature is only supported for HTTP 1.1 compliant clients.

Click the  **Save Changes** button to apply the new Web server configuration parameters. Changing the parameters requires the Web server to be restarted, which will be performed immediately. Other users of the system may find the system is unavailable for a short period while the restart takes place.






System Information

The System Information link on the **Administrator > System Information** page provides a summary of hardware, operating system and software information, as well as a snapshot of the current state of the system.

System Information

Details about the hardware and software configuration of this server are provided in the report [? Help](#) below.

| Item | Details |
|---|--|
| Hardware Information | |
|  | Make:  Amigopod |
| | Model: AMG-SW-50 |
| | Revision: N/A |
| | Serial Number: 564DDAA4-285A-38E1-CE71-F2A4443C8D66 |
| | CPU: 1 × Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU X5660 @ 2.80GHz ? More details |
| | Physical Memory: 1,002.1 MB total, 163.5 MB free ? More details |
| | Storage: 1 disk, 8.0 GB ? More details  Add Space |
| | Network: 2 Ethernet interfaces ? More details Network Setup |
| | PCI Bus: 9 PCI devices ? More details |
| | USB: 0 USB devices ? More details |

This report can be downloaded for support purposes.

Adding Disk Space

Storage capacity can be increased on VMware-based deployments. To increase available storage, click the **Add Space** option on the **System Information** screen. The Adding Disk Space screen appears. Follow instructions on this page.

Add Disk Space


How To Add Disk Space

If you need to increase the server's available storage capacity, follow these steps:

1. Ensure that you have a complete backup of the server.


 [Configuration Backup](#)

2. Add a new disk to the server.

 For **VMware ESXi** and **VMware Player**:


- Edit the settings of the virtual machine, and then click **Add...** to add new hardware.
- Using the Add Hardware Wizard, create a new SCSI disk and add it to the virtual machine.
- Once you have completed the wizard, refresh this page.

 [Refresh](#)


 For **VMware Fusion**:

- You must power off the virtual machine before you can edit its settings.
- Once you have added a new disk, power on the virtual machine.
- After the virtual machine has restarted, refresh this page.

 [Refresh](#)

 **Do not change the size of any existing disk in the virtual machine.**


This is not a supported operation and could lead to data loss.

 If you are using another virtualization product, refer to the appropriate documentation for instructions on modifying the virtual machine's configuration.

3. You can repeat this process in the future to add more disk space as required.

Add Disk Space

Use this form to add more disk space to the server.

| Add Disk Space | |
|---|--|
| Storage Information | |
| Utilization: |  35% used |
| Space: |  3.8 GB free  2.3 GB used  6.2 GB total |
| Disk Information | |
| Physical Disks: | 1 disk  Show details |
| Disk Partitions: |  sda 8589 MB <ul style="list-style-type: none">— sda1 106.9 MB— sda2 8.5 GB |
| Add Disk Space | |
| Availability: |  No free space is available
Add a new disk to the server and refresh this page. |
|  | |



System Log

The system log viewer available on the **Support > System Logs** page displays messages that have been generated from multiple different sources:

- **Application Logs**—messages generated by the Amigopod application.
- **HTTP Logs**—messages generated by the Apache Web Server.
- **RADIUS Logs**—messages generated by the RADIUS server during authentication, authorization or accounting.
- **System Logs**—messages generated by the system and various internal processes within it. Depending on the plugins you have installed, additional message sources may also be included in the system log viewer.

| Quick Help | Filter | Export |
|---|--|--------|
| Keywords: | Enter keywords to filter the logs. Use '-' to negate and quotes to group keywords. | |
| Filtered by: | All logs, Last month | |
| Time | Source | Level |
| 2010-10-05 16:12:24+10 | amigopod | debug |
| 2010-10-04 14:15:31+10 | amigopod | info |
| Auditing free disk space | | |
| Guest account created for 64871028 Password: 52109800 Account will expire at 2010-10-20 09:00:00 Account role is Guest Created by admin from 192.168.2.3 User DB: Local RADIUS Server | | |
| Refresh | | |
| Auto-refresh off | | |
| Showing 1 - 20 | | |
| 20 rows per page | | |

The information shown in the table is a summary of the log message. Click a log entry in the table to view the details of the log message.

Use the paging control at the bottom of the list to jump forwards or backwards by one page, or to the first or last page of the list. You can also click an individual page number to jump directly to that page.




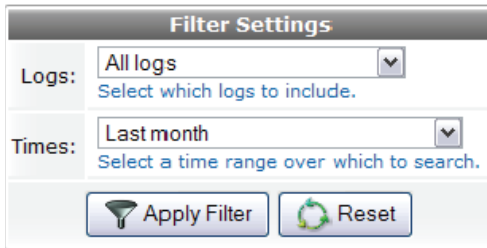
Use the **Refresh** link, or the Auto-refresh drop-down list, to keep the displayed log messages up to date.

Filtering the System Log


Use the Keywords field to perform a keyword search. Only the log messages that match the keywords entered are displayed. Click the **Clear Filter** link to restore the default view.

| Keywords: | operator profile | Clear Filter |
|--|--------------------------------|--------------|
| Enter keywords to filter the logs. Use '-' to negate and quotes to group keywords. | | |
| Filtered by: | Keywords, All logs, Last month | |
| Time | Source | Level |
| 2010-10-05 10:38:17+10 | amigopod | info |
| 2010-10-05 10:23:42+10 | amigopod | info |
| 2010-10-05 10:23:27+10 | amigopod | info |
| 2010-10-01 17:05:23+10 | amigopod | info |
| 2010-10-01 17:02:00+10 | amigopod | info |
| 2010-10-01 17:01:47+10 | amigopod | info |
| Modified operator profile: Test Profile | | |
| Created operator login: test | | |
| Created new operator profile: Test Profile | | |
| Updated operator login: test188 | | |
| Updated operator login: test188 | | |
| Created operator login: test188 | | |
| Refresh | | |
| Auto-refresh off | | |
| Showing 1 - 6 | | |
| 20 rows per page | | |


Use the  **Filter** tab to control advanced filtering settings, such as which logs to search and the time period to display:

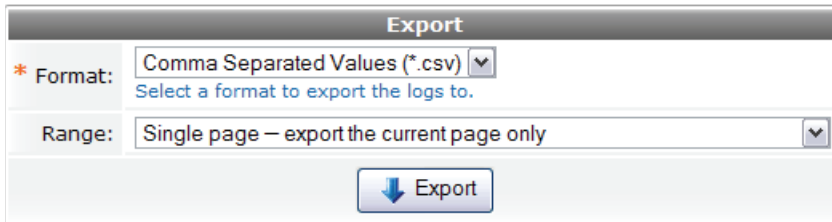


The **Filter Settings** dialog box contains two sections. The **Logs:** section has a dropdown menu set to 'All logs' with a link 'Select which logs to include.' below it. The **Times:** section has a dropdown menu set to 'Last month' with a link 'Select a time range over which to search.' below it. At the bottom are two buttons: 'Apply Filter' (with a funnel icon) and 'Reset' (with a circular arrow icon).

Click the  **Apply Filter** button to save your changes and update the view, or click the  **Reset** button to remove the filter and return to the default view.

Exporting the System Log

Use the  **Export** tab to save a copy of the system logs, in one of several formats.



The **Export** dialog box contains two sections. The *** Format:** section has a dropdown menu set to 'Comma Separated Values (*.csv)' with a link 'Select a format to export the logs to.' below it. The **Range:** section has a dropdown menu set to 'Single page — export the current page only'. At the bottom is an 'Export' button with a download icon.

Select one of the following formats from the Format drop-down list:

- **Comma Separated Values (*.csv)** – the data contains a header row with five exported fields:
timestamp,source,level,message,detail
- **HTML document (*.html)** – the exported data is contained in a table with four columns: Time, Source, Level, Message
- **Tab Separated Values (*.tsv)** – the data contains a header row with five exported fields:
timestamp source level message detail
- **Text file (*.txt)** – the data contains a line for each log message, including the timestamp, source, level and message. The details follow on lines that start with a space.
[2010-10-04 14:15:31+10] Amigopod info Guest account created for 98084707
- **XML document (*.xml)** – the exported data is contained within the <system-logs> element's <records> element.

Use the Range option and the Download Limit field to specify whether the current page or all matching log messages are included in the export.




Viewing the Application Log


The events and messages generated by the application are displayed in a table on the **Support > Application Log** page.

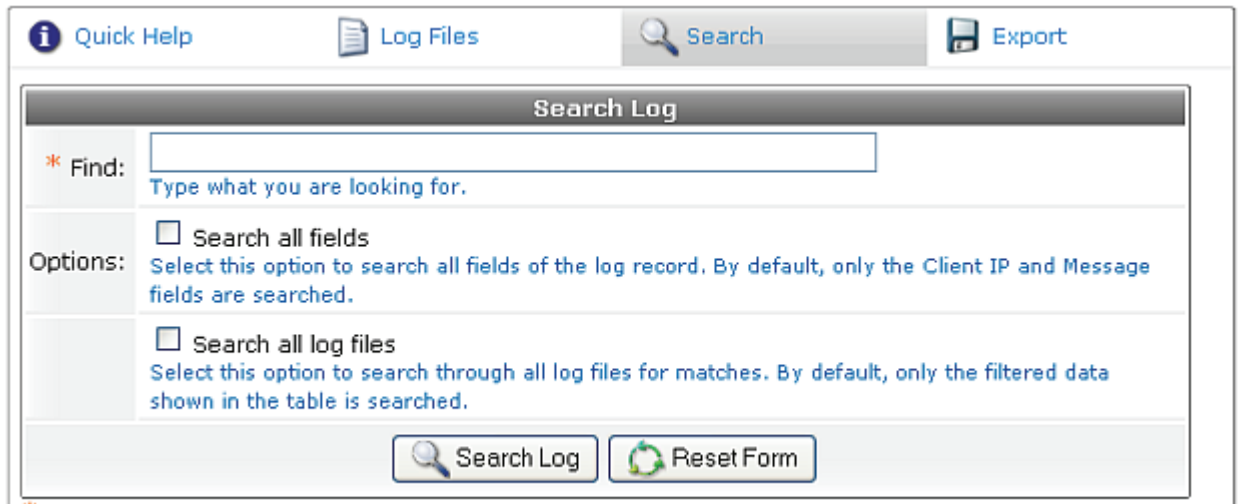
The System Logs viewer is recommended for viewing and searching all system logs, including the application log. A link to the system log viewer is provided at the bottom of the Application Log table.

In the Application Log view, you can click an event for in-depth information about it. You can double-click the row of the log entry to close it.

The Application Log lists the events and messages for the current month. To view events and messages from previous months, select the month from the drop-down list displayed at the top of the table when you click the  **Log Files** tab.

Searching the Application Log


You are able to search for particular log records using the form displayed when you click the  **Search** tab.



The screenshot shows a web interface with a top navigation bar containing four tabs: 'Quick Help' (with an information icon), 'Log Files' (with a document icon), 'Search' (with a magnifying glass icon and highlighted), and 'Export' (with a floppy disk icon). Below the tabs is a 'Search Log' form. The form has a title bar 'Search Log'. It contains a 'Find:' label with an asterisk and a text input field. Below the input field is a hint: 'Type what you are looking for.' Underneath is an 'Options:' section with two checkboxes. The first checkbox is labeled 'Search all fields' and has a description: 'Select this option to search all fields of the log record. By default, only the Client IP and Message fields are searched.' The second checkbox is labeled 'Search all log files' and has a description: 'Select this option to search through all log files for matches. By default, only the filtered data shown in the table is searched.' At the bottom of the form are two buttons: 'Search Log' (with a magnifying glass icon) and 'Reset Form' (with a circular arrow icon).

Click the  **Reset Form** button to clear the search and return to displaying all records in the log.

Exporting the Application Log

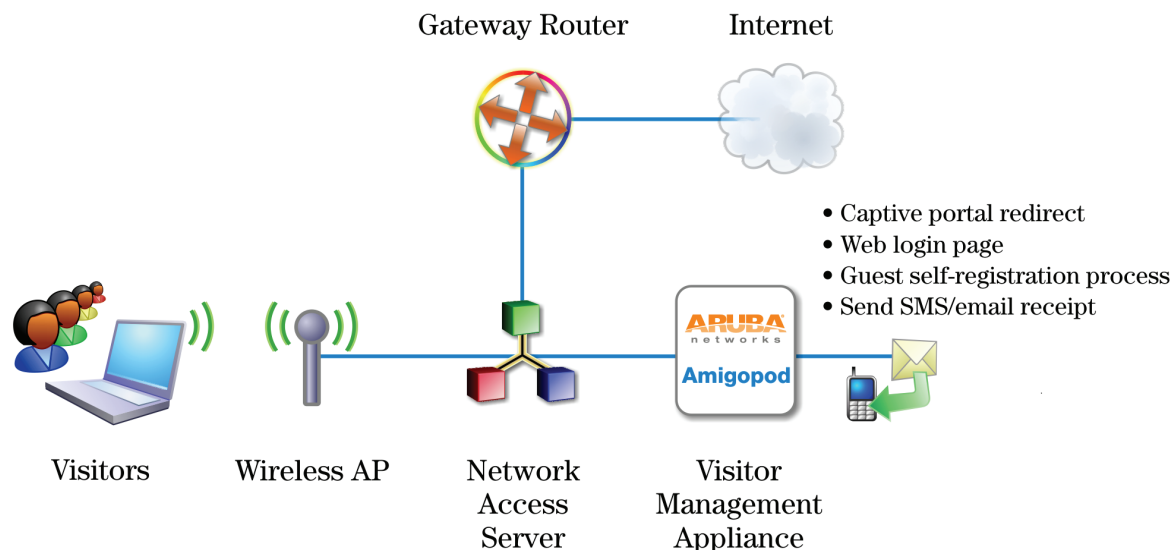
Use the  **Export** tab to save the log in other formats, including HTML, text, CSV, TSV and XML. You can select options to print, email or download the data.



The Hotspot Manager controls self provisioned guest or visitor accounts. This is where the customer is able to create his or her own guest account on your network for access to the Internet. This can save you time and resources when dealing with individual accounts.

The following diagram shows how the process of customer self provisioning works.

Figure 42 *Guest self-provisioning*



- Your customer associates to a local access point and is redirected by a captive portal to the login page.
- Existing customers may log in with their Hotspot username and password to start browsing.
- New customers click the **Hotspot Sign-up** link.
- On page 1, the customer selects one of the Hotspot plans you have created.
- On page 2, the customer enters their personal details, including credit card information if purchasing access.
- The customer's transaction is processed, and if approved their visitor account is created according to the appropriate Hotspot plan.
- On page 3, the customer receives an invoice containing confirmation of their transaction and the details of their newly created visitor account.
- The customer is automatically logged in with their username and password, providing instant Hotspot access.



Manage Hotspot Sign-up


You can enable visitor access self provisioning by navigating to **Customization > Hotspot Manager** and selecting the **Manage Hotspot Sign-up** command. This allows you to change user interface options and set global preferences for the self-provisioning of visitor accounts.

| Hotspot Preferences | |
|--|--|
| General Hotspot Preferences
Global options for self-provisioned visitor access. | |
| On/Off Switch: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable visitor access self-provisioning |
| Require HTTPS: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always use HTTPS for customer connections
Require HTTPS connections for customers creating Hotspot accounts. This is recommended to ensure the privacy of sensitive information such as credit card details. |
| * User Database: | My_local_DB
Self provisioned visitor accounts are created using this service handler. |
| * Transaction Processing: | My_Network Transaction Services
Hotspot transactions are processed using this service handler. |
| * Service Not Available Title: | Temporarily Unavailable
Title of the page displayed if self-provisioning has been disabled. |
| Service Not Available Message: | <div><pre><h2> Visitor Registration Temporarily Unavailable </h2> {nwaicontext icon="images/icon.png"} We're sorry, but the system is currently unavailable due to maintenance. Please try again later. {/nwaicontext}</pre></div> <div>Insert content item...</div> <div>Enter HTML message to display to visitors if self-provisioning has been disabled.</div> |
| Captive Portal
These options control the overall look and feel of the self provisioning visitor pages. | |
| Hotspot Sign-Up URL: | https://demo.amigopod.com/demo/aruba/hotspot_plan.php
This is the URL that starts the self-provisioning process. For external captive portals, redirect visitors to this URL to start the Sign-Up process. |
| Look and Feel
These options control the overall look and feel of the self provisioning visitor pages. | |
| Skin: | Aruba Amigopod Skin
Choose the skin for the Hotspot visitor access pages. |
| SMS Services
Override the default SMS settings. | |
| SMS Receipt: | (Use Default: SMS Receipt)
The plain-text format print template to use when generating an SMS receipt. |
| Phone Number Field: | (Use Default: visitor_phone)
The field containing the visitor's phone number. |
| Auto-Send Field: | (Use Default: auto_send_sms)
The field which, if it contains a non-empty string or non-zero value, will cause an account receipt SMS to be automatically sent upon creation of a visitor account. |
| <div>Save Changes</div> | |

The **Enable visitor access self-provisioning** check box must be ticked for self-provisioning to be available.

The **Require HTTPS** field, when enabled, redirects guests to an HTTPS connection for greater security.

The **Service Not Available** Message allows a HTML message to be displayed to visitors if self-provisioning has been disabled. See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter for details about the template syntax you may use to format this message.

Click the  **Save Changes** button after you have entered all the required data.

Captive Portal Integration

To start the visitor self-provisioning process, new visitor registration is performed by redirecting the visitor to the URL specified on the Hotspot Preferences page, for example: `https://demo.mycompany.com/demo/amigopod/hotspot_plan.php`.

The `hotspot_plan.php` page accepts two parameters:

- The **source** parameter is the IP address of the customer.
- The **destination** parameter is the original URL the customer was attempting to access (that is, the customer’s home page). This is used to automatically redirect the customer on successful completion of the sign-up process.

For browsers without JavaScript, you may use the **<noscript>** tag to allow customers to sign up:

```
<noscript>
  <a href="https://demo.mycompany.com/demo/amigopod/
    hotspot_plan.php">Hotspot Sign-Up</a>
</noscript>
```

However, in this situation the MAC address of the customer will not be available, and no automatic redirection to the customer's home page will be made. You may want to recommend to your customers that JavaScript be enabled for best results.

Look and Feel

The skin of a Web site is its external look and feel. It can be thought of as a container that holds the application, its style sheet (font size and color for example), its header and footer and so forth.

The default skin used by the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance is the one that is enabled in the Plugin Manager. The skin is seen by all users on the login page.

SMS Services

Configure the following settings in the **SMS Services** section of the **Hotspot Preferences** form to override the default SMS settings with your own custom configuration.












- **SMS Receipt:** Click this drop-down list to select the template you want to use for SMS receipts. The default value is **SMS Receipt**.
- **Phone Number Field:** Click this drop down list and identify the field that contains the visitor’s phone number. The default value is **visitor_phone**.
- **Auto-Send Field:** Click this drop-down list and select the field which, when configured with any string or non-zero value, will trigger the automatic sending of an SMS receipt. The default value of this field is **auto_send_sms**.





Hotspot Plans


Your Hotspot plans determine how a customer is to pay for Internet access using the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. You also have the option to allow free access.

You can customize which plans are available for selection, and any of the details of a plan, such as its description, cost to purchase, allocated role and what sort of username will be provided to customers.

| Plan Name | Description | Actions |
|--|---|---|
|  Free Access | Free basic wireless access. Limited to 64 kbit, Web browsing traffic only, and a maximum of one hour. |  Edit  Delete |
|  Hourly Access | Wireless access charged at \$2.95 per hour. Offers full Internet access at 128 kbit/sec. |  Edit  Delete |
|  Daily Access | Wireless access charged at \$24.95 per day (24 hours). Offers full Internet access at 256 kbit/sec. |  Edit  Delete |
|  Weekly Access | Wireless access charged at \$54.95 per week (7 days). Offers full Internet access at 256 kbit/sec. |  Edit  Delete |

Above is the list of default plans supplied with the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance. Plans that you have enabled have their name in bold with the following icon: . Plans that have not been enabled do not have names in bold and their icon is a little different: . You are able to edit these plans, delete these plans as well as add your own plans. Once a plan has been deleted it is not possible to undo the deletion.

Modifying an Existing Plan

Click the  **Edit** link next to a plan to modify it. The **Edit Hotspot Plan** appears.

You may alter the fields to meet the requirements of your company.

Creating New Plans

Custom hotspot plans are added by clicking the  **Create Hotspot plan** button. The following form is displayed.

| Edit Hotspot Plan | |
|---|--|
| Plan Details
Describe your Hotspot plan. | |
| * Plan Name: | <input type="text" value="Hourly Access"/>
<small>The name of the plan. Hotspot customers choose a plan based on its name.</small> |
| Description: | <input type="text" value="Wireless access charged at \$2.95 per hour. Offers full Internet access a"/>
<small>Description of the plan. This will be displayed with the Hotspot plan's name.</small> |
| Invoice Description: | <input type="text" value="128 kbit/sec Internet access"/>
<small>A brief description of the plan. This will be displayed on the customer's invoice along with the Hotspot plan's name.</small> |
| Enabled: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hotspot plan enabled
<small>Enabled plans are shown to customers and may be selected for purchase.</small> |
| User Account Details
A user account is created for each Hotspot customer. Use these options to control how user accounts are created. | |
| * Generated Username: | <input type="text" value="h#####"/>
<small>Format picture (see below) describing the usernames that will be created for customers. Leave blank to use the customer's email address as the username.</small> |
| Generated Password: | <input type="text" value="#####"/>
<small>Format picture (see below) describing the passwords that will be created for customers. Leave blank to use the password specified on the customer information form. This may require adding the 'password' field to the customer info form.</small> |
| Role: | <input type="text" value=""/>
<small>The role to assign to accounts that will be created for this plan.</small> |
| Time & Cost
Hotspot plans are purchased in units. Use these options to control the time and cost of each unit. | |
| * Unit Cost: | <input type="text" value="2.95"/>
<small>The cost to purchase a single unit of this plan. Enter 0 to create a 'free access' plan.</small> |
| * Minimum Units: | <input type="text" value="1"/>
<small>Minimum number of units that may be purchased.</small> |
| * Maximum Units: | <input type="text" value="24"/>
<small>Maximum number of units that may be purchased. Enter the Minimum Units value to hide the quantity option.</small> |
| * Unit Time: | <input type="text" value="3600"/>
<small>Length of time corresponding to a single unit of this plan. This is measured in seconds; enter 3600 for 1 hour.</small> |
| Unit Name: | <input type="text" value="hour(s)"/>
<small>The name used to describe one or more units of this plan.</small> |
| Time Tracking: | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed date — Unit purchase is relative to the transaction time
<input type="radio"/> Cumulative usage — Unit purchase is for total time spent online |
| <input type="button" value="Update Plan"/> | |

Click the  **Create Plan** button to create this plan for use by your Hotspot visitors.

See “[Format Picture String Symbols](#)” in the Reference chapter for a list of the special characters that may be used in the Generated Username and Generated Password format strings.

Managing Transaction Processors

Your hotspot plan must also identify the transaction processing gateway used to process credit card payments. Amigopod supports plugins for the following transaction processing gateways:

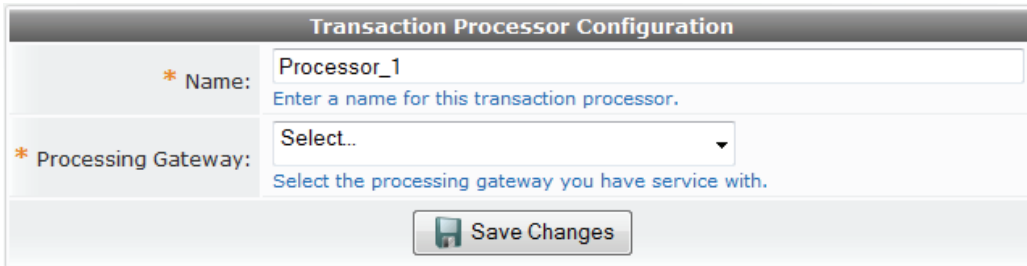
- Authorize.Net AIM
- CyberSource

- eWAY
- Netregistry
- Paypal
- WorldPay

Amigopod also includes a Demo transaction processor that you can use to create hotspot forms and test hotspot transactions.

Creating a New Transaction Processor

To define a new transaction processor, navigate to **Customization > Hotspot Manager**, click  **Manage Transaction Processors** then select  **New Transaction Processor**.



The form is titled "Transaction Processor Configuration". It contains two main fields:

- Name:** A text input field with the value "Processor_1". Below it is a blue link that says "Enter a name for this transaction processor."
- Processing Gateway:** A dropdown menu currently showing "Select...". Below it is a blue link that says "Select the processing gateway you have service with."





 At the bottom right of the form is a button labeled "Save Changes" with a floppy disk icon.

In the **Name** field, enter a name for the transaction processor.

Click the **processing gateway** drop-down list and select the gateway with which you have a service account to display additional configuration fields for that gateway type. Each transaction processing gateway type requires unique merchant identification, password and configuration information. If your transaction processor requires visitors to enter their address, Amigopod will automatically include address fields in the guest self-registration forms that use that transaction processor.

Managing Existing Transaction Processors

Once you define a transaction processor, it will appear in the transaction processor list. When you select an individual processors in the list, the list displays a menu that allows you to perform the following actions:

-  **Edit** – changes the properties of the specified transaction processor
-  **Delete** – removes the processor from the Transaction Processors list
-  **Duplicate** – creates a copy of a transaction processor
-  **Show Usage** – opens a window in the Transaction Processors list that shows if the profile is in use, and lists any hotspots associated with that transaction processor. Each entry in this window appears as a link to the **General Hotspot References** form that lets you change the transaction processor associated with that hotspot.



Managing Customer Information

You can customize the fields that the customer sees, the details of these fields, and the order in which they are presented by using the **Manage Hotspot Customer Information** command.

See “[Duplicating Forms and Views](#)” in the Guest Management chapter for information about the form field editor which may be used to make changes to the customer information form.



Managing Hotspot Invoice

After the customer’s transaction has been processed successfully, the customer receives an invoice containing confirmation of their transaction and the details of their newly created Hotspot user account.

You can customize the title shown on the invoice and how the invoice number is created. You can also customize the currency displayed on the invoice.


| Manage Invoice | |
|-------------------------|---|
| * Invoice Title: | <div>Your Company Name

Your contact details</div> <div>Enter the HTML template code to display as the title of the customer's invoice.</div> |
| * Invoice Numbering: | <div>Default numbered format</div> <div>Choose the way in which invoice numbers will be generated.</div> |
| Preview: | <div>P-53</div> <div>This is a sample invoice number generated with the current settings.</div> |
| * Currency Format: | <div>\$1,000.00</div> <div>The currency format to use when formatting a monetary amount for display.</div> |
| Currency Code: | <div>AUD</div> <div>The currency code to specify to the transaction service provider.</div> |
| Login Code: | <div><pre><script type="text/javascript"><!--{literal} function browser_home() { if (typeof(window.home) == "function") { window.home(); } else { window.location = "about:home"; } } //--> {/literal} </script> <button onclick="browser_home()" style="width: 25px;"></pre></div> <div>Insert content item...</div> <div>The HTML template code to display in the bottom panel of the invoice.</div> |
| <div>Save Changes</div> | |

The Invoice Title must be written in HTML. See [“Basic HTML Syntax”](#) in the Reference chapter for details about basic HTML syntax.

You are able to use Smarty functions on this page. See [“Smarty Template Syntax”](#) in the Reference chapter for further information on these.

You are able to insert content items such as logos or prepared text. See [“Customizing Self Provisioned Access”](#) in the Guest Management chapter for details on how to do this.

Click the  **Save Changes** button after you have entered all the required data.

Customize User Interface

Each aspect of the user interface your Hotspot customers see can be customized.



Customize Page One

Page one of the guest self-provisioning process requires that the guest selects a plan. You are able to customize how this page is displayed to the guest.

Edit Page

* Page Title:

Choose Plan

Title of this page.

Introductory HTML:

```

</h2>

<p>
    Welcome to the Hotspot Sign-Up.
    Get connected to the Internet without wires
    in just three easy steps.
</p>

<p>
    To get started, select the type of wireless
    access you would like to purchase.
</p>
```

This text is displayed at the top of the page, before the list of Hotspot plans.

Footer HTML:

This text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the list of Hotspot plans.

Options:

☐ Override standard form

If checked, the standard form on this page will not be included when the page is generated.
Note: this option is recommended for advanced users only.

Save Changes

You are able to give this page a title, some introductory text and a footer. The Introduction and the Footer are HTML text that may use template syntax, See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter.



Customize Page Two

On page 2, you can make changes to the content displayed when the customer enters their personal details, including credit card information if purchasing access. The progress of the user’s transaction is also shown on this page.

| Edit Page | |
|--------------------------|---|
| * Page Title: | <input type="text" value="Your Details"/>
Title of this page. |
| Introductory HTML: | <pre> <h2> Hotspot Sign-Up </h2> <p> To create your wireless account, please enter your details below. </p> </pre> <p>This text is displayed at the top of the page, before the form for the user's details.</p> |
| Footer HTML: | <pre> <h2> Important Information </h2> {nwa_lcontext type="info" class=" "} Note: We collect your personal information in order to provide you with wireless network service. Your personal details are kept strictly confidential at all times. (Read our privacy policy) </pre> <p>This text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the form for the user's details.</p> |
| Transaction Header HTML: | <pre> <h2> Hotspot Sign-Up </h2> <p> Please wait while your transaction is being processed... </p> </pre> <p>When a transaction is in progress, this text is displayed at the top of the page, before the progress notification area.</p> |
| Transaction Footer HTML: | <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 80px; width: 100%;"></div> <p>When a transaction is in progress, this text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the progress notification area.</p> |
| Options: | <input type="checkbox"/> Override standard form
If checked, the standard form on this page will not be included when the page is generated. Note: this option is recommended for advanced users only. |

See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter for details about the template syntax you may use to format the content on this page.



Customize Page Three

You can make changes to the content of page 3, where the customer receives an invoice containing confirmation of their transaction and the details of their newly created wireless account.

Edit Page

* Page Title:

Title of this page.

Introductory Text:

```
<h2>
    Hotspot Sign-Up 
</h2>

<p>
    Your transaction was processed successfully.
Welcome to the Hotspot!
</p>

<p>
    Your wireless account is now ready to use.
Just click the "Start Browsing"
    button below to automatically log in and
    activate your account.
</p>
```

This text is displayed at the top of the page, before the user's invoice.

Footer Text:

This text is displayed at the bottom of the page, after the user's invoice.

Options:

☐ Override standard format

If checked, the standard layout on this page will not be included when the page is generated.
Note: this option is recommended for advanced users only.

Save Changes

See “[Smarty Template Syntax](#)” in the Reference chapter for details about the template syntax you may use to format the content on this page.

View Hotspot User Interface

The Hotspot manager allows you to view and test Hotspot self-provisioning pages, as well as log in to and view the Hotspot self-service portal that allows customers to view their current account expiration date, purchase time extensions, log out of the Hotspot or change their user password.

To access either of these user pages, navigate to **Customization > Hotspot manager** and select the **Self-Provisioning** or **Self-Service** links in the left navigation menu.



The goal of a highly available system is to continue to provide network services even if a hardware failure occurs.

High Availability Services provides the tools required to achieve this goal. These tools include service clustering, fault tolerance, database replication, configuration replication, automatic failover and automatic recovery.

You must have two Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance servers that have the High Availability Services plugin installed in order to use these features.

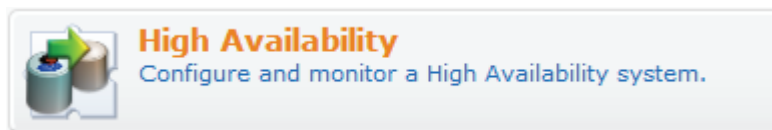
See [“About High Availability Systems”](#) in this chapter for an introduction to High Availability Services including a detailed explanation of how it works.

See [“Cluster Status”](#) in this chapter for an explanation of the cluster status messages.

See [“Recovering From a Failure”](#) in this chapter for the procedures to use if you need to recover a failed cluster.

Accessing High Availability

Use the **High Availability** command link available from the **Administrator** start page to access the clustering and replication features.



Alternatively, use the High Availability navigation menu to jump directly to any of the high availability features.

About High Availability Systems

Terminology & Concepts

A **cluster** consists of a primary node and a secondary node, configured so that a failure of either node will not prevent the cluster as a whole from performing its normal functions.

The **primary node** is the active server in a cluster. The cluster’s network services are always delivered by the primary node.

The **secondary node** is the backup server in a cluster. If the primary node fails, the secondary automatically takes over and continues delivering network service.

Fault tolerance is the ability of a server cluster to continue operating if either the primary or secondary node experiences a hardware failure.

Failover is the process by which the secondary node assumes control of the cluster once the primary node has failed.

A cluster's **virtual IP address** is a unique IP address that will always be assigned to the primary node of the cluster. In order to take advantage of the cluster's fault tolerance, all clients that use the cluster must use the cluster's virtual IP address, rather than each node's IP address.

Replication is the process of ensuring that the secondary node maintains an exact copy of the primary node's database contents and configuration. Replication is used to ensure that if a failover is required, the secondary node can continue to deliver an uninterrupted service to clients of the cluster.

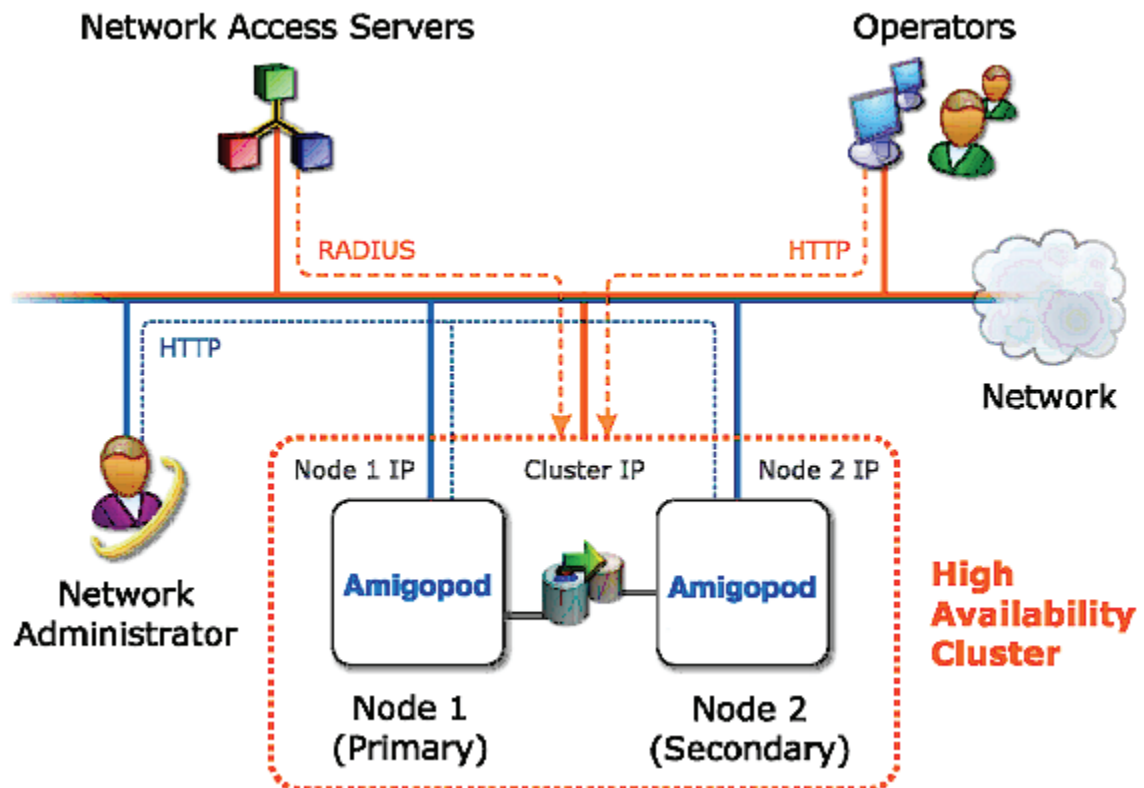
See [“About High Availability Systems”](#) for the following settings and procedure..

- Keep-alive
- Database replication.
- Configuration replication
- Downtime threshold

Network Architecture

The figure below shows the network architecture for a high availability cluster.

Figure 43 Network architecture of high availability cluster



The key points to note about this architecture are:

- The RADIUS and Web server protocols (HTTP and HTTPS) are supported by the cluster.
- The cluster has three IP addresses: each node has its own IP address, and there is a virtual IP address for the cluster which will always be assigned to the primary node in the cluster.
- For the cluster to provide failover redundancy, all network access servers and operators must use the cluster's IP address.
- The network administrator should use the node IP addresses to perform system administration tasks on each node, including managing the cluster itself.

- The cluster relies on DNS for name lookup. Each node must have a unique hostname, and each node must be able to resolve the other node's IP address by performing a DNS lookup.

The nodes in the cluster must be connected to the same local network. Use high quality network cables and reliable switching equipment to ensure the nodes have an uninterrupted network connection.



There should be no routers, gateways, firewalls, or network address translation (NAT) between the two nodes. Having nodes in different physical locations is not recommended and is not a supported configuration for the cluster.

Deploying an SSL Certificate

Special consideration needs to be given to deployments that require SSL access to the cluster.

The Common Name (CN) of an SSL certificate must match the hostname of the site being visited. Certificates that do not meet this requirement may still be used to secure the connection, but a browser security warning is displayed. In modern browsers this warning is intended to deter users from what may be a potentially serious “man in the middle” attack. Non-technical visitors should not be expected to analyze and interpret these messages.

Where SSL access is a requirement, the recommended approach is to issue the certificate for the hostname of the cluster's virtual IP address, and install the same certificate on both nodes.

This approach ensures that all operator and visitor access to the cluster is secured with a certificate that matches the hostname and IP address, avoiding any unnecessary browser security warnings.



When using this approach, the administrator will receive browser security warnings about the certificate hostname mismatch if he accesses each node individually.

Normal Cluster Operation

When the cluster is operating normally, the cluster status will be:

The cluster is running normally.

In this state, the primary node is assigned the cluster IP address and is responsible for delivering network services to clients. Each node is also continuously performing failure detection, database replication and configuration replication, as explained below.

Failure Detection

Failure detection is accomplished using a **keep-alive test**. The primary and secondary nodes verify that each is able to communicate with the other node by sending network requests and answering with a response. This takes place at the Keep Alive Rate specified in the cluster configuration, which by default is once every 2 seconds.

If several consecutive keep-alive tests have failed, the cluster determines that a failure has occurred. A cluster failover may then take place, depending on which node has failed. See [“Primary Node Failure”](#) in this chapter for information about a primary node failure, or [“Secondary Node Failure”](#) for information about a secondary node failure.

To avoid any network service interruptions, it is important that the nodes maintain an uninterrupted network connection.

Database Replication

Database replication occurs continuously in a normally operating cluster. All database modifications, including new guest accounts, changes to existing guest accounts, RADIUS roles, NAS servers, and RADIUS

accounting information, are replicated from the primary node to the secondary node. The replication delay will depend on the volume of database updates and system load but is generally only a few seconds.

Replicating the database contents ensures that in the event of a primary node failure, the secondary node is up to date and can continue to deliver the same network services to clients. While the primary node is online, the secondary node's database can only be updated with replication changes from the primary node. No other database changes can take place on the secondary node. Because of this, any form that requires a database update will be disabled and shown as “Read Only Access” on the secondary node.



Ensure that you always access the cluster using the virtual IP address when performing any database updates, such as creating new guest accounts or performing RADIUS authentication. This is required so that the changes will be performed on the primary node and then replicated to the secondary node.

Configuration Replication

Configuration replication also occurs continuously within the cluster, but takes place at a slower rate due to the reduced frequency of configuration updates. This rate is the Config Sync rate specified in the cluster configuration, which by default is once every minute.

The configuration items that are replicated include:

- Configuration for installed plugins (See [“Configuring Plugins”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- Fields defined in Guest Manager (See [“Customization of Fields”](#) in the Guest Management chapter)
- Forms and views defined in Guest Manager (See [“Customization of Forms and Views”](#) in the Guest Management chapter)
- Guest self-registration pages (See [“Customizing Self Provisioned Access”](#) in the Guest Management chapter)
- Instances of reports that have previously been run (See [“Report History”](#) in the Report Management chapter)
- LDAP authentication servers and translation rules (See [“LDAP Operator Authentication”](#) in the Operator Logins chapter)
- Network login access configuration (See [“Creating a VLAN Interface”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- Operator login configuration (See [“Operator Logins Configuration”](#) in the Operator Logins chapter)
- Operator logins (See [“Local Operator Authentication”](#) in the Operator Logins chapter)
- Operator profiles (See [“Operator Profiles”](#) in the Operator Logins chapter)
- Print templates defined in Guest Manager (See [“Receipt Page Properties”](#) in the Guest Management chapter)
- Publicly-accessible Web server items in Content Manager (See [“Content Manager”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- RADIUS server configuration (See [“Server Configuration”](#) in the RADIUS Services chapter)
- Report definitions (See [“Viewing Reports”](#) in the Reports chapter)
- SMS service configuration (See [“Receipt Page Properties”](#) in the Guest Management chapter)
- SMTP server configuration (See [“SMTP Configuration”](#) in the Administrator Tasks chapter)

- SMTP settings for email receipts (See “[Email Receipt Options](#)” in the Guest Management chapter)
- SNMP server settings (See “[SNMP Configuration](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- The set of currently installed plugins (See “[Plugin Manager](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- Web Login pages (See “[Web Logins](#)” in the RADIUS Services chapter)

Certain configuration items are not replicated. These are:

- HTTP Proxy settings (“[HTTP Proxy Configuration](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- Network interface configuration (“[Network Interfaces](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- RADIUS dictionary entries (See “[Dictionary](#)” in the RADIUS Services chapter)
- SSL certificate settings (See “[SSL Certificate](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- Subscription IDs in Plugin Manager (See “[Managing Subscriptions](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter)
- System hostname (See “[System Hostname](#)” in the Administrator Tasks chapter)



Primary Node Failure

If the cluster’s primary node fails, the cluster status will be displayed on the secondary node as:

The secondary node is running, but the primary node is down or stopped.

While the primary node is down, the cluster is in a failed state and cannot deliver network services. If the primary node recovers within the downtime threshold, the cluster will automatically return to the normal state and network service will be restored.

An automatic failover will be initiated after the primary node has been offline for the **downtime threshold**, which is 30 seconds by default.



Once failover has occurred, the cluster status will be displayed on the secondary node as:

The secondary node has taken over the cluster services because the primary node is down.

In the failover state, the secondary node will assume control of the cluster and will take over the cluster’s IP address. This will restore network service for clients of the cluster. Replication will stop as there is no longer a primary node.

While the primary node is offline, the cluster will no longer be fault-tolerant. A subsequent failure of the secondary node will leave the cluster inoperable.

See “[Recovering From a Temporary Outage](#)” in this chapter for instructions on recovering a cluster in this state.



The secondary node has taken over the cluster services. The primary node is back online, but the cluster needs to be recovered.

In this state, the primary node was offline for a period of time greater than the downtime threshold, and then recovered. The cluster has failed over to the secondary node.

In this state, the cluster is not fault-tolerant. A subsequent failure of the secondary node will leave the cluster inoperable.

Recovering the cluster is required for replication to resume and return the cluster to a fault-tolerant state.

See “[Recovering From a Temporary Outage](#)” in this chapter for instructions on recovering a cluster in this state.



Secondary Node Failure

If the cluster’s secondary node fails, the cluster status will be displayed on the primary node as:

The primary node is running, but the secondary node is down or stopped.

The cluster will continue operating without service interruption. Network services will be unaffected as the cluster's virtual IP address is assigned to the primary node.

While the secondary node is offline, the cluster will no longer be fault-tolerant. A subsequent failure of the primary node will leave the cluster inoperable.

To recover the cluster, the secondary node must be brought back online. If the node has experienced only a temporary outage and has the same cluster configuration, the cluster will automatically repair itself. Replication will update the secondary node with any database or configuration changes that were made on the primary node while the secondary node was offline.

If the secondary node was replaced due to a hardware failure then the cluster must be destroyed and rebuilt. See [“Recovering From a Hardware Failure”](#) in this chapter for instructions on recovering a cluster in this state.

Email Notification

In addition to sending syslog messages, Amigopod can also send email alerts to operators with administrator access if a high-availability cluster enters a failover state. This feature requires that each high-availability node have a valid SMTP configuration, and that each operator login is configured with an email address.

Cluster Status

The current status of the cluster is shown at the top of each page that is related to High Availability Services. for an explanation of each possible status, and the recommended action to take, if any.

Table 27 *Cluster Status Descriptions*















| Status | Description |
|---|--|
|  | <p>This system is not part of a high availability cluster.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">To create a new cluster and make this server the primary node, use the Create New Cluster command.To join a cluster and make this server the secondary node, use the Join Cluster command. |
|  | <p>The cluster is running normally.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Click the  View details link to show more information about the cluster.To perform a scheduled maintenance task, such as a reboot, on the primary node in the cluster, use the Cluster Maintenance command.See “Normal Cluster Operation” in this chapter for more information about normal cluster operations. |
|  | <p>The secondary node has taken over the cluster services because the primary node is down.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">A failover has occurred. The cluster must be recovered to resume fault-tolerant operation.Ensure the primary node is back online. |
|  | <p>The secondary node has taken over the cluster services. The primary node is back online, but the cluster needs to be recovered.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">A failover has occurred. The cluster must be recovered to resume fault-tolerant operation.See “Recovering From a Temporary Outage” in this chapter for the procedure. |
|  | <p>A failure has occurred.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Check the detailed status information.If this message persists, you may need to rebuild the cluster. See “Recovering From a Hardware Failure” in this chapter. |

Table 27 *Cluster Status Descriptions (Continued)*

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>The primary node is running, but the secondary node is down or stopped.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The secondary is no longer available. Check the Remote Status on the primary node to determine the cause of the problem. To clear the error condition, bring the secondary node back online. The cluster will return to fault-tolerant mode automatically. If the secondary node needs to be replaced, the cluster must be rebuilt. See “Recovering From a Hardware Failure” in this chapter. |
|  | <p>The secondary node is running, but the primary node is down or stopped.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The primary is no longer available. Check the Remote Status on the secondary node to determine the cause of the problem. The cluster IP address is inaccessible and network services are unavailable. Automatic failover will take place after the downtime threshold has been exceeded. |
|  | <p>The cluster services are starting.
Check the detailed status information.</p> |
|  | <p>The primary node is running, but a problem has been detected.
Check the detailed status information.</p> |
|  | <p>The primary node is running, but the secondary node is reporting a problem.
Check the detailed status information.</p> |
|  | <p>The cluster is recovering from a failure.
Check the detailed status information.</p> |
|  | <p>The cluster is currently being initialized.
Check the detailed status information.</p> |
|  | <p>Status call timed out. Server may be down.
This message may be displayed if the node cannot be contacted. There may be a network issue affecting your management workstation, or the node may be offline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refresh your Web browser to check the connection to the node. If the problem persists, check the cluster status on the other node. |

Cluster Setup

Before you begin, review this checklist to ensure you are prepared to set up a cluster:

- You have two servers available.
- Each server is powered up and connected to the same local area network.
- Each server has a unique hostname.
- Each server has a valid subscription ID and has been updated using the Plugin Manager. Ensure that the High Availability Services plugin has been installed along with any available plugin updates.
- You are logged in as the administrator on each server.
- You have determined the desired network configuration (virtual IP address) for the cluster.

Click the **Create New Cluster** command link on the **Administrator > High Availability > Cluster Configuration** page to begin the process of creating a new cluster.



Create New Cluster

Create a new high availability cluster, using this server as the primary.

Prepare Primary Node

Use the **Cluster Configuration** form to enter the basic network and control parameters for the cluster.

If you have not already set a unique hostname for this server, you can do so here. Each node in the cluster must have a unique hostname. You can select a single virtual IP address by entering one IP address in the Virtual IP Address field, or specify more than one virtual IP by entering a comma-separated list of multiple IP addresses.



Each node in the cluster must be able to resolve the other node by using a DNS lookup. This is verified during the cluster initialization. In practice, this means that you must configure your local DNS or DHCP server with appropriate entries for each node.

You must enter a shared secret for this cluster. The shared secret is used to authenticate the messages sent between the nodes in the cluster.

For the **downtime threshold** parameter, See [“Primary Node Failure”](#) in this chapter.

High Availability Services requires an IPv4 multicast address and port number. By default these values are 226.94.1.1 on UDP port 4000. If this address and port combination overlaps an existing solution on your network, you can adjust them when initializing the cluster configuration. If this multicast address is already in use, the cluster initialization will not work and you will need to choose a different address. Click the **Advanced** check box and enter an appropriate multicast address and port. These values will be automatically synchronized on the secondary node.

Click the **Save and Continue** button to prepare the primary node.



Any switch equipment the Amigopod appliances are connected to should also be configured to allow IPv4 multicast traffic.

| Cluster Configuration | |
|--|---|
| Hostname: | <input type="text" value="amigopod.localdomain"/> <p>Enter the hostname of the system, as a fully-qualified domain name. Each node must have a unique hostname.</p> |
| * Shared Secret: | <input type="text"/> <p>Shared secret used for node-to-node communication.</p> |
| Confirm Secret: | <input type="text"/> <p>Re-enter the shared secret.</p> |
| * Node 1 IP Address: | <input type="text" value="10.100.9.53"/> <p>This should be the actual IP address (eth0) of the primary node.</p> |
| * Node 2 IP Address: | <input type="text"/> <p>This should be the actual IP address (eth0) of the secondary node.</p> |
| * Virtual IP Address: | <input type="text"/> <p>Enter a new IP address within the same subnet as the physical IP address. This will be the cluster IP address and should be used by all network clients.</p> |
| * Downtime Threshold: | <input type="text" value="30"/> seconds <p>The time the cluster manager will wait before deciding that a server is down. Cluster fail-over will take place after this interval has elapsed.</p> |
| Advanced: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show advanced configuration options |
| * Config Sync: | <input type="text" value="1"/> minutes <p>The interval between successive configuration replications. Guest accounts and accounting records will always be replicated immediately.</p> |
| Network Alive Address: | <input type="text"/> <p>Enter an address to ping prior to taking over. This acts as a buffer in case a network failure sparks a failover. Leave blank to use the default gateway.</p> |
| * Multicast Address: | <input type="text" value="226.94.1.1"/> <p>Enter an available multicast address. Default is 226.94.1.1</p> |
| * Multicast port: | <input type="text" value="4000"/> <p>Enter the port to run multicast traffic. Default is 4000.</p> |
| <input type="button" value="Save and Continue"/> | |

If you have not already set a unique hostname for this server, you can do so here. Each node in the cluster must have a unique hostname. A valid hostname is a domain name that contains two or more components separated by a period (.). Hostname parameters are as follows:

- Each component of the hostname must not exceed 63 characters
- The total length of the hostname must not exceed 255 characters
- Only letters, numbers, and the hyphen (-) and period (.) characters are allowed
- Hostnames may start with numbers, and may contain only numbers

You can select a single virtual IP address by entering one IP address in the Virtual IP Address field, or specify than one virtual IP by entering a comma-separated list of multiple IP addresses.



Each node in the cluster must be able to resolve the other node by using a DNS lookup. This is verified during the cluster initialization. In practice, this means that you must configure your local DNS or DHCP server with appropriate entries for each node.

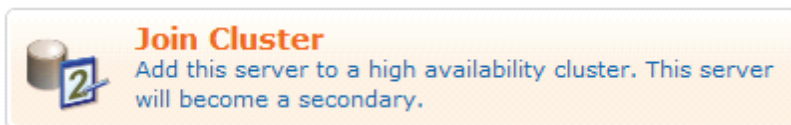
You must enter a shared secret for this cluster. The shared secret is used to authenticate the messages sent between the nodes in the cluster.

For an explanation of the **downtime threshold** parameter. See “[Primary Node Failure](#)” in this chapter.

Click the **Save and Continue** button to prepare the primary node.

Prepare Secondary Node

To prepare the secondary node, log in to that node and click the **Join Cluster** command link.



Use the **Cluster Configuration** form to enter the shared secret for the cluster and the IP address of the primary node.

| Cluster Configuration | |
|---|--|
| Node Hostname: | <input type="text" value="ha2.localdomain"/>
<small>Enter the hostname of the system, as a fully-qualified domain name. Each node requires a unique hostname.</small> |
| * Shared Secret: | <input type="password" value="••••••••"/>
<small>Shared secret used for node-to-node communication.</small> |
| Confirm Secret: | <input type="password" value="••••••••"/>
<small>Re-enter the shared secret.</small> |
| * Primary IP Address: | <input type="text" value="192.168.2.61"/>
<small>This should be the actual IP address (eth0) of the primary node.</small> |
| * Node IP Address: | <input type="text" value="192.168.2.62"/>
<small>This should be the actual IP address (eth0) of the secondary node.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Prepare Node"/> | |

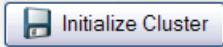
Click the **Prepare Node** button to save and verify the settings for the secondary node.

Cluster initialization

To complete the setup of the cluster, return to the primary node after preparing the secondary node and click the **Confirm Node Settings** button.

| Cluster Configuration | |
|--|--|
| Primary Hostname: | ha1.localdomain |
| Primary IP Address: | 192.168.2.61 |
| Node: | 192.168.2.62
<small>Log into the node and join the cluster.</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Confirm Node Settings"/> | |

The **Cluster Initialization** form is displayed.

| Cluster Initialization | |
|---|---|
| Hostname: | ha1.localdomain |
| Node 1 IP Address: | 192.168.2.61 |
| Node 2 IP Address: | 192.168.2.62 |
| Virtual IP Address: | 192.168.2.60 |
| Downtime Threshold: | 30 seconds |
| Config Sync Rate: | 1 minute |
| * Confirm: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Initialize the High Availability cluster
Select this option to proceed with the cluster initialization.
Caution: All data on the remote node will be destroyed! |
|  | |

Select the check box and click the  **Initialize Cluster** button to proceed.



During the cluster initialization process, the entire contents of the RADIUS database (including guest accounts, user roles, and accounting history) and all configuration settings of the primary node will be replicated to the secondary node. The existing database contents and configuration settings on the secondary node will be destroyed. It is very important to ensure that you have selected the correct node as the primary node, particularly if you are rebuilding the cluster. If in doubt, it is recommended that you perform a complete backup of both nodes prior to initializing the cluster.

Several status messages and a progress meter will be displayed while the cluster is initialized, which may take several minutes depending on the amount of data to be replicated.

Once the initialization process completes, you will be returned to the High Availability start page, where the cluster status will be displayed as:

The cluster is running normally.

Cluster Deployment



After setting up a cluster, you must make appropriate configuration changes for your network to take advantage of the cluster's fault tolerance.

The principal configuration change required is to replace the IP address of a single Amigopod server with the virtual IP address of the cluster.

- NAS devices and other RADIUS clients should be configured with the cluster IP address.
- Operators should use the cluster's IP address when provisioning guest accounts.
- Configure NAS devices to redirect visitors to the cluster's IP address for Web login pages. Only the IP address in the redirection URL should be changed; the remainder of the redirection URL should not be altered.

The network administrator should use the node IP addresses to perform system administration tasks on each node, including managing the cluster itself.

Cluster Maintenance

Use the **Cluster Maintenance** command link to access maintenance functions related to the cluster.



The maintenance commands that are available on this page will depend on the current state of the cluster as well as which node you are logged into.



Some maintenance commands are only available on the secondary node. Other commands may change the active state of the cluster. For this reason it is recommended that cluster maintenance should only be performed by logging into a specific node in the cluster using its IP address.

Recovering From a Failure

From a cluster maintenance perspective, there are two kinds of failure:

- A **temporary outage** is an event or condition that causes the cluster to failover to the secondary node. Clearing the condition allows the cluster's primary node to resume operations in essentially the same state as before the outage.
- A **hardware failure** is a fault that to correct requires rebuilding or replacing one of the nodes of the cluster.

The table below lists some system failure modes and the corresponding cluster maintenance that is required.

Table 28 *Failure Modes*

| Failure Mode | Maintenance |
|---|------------------|
| Software failure – system crash, reboot or hardware reset | Temporary outage |
| Power failure | Temporary outage |
| Network failure – cables or switching equipment | Temporary outage |
| Network failure – appliance network interface | Hardware failure |
| Hardware failure – other internal appliance hardware | Hardware failure |
| Data loss or corruption | Hardware failure |

Recovering From a Temporary Outage

Use this procedure to repair the cluster and return to a normal operating state:

1. This procedure assumes that the primary node has experienced a temporary outage, and the cluster has failed over to the secondary node.
2. Ensure that the primary node and the secondary node are both online.
3. Log into the secondary node. (Due to failover, this node will be assigned the cluster's virtual IP address.)
4. Click Cluster Maintenance, and then click the **Recover Cluster** command link.



Recover Cluster

Recover from a failed primary, and make this server the new primary node. Once running, the primary designation can be swapped back if desired. This action requires both servers to be online.

5. A progress meter is displayed while the cluster is recovered. The cluster's virtual IP address will be temporarily unavailable while the recovery takes place.

6. Recovery is complete. The secondary node is now the new primary node for the cluster. The cluster is back in a fault-tolerant mode of operation.

The Recover Cluster command will only work if the node that failed is brought back online with the same cluster configuration. This is normally the case in all temporary outages. See [“Recovering From a Hardware Failure”](#) in this chapter, in this case, for a description of how to recover the cluster.



The **Recover Cluster** action is available from *either* node, and will make that node the new primary node for the cluster. To return the primary node back to its original status as the primary node in the cluster, you can use the **Swap Primary Servers** command. See [“Performing Scheduled Maintenance”](#) in this chapter for an explanation.

Recovering From a Hardware Failure

If the failed node has been replaced, the cluster configuration will no longer be present on that node. To recover the cluster, first ensure that the replaced node is ready to rejoin the cluster, then destroy the cluster and recreate it.

Use the following procedure to rebuild the cluster:

1. This procedure assumes that the primary node has failed and has been replaced.
2. Configure the network settings, subscription IDs and hostname for the replacement primary node.
3. Ensure that the replacement primary node and the secondary node are both online.
4. Log into the secondary node. (Due to failover, this node will be assigned the cluster’s virtual IP address.)
5. Click Cluster Maintenance, and then click the **Destroy Cluster** command link.



Destroy Cluster

Destroys the cluster. Each node will return to fully independent operation.


6. A progress meter is displayed while the cluster is destroyed. The virtual IP address of the cluster will be unavailable until the cluster is reinitialized.
7. Click the **Create New Cluster** command link.
8. Recreate the cluster. See [“Cluster Setup”](#) in this chapter for a description of the process. Note that the new cluster’s primary node must be the former cluster’s secondary node that you are presently logged into.
9. When the cluster is initialized, the database and configuration is replicated to the replacement primary node.
10. Recovery is complete. The cluster’s virtual IP address is now available, and the secondary node is now the new primary node for the cluster. The cluster is back in a fault-tolerant mode of operation.

A similar procedure can be used to rebuild the cluster in the event of a secondary node suffering a hardware failure.

Performing Scheduled Maintenance

Routine maintenance tasks such as a server reboot or shutdown may occasionally be required for a server that is part of a cluster.


These tasks may be performed by ensuring that the server is the secondary node in the cluster. If the secondary node goes offline, the primary node will be unaffected and the cluster will continue to provide network services without interruption. When the secondary node comes back online, the cluster will be automatically rebuilt and replication will resume.

To check the current status of a node, log into that node and click the  **Show details** link displayed with the cluster status on the High Availability page. The node's current status is displayed under the **Local Status** heading.

Local Status

 The server is currently running as the primary (Node 1).

Local Status

 The server is currently running as a node (Node 2).

Use this procedure to make the current primary node the secondary node:

1. Log into the current secondary node of the cluster.
2. Click Cluster Maintenance, and then click the **Swap Primary Server** command link.



Swap Primary Server

Performs a graceful switch of the Primary designation. This is recommended whenever maintenance is required on the current Primary.

3. A progress meter is displayed while the primary node is switched. The cluster's virtual IP address will be temporarily unavailable while the swap takes place.
4. The swap is complete. The secondary node is now the new primary node for the cluster. The cluster is back in a fault-tolerant mode of operation.
5. Perform any required maintenance on the new secondary node.

Updating Plugins

Plugins cannot be updated while High Availability is running. Because exact synchronization of the two servers is required for High Availability Services, you must first destroy the cluster, then re-create the cluster after the plugins are updated. See [Destroying a Cluster](#) and [Cluster Setup](#) in this chapter.

For information on updating plugins, see [Plugin Manager](#) in the [Administrator Tasks](#) chapter.

Destroying a Cluster

The **Destroy Cluster** command link is used to shut down a cluster and return to independent nodes. Avoid using this command when you are accessing the cluster using its virtual IP address, as the virtual IP address will no longer be available when the cluster has been destroyed.



Destroy Cluster

Destroys the cluster. Each node will return to fully independent operation.

Immediately after the cluster is destroyed, both nodes will have the same database and configuration state. However, changes on one node will no longer be replicated to the other node as the cluster is no longer functioning.

Cluster Troubleshooting

When building a cluster, use the recommended values for the downtime threshold, keep-alive rate and configuration sync rate. You should only change these values if you have a specific requirement and have verified that different values can be used to meet that requirement.

To avoid unexpected failover of the cluster, ensure that the network connection to the nodes of the cluster is always available. Use high quality network equipment, including cables, and secure physical access to the servers to prevent accidental dislodgement of cables.

If network access to the cluster is intermittent, this may indicate a possible hardware failure on the current primary node. In this situation, you may either use the `Swap Primary Server` command to make the secondary node the new primary node, or you can cause the cluster to failover to the secondary by disconnecting the primary node.

Brief network outages are permissible and will not cause failover, provided that the network outage is shorter than the downtime threshold of the cluster.

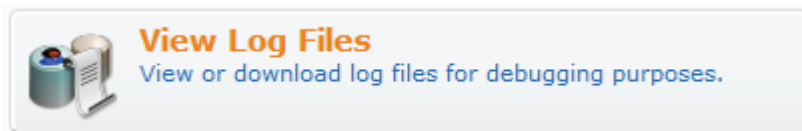
During a failover from the primary to the secondary node, the network services provided by the cluster will be unavailable. The time that the cluster will be offline is bounded by the downtime threshold. This can be used to calculate the expected availability of the cluster.

The **Restart Cluster Services** and **Stop Cluster Services** command links on the Cluster Maintenance page may be used to test failover conditions by simulating a cluster failure.



Avoid using these commands when you are accessing the cluster using its virtual IP address, as the virtual IP address may become unavailable.

The **View Log Files** command link allows the internal state of the cluster to be viewed.



This may be useful if debugging a problem related to the cluster. The log files may be exported to a zip file. If you require support about a cluster-related problem, include a copy of the exported cluster log files with your support request.

Basic HTML Syntax

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance allows different parts of the user interface to be customized using the Hypertext Markup Language (HTML).

Most customization tasks only require basic HTML knowledge, which is covered in this section.

HTML is a markup language that consists primarily of *tags* that are enclosed inside angle brackets, for example, **<p>**. Most tags are paired to indicate the start and end of the text being marked up; an end tag is formed by including the tag inside the angle brackets with a forward slash, for example, **</p>**.

Use the following standard HTML tags in customization:

Table 29 *Standard HTML Tags*

| Item | HTML Syntax |
|------------------------|--|
| Basic Content | |
| Heading level 1 | <code><h1>Main Heading</h1></code> |
| Heading level 2 | <code><h2>Subheading</h2></code> |
| Heading level 3 | <code><h3>Section heading</h3></code> |
| Regular paragraph text | <code><p>Paragraph text</p></code> |
| Line break | <code>
</code>
<code>
</code> – equivalent syntax (XHTML) |
| Bullet list | <code></code>
<code>List item text</code>
<code></code> |
| Numbered list | <code></code>
<code>List item text</code>
<code></code> |
| Text Formatting | |
| Bold text | <code>words to be made bold</code>
<code>equivalent syntax</code> |
| Italic | <code><i>words to be made italic</i></code>
<code>equivalent syntax</code> |
| Underline | <code><u>words to underline</u></code> |
| Typewriter text | <code><tt>Shown in fixed-width font</tt></code> |
| Styled text (inline) | <code>Uses CSS formatting</code>
<code>Uses predefined style</code> |

Table 29 *Standard HTML Tags (Continued)*

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| Styled text (block) | <pre><div style="...">Uses CSS formatting</div> <div class="...">Uses predefined style</div></pre> |
| Hypertext | |
| Hyperlink | <pre>Link text to click on</pre> |
| Inline image | <pre> – XHTML equivalent</pre> |
| Floating image | <pre></pre> |

For more details about HTML syntax and detailed examples of its use, consult a HTML tutorial or reference guide.

Standard HTML Styles

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance defines standard CSS classes that you can use to provide consistent formatting within the user interface.

Examples of these styles are given below.

Heading 2

Paragraph text.

Paragraph text in nwaImportant style.

Paragraph text in nwaError style.

Paragraph text in nwaInfo style.

Heading 3

Following table is **nwaContent** style.

| Table heading: nwaTop | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Table heading: nwaLeft | Table cell: nwaBody | Table heading: nwaRight |
| | Table cell: nwaHighlight | |
| | Table cell: nwaSelectedHighlight | |
| | Table cell: nwaSelected | |
| | Table cell: nwaUsername text | |
| | Table cell: nwaPassword text | |
| Table heading: nwaBottom | | |

Table 30 *Formatting Classes*

| Class Name | Applies To | Description |
|------------|------------|--|
| nwaIndent | Tables | Indent style used in tables |
| nwaLayout | Tables | Used when you want to lay out material in a table without the material looking as if it is in a table; in other words, without borders |
| nwaContent | Tables | Class used for a standard table with borders |

Table 30 *Formatting Classes (Continued)*

| | | |
|----------------------|--------------|--|
| nwaTop | Table Header | Table heading at top |
| nwaLeft | Table Header | Left column of table |
| nwaRight | Table Header | Right column of table |
| nwaBottom | Table Header | Table heading at bottom |
| nwaBody | Table Cell | Style to apply to table cell containing data |
| nwaHighlight | Table Cell | Highlighted text (used for mouseover) |
| nwaSelected | Table Cell | Selected text (table row after mouse click) |
| nwaSelectedHighlight | Table Cell | Selected text with mouseover highlight |
| nwaInfo | All | Informational text message |
| nwaError | All | Error text message |
| nwaImportant | All | Text that should be prominently displayed
Table subheadings |
| nwaUsername | All | Text used to display a username |
| nwaPassword | All | Text used to display a password |

Smarty Template Syntax

The Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance's user interface is built using the Smarty template engine. This template system separates the program logic and visual elements, enabling powerful yet flexible applications to be built.

When customizing template code that is used within the user interface, you have the option of using Smarty template syntax within the template. Using the programming features built into Smarty, you can add your own logic to the template. You can also use predefined template functions and block functions to ensure a consistent user interface.

Basic Template Syntax

Following is a brief introduction to the usage of the Smarty template engine. For more information, please refer to the Smarty documentation at <http://www.smarty.net/docs.php>, or the Smarty Crash Course at <http://www.smarty.net/crashcourse.php>.

Text Substitution

Simple text substitution in the templates may be done with the syntax **{*\$variable*}**, as shown below:

```
The current page's title is: {$title}
```

Template File Inclusion

To include the contents of another file, this can be done with the following syntax:

```
{include file="public/included_file.html"}
```

Note that Smarty template syntax found in these files is also processed, as if the file existed in place of the **{include}** tag itself.

Comments

To remove text entirely from the template, comment it out with the Smarty syntax `{* commented text *}`. Note that this is different from a HTML comment, in that the Smarty template comment will never be included in the page sent to the Web browser.

Variable Assignment

To assign a value to a page variable, use the following syntax:

```
{assign var=name value=value}
```

The “value” can be a text value (string), number, or Smarty expression to be evaluated, as shown in the examples below:

```
{assign var=question value="forty plus two"}
The question is: {$question}
{assign var=answer value=42}
The answer is: {$answer}
{assign var=question_uppercase value=$question|strtoupper}
THE QUESTION IS: {$question_uppercase}
```

Conditional Text Blocks

To include a block of text only if a particular condition is true, use the following syntax:

```
{if $username != ""}
<tr>
  <td class="nwaBody">Username:</td>
  <td class="nwaBody">{$username}</td>
</tr>
{else}
<!-- No user name, no table row -->
{/if}
```

The condition tested in the **{if} ... {/if}** block should be a valid PHP expression. Note that the **{else}** tag does not require a closing tag.

Script Blocks

The brace characters `{` and `}` are specially handled by the Smarty template engine. Using text that contains these characters, such as CSS and JavaScript blocks, requires a Smarty block **{literal} ... {/literal}**:

```
<script type="text/javascript" language="JavaScript">
{literal}
<!--
function my_function() {
  // some Javascript code here
}
// -->
{/literal}
</script>
```

Failing to include the **{literal}** tag will result in a Smarty syntax error when using your template. Single instances of a `{` or `}` character can be replaced with the Smarty syntax **{ldelim}** and **{rdelim}** respectively.

Repeated Text Blocks

To repeat a block of text for each item in a collection, use the **{section} ... {/section}** tag:

```
{section loop=$collection name=i}
<tr>
  <td class="nwaBody">
    {$collection[i].name}
  </td>
</tr>
{sectionelse}
```

```
<!-- included if $collection is empty -->
{/section}
```

Note that the content after a **{sectionelse}** tag is included only if the **{section}** block would otherwise be empty.

Foreach Text Blocks

An easier to use alternative to the **{section} ... {/section}** tag is to use the **{foreach} ... {/foreach}** block:

```
{foreach key=key_var item=item_var from=$collection}
  {$key_var} = {$item_var}
{foreachelse}
  <!--included if $collection is empty -->
{/foreach}
```

The advantage of this syntax is that each item in the collection is immediately available as the named item variable, in this example **{item_var}**. This construct is also useful when iterating through associative arrays indexed by key, as the key is immediately available with each item.

A `name=` attribute may be supplied with the opening **{foreach}** tag. When a name is supplied, the following additional Smarty variables are available for use inside the **{foreach} ... {/foreach}** block:

- **{smarty.foreach.name.first}** – true if the item being processed is the first item in the collection
- **{smarty.foreach.name.last}** – true if the item being processed is the last item in the collection
- **{smarty.foreach.name.index}** – counter for the current item, starting at 0 for the first item
- **{smarty.foreach.name.iteration}** – counter for the current item, starting at 1 for the first item
- **{smarty.foreach.name.total}** – value indicating the total number of items in the collection

Note that the content after a **{foreachelse}** tag is included only if the **{foreach}** block would otherwise be empty.

Modifiers

Smarty provides *modifiers* that can be used to gain greater control over the formatting of data. Modifiers can be included by following a variable with a vertical bar `|` and the name of the modifier. Any arguments to the modifier can be specified using a colon `:` followed by the arguments.

The following example prints a date using the YYYY-MM-DD syntax:

```
{$expire_time|nwdateformat:"%Y-%m-%d"}
```

See **“Date/Time Format Syntax”** in this chapter for detailed information on the date/time format modifiers. See **Table 31**.

Table 31 *Smarty Modifiers*

| Modifier | Description |
|------------------|--|
| htmlspecialchars | Escapes characters used in HTML syntax with the equivalent HTML entities (& for & , < for < and > for >) |
| nl2br | Replaces newline characters in the value with HTML line breaks (
) |
| number_format | Formats a numerical value for display; an optional modifier argument may be used to specify the number of decimal places to display (default is 0) |
| nwdateformat | Date/time formatting; see “nwdateformat Modifier” in this chapter for details about this modifier function |
| nwtimeformat | Date/time formatting; see “Date/Time Format String Reference” in this chapter for details about this modifier function |

Table 31 *Smarty Modifiers (Continued)*

| Modifier | Description |
|----------------|--|
| nwamoneyformat | Formats a monetary amount for display purposes; an optional modifier argument may be used to specify the format string. This modifier is equivalent to the <code>NwaMoneyFormat()</code> function; see “ NwaMoneyFormat ” in this chapter for details. |
| strtolower | Converts the value to lowercase |
| strtoupper | Converts the value to uppercase |
| ucfirst | Converts the first character of the value to uppercase |
| ucwords | Converts the first character of each word in the value to uppercase |

Predefined Template Functions

Template functions are used to perform different kinds of processing when the template is used. The result of a template function takes the place of the function in the output of the template.

Functions are of two kinds: *block functions*, which have a beginning and ending tag enclosing the text operated on by the function, and *template functions*, which have just a single tag and do not enclose text.

To use a function, enclose the function name in curly braces { } and provide any attributes that may be required for the function. Block functions also require a closing tag.

dump

```
{dump var=$value}
```

Smarty registered template function. Displays the value of a variable.

Use the following Smarty syntax to print a variable’s contents:

```
{dump var=$var_to_dump export=html}
```

The contents of the variable are printed in a **<pre>** block. Use the attribute “export=1” to use PHP’s `var_export()` format, or omit this attribute to get the default behavior – PHP’s `var_dump()` format.

Use the attribute “html=1” to escape any HTML special characters in the content. This can also be done with attribute “export=html”, and is recommended for use in most situations (so that any embedded HTML is not interpreted by the browser).

nwa_commandlink

```
{nwa_commandlink} ... {/nwa_commandlink}
```

Smarty registered block function. Generates a “command link” consisting of an icon, main text and explanatory text.

Command links are block elements and are roughly the equivalent of a form button. A command link is typically used to represent a choice the user should make to proceed. The command link contains an icon, command text (that sums up the action taken by the command link), and any explanatory text needed for the command.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_commandlink icon="images" command="Command Link" linkwidth="400"
commandclass="nwaImportant" text="This is a sentence explaining the command."
textclass="nwaInfo"}link_here.php{/nwa_commandlink}
```

- The “icon” parameter is the SRC to the image of the icon. This should normally be a relative path.
- The “command” parameter is the main text of the command link.

- The “text” parameter is the explanatory text describing the action that lies behind the command link. (This is optional.)
- The “linkwidth” parameter, if specified, indicates the width of the command link in pixels. This should be at least 250; the recommended value is 400.
- The “width” and “height” parameters, if specified, provide the dimensions of the icon to display. If not specified, this is automatically determined from the image.
- The “onclick” parameter, if specified, provides the contents for the onclick attribute of the link.
- The “commandclass” parameter, if specified, sets the class attribute of the DIV element enclosing the command text. The default class is “nwaImportant”.
- The “textclass” parameter, if specified, sets the class attribute of the P element enclosing the command link’s descriptive text. The default class is “nwaInfo”.
- The “alt” parameter, if specified, sets the ALT attribute of the command link’s icon. If not specified, the default alt text used is the command text.
- The “target” parameter, if specified, sets the TARGET attribute of the hyperlink. If not specified, no TARGET attribute is provided.

The body of the element is the HREF of the command link. The “icon” and “command” parameters are required. All other parameters are optional.

nwa_iconlink

```
{nwa_iconlink} ... {/nwa_iconlink}
```

Smarty registered block function. Generates a combined icon and text link to a specified URL.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_iconlink icon="images/icon-info22.png" text="More  
Information"}more_information.php{/nwa_iconlink}
```

- The “icon” parameter is the SRC to the image of the icon. This should normally be a relative path.
- The “text” parameter is the text to display next to the icon. This will also be used as the alternate text (that is, a tooltip) for the icon image.
- The “width” and “height” parameters, if specified, provide the dimensions of the icon to display. If not specified, this is automatically determined from the image.
- The “onclick” parameter, if specified, provides the contents for the onclick attribute of the link.
- The “target” parameter, if specified, provides the contents for the target attribute of the link.
- The “alt” parameter, if specified, sets the ALT attribute of the icon. If not specified, the default alt text used is the icon text.
- The “style” parameter, if specified, provides CSS for the SPAN element used to implement the icon link.

The body of the element is the HREF of the link. This HREF will be added to both the icon and the text. If the content of the link is empty, no link will be inserted. This can be used to insert an icon and text as an inline group. Note that no HTML entity escaping is performed when inserting content using this function.

nwaicontext

```
{nwaicontext} ... {/nwaicontext}
```

Smarty registered block function. Generates a block of text with a marker icon displayed in the top left.

Usage examples:

```
{nwaicontext icon="images/icon-info22.png"}Text to display{/nwaicontext}  
{nwaicontext type="info"}Information block{/nwaicontext}
```

- The “icon” parameter, if specified, is the SRC to the image of the icon. This should normally be a relative path.

- The “width” and “height” parameters, if specified, provide the dimensions of the icon to display. If not specified, this is automatically determined from the image.
- The “alt” parameter, if specified, provides the alternate text for the icon.
- The “class” parameter, if specified, is the style name to apply to a containing DIV element wrapped around the content. If this is empty, and a default is not provided through the “type” parameter, no wrapper DIV is added.
- The “style” parameter, if specified, is the CSS inline style to apply to a containing DIV element, as for the “class” parameter.
- The “type” parameter, if specified, indicates a predefined style to apply; this may be one of the following:
 - **error** – red cross symbol
 - **fatal** – skull symbol
 - **info** – information symbol
 - **note** (or **arrow**) – right-pointing arrow
 - **Amigopod** – Amigopod logo
 - **ok** (or **tick**) – green tick mark
 - **warn** (or **warning**) – warning symbol
 - **wait** – animated spinner

If “noindent=1” is specified, the block is not indented using the ‘nwaIndent’ style. If “novspace=1” is specified, the block uses a ‘DIV’ element, rather than a ‘P’ element. If neither “icon” nor “type” is supplied, the default behavior is to insert an “info” type image. Specifying a “type” is equivalent to specifying an “icon”, “width”, “height” and “alt” parameter, and may also include a “class” depending on the type selected.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_icontext struct=$error}/{/nwa_icontext}
```

The “struct” parameter, if specified, uses a standard result type. If the “error” key is set and non-zero, the “type” parameter is set to the value error, and the “message” key is converted to a HTML formatted error message for display.

nwa_quotejs

```
{nwa_quotejs} ... {/nwa_quotejs}
```

Smarty registered block function. Quotes its content in a string format suitable for use in JavaScript. This function also translates UTF-8 sequences into the corresponding JavaScript Unicode escape sequence (\uXXXX)

Usage example:

```
{nwa_quotejs}String with ' and "{/nwaquote_js}
```

The output of this will be:

```
'String with \' and \'"'
```

The “body” parameter, if set, indicates that the string quotes are already supplied; in this case the beginning and ending quotes are not included in the output.

nwa_radius_query

```
{nwa_radius_query _method=MethodName _assign=var ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Performs accounting-based queries on the RADIUS server and returns the result for use in a template.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_radius_query _method=GetCallingStationTraffic
 callingstationid=$dhcp_lease.mac_address
 from_time=86400 in_out=out _assign=total_traffic}
```

This example uses the `GetCallingStationTraffic` query function, and passes the “callingstationid”, “from_time” and “in_out” parameters. The result is assigned to a template variable called `total_traffic`, and will not generate any output. See “[GetCallingStationTraffic\(\)](#)”.

This template function accepts the following parameters to select a RADIUS database and other connection options:

- **_db** – ID of the RADIUS database service handler (this parameter is optional, the default service handler will be used if it not set)
- **_debug** – Set to a nonzero value to enable debugging
- **_quiet** – Set to a nonzero value to inhibit warning/error messages

The following parameters control the query to be executed:

- **_method** (required) – Name of the query function to execute. This should be one of the functions listed in the “[Standard RADIUS Request Functions](#)” section. A brief listing of the available methods is provided below.
- **_arg0, _arg1, ..., _argN** (optional) – Positional arguments for the query function.
- Named arguments may also be supplied; the arguments must be named identically to the function arguments listed in the documentation for the query function.

The following parameters control how the result should be processed:

- **_assign** – Name of a page variable to store the output; if not set, output is sent to the browser as the result of evaluating the template function.
- **_output** – Index of item to return from the RPC result; if not set, the complete result is returned. This may be of use when an array containing multiple values is returned and only one of these values is required.
- **_default** – Default value to display or return if an error occurs or the `_output` field is not available in the result.

For ease of use, “assign” is also supported as a synonym for “_assign”.

This template function does not generate any output if the **_assign** parameter is set.

The methods that are available for use with this function are listed below:

- `GetTraffic($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)`
- `GetTime($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null)`
- `GetSessions($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null)`
- `GetCallingStationTraffic($callingstationid, $from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null, $mac_format = null)`
- `GetUserTraffic($username, $from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)`
- `GetIpAddressTraffic($ip_addr, $from_time = null, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)`
- `GetCallingStationTime($callingstationid, $from_time, $to_time = null, $mac_format = null)`
- `GetUserTime($username, $from_time, $to_time = null)`
- `GetIpAddressTime($ip_addr, $from_time = null, $to_time = null)`
- `GetCallingStationSessions($callingstationid, $from_time, $to_time = null, $mac_format = null)`
- `GetUserSessions($username, $from_time, $to_time = null)`
- `GetIpAddressSessions($ip_addr, $from_time = null, $to_time = null)`
- `GetUserActiveSessions($username, $callingstationid = null)`

- `GetCurrentSession($criteria)`
- `GetUserCurrentSession($username)`
- `GetIpAddressCurrentSession($ip_addr = null)`
- `GetCallingStationCurrentSession($callingstationid, $mac_format = null)`
- `GetSessionTimeRemaining($username, $format = "relative")`
- `ChangeToRole($username, $role_name)`

The `$criteria` array consists of one or more criteria on which to perform a databased search. This array is used for advanced cases where pre-defined helper functions do not provide required flexibility.

Advanced Developer Reference

The reference documentation in this section is intended for advanced usage by developers.

nwa_assign

```
{nwa_assign ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Assigns a page variable based on the output of a generator function.

Simple usage example:

```
{nwa_assign var=my_variable value=my_value}
```

- The “var” parameter specifies the page variable that will receive the output.
- The “value” parameter specifies the value to assign to “var”.

The various request variables may also be accessed using one of two supported methods:

- `{nwa_assign var=_GET.get_variable value=...}`
- `{nwa_assign var=smarty.get.get_variable value=...}`

The variables that can be accessed this way are `_GET` (`smarty.get`), `_POST` (`smarty.post`), `_REQUEST` (`smarty.request`), `_SESSION` (`smarty.session`), `_COOKIE` (`smarty.cookies`), and `_ENV` (`smarty.env`).

Assigning to values in `_SESSION` will persist the value for the next page load in the session.

Alternative usage example:

```
{nwa_assign var=userskin_plugin generator=NwaGetPluginDetails arg=$u.userskin}
```

- The “generator” parameter specifies the generator function to be called.
- A single “arg” parameter, if specified, provides a 1-argument form of calling the function; alternatively, “arg1”, “arg2”, ... may be specified to form an array of arguments to pass to the generator.

nwa_bling

```
{nwa_bling ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Adds various kinds of visual effects to the page.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_bling id=$some_id type=fade}
```

The “id” parameter is the ID of the HTML element to which you will add ‘bling’ effects. The “type” parameter is the kind of bling desired:

- “fade”: element smoothly fades in and out
- “blink”: element blinks slowly

nwa_makeid

```
{nwa_makeid ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Creates a unique identifier and assigns it to a named page variable. Identifiers are unique for a given page instantiation.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_makeid var=some_id}
```

The “var” parameter specifies the page variable that will be assigned.

Alternative usage:

```
{nwa_makeid var=some_id file=filename}
```

The “file” parameter specifies a file which contains a unique ID. This allows issued IDs to be unique across different page loads. To return the value rather than assign it to a variable, use the syntax:

```
{nwa_makeid [file=filename] output=1}
```

Otherwise, this template function does not generate any output.

nwa_nav

```
{nwa_nav} ... {/nwa_nav}
```

Smarty registered block function. Defines a block area for navigation, a control, or generates navigation control HTML of a particular type.

Blocks are individual components of the navigation area, which basically consist of HTML. Blocks for actual navigation items have substitution tags in the form **@tagname@**.

The recognized tags are described in the table below.

Table 32 *Navigation Tags*

| Tag | Description |
|----------|---|
| @a@ | navigation name |
| @name@ | navigation item name (HTML safe) |
| @jsname@ | navigation item name (JavaScript quoted) |
| @href@ | navigation item hyperlink |
| @jshref@ | navigation item hyperlink (JavaScript quoted) |
| @icon@ | navigation item icon, if specified |

When used with the “block” parameter, the {nwa_nav} control does not generate any HTML. When used with the “type” parameter, the {nwa_nav} control uses the previously defined blocks to generate the HTML navigation area. The following types are recognized:

- **simple** – Only the current L1 item has L2 items, L3 only when L2 active
- **all-l1** – All current L1 items are shown to L3, otherwise L1 only
- **expanded** – All L1 items have L2 items, L3 only when L2 active
- **all-expanded** – All items shown to L3

The “reset” parameter may be specified to clear any existing navigation settings.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_nav block=level1_active}<li class="active">@a@</li>{/nwa_nav}
{nwa_nav block=level1_inactive}<li>@a@</li>{/nwa_nav}
...
{nwa_nav type=simple}{/nwa_nav} { * this generates the HTML * }
```

Block types can be one of the following types:

- enter_level1_item
- enter_level2_item
- enter_level3_item
- exit_level1_item
- exit_level2_item
- exit_level3_item
- between_level1_items
- between_level2_items
- between_level3_items
- level1_active
- level1_inactive
- level2_active
- level2_inactive
- level2_parent_active
- level2_parent_inactive
- level3_active
- level3_inactive
- enter_level1
- enter_level2
- enter_level3
- exit_level1
- exit_level2
- exit_level3

nwa_plugin

```
{nwa_plugin ...}
```

Smarty registered template function. Generates plugin information based on the parameters specified.

Specifying which plugin:

- The ‘id’ parameter specifies a plugin ID.
- The ‘name’ parameter specifies a plugin name, or plugin filename.
- The ‘page’ parameter specifies a page name provided by the plugin.
- The ‘privilege’ parameter specifies a privilege defined by the plugin.

If none of the above is specified, the default is the same as specifying the ‘page’ parameter with the current script name as argument (that is, the current page).

Specifying the output:

- The ‘notfound’ parameter specifies the return value, if the plugin was not found (default is the empty string).

- The ‘output’ parameter specifies the metadata field to return

If ‘output’ is not specified, the default is ‘output=id’; that is, the plugin ID is returned.

nwa_privilege

```
{nwa_privilege} ... {/nwa_privilege}
```

Smarty registered block function. Includes output only if a certain kind of privilege has been granted.

Usage examples:

```
{nwa_privilege access=create_user} .. content .. {/nwa_privilege}
```

The “access” parameter specifies the name of a privilege to check for any access.

```
{nwa_privilege readonly=create_user} .. content .. {/nwa_privilege}
```

The “readonly” (synonym “ro”) parameter specifies the name of a privilege to check for read-only access. Note that an operator with read-write access also has read-only access. To include content if the user **ONLY** has read access, that is, not if the user has full access, prefix the privilege name with a # character and use the parameter name “readonly” (or “ro”).

```
{nwa_privilege full=create_user} .. content .. {/nwa_privilege}
```

The “full” (synonym “rw”) parameter specifies the name of a privilege to check for full read-write access. The “name” parameter is the name of the privilege to check. If “name” is prefixed with a “!”, the output is included only if that privilege is **NOT** granted (inverts the sense of the test). An optional “level” parameter may be specified, which is the level of access to the privilege required (default is 0, or any access).

nwa_replace

```
{nwa_replace 1=... 2=...} ... {/nwa_replace}
```

Smarty registered block function. Replace %1, %2, etc with the passed parameters 1=, 2=, etc.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_replace 1=$param1 2=$param2 ...}
This is the text resource to be replaced, where %1 and %2
are the arguments, etc.
{/nwa_replace}
```

The numbered parameters are expanded in the translated string with the positional arguments %1, %2 and so forth.

nwa_text

```
{nwa_text} ... {/nwa_text}
```

Smarty registered block function. Translates the block’s content, if a language pack is available.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_text id=TEXT_ID 1=$param1 2=$param2 ...}
This is the text resource to be translated, where %1 and %2 are the arguments, etc.
{/nwa_text}
```

- The “id” parameter is the text ID of the resource.
- The numbered parameters are expanded in the translated string with the positional arguments %1, %2 and so forth.

nwa_userpref

```
{nwa_userpref ...}
```

Smarty template function. Returns the current setting of a user preference (stored with the Web application user account)

Usage examples:

```
{nwa_userpref name=prefName}
{nwa_userpref name=prefName default=10}
{nwa_userpref has=prefName}
```

- “name”: return the named user preference
- “default”: supply a value to be returned if the preference is not set
- “has”: return 1 if the named preference exists for the current user, 0 if the preference does not exist

nwa_youtube

```
{nwa_youtube video=ID width=cx height=cy ...} ... {/nwa_youtube}
```

Smarty registered block function. Provides simple support for embedding a YouTube video in the body of a page. The content of this block is the initial “alternate content” that will be presented until the YouTube player can be embedded (if it can be embedded).



Not all devices are capable of playing back YouTube video content.

Usage example:

```
{nwa_youtube video=Y7dpJ0oseIA width=320 height=240}
YouTube is the world's most popular online video community.
{/nwa_youtube}
```

The supported parameters for this block function are:

- **video** (required) – the YouTube video ID to embed.
- **width** (required) – the width in pixels of the video.
- **height** (required) – the height in pixels of the video.
- **autoplay** (optional) – if true, auto-play the video.
- **chrome** (optional) – if true, use the chromed player; that is, provide a user experience with playback controls.
- **version** (optional) – the minimum version required to play the video.
- **onended** (optional) – the name of a global function (that is, a member of the JavaScript “window” object) that is to be called at the end of video playback.

Date/Time Format Syntax

There are two basic modifiers available for you to use in the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance: `nwdateformat` and `nwatimeformat`.

nwdateformat Modifier

The date format takes one or two arguments – the format description and an optional default value (used if there is no time/date to display). UTF-8 is the character encoding used throughout the Amigopod application as this covers languages such as Spanish that use non-ASCII characters.

The full list of special formats is:

Table 33 *Date and Time Formats*

| Preset Name | Date/Time Format | Example |
|-------------|------------------|---------|
| hmmss | %H%M%S | 141345 |

Table 33 *Date and Time Formats (Continued)*

| | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| hh:mm:ss | %H:%M:%S | 14:13:45 |
| iso8601 | %Y%m%d | 20080407 |
| iso8601t | %Y%m%d%H%M%S | 20080407141345 |
| iso-8601 | %Y-%m-%d | 2008-04-07 |
| iso-8601t | %Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S | 2008-04-07 14:13:45 |
| longdate | %A, %d %B %Y, %l:%M %p | Monday, 07 April 2008, 2:13 PM |
| rfc822 | %a, %d %b %Y %H:%M:%S %Z | Mon, 07 Apr 2008 14:13:45 EST |
| displaytime | %l:%M %p | 2:13 PM |
| recent | – | 2 minutes ago |

The % items on the right hand side are the same as those supported by the php function `strftime()`.

The string “?:”, if present will return the string following the “?:” if the time value is 0. Otherwise, the format string up to the “?:” is used.

See “[Date/Time Format String Reference](#)” in this chapter for a full list of the supported date/time format string arguments.

Examples of date formatting using the `nwdateformat` Smarty modifier are as follows:

```
{ $u.expire_time|nwdateformat:"longdate" }
```

Monday, 07 April 2008, 2:13 PM

```
{ $u.expire_time|nwdateformat:"iso8601" }
```

20080407

```
{ $u.expire_time|nwdateformat:"iso-8601t" }
```

2008-04-07 14:13:45

```
{ $u.expire_time|nwdateformat:"iso8601?:N/A" }
```

20080407 (or N/A if no time specified)

```
{ $u.expire_time|nwdateformat:"%m/%d/%Y" }
```

04/07/2008

nwtimeformat Modifier

The `nwtimeformat` modifier takes one argument – the format description. The “`minutes_to_natural`” argument converts an argument specified in minutes to a text string describing an equivalent but more natural measurement for the time interval (hours, days or minutes depending on the value). An example of this usage is for the `expire_postlogin` field which has a value measured in minutes:

```
{ $u.expire_postlogin|nwtimeformat:"minutes_to_natural" }
```

The other formats accepted for this modifier are the same as those described for the `nwdateformat` modifier. See “[nwdateformat Modifier](#)” in this chapter.

Date/Time Format String Reference

Table 34 *Date and Time Format Strings*

| Format | Result |
|--------|--|
| %a | Abbreviated weekday name for the current locale |
| %A | Full weekday name for the current locale |
| %b | Abbreviated month name for the current locale |
| %B | Full month name for the current locale |
| %c | Preferred date and time representation for the current locale |
| %C | Century number (2-digit number, 00 to 99) |
| %d | Day of the month as a decimal number (01 to 31) |
| %D | Same as %m/%d/%y |
| %e | Day of the month as a decimal number; a single digit is preceded by a space (' 1' to '31') |
| %h | Same as %b |
| %H | Hour as a decimal number (00 to 23) |
| %I | Hour as a decimal number (01 to 12) |
| %m | Month as a decimal number (01 to 12) |
| %M | Minute as a decimal number (00 to 59) |
| %p | "AM" or "PM" |
| %r | Local time using 12-hour clock (%I:%M %p) |
| %R | Local time using 24-hour clock (%H:%M) |
| %S | Second as a decimal number (00 to 60) |
| %T | Current time (%H:%M:%S) |
| %u | Weekday as a decimal number (1=Monday...7=Sunday) |
| %w | Weekday as a decimal number (0=Sunday...6=Saturday) |
| %x | Preferred date representation for the current locale, without the time |
| %X | Preferred time representation for the current locale, without the date |
| %y | Year as a decimal number without the century (00 to 99) |
| %Y | Year as a decimal number |
| %% | A literal % character |

Programmer's Reference

NwaAlnumPassword

```
NwaAlnumPassword($len)
```

Generates an alpha-numeric password (mixed case) of length `$len` characters.

NwaBoolFormat

```
NwaBoolFormat($value, $options = null)
```

Formats a boolean value as a string. If 3 function arguments are supplied, the 2nd and 3rd arguments are the values to return for false and true, respectively. Otherwise, the `$options` parameter specifies how to do the conversion:

- If an integer 0 or 1, the string values “0” and “1” are returned.
- If a string containing a “|” character, the string is split at this separator and used as the values for false and true respectively.
- If an array, the 0 and 1 index values are used for false and true values.
- Otherwise, the string values “true” and “false” are returned.

NwaByteFormat

```
NwaByteFormat($bytes, $unknown = null)
```

Formats a non-negative size in bytes as a human readable number (bytes, KB, MB, GB, etc.) Assumes that 1 KB = 1024 bytes, 1 MB = 1024 KB, etc. If a negative value is supplied, returns the `$unknown` string. If a non-numeric value is supplied, that value is returned directly.

NwaByteFormatBase10

```
NwaByteFormatBase10($bytes, $unknown = null)
```

Formats a non-negative size in bytes as a human readable number (bytes, KB, MB, GB, etc.) Assumes “base 10” rules in measurement; that is, 1 KB = 1000 bytes, 1 MB = 1000 KB, etc. If a negative value is supplied, returns the `$unknown` string. If a non-numeric value is supplied, that value is returned directly.

NwaComplexPassword

```
NwaComplexPassword($len = 8)
```

Generates complex passwords of at least `$len` characters in length, where `$len` must be at least 4. A complex password includes at least 1 each of a lower case character, upper case character, digit, and punctuation (symbol).

NwaCsvCache

```
NwaCsvCache($csv_file, $use_cache = true, $options = null)
```

Loads and parses the contents of a CSV file, using a built-in cache. The cache may be cleaned for a specific file by setting `$use_cache` to false. The cache may be cleaned for ALL files by setting `$csv_file` to the empty string and `$use_cache` to false.

CSV parsing options (“[NwaParseCsv](#)”) may be specified in `$options`. Additionally, a 2-argument form of this function may be used by passing an array of `$options` as the second argument; in this case, `$use_cache` is assumed to be true. This function returns false if the file does not exist; otherwise, returns an array of arrays containing each of the parsed records from the file.

NwaDigitsPassword(\$len)

```
NwaDigitsPassword($len)
```

Generates digit-only passwords of at least \$len characters in length.

NwaDynamicLoad

```
NwaDynamicLoad($func)
```

Loads the PHP function \$func for use in the current expression or code block. Returns true if the function exists (that is, the function is already present or was loaded successfully), or false if the function does not exist.



Attempting to use an undefined function will result in a PHP Fatal Error. Use this function before using any of the standard Nwa...() functions.

NwaGeneratePictureString

```
NwaGeneratePictureString($string)
```

Creates a password based on a format string. For details on the special characters recognized in \$string, See [“Format Picture String Symbols”](#) in this chapter.

NwaGenerateRandomPasswordMix

```
NwaGenerateRandomPasswordMix($password_len, $lower = 1, $upper = 1, $digit = 1, $symbol = -1)
```

Generates a random password that meets a certain minimum complexity requirement.

- \$password_len specifies the total length in characters of the generated password. The password returned will be at least \$upper + \$lower + \$digit + \$symbol characters in length. Any length beyond the required minimum will be made up of any allowed characters.
- \$lower specifies the minimum number of lowercase characters to include, or -1 to not use any lowercase characters.
- \$upper specifies the minimum number of uppercase characters to include, or -1 to not use any uppercase characters.
- \$digit specifies the minimum number of digits to include, or -1 to not use any digits.
- \$symbol specifies the minimum number of symbol characters to include, or -1 to not use any symbol or punctuation characters.

NwaLettersDigitsPassword

```
NwaLettersDigitsPassword($len)
```

Generates an alpha-numeric password of \$len characters in length consisting of lowercase letters and digits.

NwaLettersPassword

```
NwaLettersPassword($len)
```

Generates a password of \$len characters in length consisting of lowercase letters.

NwaMoneyFormat

```
NwaMoneyFormat($amount, $format = null)
```

Formats a monetary amount for display purposes. The current page language is used to adjust formatting to the country specified. Returns a result that is guaranteed to be in UTF-8.

The `$format` argument may be null, to specify the default behavior (U.S. English format), or it may be a pattern string containing the following:

- currency symbol (prefix)
- thousands separator
- decimal point
- number of decimal places

The format “**€1.000,00**” uses the Euro sign as the currency symbol, “.” as the thousands separator, “,” as the decimal point, and 2 decimal places.

If not specified explicitly, the default format is “**\$1,000.00**”.

NwaParseCsv

```
NwaParseCsv($text, $options = null)
```

Parses text containing comma-separated values and returns the result as a list of records, where each record contains a list of fields. Supports CSV escaping using double quotes.

`$options` may be specified to control additional parsing options described in the table below.

Table 35 *Parsing Options*

| Function | Description |
|------------------|--|
| fs | The field separator character (default is comma “,”) |
| rs | The record separator character (default is newline “\n”) |
| quo | The quote character (default is double quote “”) |
| excel_compatible | If true, recognize “.” syntax as well as “,” (default true) |
| dos_compatible | If true, convert \r\n line endings to \n (default true) |
| encoding | If set, specifies the input character set to convert from (default not set) |
| out_charset | If set, specifies the desired character set to convert to using the <code>iconv()</code> function . (default is “UTF-8//TRANSLIT”) |
| max_records | maximum number of records to return |
| max_fields | maximum number of fields per record |
| skip_records | number of records to skip at start of input |
| skip_fields | number of fields to skip at start of each record |
| sort | post-processing option; order string for <code>NwaCreateUsortFunc</code> to sort the records by the specified column(s) |
| slice_offset | post-processing option: starting offset of slice to return; see <code>array_slice()</code> function |
| slice_length | post-processing option: length of slice to return; see <code>array_slice()</code> function |

See “[NwaParseCsv](#)” and “[NwaVLookup](#)”.

NwaParseXml

```
NwaParseXml($xml_text)
```

Parses a string as an XML document and returns the corresponding document structure as an associative array. Returns an array containing the following elements:

- **error** – set if there was a problem parsing the XML
- **message** – describes the parse error

Otherwise, the return is an array with these elements:

- **name** – name of the document element
- **attributes** – attributes of the document element
- **children** – array containing any child elements
- **content** – element content text

NwaPasswordByComplexity

```
NwaPasswordByComplexity($len, $mode = false)
```

Generates a random password of at least `$len` characters in length, based on one of the standard complexity requirements specified in `$mode`. If `$mode` is false or the empty string, the default password complexity is taken from the Guest Manager plugin configuration.

Otherwise, `$mode` should be one of the following values:

- **none** – No password complexity requirement
- **case** – At least one uppercase and one lowercase letter
- **number** – At least one digit
- **punctuation** – At least one symbol
- **complex** – At least one of each: uppercase letter, lowercase letter, digit, and symbol

NwaSmsIsValidPhoneNumber

```
NwaSmsIsValidPhoneNumber($phone_number)
```

Validates a phone number supplied in E.164 international dialing format, including country code.

- Any spaces and non-alphanumeric characters are removed.
- If the first character is a plus sign (+), the phone number is assumed to be in E.164 format already and the plus sign is removed; otherwise, if the SMS service handler national prefix is set and the phone number starts with that prefix, then the prefix is replaced with the country code.
- The phone number must contain no fewer than 5 and no more than 15 digits.
- The phone number is validated for a valid country code prefix.
- If all the foregoing conditions are met, the validator returns TRUE; otherwise, the validator returns FALSE.

NwaStrongPassword

```
NwaStrongPassword($len)
```

Generate strong passwords of `$len` characters in length.

A strong password may contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits and certain symbols. The strong password does not contain commonly-confused characters such as “O” and “0” (capital O and zero), “I” and “l” (capital I and lowercase L), “2” and “Z” (two and capital Z), or “8” and “B” (eight and capital B).

NwaVLookup

```
NwaVLookup($value, $table, $column_index, $range_lookup = true, $value_column = 0, $cmp_fn = null)
```

Table lookup function, similar to the Excel function `VLOOKUP()`. This function searches for a value in the first column of a table and returns a value in the same row from another column in the table. This function supports the values described in the table below.

Table 36 *NwaVLookup Options*

| Option | Description |
|----------------|--|
| \$value | The value to look for |
| \$table | A 2D array of data to search; for example, a data table returned by <code>NwaCsvCache()</code> or <code>NwaParseCsv()</code> |
| \$column_index | The desired index of the data |
| \$range_lookup | Specifies whether to find an exact or approximate match.
If true (default), assumes the table is sorted and returns either an exact match, or the match from the row with the next largest value that is less than \$value. If false, only an exact match is returned; NULL is returned on no match |
| value_column | Specifies the column index in the table that contains the values; the default is 0; in other words, the first column. |
| \$cmp_fn | Specifies a comparison function to use for values; if null, the default is used (simple equality operator <code>==</code> , or the <code>==</code> and <code>></code> operators if using binary search).
The comparison function should take 2 arguments and return a value <code>< 0</code> , <code>== 0</code> , <code>> 0</code> depending on the sort ordering of the arguments. |

Note the following differences from Excel `VLOOKUP`:

- Column indexes are 0-based.
- Column indexes can also be strings.

See “[NwaParseCsv](#)” and “[NwaCsvCache](#)”.

NwaWordsPassword

```
NwaWordsPassword($len)
```

Generates a password consisting of two randomly-chosen words, separated by a small number (1 or 2 digits); that is, in the format **word1XXword2**. The random words selected will have a maximum length of \$len characters, and a minimum length of 3 characters. \$len must be at least 3.

Field, Form and View Reference

GuestManager Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the GuestManager form.

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| account_activation | String. The current account activation time in long form. This field is available on the change_expiration and guest_enable forms. The value is generated from the do_schedule and schedule_time fields, and may be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Account will be enabled at <i>date and time</i>Account is currently activeNo account activation |
| auto_update_account | Boolean flag indicating that an already existing account should be updated, rather than failing to create the account. This field should normally be enabled for guest self-registration forms, to ensure that a visitor that registers again with the same email address has their existing account automatically updated. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable automatic update of an existing account. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| auto_update_account | Boolean flag indicating that an already existing account should be updated, rather than failing to create the account. This field should normally be enabled for guest self-registration forms, to ensure that a visitor that registers again with the same email address has their existing account automatically updated. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable automatic update of an existing account. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| captcha | Special field used to enable the use of a CAPTCHA security code on a form. This field should be used with the user interface type “CAPTCHA security code” and the standard validator NwaCaptchalsValid in order to provide the standard security code functionality. |
| change_of_authorization | Boolean flag indicating that any existing sessions for a visitor account should be disconnected or modified using RFC 3576. If this field is not specified on a form that modifies the visitor account, the default value is taken from the configuration for the RADIUS Services plugin.

Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable RFC 3576 updates for active sessions. Set this field to a zero value or the empty string to disable RFC 3576 updates for active sessions. |
| create_time | Integer. Time at which the account was created. The creation time is specified as a UNIX timestamp. This field is automatically configured with the current time when the Initial Value is set to: <code>array('generator' => 'time')</code> |
| creator_accept_terms | Boolean flag indicating that the creator has accepted the terms and conditions of use. When creating an account, this field must be present, and must be set to the value 1 . If this field is unset, or has any other value, account creation will fail with an error message.

To set the correct value for this field, use a check box (to require confirmation from the creator) or a hidden field (if use of the form is considered acceptance of the terms and conditions). This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| creator_name | String. Name of the creator of the account. This field does not have a default value. Also, See “ sponsor_name ”. |

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| do_expire | <p>Integer that specifies the action to take when the expire time of the account is reached. See “expire_time”.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0—Account will not expire 1—Disable 2—Disable and logout 3—Delete 4—Delete and logout <p>“Disable” indicates that the enabled field will be set to 0, which will prevent further authorizations using this account.</p> <p>“Logout” indicates that a RADIUS Disconnect-Request will be used for all active sessions that have a username matching the account username. This option requires the NAS to support RFC 3576 dynamic authorization. See “RFC 3576 Dynamic Authorization” in the Guest Management chapter for more information.</p> |
| do_schedule | <p>Boolean flag indicating if the account should be enabled at <code>schedule_time</code>. Set this field to 0 to disable automatic activation of the account at the activation time. Set this field to 1, and provide a valid time in the <code>schedule_time</code> field, to automatically enable the account at the specified activation time. See “schedule_time”.</p> |
| dynamic_expire_time | <p>Integer. Time at which the account will expire, calculated according to the account’s expiration timers. The value of this field is a UNIX timestamp. This field is available when modifying an account using the <code>change_expiration</code> or <code>guest_edit</code> forms.</p> |
| dynamic_is_authorized | <p>Boolean flag indicating if the user account is authorized to log in. This field is available when modifying an account using the <code>change_expiration</code> or <code>guest_edit</code> forms.</p> |
| dynamic_is_expired | <p>Boolean flag indicating if the user account has already expired. This field is available when modifying an account using the <code>change_expiration</code> or <code>guest_edit</code> forms.</p> |
| dynamic_session_time | <p>Integer. The maximum session time that would be allowed for the account, if an authorization request was to be performed immediately. Measured in seconds. Set to 0 if the account is either unlimited (<code>dynamic_is_expired</code> is false), or if the account has expired (<code>dynamic_is_expired</code> is true). This field is available when modifying an account using the <code>change_expiration</code> or <code>guest_edit</code> forms.</p> |
| email | <p>String. Email address for the account. This field may be up to 100 characters in length. When creating an account, if the username field is not set then the email field is used as the username of the account.</p> |
| enabled | <p>Boolean flag indicating if the account is enabled. Set this field to 0 to disable the account. If an account is disabled, authorization requests for the account will always fail. Set this field to 1 to enable the account.</p> |
| expiration_time | <p>String. Description of the account’s expiration time. This field is set when modifying an account. This field is available on the <code>change_expiration</code> and <code>guest_enable</code> forms. The value is generated from the do_expire, expire_time, expire_postlogin and expire_usage fields, and may be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Account will expire at <i>date and time</i>, or <i>interval</i> after first login, or after <i>interval</i> total usage Account will expire at <i>date and time</i> or <i>interval</i> after first login Account will expire at <i>date and time</i> or after <i>interval</i> total usage Account will expire at <i>date and time</i> Expires <i>interval</i> after first login or after <i>interval</i> total usage Expires <i>interval</i> after first login Expires after <i>interval</i> total usage No expiration time set |

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| expire_time | Integer. Time at which the account will expire. The expiration time should be specified as a UNIX timestamp.
Setting an expire_time value also requires a non-zero value to be set for the do_expire field; otherwise, the account expiration time will not be used. Set this field to 0 to disable this account expiration timer. |
| expire_usage | Integer. The total time period in seconds for which the account may be used. Usage is calculated across all accounting sessions with the same username. Set this field to 0 to disable this account expiration timer. |
| http_user_agent | String. Identifies the Web browser that you are using. This tracks user's browsers when they are registering. This is stored with the user's account. |
| id | String. Internal user ID used to identify the guest account to the system. |
| ip_address | String. The IP address to assign to stations authenticating with this account. This field may be up to 20 characters in length. The value of this field is not currently used by the system. However, a RADIUS user role may be configured to assign IP addresses using this field by adding the Framed-IP-Address attribute, and setting the value for the attribute to: <code><?= \$user["ip_address"]</code> |
| modify_expire_postlogin | String Value indicating how to modify the expire_postlogin field.
This field is only of use when editing a visitor account. It may be set to one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “expire_postlogin” to set the post-login expiration time to the value in the expire_postlogin field; • “plus X” or “minus X”, where X is a time measurement, to extend or reduce the post-login expiration timer by X (minutes, but may have a “ywdhms” suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, seconds respectively); • A number, to set the post-login expiration time to the value specified; • Any other value to leave expire_postlogin unmodified. This field controls account modifications; it is not stored with the visitor account. |
| modify_expire_time | String. Value indicating how to modify the expire_time field.
This field may be provided when creating or editing a visitor account. It may be set to one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “none” to disable the account expiration timer (do_expire and expire_time will both be set to 0); • “now” to disable the account immediately; • “expire_time” to use the expiration time specified in the expire_time field; • “expire_after” to set the expiration time to the current time, plus the number of hours in the expire_after field; • “plus X” or “minus X”, where X is a time measurement, to extend or reduce the expiration time by X (hours, but may have a “ywdhms” suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, seconds respectively); • A time measurement “X”, to set the expiration time to the current time plus X; • Any other value to leave expire_time unmodified. This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts. |

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| modify_expire_usage | <p>String. Value indicating how to modify the expire_usage field. This field is only of use when editing a visitor account. It may be set to one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “expire_usage” to set the cumulative usage expiration timer to the value in the expire_usage field; “plus X” or “minus X”, where X is a time measurement, to extend or reduce the cumulative usage expiration timer by X (seconds, but may have a “ywdhms” suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, seconds respectively); A number, to set the cumulative usage expiration time to the value specified; Any other value to leave expire_usage unmodified. <p>This field controls account modifications; it is not stored with the visitor account.</p> |
| modify_password | <p>String. Value indicating how to modify the account password.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It may be one of the following values: “random_password” to use the password specified in the random_password field; “reset” to create a new password, using the method specified in the random_password_method field (or the global defaults, if no value is available in this field); “password” to use the value from the password field; Any other value leaves the password unmodified. <p>This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts.</p> |
| modify_schedule_time | <p>String. Value indicating how to modify the schedule_time field. It may be one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “none” to disable the account activation time; “now” to activate the account immediately; “schedule_time” to use the activation time specified in the schedule_time form field (normally a UNIX time, but may be 0 to disable activation time); “schedule_after” to set the activation time to the current time plus the number of hours in the schedule_after field; “plus X”, where X is a time measurement, to extend the activation time by X. The time measurement is normally hours, but may have a “ywdhms” suffix to indicate years, weeks, days, hours, minutes, or seconds, respectively. Alternatively, this operation may be written equivalently as ‘+X’, ‘pX’, ‘plusX’, ‘add X’, ‘addX’, or ‘aX’. Example: to delay activation time by 2 days, use the value +2d. “minus X”, where X is a time measurement, to reduce the activation time by X. See above for details about specifying a time measurement. Alternatively, this operation may be written equivalently as ‘-X’, ‘mX’, ‘minusX’, ‘sub X’, ‘subX’, or ‘sX’. Example: to bring forward activation time by 12 hours, use the value -12h. A time measurement “X”, to set the activation time to the current time plus X. A time and date specification, to set the activation time to that time and date. Many different formats are specified; for clarity it is recommended that a standard format such as ISO-8601 is used (“YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss” format). Any other value to leave schedule_time unmodified. <p>This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts.</p> |
| multi_initial_sequence | <p>Integer. Initial sequence number. This field is used when creating guest accounts and the random_username_method field is set to “nwa_sequence”. If this field is not set, the next available sequence number for the given multi_prefix is used. Sequence numbering will start with 0 if no initial sequence number has been set.</p> |
| multi_prefix | <p>String. The prefix of each username generated when creating guest accounts and the random_username_method field is set to “nwa_sequence”.</p> |

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| netmask | String. Network address mask to use for stations using the account. This field may be up to 20 characters in length. The value of this field is not currently used by the system. However, a RADIUS user role may be configured to assign network masks using this field by adding the Framed-IP-Netmask attribute, and setting the value for the attribute to: <code><?= \$user["netmask"]</code> |
| no_password | Boolean. If set, prevents a user from changing their own password using the guest self-service portal. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to disable guest-initiated password changes. The default is to allow guest-initiated password changes, unless this field is set. |
| no_portal | Boolean. If set, prevents a user from logging into the guest service portal. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to disable guest access to the self-service portal. The default is to allow guest access to the self-service portal, unless this field is set. |
| no_warn_before | Boolean. User does not receive a logout expiration warning. The admin or user can opt out of this option by setting the field to 1. |
| notes | String. Comments or notes stored with the account. This field may be up to 255 characters in length. |
| num_accounts | Integer. The number of accounts to create when using the create_multi form. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| password | String. Password for the account. This field may be up to 64 characters in length. |
| password2 | String. Password for the account. If this field is set, its value must match the value of the password field for the account to be created or updated. This can be used to verify that a password has been typed correctly. This field controls account creation and modification behavior; it is not stored with created or modified visitor accounts. |
| password_action | <p>String. Controls the password changing behavior for a guest account. This field may be set to one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>empty string</i> – Default behavior; that is, guests are not required to change their password • deny – Prevents the guest from changing their password • first – Requires the guest to change their password on their first login • next – Requires the guest to change their password on their next login • recur – Require the guest to change their password on a regular schedule (as specified by the <code>password_action_recur</code> field) • recur_next – Require the guest to change their password on their next (or first) login, and then on a regular schedule (as specified by the <code>password_action_recur</code> field) <p>If the guest is required to change their password, this will take place during a network login, before the guest is redirected to the NAS for login. Guest password changes are only supported for Web login pages and guest self-registration pages that have the “Perform a local authentication check” option enabled.</p> <p>The default behavior is to leave guest passwords under the control of the guest. With the default behavior, guests are not prevented from changing their password, but are also not required to change it on any particular schedule.</p> |
| password_action_recur | String. Specifies a date or relative time, after which a guest will be required to change their password. Using this field also requires the password_action field to be set to the value ‘recur’. The value of this field should be a relative time measurement, indicated with a plus sign; for example “+15 days” or “+2 months”. |

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| password_last_change | Integer. The time that the guest's password was last changed. The password change time is specified as a UNIX timestamp. This field is automatically updated with the current time when the guest changes their password using the self-service portal. |
| random_password | String. This field contains a randomly-generated password. This field is set when modifying an account (guest_edit form). |
| random_password_length | String. The length, in characters, of randomly generated account passwords. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For nwa_words_password, the random_password_length is the maximum length of the random words to use. Two random words will be used to create the password, joined together with a small number (up to 2 digits). For nwa_picture_password, the random_password_length is ignored. |
| random_password_method | String. Identifier specifying how passwords are to be created. It may be one of the following identifiers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nwa_digits_password to create a password using random digits. The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_letters_password to create a password using random lowercase letters (a through z). The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_lettersdigits_password to create a password using random lowercase letters and digits (a through z and 0 through 9). The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_alnum_password to create a password using a combination of random digits, uppercase letters and lowercase letters (a-z, A-Z and 0-9). The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_strong_password to create a password using a combination of digits, uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and some punctuation. Certain characters are omitted from the password. The length of the password is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_complex_password to create a complex password string which contains uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits and symbol characters. nwa_complexity_password is dynamic and matches your complexity setting for password generation. For example, if you require your passwords to have both letters and digits, then this validator will confirm that the password has at least one of each. nwa_words_password to create a random password using a combination of two randomly-selected words and a number between 1 and 99. The maximum length of each of the randomly-selected words is specified by the random_password_length field. nwa_picture_password to create a password using the format string specified by the random_password_picture field. |
| random_password_picture | String. The format string to use when creating a random password, if random_password_method is set to "nwa_picture_password". |
| random_username_length | The length, in characters, of randomly generated account usernames. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For nwa_words_password, the random_username_length is the maximum length of the random words to use. Two random words will be used to create the username, joined together with a small number (up to 2 digits). For nwa_picture_password, the random_username_length is ignored. For nwa_sequence, the random_username_length is the length of the sequence number in the username; the sequence number will be zero-padded. For example, specifying a length of 4 will result in sequence numbers 0001, 0002, etc. |

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| random_username_method | <p>String. Identifier specifying how usernames are to be created. It may be one of the following identifiers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • nwa_sequence to assign sequential usernames. In this case, the multi_prefix field is used as the prefix for the username, followed by a sequential number; the number of digits is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_picture_password to create a random username using the format string specified by the random_username_picture field. • nwa_digits_password to create a username using random digits. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_letters_password to create a username using random lowercase letters. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_lettersdigits_password to create a username using random lowercase letters and digits. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_alnum_password to create a username using a combination of random digits, uppercase letters and lowercase letters. The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_strong_password to create a username using a combination of digits, uppercase letters, lowercase letters, and some punctuation. Certain characters are omitted from the generated username to ensure its readability (for example, “o”, “O” and “0”). The length of the username is specified by the random_username_length field. • nwa_words_password to create a username using a combination of two randomly-selected words and a number between 1 and 99. The maximum length of each of the randomly-selected words is specified by the random_username_length field. |
| random_username_picture | <p>String. The format string to use when creating a username, if the random_username_method field is set to nwa_picture_password. See “Format Picture String Symbols” in this chapter for a list of the special characters that may be used in the format string.</p> |
| remote_addr | <p>String. The IP address of the guest at the time the guest account was registered. This field may be up to 20 characters in length. The value of this field is not currently used by the system.</p> |
| role_id | <p>Integer. Role to assign to the account. The value of this field must be the integer ID of a valid RADIUS user role.</p> |
| role_name | <p>String. Name of the role assigned to the account.</p> |
| schedule_after | <p>Integer. Time period, in hours, after which the account will be enabled. This field is used when the modify_schedule_time field is set to schedule_after. The value is specified in hours and is relative to the current time. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts.</p> |
| schedule_time | <p>Integer. Time at which the account will be enabled. The time should be specified as a UNIX timestamp.</p> |
| secret_answer | <p>String. The guest’s answer to the secret question that is stored in the secret_question field. To use this field, first add both the secret_question and secret_answer fields to a guest self-registration form. Then, in the self-service portal for a guest self-registration page, select the “Secret Question” as the Required Field. This configuration requires that guests provide the correct answer in order to reset their account password. Answers must match with regards to case in order to be considered as correct.</p> |
| secret_question | <p>String. The guest’s secret question used to confirm the identity of a guest during a reset password operation.</p> |

Table 37 *GuestManager Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|------------------|---|
| simultaneous_use | Integer. Maximum number of simultaneous sessions allowed for the account. |
| sponsor_email | Email address of the sponsor of the account. If the sponsor_email field can be inserted into an email receipt and used future emails, the “Reply-To” email address will always be the email address of the original sponsor, not the current operator. |
| sponsor_name | String. Name of the sponsor of the account. The default value of this field is the username of the current operator. |
| submit | No Type. Field attached to submit buttons. This field controls account creation behavior; it is not stored with created visitor accounts. |
| user_activity | Integer. Login activity of the guest account. This field is available in views and may be used to determine the most recent start and stop time of visitor account sessions. |
| username | String. Username of the account. This field may be up to 64 characters in length. |
| visitor_company | String. The visitor’s company name. |
| visitor_name | String. The visitor’s full name. |
| vvisitor_phone | String. The visitor’s contact telephone number. |

Hotspot Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the Hotspot form.

Table 38 *Hotspot Standard Fields*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| address | String. The visitor’s street address. |
| card_code | String. The 3 or 4 digit cardholder verification code printed on the credit card. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| card_expiry | String. Credit card expiry date. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| card_name | String. Name shown on the credit card. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| card_number | String. Credit card number. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| city | String. The visitor’s city or town name. |
| country | String. The visitor’s country name. |
| first_name | String. The visitor’s first name. |
| hotspot_plan_id | No Type. The ID of the plan (visitor access settings) selected by the visitor. |
| hotspot_plan_name | No Type. The name of the plan (visitor access settings) selected by the visitor. |
| last_name | String. The visitor’s last name. |
| password2 | String. Password for the account (used to confirm a manually typed password). |

Table 38 *Hotspot Standard Fields (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| personal_details | No Type. Field attached to a form label. |
| purchase_amount | No Type. Total amount of the transaction. This field is only used during transaction processing. |
| purchase_details | No Type. Field attached to a form label. |
| state | String. The visitor's state or locality name. |
| submit_free | No Type. Field attached to a form submit button. |
| visitor_accept_terms | Boolean. Flag indicating that the visitor has accepted the terms and conditions of use. |
| visitor_fax | String. The visitor's fax telephone number. |
| zip | String. The visitor's zip or postal code. |

SMS Services Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the SMS Services form.

Table 39 *SMS Services Standard Fields*

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| auto_send_sms | Boolean. Flag indicating that a SMS receipt should be automatically sent upon creation of the account. |
| sms_auto_send_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. Additionally, the special values “_Disabled” and “_Enabled” may be used to never send an SMS or always send an SMS, respectively. |
| sms_enabled | Boolean. This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an SMS receipt. If unset, the default value is true. |
| sms_handler_id | String. This field specifies the handler ID for the SMS service provider. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. |
| sms_phone_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor's phone number. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. |
| sms_template_id | String. This field specifies the print template ID for the SMS receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the SMS plugin configuration is used. |
| sms_warn_before_message | String. This field overrides the logout warning message. If blank or unset, the default value from the Customize SMS Receipt page is used |
| visitor_carrier | String. The visitor's mobile phone carrier. |

SMTP Services Standard Fields

The table below describes standard fields available for the SMTP Services.

Table 40 *SMTP Services Standard Fields*

| Field | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| auto_send_smtp | Boolean. Flag indicating that an email receipt should be automatically sent upon creation of the guest account. Set this field to a non-zero value or a non-empty string to enable an automatic email receipt to be sent. This field can be used to create an <i>opt-in</i> facility for guests. Use a check box for the auto_send_smtp field and add it to the create_user form, or a guest self-registration instance, and email receipts will be sent to the visitor only if the check box has been selected. Alternatively, to always send an SMTP receipt, this field can be set to a value of 1 using a hidden field. |
| smtp_auto_send_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the auto-send flag. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special values _Disabled and _Enabled may be used to never send email or always send email, respectively. |
| smtp_cc_action | String. This field specifies how to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of never , always_cc , always_bcc , conditional_cc , or conditional_bcc . If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_cc_list | String. This field specifies a list of additional email addresses that will receive a copy of the visitor account receipt. If the value is default , the default carbon-copy list from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_email_field | String. This field specifies the name of the field that contains the visitor's email address. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. Additionally, the special value _None indicates that the visitor should not be sent any email. |
| smtp_enabled | String. This field may be set to a non-zero value to enable sending an email receipt. If unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. The special values _Auto (Always auto-send guest receipts by email), _AutoField (Auto-send guest receipts by email with a special field set), _Click (Display a link enabling a guest receipt via email), and _Cc (Send an email to a list of fixed addresses) may also be used. |
| smtp_receipt_format | String. This field specifies the email format to use for the receipt. It may be one of plaintext (No skin – plain text only), html_embedded (No skin – HTML only), receipt (No skin – Native receipt format), default (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_subject | String. This field specifies the subject line for the email message. Template variables appearing in the value will be expanded. If the value is default , the default subject line from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_template_id | String. This field specifies the print template ID to use for the email receipt. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_subject | String. This field overrides what is specified in the subject line under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is "default", the default subject line under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_template_id | String. This field overrides the print template ID specified under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is "default", the default template ID under the Logout Warnings section on the email receipt configuration is used. |

Table 40 *SMTP Services Standard Fields (Continued) (Continued)*

| Field | Description |
|---------------------------------|---|
| smtp_warn_before_receipt_format | String. This field overrides the format in the Email Receipt field under Logout Warnings. It may be one of “plaintext” (No skin – plain text only), “html_embedded” (No skin – HTML only), “receipt” (No skin – Native receipt format), “default” (Use the default skin), or the plugin ID of a skin plugin to specify that skin. If blank or unset, the default value in the Email Receipt Field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_cc_list | String. This overrides the list of additional email addresses that receive a copy of the visitor account under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the default carbon-copy list under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| smtp_warn_before_cc_action | String. This field overrides how copies are sent as indicated under Logout Warnings on the email receipt. to send copies of email receipts. It may be one of “never”, “always_cc”, “always_bcc”, “conditional_cc”, or “conditional_bcc”. If blank or unset, the default value from the email receipt configuration is used. |
| warn_before_from_sponsor | String. This field overrides the Reply To field (that is, the sponsor_email field of a user, or the admin's email) under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the Reply To field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used.i |
| warn_before_from | String. This field overrides the Override From field under the Logout Warnings on the email receipt. If the value is “default”, the Override From field under Logout Warnings from the email receipt configuration is used. |

Format Picture String Symbols

When generating a username or password using the `nwa_picture_password` method, a “picture string” should be provided to specify the format of generated username or password in the **random_username_picture** or **random_password_picture** field.

The picture string is used as the username or password, with the following symbols replaced with a random character:

Table 41 *Picture String Symbols*

| Symbol | Replacement |
|---------|--|
| # | Random digit (0-9) |
| \$ or ? | Random letter (A-Z, a-z) |
| _ | Random lowercase letter (a-z) |
| ^ | Random uppercase letter (A-Z) |
| * | Random letter or digit (A-Z, a-z, 0-9) |
| ! | Random punctuation symbol, excluding apostrophe and quotation marks |
| & | Random character (letter, digit or punctuation excluding apostrophe and quotation marks) |
| @ | Random letter or digit, excluding vowels |

Any other alphanumeric characters in the picture string will be used in the resulting username or password. Some examples of the picture string are shown below:

Table 42 *Picture String Example Passwords*

| Picture String | Sample Password |
|----------------|-----------------|
| #### | 3728 |
| user#### | user3728 |
| v^^#__ | vQU3nj |
| @@@@@ | Bh7Pm |

Form Field Validation Functions

See **“Form Validation Properties”** in this chapter and **“Examples of Form field Validation”** in the Guest Management chapter for details about using validation functions for form fields.

The built-in validator functions are:

- **IsArrayKey** – Checks that the value is one of the keys in the array supplied as the argument to the validator.
- **IsArrayValue** – Checks that the value is one of the values in the array supplied as the argument to the validator.
- **IsEqual** – Checks that the value is equal to the value supplied as the argument to the validator, allowing for standard type conversion rules.
- **IsGreaterThan** – Checks that the value is strictly greater than a specified minimum value supplied as the argument to the validator.
- **IsIdentical** – Checks that the value is equal to the value supplied as the argument to the validator, and has the same type.
- **IsInRange** – Checks that the value is in a specified range between a minimum and maximum value. The minimum and maximum values are specified as a 2-element array as the argument to the validator.
- **IsInOptionsList**—Checks against a list of options in the policy definition.
- **IsNonEmpty** – Checks that the value is a non-empty string (length non-zero and not all whitespace), or a non-empty array.
- **IsNonNegative** – Checks that the value is numeric and non-negative.
- **IsRegexMatch** – Checks that the value matches a regular expression supplied as the argument the validator. The regular expression should be a Perl-compatible regular expression with delimiters. For example, the validator argument `/^a/i` will match any value that starts with an “a”, case-insensitively. See **“Regular Expressions”** in this chapter for more information about regular expression syntax.
- **IsValidBool** – Checks that the value is a standard Boolean truth value. Valid Boolean values are the integers **0** and **1** and the PHP values **false** and **true**.
- **IsValidDateTime** – Checks that the value appears to be a valid time specification string according to the rules of the PHP function `strtotime()`. Valid date/time syntax includes ISO 8601 standard times (**YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss**) with and without time zone specifications, as well as many other formats.
- **IsValidEmail** – Checks that the value appears to be a valid [RFC 822](#)-compliant email address. When using the `IsValidEmail` validator, the validator argument may be specified with a whitelist/blacklist of domain names. Use the syntax:

```
array(  
    'allow' => array(  

```

```

        'corp-domain.com',
        'other-domain.com',
    ),
    'deny' => array(
        'blocked-domain.com',
        'other-blocked-domain.com',
    ),
)

```

- The keys 'whitelist' and 'blacklist' may also be used for 'allow' and 'deny', respectively.
 - An 'allow' or 'deny' value that is a string is converted to a single element array.
 - Wildcard matching may be used on domain names: the prefix '*' means match any domain that ends with the given suffix. A '*' component can also be used inside the hostname, and will match zero or more domain name components.
 - If the 'allow' list is empty or unset, the default behavior is to accept ALL domains other than those listed in the 'deny' list.
 - If the 'deny' list is empty or unset, the default behavior is to deny ALL domains other than those listed in the 'allow' list.
 - If both 'allow' and 'deny' lists are provided, the default behavior is to accept a domain name that does not match any of the patterns provided. The 'allow' list is checked first, followed by 'deny'. To obtain the opposite behavior, specify the wildcard '*' as the last entry in the 'deny' list.
- **IsValidFileUpload** – Checks that the value is a file upload.
 - **IsValidFutureDateTime** – Checks that the value is a valid time specification string according to the rules of the PHP function [strtotime\(\)](#), and that the time specification refers to a point in the future.
 - **IsValidFutureTimestamp** – Checks that the value is a valid UNIX time referring to a point in the future.
 - **IsValidHostname** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address or a hostname that resolves to an IP address.
 - **IsValidHostnameCidr** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address or hostname, which may also have an optional /N suffix indicating the network prefix length in bits (CIDR notation).
 - **IsValidHostnamePort** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address or hostname, which may optionally include a port number specified with the syntax **hostname:port**.
 - **IsValidIpAddr** – Checks that the value is a valid IP address.
 - **IsValidLdapAttribute** – Checks that the value is a valid LDAP attribute name; that is, a string that starts with a letter, and which contains only letters, numbers, underscore (_) and hyphen (-).
 - **IsValidNetmask** – Checks that the value is a valid network mask in dotted-quad notation; that is, an IP address such as 255.255.255.128 that contains a single string of N 1 bits followed by (32 – N) 0 bits.
 - **IsValidNumber** – Checks that the value is numeric; that is, an integer or a decimal value. The validator argument may be an array containing one or more of the following additional options:
 - **no_negative** – if set to true, negative numbers are not accepted as a valid value.
 - **no_zero** – if set to true, zero is not accepted as a valid value.
 - **only_integer** – if set to true, decimal numbers are not accepted and only integer values are valid.
 - **IsValidPassword2** – Checks that the value is a valid password that satisfies certain requirements. The validator argument must be an array describing which of the following requirements to check. To perform any password checking, the "minimum_length" and "complexity_mode" fields must be specified.
 - **password2** – specifies the name of the field containing the duplicate password entry (optional, for password validation). Defaults to "password2" if not specified.
 - **password2_required** – if nonzero, indicates that the "password2" entry must be supplied.

- **username** – specifies the name of the field containing the username. If empty or unset, the password is not checked against this field for a match.
- **minimum_length** – specifies the minimum length of the password in characters.
- **disallowed_chars** – if set, specifies characters that are not allowed in the password.
- **complexity_mode** – specifies the set of rules to use when checking the password.
- **complexity** – if set, specifies rules for checking the composition of the password. If unset, defaults to a preset value for password complexity with modes “none”, “basic”, “number”, “punctuation” and “complex”. These rules check that passwords obey certain requirements according to the following table:

Table 43 *Complexity Requirements*

| Rule Set | Min. Length | Description |
|-------------|-------------|--|
| none | – | No special requirements |
| basic | 8 | Non-space characters |
| number | 8 | At least 1 digit |
| punctuation | 8 | At least 1 punctuation character (non-alphanumeric) |
| complex | 8 | At least 1 digit, 1 non-alphanumeric, 1 uppercase and 1 lowercase letter |

- **IsValidSentence** – Checks that the value is considered to be a ‘sentence’; that is, a string which starts with an upper-case letter and ends in a full stop.
- **IsValidTimestamp** – Checks that the value is a numeric UNIX timestamp (which measures the time in seconds since January 1, 1970 at midnight UTC).
- **IsValidTimeZone** – Checks that the value is a valid string describing a recognized time zone.
- **IsValidUrl** – Checks that the value appears to be a valid URL that includes a scheme, hostname and path. For example, in the URL <http://www.example.com/>, the scheme is **http**, the hostname is **www.example.com** and the path is **/**. The validator argument may optionally be an array containing a ‘scheme’ key that specifies an array of acceptable URL protocols.
- **IsValidUsername** – Checks that the value is a valid username. Usernames cannot be blank or contain spaces.
- **NwaCaptchaIsValid** – Checks that the value matches the security code generated in the CAPTCHA image. This validator should only be used with the standard **captcha** field.
- **NwaGuestManagerIsValidRoleId** – Checks that the value is a valid role ID for the current operator and user database.
- **NwaIsValidExpireAfter** – Checks that the value is one of the account expiration time options specified in the Guest Manager configuration.
- **NwaIsValidLifetime** – Checks that the value is one of the account lifetime options specified in the Guest Manager configuration.

Form Field Conversion Functions

The Conversion and Value Format functions that are available are listed below:

- **NwaConvertOptionalDateTime** – Converts a string representation of a time to the UNIX time representation (integer value). The conversion leaves blank values unmodified.
- **NwaConvertOptionalInt** – Converts a string representation of an integer to the equivalent integer value. The conversion leaves blank values unmodified.

- **NwaConvertStringToOptions** – Converts a multi-line string representation of the form

```
key1 | value1
key2 | value2
```

to the array representation

```
array (
    'key1' => 'value1',
    'key2' => 'value2',
)
```

- **NwaImplodeComma** – Converts an array to a string by joining all of the array values with a comma.
- **NwaTrim** – Removes leading and trailing whitespace from a string value.
- **NwaTrimAll** – Removes all whitespace from a string (including embedded spaces, newlines, carriage returns, tabs, etc).
- **NwaStrToUpper** – Formats the text string to all uppercase letters.
- **NwaStrToLower** – Formats the text string to all lowercase letters.
- **NwaNormalizePhoneNumber** – Removes all spaces, dashes, parenthesis and non-numerical characters from the phone number.

Form Field Display Formatting Functions

The Display Functions that are available are listed below:

Table 44 *Form Field Display Functions*

| Function | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| NwaBoolFormat | <p>Formats a Boolean value as a string.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the argument is 0 or 1, a 0 or 1 is returned for false and true, respectively. • If the argument is a string containing a “ ” character, the string is split at the separator and used for false and true values. • If the argument is an array, the 0 and 1 index values are used for false and true values. Otherwise, the string values “false” and “true” are returned. |
| NwaByteFormat | <p>Formats a non-negative size in bytes as a human readable number (bytes, KB, MB, GB, etc). 1 KB is defined as 1,024 bytes, 1 MB as 1,024 KB (1,048,576 bytes), and 1 GB as 1,024 MB (1,073,741,824 bytes).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a negative value is supplied, returns the argument (or null if no argument was supplied). • If a non-numeric value is supplied, that value is returned directly. |
| NwaCurrencyFormat | <p>Formats a numeric value that indicates a monetary amount as a string. If the argument is null or not supplied, the current locale’s settings are used to format the monetary value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The argument may be an array, which will override the current locale’s settings (see NwaNumberFormat for the list of settings that are used). • The argument may be a numeric value, which is used as the number of fractional digits to use when formatting the monetary amount (other locale settings will remain unchanged in this case). |

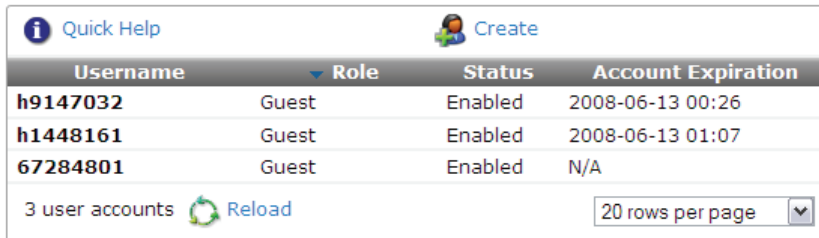
Table 44 Form Field Display Functions (Continued)

| Function | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| NwaDateFormat | <p>Format a date like the PHP function <code>strftime()</code>, using the argument as the date format string. Returns a result guaranteed to be in UTF-8 and correct for the current page language. See “Date/Time Format Syntax” in this chapter for a list of available date/time formats, or use one of the following special format strings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • hhmmss, hh:mm:ss – time of day • iso8601, iso8601t, iso-8601, iso-8601t – various ISO 8601 date formats with and without hyphen separators and the time of day • longdate – date and time in long form • displaytime – time of day • ?: – returns the string following the ?: if the time value is 0, or uses the format string before the ?: otherwise • recent – for example, “2 minutes ago”, “3 months ago” |
| NwaDurationFormat | <p>Converts a time measurement into a description of the corresponding duration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Format parameters: seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks. • Any format can be converted to another. • By default, this function converts an elapsed time value specified in seconds to a value that is displayed in weeks, days, hours, minutes and seconds. <p>Up to four additional arguments may be supplied to control the conversion:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • in_format – The current units of the value being converted (seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks) • max_format – Controls the max increment you want displayed. • min_format – Controls the min increment you want displayed. Only whole numbers are printed. • default – If set, this value will be returned when the resulting duration (after min_format is taken into account) is 0. |
| NwaExplodeComma | <p>Converts a string to an array by splitting the string at each comma and forming an array of all the substrings created in this way.</p> |
| NwaNumberFormat | <p>Formats a numeric value as a string. If the argument is null or not supplied, the current locale’s settings are used to format the numeric value. The argument may be an array or a numeric value. If the argument is an array, it will override the current locale’s settings (see below for the list of settings that are used). If the argument is a numeric value, it is used as the number of fractional digits to use when formatting the string (other locale settings will remain unchanged in this case).</p> <p>The specific locale settings used are from localeconv(), and are listed below.</p> <p>For <i>general numeric formatting</i> :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • frac_digits – number of decimal places to display • decimal_point – character to use for decimal point • thousands_sep – character to use for thousands separator <p>For <i>signs for positive/negative values</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • positive_sign – sign for positive values • p_sign_posn – position of sign for positive values (0..4) • negative_sign – sign for negative values • n_sign_posn – position of sign for negative values (0..4) <p>For <i>formatting for monetary amounts</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mon_decimal_point – decimal point character for monetary values • mon_thousands_sep – thousands separator for monetary values • p_sep_by_space – true if a space separates currency symbol from a positive value • p_cs_precedes – true if currency symbol precedes positive value • n_sep_by_space – true if a space separates currency symbol from a negative value • n_cs_precedes – true if currency symbol precedes negative value <p>Additionally, the special value monetary, if true, indicates that a currency value should be formatted, rather than a regular numeric value.</p> |

View Display Expression Technical Reference

A page that contains a view is displayed in an operator's Web browser. The view contains data that is loaded from the server dynamically. Because of this, both data formatting and display operations for the view are implemented with JavaScript in the Web browser.

For each item displayed in the view, a JavaScript object is constructed. Each field of the item is defined as a property of this object. When evaluating the JavaScript Display Expression, the **data** variable is used to refer to this object. Thus, the expression **data.my_field** would return the value of the field named "my_field".



| Username | Role | Status | Account Expiration |
|-----------------|-------|---------|--------------------|
| h9147032 | Guest | Enabled | 2008-06-13 00:26 |
| h1448161 | Guest | Enabled | 2008-06-13 01:07 |
| 67284801 | Guest | Enabled | N/A |

In the above view (the **guest_users** view), the four columns displayed correspond to the **username**, **role_name**, **enabled**, and **expire_time** fields.

Table 45 Display Expressions for Data Formatting

| Value | Description |
|---|---|
| Display Expressions | |
| data.username.bold() | Displays the username string as bold text. |
| data.role_name | Displays the name of the role. |
| Nwa_BooleanText(data.enabled, "Enabled", "Disabled") | Displays either "Enabled" or "Disabled" depending on the value of the enabled field. |
| (parseInt(data.do_expire) != 0) ?
Nwa_DateFormat(data.expire_time, "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M") : "N/A" | Displays "N/A" if the account has no expiration time, or a date and time string if an expiration time has been set. |
| JavaScript functions | |
| Nwa_BooleanText
(value, if_true, if_false[, if_undefined]) | Returns the value of <i>if_true</i> or <i>if_false</i> depending on whether the <i>value</i> evaluates to a Boolean true or false, respectively. If the value has an undefined type (in other words, has not been set), and the <i>if_undefined</i> parameter was provided, returns <i>if_undefined</i> . |
| Nwa_DateFormat (value, format) | Converts a numerical <i>value</i> (UNIX time) to a string using the date and time format string <i>format</i> . The format string uses similar syntax to the NwaDateFormat() function. See "Date/Time Format String Reference" in this chapter for a full list of the supported format strings. |
| Nwa_FloatFormat (value, decimals) | Converts a numerical <i>value</i> to a string, with the number of decimal places specified in <i>decimals</i> . |
| Nwa_MinutesToNatural (value) | Converts a numeric <i>value</i> measuring a time in minutes to a natural time representation (such as "2 minutes", "3 hours", "11 days"). |

Table 45 *Display Expressions for Data Formatting (Continued) (Continued)*

| Value | Description |
|--|--|
| Nwa_NumberFormat (<i>value</i> [, <i>if_undefined</i>])
Nwa_NumberFormat (<i>value</i> , <i>decimals</i>)
Nwa_NumberFormat (<i>value</i> , <i>decimals</i> , <i>dec_point</i> , <i>thousands_sep</i> [, <i>if_undefined</i>]) | Converts a numerical value to a string. If the value has an undefined type (in other words, has not been set), and the <i>if_undefined</i> parameter was provided, returns <i>if_undefined</i> . Otherwise, the number is converted to a string using the number of decimal places specified in <i>decimals</i> (default 0), the decimal point character in <i>dec_point</i> (default "."), and the thousands separator character in <i>thousands_sep</i> (default ","). |
| Nwa_TrimText (<i>value</i> , <i>length</i>) | Trims excessively long strings to a maximum of <i>length</i> characters, appending an ellipsis ("...") if the string was trimmed. |
| Nwa_ValueText (<i>value</i> [, <i>if_undefined</i>]) | If the <i>value</i> has an undefined type (in other words, has not been set), and the <i>if_undefined</i> parameter was provided, returns <i>if_undefined</i> , or a HTML non-breaking space (" ") otherwise. Otherwise, the <i>value</i> is converted to a string for display. |

Standard RADIUS Request Functions

These functions are available for use in condition expressions and value expressions used in the definition of a RADIUS role. See [“Attribute Authorization Conditions”](#) in the RADIUS Services chapter for more details about using these functions.

Variables Available in Execution Context

Several PHP variables are available for use at the time the condition expression or value expression is evaluated.

Table 46 *PHP Variables*

| Variable | Description |
|-------------|--|
| \$now | Current UNIX time, as returned by PHP function time() |
| \$user | User account structure |
| \$role | Role definition for user |
| \$role_id | Role ID of user account |
| \$timeout | Calculated session timeout for user, in seconds |
| \$attribute | Attribute name (from role definition) |
| \$value | Attribute value (from role definition) |

AccessReject()

```
AccessReject()
```

If invoked from a conditional expression, causes the Access-Request to be rejected.

Example usage as part of a condition expression for an attribute:

```
return expression && AccessReject()
```

If the expression evaluates to true, the `AccessReject()` will cause authorization to be refused. If the expression evaluates to false, the `AccessReject()` is not called, and authorization process will continue (however, the attribute will not be included in the Access-Accept, as the condition expression has evaluated to false).

EnableDebug()

```
EnableDebug($flag = 1)
```

Enables debugging for the remainder of the processing of this request. The flag may also be set to false or 0 to disable debugging.

Example usage as part of a condition expression for an attribute:

```
return EnableDebug() && expression
```

When debugging is enabled, additional output is generated. This may be visible in the RADIUS Debugger, or in the application log.

DisableDebug()

```
DisableDebug()
```

Disables debugging; equivalent to `EnableDebug(0)`.

GetAttr()

```
GetAttr($attr_name)
```

Returns the value of an attribute supplied with the RADIUS Access-Request. The `$attr_name` argument is the name of the attribute to look up. The attribute name is not case-sensitive. If the attribute was not included with the Access-Request, returns NULL.

Example usage:

- As a condition expression for an attribute:

```
return GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id') == '00-01-02-44-55-66'
```

- As an attribute value:

```
<?= GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id')
```

ShowAttr()

```
ShowAttr($raw = false)
```

Show the attributes passed with the RADIUS Access-Request. Writes to stderr, so the output can be seen using the RADIUS Debugger. The `$raw` argument, if set, outputs results without translating attribute names. This function is useful to see exactly what a NAS is sending, if debugging an authorization problem.

Example usage:

```
return ShowAttr() && ... // rest of condition
```

MacAddr()

```
MacAddr($mac)
```

Converts a MAC address to a canonical form. Uses standard IEEE 802 form for the MAC address, that is, uppercase hexadecimal digits using hyphen separators (01-23-45-67-89-AB). This function accepts anything that can be interpreted as a MAC address using some fairly liberal guidelines and returns the address in IEEE 802 format as described above. If a match could not be made (for example, empty string, or a string not containing a valid MAC address), returns NULL.

MacEqual()

```
MacEqual($addr1, $addr2)
```

Compares two MAC addresses for equality, using their canonical forms.

Example usage as a condition expression for an attribute:

```
return MacEqual(GetAttr('Calling-Station-Id'), '00-01-02-44-55-66')
```

MacAddrConvert()

```
MacAddrConvert($mac, $mac_format)
```

Converts a MAC address to a specified format. This function accepts anything that can be interpreted as a MAC address using some fairly liberal guidelines and returns the address formatted with the `$mac_format` string.

The `$mac_format` argument should be a [sprintf](#)-style format string that expects 6 arguments, which are the octets of the MAC address. For example, the IEEE 802 standard format of uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen may be represented by the MAC format `%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X`. This is also the default value used if `$mac_format` is empty.

GetTraffic()

```
GetTraffic($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)
```

Calculate the sum of traffic counters for accounting records in the database.



This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface; for ease of use, consider using one of the related functions `GetCallingStationTraffic()`, `GetIpAddressTraffic()`, or `GetUserTraffic()`.

`$criteria` is the criteria on which to search for matching accounting records. The time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is used with the criteria to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time. If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

`$in_out` may be “in” to count only input octets, “out” to count only output octets, or any other value to count both input and output octets towards the traffic total. This argument returns the computed total of traffic for all matching accounting records.

GetTime()

```
GetTime($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the sum of session times for accounting records in the database.



This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface; for ease of use, consider using one of the related functions **See “[GetCallingStationTime\(\)](#)”**, `GetIpAddressTime()`, or `GetUserTime()`.

`$criteria` is the criteria on which to search for matching accounting records.

As well as the criteria specified, the time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is also used to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time.

If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

Returns the total session time for all matching accounting records in the time interval specified.

GetSessions()

```
GetSessions($criteria, $from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions from accounting records in the database.



This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface; for ease of use, consider using one of the related functions **GetCallingStationSessions()**, **GetIpAddressSessions()**, **GetUserActiveSessions()**, or **GetUserSessions()**.

`$criteria` is the criteria on which to search for matching accounting records.

As well as the criteria specified, the time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is also used to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time.

If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

Returns the total number of sessions for matching accounting records in the time interval specified.

GetCallingStationTraffic()

```
GetCallingStationTraffic($from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null, $mac_format = null)
```

Calculate sum of traffic counters in a time interval. Sessions are summed if they have the same Calling-Station-Id attribute as that specified in the RADIUS Access-Request.

If no Calling-Station-Id attribute was included in the request, returns zero.

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the `$mac_format` argument may be specified. This should be a sprintf-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format, `%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X` – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen. This string matches what Amigopod sees from the NAS.

The time interval specified by `$from_time` and optionally `$to_time` is also used to narrow the search.

If `$to_time` is not specified, `$from_time` is a “look back” time, that is, the time interval in seconds before the current time.

If `$to_time` is specified, the interval considered is between `$from_time` and `$to_time`.

`$in_out` may be “in” to count only input octets, “out” to count only output octets, or any other value to count both input and output octets towards the traffic total.

Examples:

- Use the following as the condition expression for a RADIUS role attribute. Authorizes a user only if their total traffic (in + out) in the past day does not exceed 10 MB. Note that the attribute with this condition expression will never be included in the response!

```
return GetUserTraffic(86400) > 10485760 && AccessReject()
```

- Like the above, but only considers output (that is, user downloads):

```
return GetUserTraffic(86400, 'out') > 10485760 && AccessReject()
```

- Another way to limit the past 30 days downloads to 100 MB:

```
return GetUserTraffic($now - 86400*30, $now, 'out') > 100*1024*1024 && AccessReject()
```

- Limit by MAC address, 50 MB download in past 24 hours:

```
return GetCallingStationTraffic(86400, 'out') > 50000000 && AccessReject()
```

GetUserTraffic()

```
GetUserTraffic($from_time, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)
```

Calculate sum of traffic counters in a time interval. Sessions are summed if they have the same User-Name attribute as that specified in the RADIUS Access-Request.

See “[GetCallingStationTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetIpAddressTraffic()

```
GetIpAddressTraffic($from_time = null, $to_time = null, $in_out = null)
```

Calculate sum of traffic counters in a time interval. The IP address used is determined based on the context. If processing a RADIUS Access-Request, the IP address is determined using the Framed-IP-Address attribute. If processing a HTTP request, the current client IP address is assumed (from `$_SERVER['REMOTE_ADDR']`).

Specifying an empty value for the IP address (such as null, false, or empty string) also causes the current client IP address to be used.

See “[GetTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetCallingStationTime()

```
GetCallingStationTime($from_time, $to_time = null, $mac_format = null)
```

Calculate sum of session times in a specified time interval.

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the `$mac_format` argument may be specified. This should be a sprintf-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format, `%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X` – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen.

The calling station ID is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Calling-Station-ID attribute).

See “[GetTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetUserTime()

```
GetUserTime($from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate sum of session times in a specified time interval.

See “[GetTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetIpAddressTime()

```
GetIpAddressTime($from_time = null, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate sum of session times in a specified time interval. The IP address is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Framed-IP-Address attribute).

See “[GetTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

See “[GetIpAddressTraffic\(\)](#)” for additional details on the `$ip_addr` argument.

GetCallingStationSessions()

```
GetCallingStationSessions($from_time, $to_time = null, $mac_format = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions for accounting records matching a specific calling-station-id. The calling station id address is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Calling-Station-ID attribute).

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the `$mac_format` argument may be specified. This should be a `sprintf`-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format, `%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X` – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen.

See “[GetTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetUserSessions()

```
GetUserSessions($from_time, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions for accounting records matching a specific user-name. The username attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (User-Name attribute).

See “[GetTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

GetIpAddressSessions()

```
GetIpAddressSessions($from_time = null, $to_time = null)
```

Calculate the number of sessions for accounting records matching a specific IP address. The IP address attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (Framed-IP-Address attribute).

See “[GetTraffic\(\)](#)” for details on how to specify the time interval.

See “[GetIpAddressTraffic\(\)](#)” for additional details on the `$ip_addr` argument.

GetUserActiveSessions()

```
GetUserActiveSessions($callingstationid = null)
```

Count the number of currently active sessions for the current username.

The username attribute is looked up automatically from the RADIUS Access-Request (User-Name attribute). If a `$callingstationid` argument is supplied, sessions that match that Calling-Station-Id are excluded from the count of active sessions.

GetCurrentSession()

```
GetCurrentSession($criteria)
```

Looks up the details for an active session, based on the specified criteria.



This is a multi-purpose function that has a very flexible query interface; for ease of use, consider using one of the related functions [GetCallingStationCurrentSession\(\)](#), [GetIpAddressCurrentSession\(\)](#), or [GetUserCurrentSession\(\)](#). These functions are not available in RADIUS request context, but are available in the HTTP context (using `{nwa_radius_query}`).

Returns null if there is no matching session, otherwise returns a single session array – a typical result follows:

```
array (
  'id' => '2073',
  'acctsessionid' => '4a762dbf00000002',
```

```

'acctuniqueid' => 'c199b5a94ebf5184',
'username' => 'demo@example.com',
'realm' => '',
'role_name' => 'Guest',
'nasipaddress' => '192.168.2.20',
'nasportid' => '',
'nasporttype' => '',
'calledstationid' => '',
'callingstationid' => '',
'acctstarttime' => '1249258943',
'connectinfo_start' => '',
'acctstoptime' => NULL,
'connectinfo_stop' => NULL,
'acctsessiontime' => 0,
'acctinputoctets' => 0,
'acctoutputoctets' => 0,
'acctterminatecause' => NULL,
'servicetype' => '',
'framedipaddress' => '192.168.2.3',
'framedprotocol' => '',
'acctauthentic' => '',
'nastype' => 'cisco_3576',
'nas_name' => 'centos',
'total_traffic' => 0,
'state' => 'stale',
'traffic_input' => 0,
'traffic_output' => 0,
'traffic_usage' => 0,
'session_time' => 29641260,
)

```

GetUserCurrentSession()

```
GetUserCurrentSession($username)
```

Looks up the current (most recent) active session for the specified username.

See “[GetCurrentSession\(\)](#)” for details of the return value.

GetIpAddressCurrentSession()

```
GetIpAddressCurrentSession($ip_addr = null)
```

Looks up the current (most recent) active session for the specified client IP address. If `ip_addr` is not specified, it defaults to the current value of `$smarty.server.REMOTE_ADDR`, which may not be the same value as the IP address of the session if there is a NAT.

See “[GetCurrentSession\(\)](#)” for details of the return value.

GetCallingStationCurrentSession()

```
GetCallingStationCurrentSession($callingstationid, $mac_format = null)
```

Looks up the current (most recent) active session for the specified calling station ID.

Because different NAS equipment can send differently-formatted MAC addresses in the Calling-Station-Id attribute, the `$mac_format` argument may be specified. This should be a sprintf-style format string that accepts 6 arguments (the octets of the MAC address). The default if not specified is the IEEE 802 standard format, `%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X-%02X` – that is, uppercase hexadecimal with each octet separated with a hyphen.

See “[GetCurrentSession\(\)](#)” for details of the return value.

GetUserStationCount()

```
GetUserStationCount($from_time = null, $to_time = null, $exclude_mac = null)
```

Count the total number of unique MAC addresses used in a time interval, for all sessions with the same User-Name attribute as that specified in the RADIUS Access-Request.

If `$exclude_mac` is set, any sessions matching that MAC address are excluded from the count.

This function can be used to link a MAC address to a user on the first time they log in, and subsequently prevent access by the user if using a device other than the original device used.

Examples:

- Link the user MAC address on the first time they log in, and prevent all future access unless the calling-station-id is matched.

```
return GetUserStationCount() > 0 && AccessReject()
```

- Fail authorization if the user has used more than 1 different MAC address in the past year. (Note: this does not quite work right as the current session being authorized is not taken into account.)

```
return GetUserStationCount(365*24*60*60) > 1 && AccessReject()
```

- The correct way to do the above. Checks the last year of accounting records and permits a user a maximum of 2 different stations.

```
return GetUserStationCount(365*24*60*60, time(),  
    GetAttr('calling-station-id')) >= 2 && AccessReject()
```

GetSessionTimeRemaining()

```
GetSessionTimeRemaining($username, $format = "relative")
```

Calculates the session time remaining for a given user account, if the user account was to be authenticated at the moment of the call.

The `$username` parameter is required. This is the username for the authentication.

The `$format` parameter is optional, and defaults to “relative” if not otherwise specified. This parameter may be one of the following values:

- “relative” or “session_time”: Calculates the session timeout as for the Session-Timeout RADIUS attribute, that is, the number of seconds before the session should end. If the session does not have a session timeout, the value returned is 0.
- “time”: Calculates the session end time, as the UNIX time at which the session should end. If the session does not have an expiration time, the value returned is 0.
- Other values: These are interpreted as a date format (see “NwaDateFormat”) and the session end time is returned in this format. (Examples: “iso8601”, “longdate”, “recent”, “%Y-%m-%d %H:%M”, etc.). If the session does not have an expiration time, the value returned is a blank string.

ChangeToRole()

```
ChangeToRole($username, $role_name)
```

Changes the RADIUS role assigned to the user. If the user currently has active sessions, this function will trigger an RFC 3576 Change-of-Authorization (CoA) Request to the network access server.

The `$username` parameter specifies the user account to modify; use the expression `GetAttr('User-Name')` to use the value from the RADIUS User-Name attribute.

The `$role_name` parameter specifies the name of the RADIUS User Role to apply to the user.

Example:

Use the following as a conditional expression for an attribute. If the user's traffic in the past 24 hours exceeds 50 MB, the user is changed to the "Over-Quota" role.

```
return GetUserTraffic(86400) > 50e6 && ChangeToRole("Over-Quota");
```

RADIUS Server Options

These are the advanced server options that may be configured using the RADIUS Server Options text field. Where applicable, the default value for each configuration option is shown.

The default value will be used if no other value is set in the RADIUS Server Options.

Values for parameters may be quoted using double quotes; backslash escaping is supported within double-quoted strings.

General Configuration

Table 47 *General Configuration Settings*

| Value | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| max_request_time = 30 | The maximum time (in seconds) to handle a request. Requests which take more time than this to process may be killed, and a REJECT message is returned. |
| cleanup_delay = 5 | <p>The time to wait (in seconds) before cleaning up a reply which was sent to the NAS. The RADIUS request is normally cached internally for a short period of time, after the reply is sent to the NAS. The reply packet may be lost in the network, and the NAS will not see it. The NAS will then re-send the request, and the server will respond quickly with the cached reply.</p> <p>If this value is set too low, then duplicate requests from the NAS MAY NOT be detected, and will instead be handled as separate requests. If this value is set too high, then the server will cache too many requests, and some new requests may get blocked. (See max_requests, below) The useful range of values is 2 to 10</p> |
| max_requests = 1024 | <p>The maximum number of requests which the server keeps track of. This should be 256 multiplied by the number of clients, for example, with 4 clients, this number should be 1024. If this number is too low, then when the server becomes busy, it will not respond to any new requests, until the 'cleanup_delay' time has passed, and it has removed the old requests.</p> <p>If this number is set too high, then the server will use a bit more memory for no real benefit. If you aren't sure what it should be set to, it's better to set it too high than too low. Setting it to 1000 per client is probably the highest it should be. The useful range of values is 256 and higher.</p> |
| bind_address = * | Make the server listen on a particular IP address, and send replies out from that address. This directive is most useful for machines with multiple IP addresses on one interface. It can either contain "*", or an IP address, or a fully qualified Internet domain name. |
| listen.ipaddr = not set | By default, the server uses 'bind_address' to listen to all IP addresses on a machine, or just one IP. The 'port' configuration is used to select the authentication port used when listening on those addresses. If you want the server to listen on additional addresses, you can use the 'listen' section. The IP address on which to listen may be specified as a dotted-quad (1.2.3.4), hostname (radius.example.com) or as a wildcard (*). |
| listen.port = not set | Port number on which to listen. Only applies if 'listen.ipaddr' has been set. Allowed values are an integer port number (1812) or 0 to look up the port in /etc/services. |
| listen.type = not set | Type of packets to listen for. Allowed values are "auth" for authentication packets, and "acct" for accounting packets. |
| hostname_lookups = off | Log the names of clients or just their IP addresses, for example, www.example.com (on) or 209.97.207.76 (off). The default is 'off' because it would be overall better for the net if people had to knowingly turn this feature on, as enabling it means that each client request will result in AT LEAST one lookup request to the name server. Enabling hostname_lookups will also mean that your server may stop randomly for 30 seconds from time to time, if the DNS requests take too long. Turning hostname lookups off also means that the server won't block for 30 seconds, if it sees an IP address which has no name associated with it. Allowed values are <i>no</i> and <i>yes</i> . |
| log_stripped_names = no | Log the full User-Name attribute, as it was found in the request. Allowed values are <i>no</i> and <i>yes</i> . |
| log_auth = yes | Log authentication requests to the log file. Allowed values are <i>no</i> and <i>yes</i> . |
| log_auth_badpass = no | Log incorrect passwords with the authentication requests. Allowed values are <i>no</i> and <i>yes</i> . |

Table 47 *General Configuration Settings (Continued)*

| Value | Description |
|--|---|
| log_auth_goodpass = no | Log correct passwords with the authentication requests. Allowed values are <i>no</i> and <i>yes</i> . |
| lower_user = no
lower_pass = no | Convert the username or password to lowercase “before” or “after” attempting to authenticate. If set to “before”, the server will first modify the request and then try to authenticate the user. If set to “after”, the server will first attempt to authenticate using the values provided by the user. If that fails it will reprocess the request after modifying it as you specify below. This is as close as Amigopod can get to case insensitivity. It is the admin’s job to ensure that the username on the auth db side is also lowercase to make this work. Allowed values: before, after, no |
| nospace_user = no
nospace_pass = no | Some users like to enter spaces in their username or password incorrectly. To save yourself the tech support call, you can eliminate those spaces here. Allowed values: before, after, no (as for ‘lower_user’ above) |
| rfc2868_zero_tag = no | Allow the insertion of RFC 2858 tags with a zero value. Normally, zero indicates an unused tag, and in string attributes (for example, Tunnel-Private-Group-Id) a zero tag would be omitted. However, some vendors require the tag to be present even if it is zero. In this case, setting this to ‘yes’ will allow the insertion and use of a zero tag. Default is ‘no’ (RFC 2868 compliant). Allowed values: no, yes |
| allow_authorize_only = no | Specify this option to enable support for authorization-only RADIUS requests, which have the Service-Type attribute set to the value “Authorize-Only” and do not contain a User-Password attribute.
Default is ‘no’.
Allowed values: no, yes |

Security Configuration

Table 48 *Security Configuration Settings*

| Value | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| security.max_attributes = 200 | The maximum number of attributes permitted in a RADIUS packet. Packets which have more than this number of attributes in them will be dropped. If this number is set too low, then no RADIUS packets will be accepted. If this number is set too high, then an attacker may be able to send a small number of packets which will cause the server to use all available memory on the machine. Setting this number to 0 means “allow any number of attributes”. |
| security.reject_delay = 1 | When sending an Access-Reject, it can be delayed for a few seconds. This may help slow down a DoS attack. It also helps to slow down people trying to brute-force crack a user’s password.

Setting this number to 0 means “send rejects immediately”. If this number is set higher than ‘cleanup_delay’, then the rejects will be sent at ‘cleanup_delay’ time, when the request is deleted from the internal cache of requests. The range of useful values are 1 to 5. |
| security.status_server = no | Sets whether or not the server will respond to Status-Server requests. When sent a Status-Server message, the server responds with an Access-Accept packet, containing a Reply-Message attribute, which is a string describing how long the server has been running. Allowed values are <i>no</i> and <i>yes</i> . |

Proxy Configuration

Table 49 *Proxy Configuration Settings*

| Value | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| proxy_requests = yes | Turns proxying of RADIUS requests on or off. The server has proxying turned on by default. If your system is not set up to proxy requests to another server, then you can turn proxying off here. This will save a small amount of resources on the server. If you have proxying turned off, and your configuration files say to proxy a request, then an error message will be logged. Allowed values: no, yes |
| proxy.synchronous = no | If the NAS re-sends the request to us, we can immediately re-send the proxy request to the end server. To do so, use ‘yes’ here. If this is set to ‘no’, then we send the retries on our own schedule, and ignore any duplicate NAS requests. If you want to have the server send proxy retries ONLY when the NAS sends its retries to the server, then set this to ‘yes’, and set the other proxy configuration parameters to 0 (zero).

Additionally, if you want ‘failover’ to work, the server must manage retries and timeouts. Therefore, if this is set to yes, then no failover functionality is possible. Allowed values: no, yes |
| proxy.retry_delay = 5 | The time (in seconds) to wait for a response from the proxy, before re-sending the proxied request. If this time is set too high, then the NAS may re-send the request, or it may give up entirely, and reject the user. If it is set too low, then the RADIUS server which receives the proxy request will get kicked unnecessarily. |
| proxy.retry_count = 3 | The number of retries to send before giving up, and sending a reject message to the NAS. |

Table 49 *Proxy Configuration Settings (Continued) (Continued)*

| Value | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| proxy.dead_time = 120 | <p>If the home server does not respond to any of the multiple retries, then the RADIUS server will stop sending it proxy requests, and mark it 'dead'. If there are multiple entries configured for this realm, then the server will failover to the next one listed. If no more are listed, then no requests will be proxied to that realm.</p> <p>After a configurable 'dead_time', in seconds, the RADIUS server will speculatively mark the home server active, and start sending requests to it again. If this dead time is set too low, then you will lose requests, as the server will quickly switch back to the home server, even if it isn't up again. If this dead time is set too high, then the server may take too long to switch back to the primary home server.</p> <p>Realistic values for this number are in the range of minutes to hours (60 to 3600).</p> |

SNMP Query Configuration

The SNMP query configuration value is **snmp** = **no**. To enable SNMP querying of the server, set this directive to 'yes'. Allowed values are *no* and *yes*.

Thread Pool Configuration

Table 50 *Thread Pool Settings*

| Value | Description |
|---|---|
| thread.start_servers = 5 | <p>The thread pool is a long-lived group of threads which take turns (round-robin) handling any incoming requests.</p> <p>You probably want to have a few spare threads around, so that high-load situations can be handled immediately. If you don't have any spare threads, then the request handling will be delayed while a new thread is created, and added to the pool.</p> <p>You probably don't want too many spare threads around, otherwise they'll be sitting there taking up resources, and not doing anything productive. The default configuration should be adequate for most situations.</p> |
| thread.max_servers = 32 | <p>Limit on the total number of servers running. If this limit is ever reached, clients will be locked out, so it should not be set too low. It is intended mainly as a brake to keep a runaway server from taking the system with it as it spirals down.</p> <p>You may find that the server is regularly reaching the 'max_servers' number of threads, and that increasing 'max_servers' doesn't seem to make much difference. If this is the case, then the problem is most likely that your back-end databases are taking too long to respond, and are preventing the server from responding in a timely manner. The solution is not to keep increasing the 'max_servers' value, but instead to fix the underlying cause of the problem: slow database, or 'hostname_lookups' set to 'yes'. For more information, see the 'max_request_time' server option.</p> |
| thread.min_spare_servers = 3
thread.max_spare_servers = 10 | <p>Server-pool size regulation. Rather than making you guess how many servers you need, the RADIUS server dynamically adapts to the load it sees. That is, it tries to maintain enough servers to handle the current load, plus a few spare servers to handle transient load spikes.</p> <p>It does this by periodically checking how many servers are waiting for a request. If there are fewer than 'min_spare_servers', it creates a new spare. If there are more than 'max_spare_servers', some of the spares die off. The default values are probably OK for most sites.</p> |

Table 50 *Thread Pool Settings (Continued) (Continued)*

| Value | Description |
|---|---|
| thread.max_requests_per_server = 0 | Set the maximum number of requests a server should handle before exiting. Zero is a special value meaning “infinity”, or “the servers never exit”. |
| thread.max_queue_size = 65536 | Set the maximum number of incoming requests which may be queued for processing. After the queue reaches this size, new requests are dropped. The default value is recommended for most deployments. Do not change the default value unless you have a specific requirement. |

Authentication Module Configuration

Table 51 *Authentication Module Configuration Settings*

| Value | Description |
|--|--|
| module.pap = yes | PAP module to authenticate users based on their stored password. |
| pap.encryption_scheme = crypt | The PAP module supports multiple encryption schemes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">● clear: Clear text● crypt: Unix crypt● md5: MD5 encryption● sha1: SHA1 encryption |
| module.chap = yes | Authenticates requests containing a CHAP-Password attribute. |
| module.pam = yes | Pluggable Authentication Modules for Linux. |
| module.unix = yes | Unix /etc/passwd style authentication. |
| unix.cache = no | Cache /etc/passwd, /etc/shadow, and /etc/group for authentication. The default is to not cache them. Allowed values: no, yes |
| unix.cache_reload = 600 | If the cache is enabled, reloads its contents every 'cache_reload' seconds. Use 0 to disable. |
| module.mschap = yes | Microsoft CHAP authentication.
This module supports MS-CHAP and MS-CHAPv2 authentication. It also enforces the SMB-Account-Ctrl attribute. |
| mschap.use_mppe = no | If 'use_mppe' is set to 'yes', the mschap module will add MS-CHAP-MPPE-Keys for MS-CHAPv1 and MS-MPPE-Recv-Key/MS-MPPE-Send-Key for MS-CHAPv2. |
| mschap.require_encryption = yes | If 'use_mppe' is enabled, 'require_encryption' makes encryption moderate. |
| mschap.require_strong = yes | 'require_strong' always requires 128 bit encryption. |
| mschap.with_ntdomain_hack = no | Windows sends us a username in the form of DOMAIN\user, but sends the challenge response based on only the user portion. This workaround corrects for that incorrect behavior. |
| mschap.ntlm_auth | The module can perform authentication itself, or use a Windows Domain Controller. This configuration directive tells the module to call the ntlm_auth program, which will do the authentication, and return the NT-Key. Note that you MUST have "winbindd" and "nmbd" running on the local machine for ntlm_auth to work. See the ntlm_auth program documentation for details. |

Database Module Configuration

Table 52 Database Module Configuration Settings

| Value | Description |
|---|--|
| sql.case_insensitive_usernames = 0 | Set this option to 1 to match usernames in the local user database without regard to case. This will allow basic RADIUS authentication to work when the case of the username provided by the NAS is different from the case of the username in the local user database. Note that this may have unexpected effects in certain authorization or accounting contexts, or when creating user accounts.

This option does not control how external authentication servers perform username matches; these may be case-sensitive or case-insensitive depending on the type of server and its configuration. The default and recommended setting is to perform case-sensitive username matching. |
| sql.num_sql_socks = 5 | The number of SQL connections to make to the database server. |
| sql.connect_failure_retry_delay = 60 | The number of seconds to delay retrying on a failed database connection (per socket). |
| sql.safe_characters = not set | A list of characters that may be stored in database fields without being escaped. This may be set to the value “all” to indicate all standard ASCII characters. This string should not include any ASCII characters with a value of 128 or more as this could result in a string with an invalid UTF-8 encoding being sent to the database. |
| sql.simultaneous_stale_time = 86400 | The “stale time” determines how much time must elapse without any interim accounting updates before an open session is considered “stale” and will no longer count towards a user’s session limit. Stale sessions are displayed in the Active Sessions list using a different state icon. This parameter is measured in seconds; the default corresponds to a value of 24 hours. |
| override.session.radutmp = yes | Set this parameter to “yes” to enable session limits in the case where guest accounts are limited to a maximum of one or more concurrent sessions. It is important to ensure that when this configuration option is in effect, the NAS is able to reliably send accounting stop messages. Otherwise, sessions will not be closed and this can lead to the same account being denied access when they are not actually logged in. When this occurs, the user’s previous session will be shown as active in the active session list; it can be closed manually here. |

EAP Module Configuration

Set the **advanced.eap = 1** option to enable additional EAP types to be selected in the **RADIUS Services > Authentication > EAP & 802.1X > EAP Configuration** form.

The following EAP module options are usually not required, as EAP configuration can be performed using the WebUI. For EAP documentation, See **“EAP and 802.1X Authentication”** in the RADIUS Services chapter for further details.

Table 53 Optional EAP Module Options

| Function | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| advanced.eap = 1 | Enable additional EAP types in the EAP Configuration form. |
| module.eap = yes | Extensible Authentication Protocol authentication. |

Table 53 *Optional EAP Module Options (Continued)*

| Function | Description |
|---|--|
| eap.default_eap_type = md5 | Invoke the default supported EAP type when EAP-Identity response is received. The incoming EAP messages DO NOT specify which EAP type they will be using, so it MUST be set here. Only one default EAP type may be used at a time. If the EAP-Type attribute is set by another module, then that EAP type takes precedence over the default type configured here. |
| eap.timer_expire = 60 | A list is maintained to correlate EAP-Response packets with EAP-Request packets. After a configurable length of time, entries in the list expire, and are deleted. |
| eap.ignore_unknown_eap_types = no | There are many EAP types, but the server has support for only a limited subset. If the server receives a request for an EAP type it does not support, then it normally rejects the request. By setting this configuration to “yes”, you can tell the server to instead keep processing the request. Another module MUST then be configured to proxy the request to another RADIUS server which supports that EAP type. If another module is NOT configured to handle the request, then the request will still end up being rejected. |
| eap.cisco_accounting_username_bug = no | Cisco AP1230B firmware 12.2(13)JA1 has a bug. When given a User-Name attribute in an Access-Accept, it copies one more byte than it should. Work around this issue by adding an extra zero byte. |
| module.eap_md5 = yes | Enables “md5” EAP type. EAP-MD5 authentication is not recommended for wireless connections. It is insecure, and does not provide for dynamic WEP keys. |
| module.eap_leap = yes | Cisco LEAP. LEAP is not recommended for use in new deployments. Cisco LEAP uses the MS-CHAP algorithm (but not the MS-CHAP attributes) to perform its authentication. As a result, LEAP requires access to the plain-text User-Password, or the NT-Password attributes. “System” authentication is impossible with LEAP. |
| module.eap_gtc = yes | Generic Token Card. Currently, this is only permitted inside of EAP-TTLS, or EAP-PEAP. The module “challenges” the user with text, and the response from the user is taken to be the User-Password. Proxying the tunneled EAP-GTC session is a bad idea: the users password will go over the wire in plain text, for anyone to see. |
| eap.gtc.challenge = "Password: " | The default challenge string, which many clients ignore. |
| eap.gtc.auth_type = PAP | The plain-text response which comes back is put into a User-Password attribute, and passed to another module for authentication. This allows the EAP-GTC response to be checked against plain-text, or encrypted passwords. If you specify “Local” instead of “PAP”, then the module will look for a User-Password configured for the request, and do the authentication itself. |

Table 53 *Optional EAP Module Options (Continued)*

| Function | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| module.eap_tls = no | <p>Enables EAP-TLS module.</p> <p>The following functions onfigure digital certificates for EAP-TLS. If the private key and certificate are located in the same file, then private_key_file and certificate_file must contain the same filename.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.tls.private_key_password = <i>not set</i> • eap.tls.private_key_file = "\${raddbdir}/certs/cert-srv.pem" • eap.tls.certificate_file = "\${raddbdir}/certs/cert-srv.pem" • eap.tls.dh_file = "\${raddbdir}/certs/dh" • eap.tls.random_file = "\${raddbdir}/certs/random" • eap.tls.CA_file = "\${raddbdir}/certs/demoCA/cacert.pem" <p>Trusted root CA list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.tls.fragment_size = 1024 <p>This can never exceed the size of a RADIUS packet (4096 bytes), and is preferably half that, to accommodate other attributes in the RADIUS packet. On most APs the maximum packet length is configured between 1500 – 1600. In these cases, fragment size should be 1024 or less.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.tls.include_length = yes <p>If set to yes, the total length of the message is included in every packet we send. If set to no, total length of the message is included only in the first packet of a fragment series.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.tls.check_crl = yes <p>Check the Certificate Revocation List.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.tls.check_cert_cn = <i>not set</i> <p>If check_cert_cn is set, the value will be xlat'ed and checked against the CN in the client certificate. If the values do not match, the certificate verification will fail, rejecting the user.</p> |
| module.eap_ttls = no | <p>The TTLS module implements the EAP-TTLS protocol, which can be described as EAP inside of Diameter, inside of TLS, inside of EAP, inside of RADIUS.</p> <p>The TTLS module needs the TLS module to be installed and configured, in order to use the TLS tunnel inside of the EAP packet. You will still need to configure the TLS module, even if you do not want to deploy EAP-TLS in your network. Users will not be able to request EAP-TLS, as it requires them to have a client certificate. EAP-TTLS does not require a client certificate.eap.ttls.default_eap_type = md5</p> <p>The tunneled EAP session needs a default EAP type which is separate from the one for the non-tunneled EAP module. Inside of the TTLS tunnel, we recommend using EAP-MD5. If the request does not contain an EAP conversation, then this configuration entry is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.ttls.copy_request_to_tunnel = no <p>The tunneled authentication request does not usually contain useful attributes like Calling-Station-Id, etc. These attributes are outside of the tunnel, and are normally unavailable to the tunneled authentication request.</p> <p>By setting this configuration entry to 'yes', any attribute which is not in the tunneled authentication request, but which is available outside of the tunnel, is copied to the tunneled request.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.ttls.use_tunneled_reply = no <p>The reply attributes sent to the NAS are usually based on the name of the user 'outside' of the tunnel (usually 'anonymous'). If you want to send the reply attributes based on the username inside of the tunnel, then set this configuration entry to 'yes', and the reply to the NAS will be taken from the reply to the tunneled request.</p> |

Table 53 *Optional EAP Module Options (Continued)*

| Function | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| module.eap_peap = no | <p>PEAP authentication. The PEAP module needs the TLS module to be installed and configured, in order to use the TLS tunnel inside of the EAP packet. You will still need to configure the TLS module, even if you do not want to deploy EAP-TLS in your network. Users will not be able to request EAP-TLS, as it requires them to have a client certificate. EAP-PEAP does not require a client certificate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • eap.peap.default_eap_type = mschapv2
The tunneled EAP session needs a default EAP type which is separate from the one for the non-tunneled EAP module. Inside of the TLS/PEAP tunnel, we recommend using EAP-MS-CHAPv2. • module.eap_mschapv2 = yes
Enable the EAP MS-CHAPv2 sub-module. In order for this sub-module to work, the main 'mschap' module must also be configured. This module is the Microsoft implementation of MS-CHAPv2 in EAP. There is another (incompatible) implementation of MS-CHAPv2 in EAP by Cisco, which is not currently supported. |

LDAP Module Configuration

The following LDAP module options are usually not required, as LDAP server configuration can be performed using the WebUI. See [“Configuring an LDAP External Authentication Server”](#) in the *RADIUS Services* chapter for further details.

Table 54 *LDAP Module Settings*

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| module.ldap = no | <p>Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). This module definition allows you to use LDAP for authorization and authentication (Auth-Type := LDAP).</p> |
| ldap.server = ldap.example.com | <p>Set the LDAP server hostname/ip address. You can also pass an LDAP URL like ldap://localhost. That way you can also specify alternative ldap schemas like ldaps:// or ldapi://. The port directive will be ignored in this case.</p> |
| ldap.port = 389 | <p>LDAP server port. If LDAP server port is set to 636 (ldaps), SSL connection is enforced. This feature is useful for LDAP servers which support SSL, but don't do TLS negotiation (like Novell eDirectory).</p> |
| ldap.edir_account_policy_check = yes | <p>Applies Novell's account policy checks (authorization) when authenticating a user via LDAP lookup in the eDirectory. The default setting is “yes”. To disable the Novell account policy checks, set this option to “no”, in which case all authorization will be performed by the RADIUS server.</p> <p>Required for Novell eDirectory support. When defining this attribute for an individual Novell eDirectory LDAP server, remove the “ldap.” prefix from the attribute name.</p> |

Table 54 *LDAP Module Settings (Continued)*

| Setting | Description |
|---|--|
| ldap.password_attribute = "nspmPassword" | To support Novell eDirectory Universal Password, this option must be set to "nspmPassword". Retrieves the user's plain-text password from the directory and uses in the RADIUS server for user authentication. Universal Password requires a secure connection to the LDAP server.
Required for Novell eDirectory support. When defining this attribute for an individual Novell eDirectory LDAP server, remove the "ldap." prefix from the attribute name. |
| ldap.password_header = "{clear}" | To extract the user's plain-text password via Novell Universal Password, this value must be set to "{clear}". The value for this attribute must be lowercase. Universal Password requires a secure connection to the LDAP server.
Required for Novell eDirectory support. When defining this attribute for an individual Novell eDirectory LDAP server, remove the "ldap." prefix from the attribute name. |
| ldap.net_timeout = 1 | Number of seconds to wait for a response from the LDAP server (network failures). |
| ldap.timeout = 4 | Number of seconds to wait for the LDAP query to finish. |
| ldap.timelimit = 3 | Number of seconds the LDAP server has to process the query (server-side time limit). |
| ldap.ldap_debug = 0 | Debug flags for LDAP SDK (see OpenLDAP documentation)
Example: (LDAP_DEBUG_FILTER + LDAP_DEBUG_CONNS)
ldap.ldap_debug = 0x0028 |
| ldap.identity = <i>not set</i> | The DN under which LDAP searches are done. |
| ldap.password = <i>not set</i> | Password which authenticates the identity DN. If not set, the default is to perform an anonymous bind, with no password required. NOTE: this implies that searches will be done over an unencrypted connection! |
| ldap.basedn | ldap.filter = "o=My Org,c=UA"
Base of LDAP searches. |
| ldap.filter | ldap.filter = "uid=%{Stripped-User-Name:-%{User-Name}}"
The LDAP search filter, to locate user object using the name supplied by client during the RADIUS authentication process. |
| ldap.base_filter = <i>not set</i> | The LDAP search filter used for base scope searches, like when searching for the default or regular profiles. |
| ldap.start_tls = no | When set to "yes", the StartTLS extended operation is used to enable TLS transport encryption. |
| ldap.tls_mode = no | When set to "yes", or if the server port is 636, we try to connect with TLS. Start TLS should be preferred; 'tls_mode' is provided only for LDAP servers like Active Directory which do not support it. |
| ldap.tls_cacertfile = <i>not set</i> | A PEM-encoded file that contains the CA Certificates that you trust. |
| ldap.tls_cacertdir = <i>not set</i> | Path to a directory of CA Certificates that you trust, the directory must be in "hash format" (see: openssl verify). |

Table 54 *LDAP Module Settings (Continued)*

| Setting | Description |
|--|--|
| ldap.tls_certfile = <i>not set</i> | The PEM Encoded certificate file that should be presented to clients that connect.
ldap.tls_keyfile = <i>not set</i>
The PEM Encoded private key that should be used to encrypt the session. |
| ldap.tls_randfile = <i>not set</i> | A file containing random data to seed the OpenSSL PRNG. Not needed if your OpenSSL is already properly random. |
| ldap.tls_require_cert = <i>not set</i> | Certificate Verification requirements. Can be “never” (don’t even bother trying), “allow” (try, but don’t fail if the certificate can’t be verified), or “demand” (fail if the certificate doesn’t verify). |
| ldap.default_profile = <i>not set</i> | DN of a LDAP object, which contains default RADIUS attributes. If not set, use only user specific attributes or attributes, supplied by other modules. |
| ldap.profile_attribute = <i>not set</i> | Name of a user object attribute, which contains DN of radiusProfile object for this user. If unset, use only user specific attributes or attributes, supplied by other modules. |
| ldap.access_attrused_for_allow = yes | Determines if the access attribute (described below) will be used to allow access (meaning if it exists then user remote access will be allowed) or to deny access. |
| ldap.access_attr = dialupAccess | If attribute is specified, the LDAP module checks for its existence in the user object. If access_attr_used_for_allow is set to yes, and the attribute exists, the user is allowed to get remote access.
If the attribute exists and is set to FALSE, the user is denied remote access. If the attribute does not exist, the user is denied remote access by default.
If access_attr_used_for_allow is set to no, and the attribute exists, the user is denied remote access. If it does not exist, the user is allowed remote access. |
| ldap.password_header = <i>not set</i> | If the user password is available we add it to the check items (to assist in CHAP), stripping any headers first. The password_header directive is NOT case insensitive. |
| ldap.password_attribute = <i>not set</i> | Define the attribute which contains the user password. |
| ldap.groupname_attribute = <i>not set</i> | The attribute containing group name in the LDAP server. It is used to search groups by name. |
| ldap.compare_check_items = no | Specifies if the module will do a comparison on the check items extracted from the ldap with the corresponding items present in the incoming request. |
| ldap.do_xlat = yes | Specifies if the module will do an xlat on the radius attributes extracted from the ldap database. Also, the attribute operators will be honored. If the directive is set to ‘no’ then we will fall back to the pairadd() function which will just add the attributes at the end of the corresponding attribute list (check or reply items). This can be used to fall back to 0.8.1 behavior without changing the LDAP data or to gain a little performance if the LDAP data is rather simple (no special operators) |

Table 54 LDAP Module Settings (Continued)

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| ldap.groupmembership_filter = not set | The filter to search for group membership of a particular user after we have found the DN for the group.
Example filter:
(((&(objectClass=GroupOfNames)(member=%{Ldap-UserDn}))(&(objectClass=GroupOfUniqueNames)(uniquemember=%{Ldap-UserDn}))) |
| ldap.groupmembership_attribute = not set | The attribute in the user entry that states the group the user belongs to. The attribute can either contain the group name or the group DN. If it contains the group DN, groupmembership_attribute will also be used to find the group's name.
The attribute will be used after a search based on the groupname_attribute and groupmembership_filter has failed. If unset, the module does not search for a group based on attributes in the user entry. |

Rewrite Module Configuration

The **attr_rewrite** module can be used to perform pattern matching and replacement tasks on RADIUS attributes contained in an Access-Request message.



See “[Server Configuration](#)” in the RADIUS Services chapter for examples showing how to use the attr_rewrite module.

Multiple attr_rewrite modules can be declared. Use the syntax to create an attr_rewrite module named *name*:

```
module.attr_rewrite.name.attribute = "..."  
module.attr_rewrite.name.searchin = packet  
module.attr_rewrite.name.searchfor = "..."  
module.attr_rewrite.name.replacewith = "..."
```

Use this syntax to instantiate the modules, and specify the numerical order in which the processing should be done (0, 1, 2, etc.):

```
authorize.after_preprocess.0.name = module1  
authorize.after_preprocess.1.name = module2
```

The following table describes the rewrite module attributes and settings.

Table 55 Rewrite Module Configuration Settings

| Value | Description |
|---|---|
| module.attr_rewrite.name.attribute = not set | Specifies the name of the RADIUS attribute for which rewriting will be performed. |
| module.attr_rewrite.name.searchin = packet | Specifies which attribute list is to be searched: may be “packet”, “reply”, “proxy”, “proxy_reply” or “config”.
The default of “packet” indicates the Access-Request message; use a value of “reply” to rewrite attributes in either the Access-Accept or Access-Reject message. |
| module.attr_rewrite.name.searchfor = not set | A regular expression to use when determining if the attribute should be matched. See “ Regular Expressions ” in this chapter for information about the supported syntax for regular expressions. |

Table 55 Rewrite Module Configuration Settings (Continued)

| Value | Description |
|---|---|
| module.attr_rewrite.name.replacewith = not set | <p>The replacement value which will be used for the attribute value, if the attribute matches the “searchfor” regular expression.</p> <p>Backreferences to the matching components of the “searchfor” regular expression are supported: %{0} will contain the string for the entire regular expression match, and %{1} through %{8} contain the contents of the 1st through the 8th matching parenthesized groups.</p> <p>If the “new_attribute” item is set to yes, then this value is used as the contents of a new attribute.</p> |
| module.attr_rewrite.name.ignore_case = no | <p>If set to yes, matches the “searchfor” regular expression in a case-insensitive way.</p> <p>The default behavior is to match case-sensitively.</p> |
| module.attr_rewrite.name.new_attribute = no | <p>If set to yes, a new attribute will be created, containing the value of the “replacewith” item. The new attribute will be added to the “searchin” item (packet, reply, proxy, proxy_reply or config). In this case, the “searchfor”, “ignore_case” and “max_matches” items are ignored.</p> |
| module.attr_rewrite.name.max_matches = 10 | <p>The maximum number of regular expression matches to be processed for the attribute.</p> |
| module.attr_rewrite.name.append = no | <p>If set to yes, then the “replacewith” string will be appended to the original attribute value.</p> <p>The default of “no” causes the entire attribute value to be replaced.</p> |

List of Standard Radius Attributes

Authentication Attributes

These are the attributes the NAS uses in authentication packets and expects to get back in authentication replies. These can be used in matching rules.

- **User-Name:** This attribute indicates the name of the user to be authenticated or accounted. It is used in Access-Request and Accounting packets.
- **Password:** This attribute indicates the password of the user to be authenticated, or the user’s input following an Access-Challenge. It is only used in Access-Request packets.
- **CHAP-Password:** This attribute indicates the response value provided by a PPP Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) user in response to the challenge. It is only used in Access-Request packets.
- **NAS-IP-Address:** This attribute indicates the IP address of the NAS which is requesting authentication of the user. It is only used in Access-Request packets.
- **NAS-Port-Id:** This attribute indicates the physical port number of the NAS which is authenticating the user. It is only used in Access-Request packets. Note that this is using “port” in its sense of a physical connection on the NAS, not in the sense of a TCP or UDP port number.
- **Service-Type:** This attribute indicates the type of service the user has requested, or the type of service to be provided. It may be used in both Access-Request and Access-Accept packets.
- **Framed-Protocol:** This attribute indicates the framing to be used for framed access. It may be used in both Access-Request and Access-Accept packets.

- **Framed-IP-Address:** This attribute indicates the address to be configured for the user. In an Accounting-Request packet, it indicates the IP address of the user.
- **Framed-IP-Netmask:** This attribute indicates the IP netmask to be configured for the user when the user is a router to a network.
- **Framed-Routing:** This attribute indicates the routing method for the user, when the user is a router to a network. It is only used in Access-Accept packets.
- **Framed-MTU:** This attribute indicates the Maximum Transmission Unit to be configured for the user, when it is not negotiated by some other means (such as PPP). It is only used in Access-Accept packets.
- **Framed-Compression:** This attribute indicates a compression protocol to be used for the link.
- **Reply-Message:** This attribute indicates text which may be displayed to the user.
- **Callback-Number:** This attribute indicates a dialing string to be used for callback.
- **Callback-Id:** This attribute indicates the name of a place to be called, to be interpreted by the NAS.
- **Framed-Route:** This attribute provides routing information to be configured for the user on the NAS. It is used in the Access-Accept packet and can appear multiple times.
- **State:** This attribute is available to be sent by the server to the client in an Access-Challenge and MUST be sent unmodified from the client to the server in the new Access-Request reply to that challenge, if any.
- **Class:** This attribute is available to be sent by the server to the client in an Access-Accept and should be sent unmodified by the client to the accounting server as part of the Accounting-Request packet if accounting is supported.
- **Vendor-Specific:** This attribute is available to allow vendors to support their own extended Attributes not suitable for general usage.
- **Session-Timeout:** This attribute sets the maximum number of seconds of service to be provided to the user before termination of the session or prompt.
- **Idle-Timeout:** This attribute indicates how many octets have been received from the port over the course of this service being provided, and can only be present in Accounting-Request records where the Acct-Status-Type is set to Stop.
- **Acct-Output-Octets:** This attribute indicates how many octets have been sent to the port in the course of delivering this service, and can only be present in interim and stop Accounting-Request records.
- **Acct-Session-Id:** This attribute is a unique Accounting ID to make it easy to match start and stop records in a log file.
- **Acct-Authentic:** This attribute may be included in an Accounting-Request to indicate how the user was authenticated, whether by RADIUS, the NAS itself, or another remote authentication protocol. Users who are delivered service without being authenticated should not generate Accounting records.
- **Acct-Session-Time:** This attribute indicates how many seconds the user has received service for, and can only be present in Accounting-Request records where the Acct-Status-Type is set to Stop or Interim Update.
- **Acct-Input-Packets:** This attribute indicates how many packets have been received from the port over the course of this service being provided to a Framed User, and can only be present in Accounting-Request records where the Acct-Status-Type is set to Stop or Interim Update. This attribute indicates how many packets have been sent to the port in the course of delivering this service to a Framed User, and can only be present in Accounting-Request records where the Acct-Status-Type is set to Stop or Interim Update.
- **Acct-Terminate-Cause:** This attribute indicates how the session was terminated, and can only be present in Accounting-Request records where the Acct-Status-Type is set to Stop.

RADIUS Server Internal Attributes

The **Simultaneous-Use** attribute is used by the RADIUS server during the processing of a request. It never returned to a NAS. Simultaneous-Use specifies the maximum number of simultaneous logins a given user is permitted to have. When the user is logged in this number of times any additional attempts to log in are rejected.

LDAP Standard Attributes for User Class

The following list provides some of the attributes for the LDAP User class. For a complete list you should consult [http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms683980\(VS.85\).aspx#windows_2000_server_attributes](http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms683980(VS.85).aspx#windows_2000_server_attributes).

- **userPrincipalName:** The userPrincipalName is a single-valued and indexed property that is a string that specifies the user principal name (UPN) of the user. The UPN is an Internet-style login name for the user based on the Internet standard RFC 822. The sAMAccountName property is a single-valued property that is the logon name The objectSid property is a single-valued property that specifies the security identifier (SID) of the user.
- **accountExpires:** The accountExpires property specifies when the account will expire.
- **badPasswordTime:** The badPasswordTime property specifies when the last time the user tried to log onto the account using an incorrect password.
- **badPwdCount:** The badPwdCount property specifies the number of times the user tried to log on to the account using an incorrect password.
- **codePage:** The codePage property specifies the code page for the user's language of choice. This value is not used by Windows 2000.
- **countryCode:** The countryCode property specifies the country code for the user's language of choice. This value is not used by Windows 2000.
- **lastLogoff:** The lastLogoff property specifies when the last logoff occurred.
- **lastLogon:** The lastLogon property specifies when the last logon occurred.
- **logonCount:** The logonCount property counts the number of successful times the user tried to log on to this account.
- **mail:** The mail property is a single-valued property that contains the SMTP address for the user (such as demo@example.com).
- **memberOf:** The memberOf property is a multi-valued property that contains groups of which the user is a direct member.
- **primaryGroupID:** The primaryGroupID property is a single-valued property containing the relative identifier (RID) for the primary group of the user.
- **sAMAccountType:** The sAMAccountType property specifies an integer that represents the account type.
- **unicodePwd:** The unicodePwd property is the password for the user.

Regular Expressions

The following characters can be used to perform pattern matching tasks using regular expressions.

Table 56 *Regular Expressions for Pattern Matching*

| Regex | Matches |
|-------|--------------------------------------|
| a | Any string containing the letter "a" |

Table 56 *Regular Expressions for Pattern Matching (Continued) (Continued)*

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>^a</code> | Any string starting with “a” |
| <code>^a\$</code> | Only the string “a” |
| <code>a\$</code> | Any string ending with “a” |
| <code>.</code> | Any single character |
| <code>\.</code> | A literal “.” |
| <code>[abc]</code> | Any of the characters a, b, or c |
| <code>[a-z0-9A-Z]</code> | Any alphanumeric character |
| <code>[^a-z]</code> | Any character not in the set a through z |
| <code>a?</code> | Matches zero or one “a” |
| <code>a+</code> | Matches one or more: a, aa, aaa, ... |
| <code>a*</code> | Matches zero or more: empty string, a, aa, aaa... |
| <code>a b</code> | Alternate matches: Matches an “a” or “b” |
| <code>(a.*z)</code> | Grouping: matches sequentially within parentheses |
| <code>a*?</code> | “Non-greedy” zero or more matches |
| <code>\ooo</code> | The character with octal code ooo |
| <code>\040</code> | A space |
| <code>\d</code> | Any decimal digit |
| <code>\D</code> | Any character that is not a decimal digit |

The regular expression syntax used is Perl-compatible. For further details on writing regular expressions, consult a tutorial or programming manual.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Access-Accept | Response from RADIUS server indicating successful authentication, and containing authorization information. |
| Access-Reject | Response from RADIUS server indicating a user is not authorized. |
| Access-Request | RADIUS packet sent to a RADIUS server requesting authorization. |
| Accounting-Request | RADIUS packet type sent to a RADIUS server containing accounting summary information. |
| Accounting-Response | RADIUS packet sent by the RADIUS server to acknowledge receipt of an Accounting-Request. |
| accounting session time | The length of time the guest has been using the network. |
| accounting | Process of recording summary information about network access by users and devices. |
| authentication | The verification of a user's credentials, typically a username and password. |
| authorization | Authorization controls the type of access that an authenticated user is permitted to have. |
| captive portal | Implemented by NAS. Provides access to network only to authorized users. |
| \$criteria | An array that consists of one or more criteria on which to perform a data based search. This array is used for advanced cases where pre-defined helper functions do not provide required flexibility. |
| Disconnect-Ack | NAS response packet to a Disconnect-Request, indicating that the session was disconnected. |
| Disconnect-Nak | NAS response packet to a Disconnect-Request, indicating that the session could not be disconnected. |
| Disconnect-Request | RADIUS packet type sent to a NAS requesting that a user or session be disconnected. |
| form | A screen that collects data using fields. |
| field | A single item of information about a visitor account. |
| guest | See Visitor. |
| landing page | See Web login. |
| LDAP | Lightweight Directory Access Protocol; communications protocol used to store and retrieve information about users and other objects in a directory. |
| Network Access Server (NAS) | A device that provides network access to users, such as a wireless access point, network switch, or dial-in terminal server. When a user connects to the NAS device, a RADIUS user authentication request (Access-Request) is generated by the NAS. |

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| operator profile | The characteristics assigned to a class of operators, such as the permissions granted to those operators. |
| operator/operator login | User of Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance to create guest accounts or perform system administration. |
| ping | Test network connectivity using an ICMP echo request (“ping”). |
| print template | Formatted template used to generate guest account receipts. |
| RFC | Request For Comments; a commonly-used format for Internet standards documents. |
| role | Type of access being granted. You are able to define multiple roles. Such roles could include employee, guest, team member, or press. Roles are used for both guest access (user role) and operator access to the Amigopod Visitor Management Appliance (see Operator Profile). |
| session | Service provided by a NAS to an authorized user. |
| skin | The skin of a Web site is its external appearance, or “look and feel”. It can be thought of as a container that holds the application, its style sheet (font size and color for example), its header and footer and so forth. |
| SMS | Short Message System; a method for delivering short messages (up to 140 characters) to mobile phones. |
| sponsor | See operator . |
| user database | Database of the guests on the system. |
| view | Table containing data. Used to interactively display data such as visitor accounts to operators. |
| visitor/guest | Someone who is permitted to access the Internet through your Network Access Server. |
| VSA | Vendor Specific Attribute. |
| walled garden | Network resources that can be accessed by unauthorized users through the captive portal. |
| Web login | A login page displayed to a visitor. |

Numerics

802.1Q VLAN 289

802.1X 77

A

AAA 23, 45

Access control

Operator logins 291

Print template 199, 244

SNMP 298

account filter

creating 112, 117

Accounting 23, 24, 27

Active Directory 92

Advanced options 94

Configuring authentication 90

Join domain 88

LDAP 119

View settings 88

Active sessions 220

Administrator

Backup 305

Content manager 310

Custom backup 306

File upload size 329

Log rotation 325

Memory limit 329

Navigation 281

Network diagnostics 282

Network security 312

Network setup 281

Plugin manager 315

Restore backup 308

Scheduled backup 306

Security manager 311

Server time 321

Sysctl parameters 323

System control 323

System information 330

System logs 333

Web application settings 329

Web server settings 330

amigopod subscription ID 42

Apple Captive Network Assistant 67

Application log 334

Export 334

Files 334

Filtering 333

Search 335

Attribute values 76

Attributes 50, 74

Condition 51

Conditions 52

Delete values 77

Edit 76

Edit values 77

RADIUS 51

Role 51

Tags 52

Value expressions 54

Authentication 23, 24, 27, 134

RADIUS attributes 423

Authorization 23, 24, 27, 101, 134

Advanced 100

Conditional 52

From accounting 53

Time of day 53

Average link utilization 241

Average session time 241

Average traffic volume 241

B

Backup 305

Backup & Restore 305

Backup schedule 306

Bins 261

C

CAPTCHA security code 163

Captive Portal 27

Captive portal 182, 337

Certificate

Root certificate 303

Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP)

65

Change expiration time 141

Character set encoding 58, 145

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| Check for updates | 317 |
| Classification groups | 261 |
| Closed session | 220 |
| Cluster | 347 |
| Concurrent sessions | 241 |
| Configuration replication | 350 |
| Configure | |
| Active Directory authentication | 90 |
| LDAP authentication server | 96 |
| Operator logins | 129 |
| Proxy RADIUS authentication | 98 |
| RADIUS Server | 47 |
| Console interface | 33 |
| Console login | 33 |
| Content manager | 310 |
| Delete | 311 |
| Download | 310 |
| Quick view | 311 |
| Rename | 311 |
| Upload | 310 |
| View | 311 |
| Create | |
| Certificate signing request | 301 |
| Classifier | 262 |
| Field | 158 |
| GRE tunnel | 288 |
| Guest account | 135 |
| Hotspot plan | 341 |
| LDAP server | 119 |
| LDAP translation rule | 125 |
| Multiple guest accounts | 137 |
| NAS | 55 |
| Operator profile | 110 |
| Output filter | 269 |
| Output series | 266 |
| Print template | 197 |
| RADIUS server certificate | 80 |
| Report | 272 |
| Report parameter | 254 |
| Self registration | 182 |
| Source field | 257 |
| Source filter | 259 |
| Static route | 287 |
| Statistic | 264 |
| User Roles | 50 |
| Vendor | 74 |
| VLAN interface | 289 |
| Web login page | 60 |
| creating | |
| account filter | 112, 117 |
| session filter | 112, 117 |

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------|
| CSV | |
| Caching | 379 |
| Parsing | 381 |
| System logs | 334 |
| Customize | |
| Email receipt | 234, 236 |
| Fields | 157 |
| Hotspot invoice | 343 |
| Hotspot plan selection | 344 |
| Hotspot receipt | 346 |
| Hotspot user information | 345 |
| Login message | 193 |
| Login page | 192 |
| Receipt actions | 189 |
| Receipt page | 188 |
| Registration form | 187 |
| Registration page | 187 |
| Self-service portal | 194 |
| View fields | 179 |
| D | |
| Daily link utilization | 241 |
| Data retention | 326 |
| Data source | 256 |
| Data source field | 257 |
| Database replication | 350 |
| Debugging | |
| AAA debug | 46, 48 |
| RADIUS | 46 |
| Default EAP type | 78 |
| Default password | 33 |
| Default skin | 321 |
| Delete | 74 |
| Attribute values | 77 |
| Content item | 311 |
| Field | 159 |
| VSA | 76 |
| Deployment | |
| Network provisioning | 28 |
| Operational issues | 28 |
| Overview | 28 |
| Security policy | 28 |
| Site checklist | 29 |
| Derived field | 257 |
| devices | |
| filtering | 206 |
| importing | 217 |
| Dictionary | 72 |
| Digital certificates | 301 |
| Disk space | 326 |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| Download | | card_code..... | 391 |
| Content | 310 | card_expiry..... | 391 |
| Download content | 311 | card_name..... | 391 |
| Downtime threshold | 351 | card_number | 391 |
| duplicate fields | 159 | city..... | 391 |
| Dynamic authorization..... | 156, 218, 220 | country..... | 391 |
| E | | creator_accept_terms..... | 153 |
| EAP..... | 77 | Customize..... | 157 |
| EAP-TLS | 78 | Delete..... | 159 |
| EAP-TTLS | 78 | do_expire | 155 |
| PEAP | 78 | do_schedule | 154 |
| PEAP and MS-CHAPv2 | 83 | dynamic_expire_time..... | 385 |
| Edit | | dynamic_is_expired | 385 |
| Attribute values | 77 | Edit | 159 |
| Base field | 161, 180 | email | 153, 385 |
| Dictionary attributes..... | 76 | enabled | 154, 385 |
| External authentication server | 92 | expiration_time | 385 |
| Field | 159 | expire_after..... | 155 |
| Form..... | 160 | expire_postlogin | 155 |
| Guest account | 123, 142 | expire_time | 155, 386 |
| Guest self-registration | 183 | expire_usage | 155, 386 |
| Multiple guest accounts..... | 142 | first_name | 391 |
| Print template wizard | 199 | hotspot_plan_id | 391 |
| Vendor..... | 74 | hotspot_plan_name | 391 |
| View | 160, 179 | id..... | 386 |
| Email | | ip_address | 386 |
| Guest self-registration receipts..... | 190 | last_name | 391 |
| SMTP Services | 234 | modify_expire_postlogin..... | 386 |
| Email receipts..... | 137 | modify_expire_time | 155 |
| Ethernet settings | 285 | modify_password | 154, 387 |
| Export | | modify_schedule_time..... | 154, 387 |
| Guest accounts..... | 148 | multi_initial_sequence | 153, 387 |
| RADIUS dictionary | 73 | multi_prefix | 153, 387 |
| RADIUS server certificate | 83 | netmask..... | 388 |
| Reports | 246 | no_password | 388 |
| System logs | 334 | no_portal..... | 388 |
| Vendors..... | 74 | no_warn_before | 388 |
| External authentication servers | 91 | notes..... | 388 |
| Certificates..... | 106 | num_accounts | 388 |
| Managing | 92 | password | 153, 154, 198, 388 |
| F | | password_action | 388 |
| failover..... | 347 | password_action_recur | 388 |
| Fault tolerance..... | 347 | password_last_change..... | 389 |
| Field..... | 27, 153 | password2 | 153, 388, 391 |
| Create | 158 | personal_details..... | 392 |
| Rank ordering | 161 | purchase_amount..... | 392 |
| Fields | | purchase_details..... | 392 |
| account_activation..... | 384 | random_password..... | 154, 389 |
| address | 391 | random_password_length | 154, 389 |
| auto_send_sms..... | 392 | random_password_method..... | 154, 389 |
| auto_update_account | 153 | random_password_picture | 394 |
| | | random_username_length | 150, 153, 154, 389 |
| | | random_username_method..... | 150, 153, 154 |
| | | random_username_picture..... | 150, 394 |
| | | role_id | 154 |
| | | role_name | 154, 198 |
| | | schedule_after | 154 |
| | | schedule_time..... | 154 |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|----------|
| secret_answer | 195 | Static text | 168 |
| secret_question | 195 | Static text (Options lookup) | 169 |
| Show forms | 159 | Static text (Raw value) | 169 |
| Show views | 159 | Submit button | 170 |
| simultaneous_use | 152, 154 | Text area | 171 |
| sms_auto_send_field | 234, 392 | Text field | 171 |
| sms_enabled | 233, 392 | Validation errors | 172 |
| sms_handler_id | 233, 392 | Validation properties | 172 |
| sms_phone_field | 233, 392 | Value conversion | 177 |
| sms_template_id | 233, 392 | Value formatter | 177 |
| sms_warn_before_message | 234, 392 | Visible If | 178 |
| smtp_auto_send_field | 238 | form field | |
| smtp_cc_action | 238 | check box | 163 |
| smtp_cc_list | 238 | Form fields | |
| smtp_email_field | 238 | Conversion | 397 |
| smtp_enabled | 238 | Display functions | 398 |
| smtp_receipt_format | 238 | Validators | 395 |
| smtp_subject | 238, 393 | Value format | 397 |
| smtp_template_id | 238, 393 | Forms | |
| smtp_warn_before_cc_action | 239, 394 | change_expiration | 157 |
| smtp_warn_before_cc_list | 239, 394 | create_multi | 157 |
| smtp_warn_before_receipt_format | 239 | create_user | 157 |
| smtp_warn_before_subject | 238, 393 | Customization | 160 |
| smtp_warn_before_template_id | 239, 393 | Duplicate | 160 |
| state | 392 | Edit | 160 |
| submit_free | 392 | Field editor | 162 |
| username | 153, 198 | Form fields | 161 |
| visitor_accept_terms | 392 | guest_edit | 157 |
| visitor_carrier | 392 | guest_multi_form | 144, 157 |
| visitor_fax | 392 | guest_register | 157 |
| visitor_name | 196 | guest_register_receipt | 157 |
| warn_before_from | 239, 394 | Preview | 162 |
| warn_before_from_sponsor | 239, 394 | reset_password | 157 |
| zip | 392 | G | |
| fields | | Graphical user interface | 34 |
| duplicate | 159 | GRE | 287 |
| File upload size | 329 | Groups | 261 |
| filtering | | By field value | 262 |
| devices | 206 | Case sensitive | 262 |
| guest accounts | 140, 143 | Guest | 27 |
| sessions | 221 | Guest access | |
| Final report | 272 | Business rules | 153 |
| Form | 27, 157 | Click to print | 153 |
| Form field | | Email receipt | 234 |
| Advanced properties | 175 | NAS login | 181 |
| CAPTCHA | 163 | Receipt page | 181 |
| Checklist | 163 | Registration page | 181 |
| Date/time picker | 165 | Roles | 23 |
| Display properties | 162 | Self-provisioned | 134 |
| Drop-down list | 165 | Visitor surveys | 148 |
| Enable If | 178 | Guest accounts | |
| Group heading | 170 | Activate | 141 |
| Hidden | 166 | Change expiration | 141 |
| Initial value | 172 | Create | 135 |
| Password | 167 | | |
| Radio Buttons | 168 | | |

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| Create multiple..... | 137 |
| Delete..... | 141 |
| Disable..... | 141 |
| Edit..... | 123, 142 |
| Email receipt..... | 137 |
| Export..... | 148 |
| Filtering..... | 140, 143, 206, 221 |
| Import..... | 144 |
| List..... | 139 |
| Manage multiple..... | 142 |
| Paging..... | 140 |
| Print..... | 142 |
| Receipts..... | 137 |
| Reset password..... | 140 |
| Scratch cards..... | 138 |
| Selection row..... | 144 |
| SMS receipt..... | 137 |
| View passwords..... | 153 |
| XML export..... | 148 |
| guest accounts | |
| filtering..... | 140, 143 |
| Guest management..... | 133 |
| Custom fields..... | 157 |
| Customization..... | 148 |
| Email receipts..... | 234 |
| Print template wizard..... | 198 |
| Print templates..... | 196 |
| Self provisioned..... | 181 |
| Sessions..... | 218 |
| SMS receipts..... | 229 |
| Guest Manager | |
| Navigation..... | 133 |
| Guest self-registration | |
| Download receipt..... | 189 |
| Email receipts..... | 190 |
| Login page..... | 192 |
| Print receipt..... | 189 |
| Self-service portal..... | 193 |
| SMS receipt..... | 190 |
| H | |
| Hardware..... | 31 |
| Hardware failure..... | 358 |
| Help | |
| Context-sensitive..... | 19 |
| Field help..... | 19 |
| Quick help..... | 19 |
| Searching..... | 19 |
| Web resources..... | 20 |
| High Availability..... | 347 |
| Cluster initialization..... | 357 |
| Cluster maintenance..... | 357 |
| Cluster status..... | 352 |
| Deployment process..... | 357 |
| Destroy cluster..... | 360 |
| Join cluster..... | 356 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------|
| Navigation..... | 347 |
| Network architecture..... | 348 |
| Primary failure..... | 351 |
| Rebuild cluster..... | 359 |
| Repair cluster..... | 358 |
| Scheduled maintenance..... | 359 |
| Secondary failure..... | 351 |
| SSL certificate..... | 349 |
| Troubleshooting..... | 360 |
| View log files..... | 361 |
| Hostname..... | 282 |
| Hotspot | |
| Sign-up..... | 338 |
| Hotspot Manager..... | 337 |
| Captive portal..... | 339 |
| Create plan..... | 341 |
| Customer information..... | 342 |
| Edit plan..... | 340 |
| Invoice..... | 343 |
| Plans..... | 339 |
| HTML | |
| Smarty templates..... | 365 |
| Styles..... | 364 |
| Syntax..... | 363 |
| HTTP proxy..... | 38, 297 |
| I | |
| IANA Private Enterprise Code..... | 74 |
| IEEE 802.1X..... | 77 |
| Import | |
| Certificate..... | 107 |
| Guest accounts..... | 144 |
| Matching fields..... | 146 |
| NAS..... | 57 |
| RADIUS dictionary..... | 73 |
| RADIUS server certificate..... | 82 |
| Reports..... | 247 |
| importing | |
| devices..... | 217 |
| Installation | |
| Administrator password..... | 36 |
| Complete..... | 44 |
| Default network settings..... | 31 |
| Default password..... | 33 |
| Hardware..... | 31 |
| Hostname..... | 36 |
| HTTP proxy..... | 38 |
| License agreement..... | 35 |
| NAS list..... | 42 |
| Network interfaces..... | 37 |
| Password..... | 35 |
| Setup wizard..... | 34 |
| SMTP configuration..... | 39 |
| SNMP configuration..... | 40 |
| Subscription ID..... | 42 |

| | |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| Time server | 40 |
| Update plugins..... | 43 |
| Virtual machine | 32 |
| Intermediate certificate..... | 303 |
| K | |
| Keep-alive | 349 |
| L | |
| LDAP | |
| Advanced options..... | 98 |
| Create translation rule..... | 125 |
| Custom rules..... | 127 |
| Match actions | 126 |
| Match rules | 126 |
| Operator logins | 119 |
| Standard attributes | 425 |
| Translation rules..... | 119 |
| URL syntax | 122 |
| LDAP server | 92 |
| License agreement | 35 |
| List filter..... | 259 |
| Local operators | 115 |
| Log files | 334 |
| Log rotation | 325 |
| M | |
| Match filter | 259 |
| Memory limit..... | 329 |
| Metrics..... | 263 |
| Add | 265 |
| Average | 265 |
| Divide | 265 |
| Expression | 266 |
| Maximum | 265 |
| Median | 265 |
| Minimum | 265 |
| Multiply | 265 |
| Subtract | 266 |
| Sum..... | 266 |
| Microsoft Active Directory | 92 |
| MS-CHAPv2 | 90 |
| MTU..... | 285 |
| N | |
| NAS | 55, 134 |
| Create | 55 |
| Import..... | 57 |
| Login | 27 |
| Parameters..... | 63, 65 |
| Predefined types..... | 56 |
| NAS login | |
| Guest self-registration | 191 |

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| Network | |
| Default gateway | 286 |
| Default settings..... | 31 |
| DHCP configuration..... | 284 |
| Diagnostics | 292 |
| DNS lookup | 293 |
| Ethernet settings..... | 285 |
| Firewall rules..... | 293 |
| GRE tunnel..... | 288 |
| Hostname | 282 |
| Hosts file..... | 294, 296 |
| HTTP proxy..... | 297 |
| Install SSL certificate..... | 302 |
| Interface statistics | 293 |
| Interfaces | 37 |
| Kernel parameters | 293 |
| Manual configuration..... | 285 |
| MTU | 285 |
| NTP | 40, 321 |
| Packet capture | 294 |
| Ping..... | 293 |
| Ping URL..... | 293 |
| RADIUS authentication..... | 294 |
| Routing table | 294 |
| Secondary interface..... | 290 |
| Security..... | 312 |
| SMTP | 39 |
| SMTP configuration..... | 300 |
| SNMP | 40 |
| SNMP server..... | 297 |
| SSH access | 313 |
| SSL | 301 |
| Static routes | 287 |
| System hostname..... | 36 |
| Traceroute | 294 |
| View DHCP leases..... | 293 |
| VLAN support | 289 |
| Network access control | 77 |
| Network Access Server..... | 27, 55 |
| Network access server | |
| Setup wizard..... | 42 |
| Network configuration..... | 281 |
| Defaults..... | 31 |
| Network diagnostics | 282 |
| Network interfaces | 283, 316 |
| Number of sessions per day | 242 |
| Number of sessions per NAS..... | 242 |
| Number of users per day | 242 |
| O | |
| Operator logins | |
| Access control..... | 291 |
| Advanced options..... | 131 |
| Change password | 119 |
| Configuration | 129 |

| | | | |
|--|----------|----------------------------------|----------|
| Create LDAP server | 119 | Print templates | 196 |
| LDAP | 119 | Create | 197 |
| Navigation | 109 | Create using wizard | 198 |
| Password complexity | 130 | Permissions | 199, 244 |
| Password options | 111 | SMS receipts | 196 |
| User roles | 112 | Proxy RADIUS | 92 |
| Operator profile | | Configuring | 98 |
| Privileges | 114 | Public key infrastructure | 106 |
| Operator Profiles | 27 | Q | |
| Operator profiles | 109, 110 | Quick Start | 18 |
| Automatic logout | 131 | Key features | 25 |
| Create | 110 | Quick start | |
| Operators | 27 | Smarty | 365 |
| Local | 115 | Quick view | 311 |
| Login Message | 129 | R | |
| Output filters | 268 | RADIUS | 23, 45 |
| Output series | 266 | Attributes | 50, 51 |
| P | | Clients | 55 |
| Packet capturing | 294 | Dictionary | 72 |
| Password | 35 | Dynamic authorization | 45, 57 |
| Root password | 36 | Export dictionary | 73 |
| Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) | 65 | Import dictionary | 73 |
| Password options | | reset dictionary | 73 |
| Operator logins | 111 | Shared Secret | 55, 57 |
| Picture string | 394 | User roles | 49 |
| PKCS #12 | 83 | Vendor-specific attributes | 51, 72 |
| PKCS #7 | 83, 107 | VSA | 75 |
| Plugin configuration | | Web logins | 59 |
| Kernel | 319 | RADIUS Server | |
| Skin | 320 | Accounting queries | 370 |
| Plugin Manager | | Active sessions | 218 |
| Setup wizard | 43 | attr_rewrite module | 49 |
| Plugin manager | 315 | Authentication log | 46 |
| Configure plugin | 318 | Certificate authority (CA) | 81 |
| Restore default configuration | 319 | Configuration | 47 |
| Subscription ID | 316 | Configuration options | 409 |
| Update notifications | 318 | Create certificate | 80 |
| Update plugins | 317 | Databases | 71 |
| POSIX | | Debugging | 46 |
| LDAP | 119 | Digital certificate | 78 |
| Presentation blocks | 270 | Export certificate | 83 |
| Preview form | 162 | External authentication | 91 |
| Primary node | 347 | Import certificate | 82 |
| Print template | | Install certificate | 81 |
| Custom fields | 198 | Internal attributes | 425 |
| Edit using wizard | 199 | Local user database | 91 |
| Print Templates | 27 | Log | 45 |
| | | Restart | 45 |
| | | Server options | 48, 328 |
| | | Stop | 45 |
| | | RADIUS server | |
| | | Disconnect session | 220 |
| | | Reauthorize session | 220 |

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------|--------------|
| RADIUS Services | | Local RADIUS accounting | 249 |
| Navigation | 45 | Managing | 242 |
| Range filter | 259 | Parameters | 253 |
| Reboot | 323 | Print | 242, 243 |
| Receipt page | 181 | Reset to defaults | 247 |
| Register page | 181 | Run default | 242 |
| Regular expressions | 425 | Run options | 243 |
| Rename Content | 311 | Run preview | 242 |
| Report Editor | | Select fields | 257 |
| Match Rule | 269 | Skin | 253 |
| Report editor | | View CSV | 242 |
| Chart presentations | 270 | View HTML | 242 |
| Classification groups | 261 | View Text | 242 |
| Create classifier | 262 | Reset dictionary | 73 |
| Create output filter | 269 | Reset password | 140 |
| Create output series | 266 | Restart services | 323 |
| Create parameter | 254 | Restore | 308 |
| Create report | 272 | RFC 1738 | 308 |
| Create statistic | 264 | RFC 2255 | 123, 124 |
| Data source | 256 | RFC 2865 | 73 |
| Data store | 279 | RFC 2868 | 52 |
| Diagnostics | 279 | RFC 3164 | 326 |
| Final report | 272 | RFC 3576 | 57, 156, 220 |
| List filter | 259 | Role | 27 |
| Match filter | 259 | Attributes | 51 |
| Metrics | 263 | Role-based access control | 49, 109 |
| Output filters | 268 | S | |
| Output series | 266 | Scheduled shutdown | 323 |
| Output series field | 267 | Scratch cards | 138 |
| Parameter user interface | 255 | Secondary node | 347 |
| Parameters | 253 | Security auditing | 312 |
| Presentation blocks | 270 | Security manager | 311 |
| Range filter | 259 | Security policy | 23 |
| Report type | 252 | Checklist | 29 |
| Select fields | 257 | Self registration | |
| Source filters | 259 | Create | 182 |
| Statistics | 263 | Self-service portal | 193 |
| Table presentations | 271 | Auto login | 195 |
| Text presentations | 271 | Password generation | 195 |
| Report type | 252 | Reset password | 195 |
| Reporting Manager | 241 | Secret question | 196 |
| Reports | | Sendmail | 300 |
| Bin number | 249 | Sequence diagram | |
| Binning | 249 | AAA | 24 |
| Classification groups | 251 | Guest self-registration | 182 |
| Custom reports | 248 | Serial port interface | 33 |
| Data source field | 257 | Server time | 321 |
| Delete | 244 | | |
| Derived field | 257 | | |
| Duplicate | 244 | | |
| Export | 246 | | |
| Grouping | 250 | | |
| History | 242 | | |
| Import | 247 | | |

| | |
|--|----------|
| session filter | |
| creating | 112, 117 |
| Sessions | |
| Active | 220 |
| Closed | 220 |
| Stale | 220 |
| sessions | |
| filtering | 221 |
| Setup wizard | 34 |
| Shared Secret | 55, 57 |
| Shutdown | 323 |
| Smarty | 365 |
| assign function | 366 |
| Comments | 366 |
| foreach block | 367 |
| if block | 366 |
| include | 365 |
| literal block | 366 |
| Modifiers | 367 |
| section block | 366 |
| Variables | 365 |
| SMS | |
| Guest account receipt | 137 |
| Guest self-registration receipts | 190 |
| SMS Services | 227 |
| Configuration | 227 |
| Credits available | 229 |
| Guest receipts | 229 |
| Low credit warning | 229 |
| Send | 228 |
| SMTP configuration | 300 |
| SMTP Services | 234 |
| SNMP | 297 |
| Community string | 299 |
| Supported MIBs | 299 |
| Source filters | 259 |
| Sponsor | 27 |
| SSL | |
| Certificate details | 304 |
| High Availability | 349 |
| SSL certificate | 301 |
| Installing | 302 |
| Stale session | 220 |
| Static routes | 287 |
| Statistics | 263 |
| Average | 264 |
| Maximum value | 264 |
| Median value | 265 |
| Minimum value | 265 |
| Sum | 265 |

| | |
|--------------------------|---------|
| Subscription ID | 42, 316 |
| Sysctl parameters | 323 |
| System control | 323 |
| System information | 330 |
| System log viewer | 333 |

T

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Temporary outage | 358 |
| Top 10 users by total traffic | 242 |
| Total traffic per day | 242 |
| Troubleshooting | 46 |
| Application integrity check | 316 |
| Cluster | 360 |
| Packet capture | 294 |
| Reports | 279 |
| Security check | 311 |

U

| | |
|-----------------------|-----|
| UAM | 65 |
| Upload | |
| Content | 310 |
| User Database | 27 |
| User interface | |
| Console | 33 |
| Graphical | 34 |
| Serial port | 33 |
| User Roles | |
| Create | 50 |
| User roles | 49 |
| Security policy | 50 |

V

| | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| Vendor | 73 |
| Attributes | 74 |
| Create | 74 |
| Delete | 74 |
| Edit | 74 |
| Export | 74 |
| View | 27, 157 |
| View content | 311 |
| Views | |
| Column format | 180 |
| Customization | 160 |
| Duplicate | 160 |
| Edit | 160, 179 |
| Field editor | 180 |
| guest_export | 148, 157 |
| guest_multi | 142, 157 |
| guest_sessions | 157, 219 |
| guest_users | 139, 157 |
| Virtual appliance | 32 |
| VMware ESXi | 32 |

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Virtual IP address | 348 |
| Virtual machine | 32 |
| NTP and timekeeping | 41 |
| NTP configuration | 322 |
| Visitor..... | 27 |
| Visitor Account | 27 |
| VLAN | |
| RADIUS Attributes | 54 |
| VLAN interface | 289 |
| VSA..... | 75 |
| Delete..... | 76 |
| W | |
| Web login | |
| Using parameters..... | 66 |
| Web Logins | 27 |
| Web logins..... | 59 |
| Access controls | 64 |
| Destination URL..... | 63 |
| Look and feel | 63 |
| NAS redirect..... | 65 |
| Web server | 310 |
| Web server configuration | 330 |
| Windows 7 | 84 |
| Windows Vista..... | 84 |
| Wizard | |
| Print template..... | 198 |
| X | |
| XML | |
| Guest account list..... | 148 |
| Parsing | 382 |
| System logs | 334 |